

A HIGHER HISTORY

OF THE

UNITED STATES

FOR SCHOOLS AND ACADEMIES

BY

HENRY E. CHAMBERS

AUTHOR OF "A SCHOOL HISTORY OF THE UNITED STATES," ETC.

REVISED EDITION

UNIVERSITY PUBLISHING COMPANY

NEW YORK • NEW ORLEANS

c. 1898

28581

COPYRIGHT, 1898, BY
UNIVERSITY PUBLISHING COMPANY

* * 2099

TWO COPIES RECEIVED.



E178
C44

PREFACE.

THIS volume is the work of a practical teacher and embodies the results of many years of teaching experience and school-room experiment. It was originally intended as a text-book for upper grammar grades, but its practical character won the favor of many teachers who introduced it into lower grades than those for which it was designed. These teachers cheerfully assumed the labor of simplifying its language for their pupils rather than not use the book. They have urged the author to prepare for them an intermediate book on the same plan. Such a book, preceded by the author's *School History* and followed by the *Higher*, would make a series of three books. There is little room in the common-school curriculum of to-day for three books in the course of American History. Therefore, instead of expanding the subject into a three-book course, the subject has been condensed into a three-course book. The original text of the *Higher* has been entirely rewritten and carefully simplified, so that it now supplies the easy intermediate book wanted for the lower grades. The panel notes added to the new text give the fuller course needed for the higher grammar grades. The work indicated under the heading "For Advanced Classes," connected with the text and the panel notes, gives a complete course for high school and college classes. The economy of this plan is evident.

In the present edition the characteristic features of the original work have been carefully preserved. The subject is divided into exactly the same periods and exactly the same chapters, so that, by using the topical method, both the old edition and the new can be used in the same classes. Many improvements, however, have been made, many new and valuable maps have been added, and new portraits, every one of which is an authentic likeness, have been secured.

In treating of the war between the North and the South the author has endeavored to be absolutely just. The partisan and sectional history, with its warped historical perspective, its magnifying of trivial local events, and its one-sided view that distorts and misinforms, should be condemned by every true patriot. The setting forth of the whole truth, with balanced judgment, accurate statement, and temperate expression, should be the aim of the historical text-book writer.

H. E. C.

BOYS' HIGH SCHOOL, NEW ORLEANS, LA.

SUGGESTIONS TO TEACHERS.

Do not place this volume in the hands of pupils who are too young to understand it. For such pupils, Hansell's *School History* is the proper text-book. This book is designed for other grades, and offers three distinct courses of instruction.

LOWER GRAMMAR GRADE PUPILS should study the text in large type. The questions at the end of each chapter refer to this text. The panel notes may be read, but no questions are given upon them. The questions on Chapters XI., XII., and XIII., Period of Revolution, and the political questions on Chapters XIII., XX., and XXI., Period of Independence, may be omitted with young students. These chapters contain many facts not given in other histories, facts that are absolutely essential to a correct understanding of what follows. They are therefore given, but in the simplest words, and with the earnest request that teachers omit the questions on them whenever in their judgment it is best to do so.

HIGHER GRAMMAR GRADE PUPILS, in addition to the work in large print, should carefully study the panel notes. With such classes the use of questions may be discontinued, and recitations be from topics placed on the blackboard. For this purpose, use the "Topics for Discussion" given at the end of each chapter. Keep two or three other histories in the schoolroom, and encourage pupils to read what other authors have written on the subject.

HIGH SCHOOL AND COLLEGE STUDENTS will find in the text and notes the narrative which is necessary as the basis of their work. Their real work is outlined under the heading "For Advanced Classes." References are made to several authorities, of which they will probably find one or more in the college library. Index headings suggest and facilitate references to other authorities that may be accessible and to encyclopedias. Facts thus gathered can be recited and discussed under "Topics for Discussion" and under the "Reference Outlines." This is the system recommended by the Committee of Ten of the National Educational Association.

CONTENTS.

	PAGE
INTRODUCTION	3

I. PERIOD OF DISCOVERY.

The Great Awakening.

CHAPTER

I. THE DAWN OF LEARNING.

Dark Ages—Polo and Mandeville—Portuguese discoveries	5
--	---

II. THE INCREASE OF GEOGRAPHICAL KNOWLEDGE.

Genoa and Venice—First appearance of Columbus—The idea of a round earth—Toscanelli's map	7
--	---

America Discovered.

III. THE IDEA AND THE MAN.

Struggles of Columbus—Council of Salamanca—Isabella's contract with Columbus	11
--	----

IV. THE STORY OF SAN SALVADOR.

Preparations for departure—Incidents of the voyage—The discovery of land	14
--	----

V. THE NEWS BROUGHT BACK.

First landfall—Columbus's return—Second, third, and fourth voyages—Vasco da Gama	17
--	----

VI. FIRST ON THE MAINLAND.

John and Sebastian Cabot—Naming the New World	21
---	----

First Comers from Four Nations.

VII. THE SPANIARDS IN FLORIDA.

De Leon—De Ayllon—De Narvaez—De Vaca	25
--	----

VIII. THE CONQUEST OF NEW SPAIN.

Discovery and exploration of the Pacific—The Aztecs and Cortez—Conquest of Peru	27
---	----

IX. THE QUEST FOR THE FABULOUS.

Coronado—De Soto—Discovery of the Mississippi	31
---	----

X. NEW FRANCE AND ACADIE.

Verrazano—Cartier—New France—Champlain—Quebec	35
---	----

CHAPTER	PAGE
XI. LOUISIANA.	
Pioneers of the Mississippi—Marquette and Joliet—La Salle	39
XII. THE NORTHWEST PASSAGE.	
Rise of England's naval power—Frobisher—Sir Francis Drake—Dutch explorations	43
America of Old.	
XIII. ABORIGINAL RACES : SEMI-CIVILIZED.	
Aztecs : Government, language, arts, industries	47
XIV. ABORIGINAL RACES : SAVAGE.	
Character, manners, customs, tribal organization, religion, and superstition of the red races—Classification	51
XV. ANCIENT INHABITANTS OF AMERICA.	
Asiatic origin of the Americans—The Mound-builders—Pueblos and Cliff-dwellers	56
XVI. PRE-COLUMBIAN DISCOVERIES OF AMERICA.	
Ancient Phœnician voyages—Northmen—Irish, Welsh, and Basque traditional discoveries	59

II. PERIOD OF COLONIZATION.

Attempted Settlements.

I. FIRST SEEKERS FOR RELIGIOUS LIBERTY.

Huguenots in Florida—Founding of St. Augustine	65
--	----

II. RALEIGH'S FAILURES IN SOUTH VIRGINIA.

Amidas and Barlow—Humphrey Gilbert—Roanoke settlement—Virginia Dare—Lost Carolina Colony	69
--	----

III. ENGLISH ATTEMPTS IN NORTHERN VIRGINIA.

Gosnold—Virginia Charter of 1606—The Popham Colony	73
--	----

Virginia.

IV. ENGLAND'S FIRST FOOTHOLD.

Jamestown—First Colonial government—First trial by jury—Character of Virginia settlers	77
--	----

V. THE FATHER OF VIRGINIA.

Captain John Smith—Pocahontas—The Virginia Charter of 1609—Smith's administration	81
---	----

VI. PERMANENCY ASSURED.

Lord Delaware—Individual landholding—The tobacco industry—Wives for the colonists—Introduction of slavery	86
---	----

VII. THE FIRST ASSEMBLY OF AMERICAN LAWMAKERS.

Progress of popular liberty—First Colonial assembly—The first Virginia constitution	90
---	----

New Netherland.

CHAPTER

PAGE

VIII. THE INDIA COMPANIES.

Dutch colonization of New York New Sweden England takes possession 94

New England.

IX. LANDING OF THE PILGRIMS.

Puritan settlement of Plymouth—Mayflower Compact—Miles Standish 99

X. THE TYRANNY OF INTOLERANCE.

Settlement of Salem—Massachusetts Bay Company—Beginning of self-government in Massachusetts—Puritan intolerance—William Blackstone 103

XI. NEW ENGLAND SETTLEMENTS.

New Hampshire—Connecticut—First American written constitution
Rhode Island—Roger Williams 107

Maryland.

XII. FIRST FOR LIBERTY OF CONSCIENCE.

The Calverts—Catholics settle Maryland—Toleration Act—Clayborne's
Rebellions—Founding of Baltimore—Mason and Dixon's Line . . . 112

Pennsylvania and Delaware.

XIII. THE PROPRIETARY OF PENN'S WOOD.

William Penn—Founding of Philadelphia—Penn's treaty—Beginning of
Delaware 115

Carolina.

XIV. THE LORDS PROPRIETORS.

Albemarle and Clarendon colonies—The Grand Model—Founding of
Charleston—Revolution of 1719—Division 120

Georgia.

XV. PHILANTHROPY AND PROTECTION.

James Oglethorpe—The Georgia Charter—Founding of Savannah—First
prohibition of slavery 125

Louisiana.

XVI. FRENCH BARRIERS TO WESTWARD EXPANSION.

La Salle in Texas—Iberville and Bienville—Biloxi—John Law—Founding
of New Orleans 131

III. PERIOD OF COLONIAL DEVELOPMENT.**The Growing Colonies.**

I. THE BEGINNING OF INDIAN EXTINCTION.

Indian Wars in Virginia and Massachusetts—Opeacananough . . . 140

II. INDIAN CONFLICTS: NORTHERN COLONIES.

Pequot War—King Philip's War—Narragansett War 143

III. INDIAN CONFLICTS: SOUTHERN COLONIES.

Tuscarora War—Yemassee War—Natchez War 146

CHAPTER	PAGE
IV. THE EARLY AMERICAN REBELLION.	
Beginning of Colonial discontent in Virginia—Governor Berkeley—Bacon's Rebellion	150
V. A VESTIGE OF SUPERSTITION.	
Salem witchcraft delusion	155
VI. COLONIAL QUARRELS : ENGLISH AND FRENCH.	
Charter Oak—Revolution of 1688—King William's War—First Colonial Congress—Queen Anne's War—King George's War	158
VII. COLONIAL QUARRELS : ENGLISH AND SPANISH.	
Spanish attack upon Charleston—Oglethorpe and the Spaniards of Florida—Battle of Bloody Marsh	162

The Struggle for Supremacy.

VIII. A YOUTH AND HIS MISSION.	
The Ohio Company—Washington's journey—Beginning of the French and Indian War—Franklin's Plan of Union	167
IX. THE OLD FRENCH WAR.	
Braddock's defeat—Expulsion of the Acadians—Crown Point—Lake George	171
X. ENGLAND VICTORIOUS.	
Montcalm—London—Abercrombie—Amherst—Wolfe—Capture of Quebec—Treaty of Paris—Territorial changes	174
XI. OUCONOSTOTA AND PONTIAC.	
The Cherokee War—Pontiac's War	179

The Thirteen English Colonies.

XII. COLONIAL PROGRESS.	
Beneficial results of French and Indian War—Colonial governments—Colonial pioneer life	182
XIII. THE BEGINNING OF AMERICAN INDUSTRIES.	
Southern agricultural prosperity—Tobacco—Cotton—Colonial money—Commercial development of New England—Pirates—"Blackbeard" and Kidd	185
XIV. THE DEVELOPMENT OF SECTIONAL DIFFERENCES.	
Cavalier and Puritan—Northern and Southern colonies compared—First American colleges—Industrial differences	189

IV. PERIOD OF REVOLUTION.

The Struggle for English Liberty in America.

I. COMMERCIAL SLAVERY.	
Oppression of the Colonists—Navigation Acts—James Otis and Writs of Assistance	197

CHAPTER	PAGE
II. UNJUST TAXATION.	
Taxation without representation—The Stamp Act—Patrick Henry—Stamp Act Congress—Declaratory Act—Tea tax	200
III. AGITATION.	
Soldiers in Boston—Resistance—Battle of Alamance—Committees of Correspondence—Boston Tea Party—First Continental Congress—Boston Port Bill—Regulating Act	205
IV. ARMED RESISTANCE.	
Minute Men—Lexington—Paul Revere—War begins—Washington made commander-in-chief	210
V. INDEPENDENCE DECLARED.	
Bunker Hill—Quebec expedition—Siege of Boston—Fort Moultrie—First steps towards independence—Mecklenburg Declaration—Independence declared	214
The War for American Independence.	
VI. THE WAR IN THE NORTH.	
Long Island—Washington's retreat—Trenton—Princeton—Brandywine—Germantown—Valley Forge—The Hessians—Conway Cabal	224
VII. THE FIRST GREAT VICTORY.	
Burgoyne's invasion—Saratoga—The French Alliance—Conquest of the Northwest Territory—Monmouth	229
VIII. THE WAR IN THE SOUTH.	
Savannah—Kettle Creek—Brier Creek—Stono Ferry—Charleston—Sander's Creek—Paul Jones—Arnold's treason	234
IX. THE PARTISANS OF THE CAROLINAS.	
Partisan warfare—Hanging Rock—King's Mountain	240
X. AMERICA TRIUMPHANT.	
Greene's campaign—Cowpens—Guilford Court House—Hobkirk's Hill—Ninety-Six—Eutaw Springs—Yorktown—End of the war	245
The Institution of Self-government.	
XI. THE TRANSFER OF SOVEREIGNTY.	
Elements of government—Sovereignty—Written and unwritten constitutions—Beginning of State sovereignty—Development of the idea of American self-government—The Wautauga settlement	252
XII. THE DELEGATION OF GOVERNMENTAL POWER.	
Second Continental Congress—State governments—Articles of Confederation—Virginia Bill of Rights—Ordinance of 1787—Weakness of the Union under the Articles of Confederation—Shays's Rebellion—State of Franklin	256
XIII. THE FEDERAL CONSTITUTION.	
The Annapolis Convention—Alexander Hamilton—Philadelphia Convention—The Virginia and New Jersey plans—Federal ratio—Beginning of popular suffrage—Ratification of the Constitution—Interpretations of the Constitution—"The Federalist"—First presidential election	261

V. PERIOD OF INDEPENDENCE.

Union.

CHAPTER

PAGE

I. THE BEGINNING OF THE FEDERAL GOVERNMENT.

Washington, President—First Cabinet—National debt—Capital bargain—Whisky Rebellion—First United States Bank—Jay's Treaty—Surrender of Northwest Territory claims—Kentucky and Tennessee . . . 271

II. THE RISE OF POLITICAL PARTIES.

Parties and platforms—French Naval War—Death of Washington—Alien and Sedition laws—Virginia and Kentucky resolutions—Election of Jefferson—Washington city 279

III. EXPANSION OF TERRITORY.

Louisiana purchased—War with Tripoli—Lewis and Clark—First steamboat—Aaron Burr—Orders in Council and Decrees interfering with American commerce—Embargo and Non-intercourse Acts 284

IV. THE SPIRIT OF YOUNG AMERICA.

The Shawnee War—Causes and beginning of the War of 1812 292

V. THE WAR FOR MARITIME INDEPENDENCE.

Campaigns upon the Canadian frontier—Perry's victory—The Creek War—Macdonough's victory 295

VI. SEA TRIUMPHS OF THE YOUNG REPUBLIC.

First sea battles—Hartford Convention—British coast operations—Battle of New Orleans—Last sea battles—Treaty of Ghent—Results of the war . 303

VII. THE ERA OF GOOD FEELING.

Monroe, President—First Seminole War—West Florida history—Florida purchase—Monroe doctrine—Lafayette's visit—Internal improvements—Beginning of sectional antagonism—J. Q. Adams, President . . . 310

VIII. THE RISE OF MODERN POLITICAL METHODS.

Jackson, President—Progress of invention—Black Hawk War—Second Seminole War—Spoils system—United States Bank controversy . . . 317

IX. THE AMERICAN SYSTEM.

Tariff controversy of 1832—Direct and indirect taxation—Tariff classification—Rise of American manufactures—Development of cotton manufactures—The protective idea—The Nullification controversy . . . 321

X. THE PANIC OF 1837.

Van Buren, President—Causes of the panic—The Subtreasury system established—Election and death of Harrison—Dorr's Rebellion—The Mormons 329

XI. THE ANNEXATION OF TEXAS.

Territorial expansion—American colonization of Texas—Mexican oppression—Texan independence—San Jacinto—Admission of Texas . . . 336

CHAPTER

PAGE

XII. WAR WITH MEXICO.

Polk, President—Cause of the war—Three campaigns—Kearney, Wool, Taylor—Conquest of California—Matamoras—Buena Vista—Jefferson Davis, Bragg, Scott—Mexico City captured—Texas cession . . . 342

XIII. THE DEVELOPMENT OF SECTIONAL ANTAGONISM.

Sectional differences in Colonial times—Slavery in North and South—Louisiana purchased—Missouri Compromise—Fugitive Slave Laws—Kansas struggle—Dred Scott Decision 350

Disunion.

XIV. THE SECESSION OF THE SOUTHERN STATES.

John Brown's raid—The Charleston Convention—The Republican party: Lincoln elected—South Carolina ordinance of secession—Confederacy formed—Bombardment of Fort Sumter—Beauregard . . . 362

XV. THE ADVANCE ON RICHMOND.

Lincoln's call for troops—The border States—"On to Richmond!"—Big Bethel—D. H. Hill—First Battle of Manassas—McDowell—J. E. Johnston—Beauregard—"Stonewall" Jackson 370

XVI. EARLY BATTLES IN THE WEST.

Operations in Missouri—Price—A. S. Johnston—Pea Ridge—Van Dorn—Western Kentucky—Polk—Grant—Fort Donelson—Eastern Kentucky—Buell—Crittenden—Shiloh—Death of Johnston—Beauregard—Bragg—Grant—Iuka and Corinth—Halleck, chief commander 377

XVII. THE WAR IN VIRGINIA.

The Peninsula campaign—McClellan—Magruder—Seven Pines—J. E. Johnston—R. E. Lee, chief commander—Stuart's ride—Valley campaign—Jackson—Seven Days' Battles—Halleck, general-in-chief—Second Manassas—Pope—Longstreet—Sharpsburg—Fredericksburg—Burnside—Chancellorsville—Hooker—Death of Jackson—Gettysburg—Ewell—Longstreet—A. P. Hill—Pickett's charge 387

XVIII. COAST, RIVER, AND SEA.

The blockade—Atlantic coast operations—Virginia and Monitor—Fort Fisher—Charleston—Dupont—Mississippi River—Foote—New Orleans—Farragut—Vicksburg—The Gulf—Red River—Banks—High seas—Semmes—Alabama and Kearsarge 400

XIX. LIGHTS AND SHADOWS OF APPOMATTOX.

The Middle West: Murfreesboro—Forrest, Wheeler, Morgan—Chickamauga—Rosecrans, Bragg, Thomas—Sherman's advance—Atlanta—Hood—Nashville—Sherman's march—Grant, general-in-chief—Wilder—Spottsylvania—Cold Harbor—Yellow Tavern—Sheridan—Petersburg—Five Forks—Fall of Richmond—Appomattox 414

XX. THE READMISSION OF THE SOUTHERN STATES.

The Trent affair—Emancipation Proclamation—Lincoln's assassination—Johnson, President—Reconstruction plans of Lincoln, Johnson, and Congress—Thirteenth and Fourteenth Amendments—Impeachment of Johnson—General amnesty 431

Reunion.

CHAPTER

PAGE

XXI. AFTER THE WAR.

Grant, President—Fifteenth Amendment—Washington Treaty—Geneva award—Indian wars—Panic of 1873—Contested presidential election—Electoral Commission—Hayes, President—Civil Service—Garfield's election and death—Arthur, President 441

XXII. REOPENING OF THE TARIFF QUESTION.

Cleveland, President—Death and obsequies of Grant—Interstate Commerce Commission—Presidential Succession Act—Apache War—The educational campaign—Cleveland's tariff message 451

XXIII. HOME PRODUCTIONS AND FOREIGN MARKETS.

Harrison, President—Pan-American Congress—Blaine—Samoan, Chilean, and Italian controversies—Oklahoma boom—McKinley tariff—Cleveland elected President—People's party—Panic of 1893—Wilson tariff—Silver legislation—The money question—Presidential nominations: Bryan, McKinley, Palmer 456

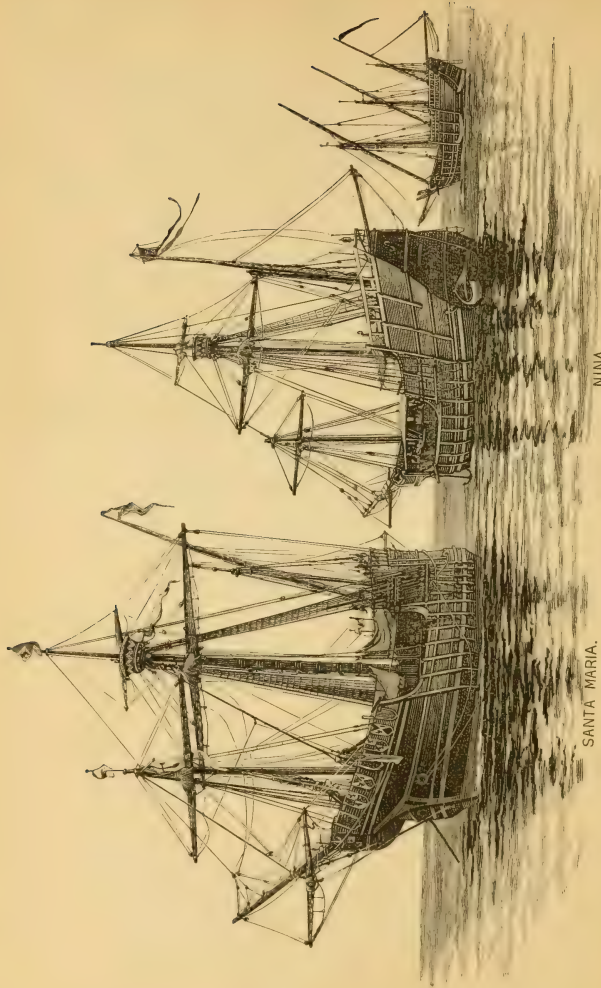
XXIV. THE WAR WITH SPAIN.

McKinley, President—Revolution in Cuba—Blowing up of the Maine—War begins—Cuban blockade—Spanish fleet at Manila destroyed—Dewey—Cervera's fleet destroyed—Hobson—Sampson—Schley—Santiago surrenders—Shafter—Porto Rico taken—Miles—Manila captured—Merritt—Peace treaty of Paris—Filipinos attack Manila—Otis—Iloilo taken—Miller—Retrospect—Unity of North and South 466

APPENDIX.

DECLARATION OF INDEPENDENCE	i
CONSTITUTION OF THE UNITED STATES	v
PRONUNCIATIONS	xxi
INDEX	xxiii

A HISTORY
OF THE
UNITED STATES.



SANTA MARIA.

SHIPS OF COLUMBUS.

NINA.

PINTA.

INTRODUCTION.

THE history of the human race is a record of the development and progress by which it has attained its present state of civilization and enlightenment. A study of the record reveals that this advancement has been made by various stages, as impulses have from time to time been received ; and the greatest of these impulses have been conquests, race conflicts, colonizations, discoveries, and inventions.

In the history of the United States we are to see something more than a mere statement of facts, or a narrative of events arranged in chronological order. We are to see in it the rise and development of a people distinct in their political system from all others on the earth : a union of self-governing States, bound together by ties of mutual interest, exemplifying in every respect the laws of human progress.

Although the youngest of civilized nations, the United States has already received many of the impulses to progress that history in general reveals to us. The expansion of its territory has been marked by conquest and race conflicts. The advancement of its people has been preëminently characterized by invention and scientific discoveries. During the course of its existence, ideas have been awakened into life that are of the greatest importance to mankind without its borders as well as within—such ideas as the equality of man, liberty of conscience, personal freedom, and the right of self-government.

Within its confines is to be found every essential condition of individual well-being. Morality is fostered by law, and is furthered by churches of many denominations in every hamlet. Each State concerns itself directly with the culture of its inhabitants, and to that end provides universities, colleges, and common-school systems. Personal freedom is recognized by it as by no other nation ; for here the only restriction placed

upon individuals in time of peace is that no one shall interfere with another in the enjoyment of rights common to all. No other people have so placed the forces of nature under control to ease the burdens and lighten the labors of the human race.

The history of this people, then, is one in which every American may take pride. There is a past that in its glory must be carried into our future; there is a past that in its sadness must never be repeated. Sadness and glory are alike the heritage of successive generations, who as citizens must perpetuate our institutions. A knowledge of the past enables us to judge of the present and to influence the future. If this knowledge inform us of ill-feeling and bitterness, the present tells us that the well-springs of this ill-feeling and bitterness have dried up. The future must find us carrying forward unitedly our common country to its glorious destiny.

Our history properly begins in Europe, where our forefathers lived. It tells of a famous voyage through which they learned of a land beyond the seas—a land which to them was a new world. It next tells how men from Europe explored and settled this land; how these settlements in time prospered and grew strong; how they rebelled against tyranny and won their independence; how they organized a government of their own; and how, finally, under this government their descendants have come to be one of the great powers of the world. These successive steps divide the history of the United States into five distinct periods: DISCOVERY, COLONIZATION, COLONIAL DEVELOPMENT, REVOLUTION, AND INDEPENDENCE.

PREPARATORY GEOGRAPHY LESSON.

Upon a globe or a map of Europe note the position of the Mediterranean Sea. What three grand divisions of land border upon it? Which touches it upon the north? Where is Portugal? Italy? Genoa? Venice? What part of Asia forms the southeastern shores of the Mediterranean? What part of Africa? What rivers empty into the Black Sea? What islands southwest of Portugal? Trace the west coast of Africa. How would a vessel sail from Lisbon to Cape of Good Hope?

I. PERIOD OF DISCOVERY.

The Great Awakening.

CHAPTER I.

THE DAWN OF LEARNING.

The Mediterranean is the most historic sea in the world, because around its shores many nations have arisen, flourished, and passed away. On its waters the fleets of those nations for thousands of years carried on trade with the three grand divisions. The story of those nations is the world's history. Their civilization and culture are the foundation of ours.

Europe, which touches this sea on the north, has not always been the enlightened portion of the world that it is to-day. There was a period of a thousand years in its history, following the fall of the Roman Empire, when the people were very ignorant. They knew little of countries other than their own, for in those days it was difficult to go about from place to place. They had few books, and these were written by hand upon parchment, for printing and paper had not yet been invented. The few who could read and write were for the most part priests and monks, who spent their time in monasteries or were employed as secretaries and teachers by rich men, nobles, and kings.

Eastern Discovery and Trade.—The people at this time knew nothing of America or of the distant portion of the world west of Europe. They knew something of the East, for in ancient times the armies of Greece and Rome had invaded and conquered parts of Asia. Near the close of the Dark

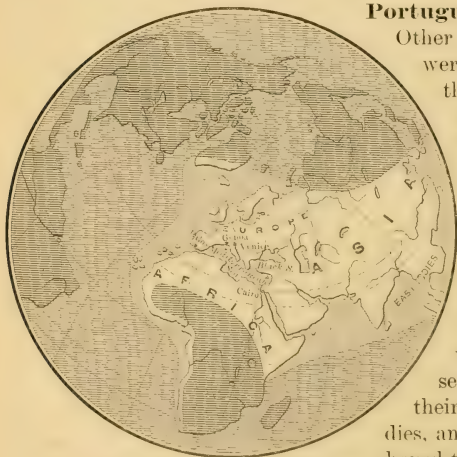
Ages, Marco Polo of Venice had traveled as far as Burma and China, and had written an account of his visit. Still later, Sir John Mandeville's book of travels in the East was published. Though commerce with India had existed for centuries, little attention had been given to the opening of an easier passage on the open sea. Caravans of camels laden with goods would come to some city on the Mediterranean or the Black Sea, and here the goods would be transferred to vessels destined to European ports. The greater part of the trade was controlled by the two Italian cities of Genoa and Venice.

End of the Dark Ages.

The period of ignorance, known as the Dark Ages, came to an end a little more than four hundred years ago. The invention of printing had done much to hasten the close of this period. Books became more plentiful. Many learned to read and write. The more the people read, the more they thought; the more intelligent they became, the more they tried to discover and to understand things about which they knew nothing before. Thus it was that trying to understand made them eager to learn. The people seemed to be waking from a long sleep of ignorance, and to be expecting great events to happen. And great events did happen, as we shall see.

Portuguese Sailors.—

Other cities, however, were eager to enjoy this trade. One of these was Lisbon, in Portugal. The Portuguese in the latter part of the fifteenth century were very enterprising. Their navigators were seeking a route of their own to the Indies, and this route they hoped to find by sailing south along the western



MAP SHOWING THE WORLD AS KNOWN NEAR THE
END OF THE FIFTEENTH CENTURY.

coast of Africa. Slowly they made themselves acquainted with the west coast, sailing farther and farther to the south but never venturing far from the shore. At last Bartholomeu Diaz [bar-tol'o-mu dē'ahs] reached Cape of Good Hope in 1486. He was inspired with hope, but he did not know that just beyond this cape lay an open waterway to the Indies.

Questions.—What sea is most historic? Why is it historic? In what respect did Europe differ from what it is now? About what did the people know very little? Who could read and write? What part of the world did they know nothing about? How did they come to know about Asia? What cities controlled the trade with Asia? What other important city sought this trade? Name a Portuguese sailor and tell what he did.

FOR ADVANCED CLASSES.

Topics for Discussion.

- I. The Mediterranean Sea in the World's History. II. The Dark Ages. III. The Revival of Learning. IV. Medieval Europe's Knowledge of the East. V. Earlier Portuguese Discoveries.

References and Authorities.

Labberton's *Historical Atlas*. Maps in general histories.
Ancient civilizations associated with the Mediterranean Sea.

Hallam's *Middle Ages*, vol. iii.

Decline of ancient learning. Causes of the Dark Ages, pages 270-289. Preservation of learning by monasteries, page 292. Revival of learning, 456. Invention of linen paper, 458. Invention of printing, 469. Invention of mariner's compass, 331.

Winsor's *Christopher Columbus*.

Prince Henry the Navigator, 97. Portuguese discoveries of Africa, 97-98. Marco Polo and Sir John Maundeville, 90, 112-117.

Parallel Readings.

INDEX GUIDE.—Consult cyclopedias, biographical dictionaries, etc., and compare information given in various school histories upon the following topics: *Printing, Invention of, Maundeville, Sir John, Polo, Marco, Portuguese Discoveries, Diaz, Bartholomeu.*

SPECIAL.—*Encyclopædia Britannica's* article on Geography, vol. x., 179. *Old South Leaflet*, No. 32: Marco Polo's account of his travels.

CHAPTER II.

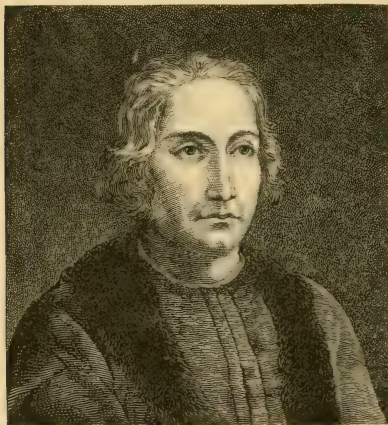
THE INCREASE OF GEOGRAPHICAL KNOWLEDGE.

Revival of Learning in Italy.—Italy was one of the first European countries in which learning revived. Its commercial cities did much to increase the knowledge of geography. The

seamen of Genoa and Venice were among the most skillful of that time, and their vessels could be found in all the principal Mediterranean seaports.

Trade of Venice and Genoa.—The trade of Venice was principally with the sea-coast cities of southwestern Asia and northeastern Africa. The trade of Genoa was mostly with the countries around the Black Sea. At this time Constantinople was the capital of the Eastern Empire and was friendly with Genoa. In the middle of the fifteenth century the Turks

conquered and captured Constantinople, and took possession of the Bosphorus strait. They stopped the Genoese vessels from passing through this strait, so that Genoa had to give up her Black Sea trade, and many of her ships and sailors became idle. Many sought employment in other countries.



COLUMBUS.

First Appearance of Columbus.—One of these

Genoese sailors was Christoforo Colombo [crēs-to-fo-ro co-lom-bo], or Christopher Columbus, as he is known to us. Seeking for employment, the activity of the Portuguese navigators led him to visit Lisbon about the year 1474. Here he fell in with an old navigator, an Italian by birth, named Perestrello, whose daughter he married. The death of the father, soon after, left to this daughter little inheritance of property beyond the geographical papers and charts which were the fruit of the old navigator's study and experience. Consequently,

while this family tie brought to Columbus no wealth by which he could carry out his ambition, it increased his knowledge and made clear his ideas of the earth's roundness and size.

Popular Fear of the Unknown Ocean.—We must remember that at this time nobody knew what was on the other side of the Atlantic. The

The Idea of a Round Earth.

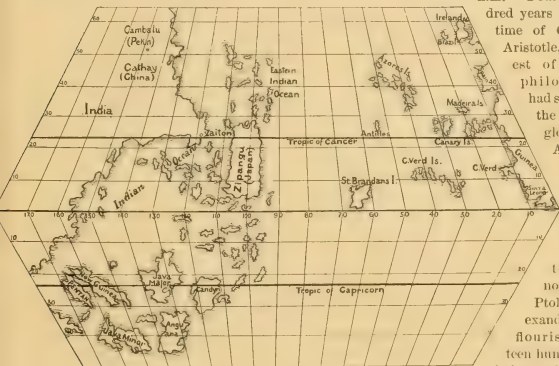
Columbus was a skillful seaman. He had sailed to many known regions of the world, and by his own observation had learned much of the earth's surface. But the idea of the earth as a round ball did not originate with him.

Fourteen hundred years before the time of Columbus, Aristotle, the greatest of Grecian philosophers, had shown that the earth is a globe. After Aristotle, among a multitude of learned men who adopted the same notion, was Ptolemy of Alexandria, who flourished thirteen hundred years before Columbus.

It stands to the credit of Columbus's

genius and industry that he acquainted himself by patient study with the wisdom of ancient as well as of modern geographers. This knowledge, combined with his own experience, led him to believe that the earth is round.

He was further confirmed in this belief by an interesting map given him by Toscanelli, a celebrated Italian geographer. This map shows that something was known in those days of the eastern coast of Asia, but nothing of America. Some of the islands shown bear familiar names, like the Antilles. The main theory of this map was true, and was therefore helpful to Columbus.



TOSCANELLI'S MAP (1474).

islands near the African coast, such as the Canary Islands, had come to be known, but no one dared to go out upon the ocean farther than these islands.

Wonderful geographical stories, with very little fact to rest upon, had been told a thousand years before the time of Columbus. One of these tales, which was put into writing about five hundred years before, described

certain islands discovered by an Irish monk, St. Brandan, who lived in the sixth century. These islands—one of which was said to be the back of a monstrous fish—were believed to be situated in a northwesterly direction from the Canary Islands. There were other equally exciting stories told of phantom islands which sometimes rose above the water and then suddenly vanished; and of a sea inhabited by gigantic and horrible water-animals that devoured sailors and even ships. Men who believed such stories had no heart for sailing westward on the unknown seas. Columbus, as it will now appear, was more courageous.

Questions.—What country was the first in which learning revived? What influences increased the knowledge of geography? How did the seamen help this increase? The trade of Venice was principally with what region? The trade of Genoa? What event put an end to this trade? Why? What happened to the ships and sailors of Genoa? What Genoese navigator went to Lisbon? Why? What new acquaintance and relation did he form? What idea became clear to him? What islands were known? Why were people afraid to sail far out upon the Atlantic? What stories were told? Who was not afraid?

FOR ADVANCED CLASSES.

Topics for Discussion.

- I. Commerce of Genoa and Venice. II. Ancient Notions of the Earth's Shape. III. Columbus's Idea of the Earth's Size and Shape. IV. Toscanelli's Map. V. Knowledge of the Atlantic in Columbus's Time.

References and Authorities.

Hallam's *Middle Ages*, vol. i.

Genoa and the Black Sea trade, 443. Venetian commerce, 453.

Draper's *Intellectual Development of Europe*.

Chap. xviii.—Fall of Constantinople, 402. Chap. xix.—Mediterranean and Black Sea trade, 441. Genoese and Venetian rivalries, 442. Early life of Columbus, 442-443.

Bancroft's *History of the United States*, vol. i.

Columbus taught by Aristotle and Toscanelli, 7-8. Decline of the Italian cities, 9.

Winsor's *Christopher Columbus*, chap. vi.

Columbus in Portugal, 103-108. Toscanelli's theory and letter to Columbus, 108-112. Sea of Darkness and fabulous islands, 111. Ancient notions of the earth's form, 118.

Parallel Readings.

INDEX GUIDE.—Consult cyclopedias, biographical dictionaries, etc., and compare information given in various school histories upon the following topics: *Genoa, Commerce of. Columbus at Lisbon. Toscanelli. St. Brandan's Isle.*

SPECIAL.—*Encyclopædia Britannica*, vol. x., 175-180, article upon Geography.

PREPARATORY GEOGRAPHY LESSON.

Upon maps showing the west coast of Europe and the west coast of Africa note the location of the following : Lisbon, Canary Islands, Palos, Barcelona, Bristol (England).

Upon a map of the West Indies note the position of the Bahama Islands. Going south from these islands, what large island is reached ? What island is east of it ? South ? What island east of Hayti ?

Upon a map of South America trace the northern coast from the Orinoco to the Isthmus of Panama.

Upon a map of North America note the position of Labrador ; of Newfoundland. What strait between the two ?

In what direction from Palos are the Canary Islands ? What point on the coast of the United States has the same latitude as these islands ? Draw a line connecting the two. Would a vessel sail north or south of this line in going from the Canary to the Bahama Islands ?

America Discovered.

CHAPTER III.

THE IDEA AND THE MAN.

The Struggles of Columbus.—The idea that the earth is round had now taken firm hold in the mind and heart of Columbus. Asia, he thought, could be reached by sailing westward, and he was ready to prove the correctness of his belief, even at the risk of his life. The first difficulty which met him was how to get the means necessary to fit out a vessel for the voyage. It was not an easy matter to secure contributions from those who had been religiously taught that the earth is flat.

Very naturally, Columbus sought help from his own city, Genoa; and when it refused him, he applied to the king of Portugal. This king was very wise, but he acted treacherously. Persuaded by the advice of evil councilors, he pretended not to believe that Columbus was right, and then he sent off secretly an expedi-



FERDINAND.

The Council of Salamanca.

There was a great college or seat of learning in the town of Salamanca. The council was in no way connected with this college. It was merely an informal meeting of men prominent for their learning, whom the king invited to come together and listen to Columbus.

Columbus told them he believed the earth to be round; that ships could sail to every part of the ocean; that there were lands about which people then knew nothing; and that Asia could be reached by sailing west across the Atlantic.

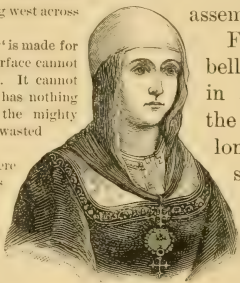
"The earth," he said, "is made for man. Too much of its surface cannot be taken up with water. It cannot be possible that the sun has nothing to shine on, and that the mighty watches of the stars are wasted upon trackless seas."

To prove that there were other lands, Columbus called their attention to several facts that were then generally known. West of the Azores Islands a curiously carved piece of timber had been found floating. The dead bodies of two strange-looking, dark-skinned men had been cast ashore. Large canes, vines, branches, and trees of unknown kinds were often found drifting near the shores of the Atlantic. From where did all these come?

The council could not agree with Columbus about the roundness of the earth. "If the earth were round," said they, "there would be an opposite side to ours, where people would live with heads down and feet up. Everything would be reversed. How can rain and snow fall up and trees grow down?" Thus they settled in their own minds that Columbus's belief was a very foolish one.

tion to carry out Columbus's plan of sailing across the Atlantic. This expedition, however, failed.

Columbus decided next to try his fortune with Ferdinand and Isabella, king and queen of Spain. With his little son beside him, he journeyed on foot from Lisbon to the place where the Spanish court was assembled.



ISABELLA.

Ferdinand and Isabella were then engaged in a costly war with the Moors, who had long established themselves in Spain.

Columbus waited seven years for the opportunity of laying his plans before the king and queen. He spent two of these years in the convent of La Rábida, near Palos. The prior of the convent proved a valuable friend. The war ended with the Spanish capture of Granada, and Columbus at last obtained a hearing at the Spanish court.

Columbus explained his idea very eloquently. A council of wise men was called to examine into his plans and determine whether or not they could be

carried out. The council decided against Columbus.

Perseverance and Triumph of Columbus.—Determined to try again, Columbus set out for France. He had not proceeded very far upon his way when a messenger overtook him and called him back to the Spanish court. His eloquence had made a deep impression upon the queen. She thought Columbus might possibly be right, after all ; and if he was, it would be a great opportunity to spread the religion of Christ to unknown regions, and to add new lands to the dominion of Spain. She made up her mind to help him.

Agreement between Columbus and Isabella.—The treasury of Spain after the long, expensive war was almost empty. Where was the money to fit out Columbus's vessels to come from? Isabella offered to pledge her jewels, but the money was obtained without her having to do so.

Columbus agreed to contribute one-eighth of the expense of sending out the expedition. He was to receive in return one-tenth of whatever pearls, precious stones, gold, spices, and other articles the expedition might secure. He was also to be admiral "in all lands and continents he might discover or acquire in the ocean," and viceroy of the same. If governors were needed, he was to have the privilege of naming the candidates from whom these governors would be selected.

The Prospect Brightens.—Thus after eighteen long years of poverty, misfortune, and disappointment he was at last about to succeed. He had been mistaken for a madman by the ignorant and had been abused by the superstitious, but his perseverance had won. At last his opportunity had come to prove the correctness of his ideas. His dreams were about to be realized.

Questions.—About what time did Columbus form the idea of the earth's roundness? Where was he then living? Why could not Columbus prove that his idea was correct? Whose help did he seek? To what evil advice did the Portuguese king listen? Where did Columbus next apply? How was much of the journey to Spain made? Why did Columbus have to wait seven years to gain a hearing? Where did he spend two years? Who were king and queen of Spain at this time? What council was called to examine into his plans? How did they decide? Where did Columbus next decide to go? Why did he not continue on to France? Why had Isabella decided to help Colum-

bus? Why did Isabella offer to pledge her jewels? What agreement was made between Isabella and Columbus? How long had Columbus waited for an opportunity to carry out his plans? What troubles had he passed through in this period?

FOR ADVANCED CLASSES.

Topics for Discussion.

I. Columbus in Portugal. II. Columbus in Spain. III. The Council of Salamanca.

References and Authorities.

Winsor's *Christopher Columbus*.

Columbus in Portugal, 103-108. Influence of Portuguese discoveries upon Columbus, 131. Columbus goes to Spain, 153. Council of Salamanca, 161.

Irving's *Life of Columbus*.

Book I.—Columbus negotiates with Portuguese Court, 63-67. Treachery of Portuguese king, 68. Book II.—Columbus at Court of Spain, 79. Council of Salamanca, 84. Terms of agreement between Columbus and Spanish Court, 114.

Bryant's *Popular History of the United States*.

Columbus asks aid of Portugal, 106. Waits eight years in Spain, 108. Council of Salamanca's decision, 108.

Parallel Readings.

INDEX GUIDE.—Examine comparatively what cyclopedias, biographical dictionaries, and various historical works have to say upon the following topics: *Columbus*, *Early Life of Ferdinand and Isabella*. *Salamanca, Council of*.

SPECIAL.—*Harper's Magazine*, Dec., 1881: How America was Discovered. Hallam's *Middle Ages*, vol. ii., 59: Spanish-Moorish war which deferred consideration of Columbus's proposition. Draper's *Intellectual Development of Europe*, 442: Description of the early life of Columbus.

CHAPTER IV.

THE STORY OF SAN SALVADOR.

Preparations for the Voyage.—Upon receiving his commission, Columbus went to Palos, a little port in the southwest of Spain, and began preparations for the voyage. Here dwelt a wealthy family of navigators named Pinzon, friends of Columbus, with whose assistance he was enabled to contribute that portion of the expense he had agreed upon. In return, they were to receive a share of the profits of the expedition.

Two small vessels, the *Pinta* [pĕn'tah] and the *Niña* [nĕn'-yah], were furnished by the government. With the funds supplied by the Pinzons, a third, the *Santa Maria* [san'tah mah-rĕ'ah], somewhat larger than the other two, was pro-

cured. The last named was made the flagship of the admiral. Martin Alonzo Pinzon took command of the Pinta, and his brother, Vincent Yanez, of the Niña.

The government provided for the employment of ninety sailors. At first it was with some difficulty that men could be persuaded to join the expedition. Everyone was interested in the preparations being made, but few cared to risk themselves upon a voyage which seemed so dangerous. Columbus, however, soon convinced them that he was going to succeed, and that all who went with him would win wealth and fame. By the time preparations were completed ninety sailors were secured, and thirty others joined for the purpose of adventure. By August 3, 1492, everything was ready for departure and the vessels set sail.

Incidents of the Voyage.

—When three days out, the rudder of the Pinta was lost. The ship was therefore headed for the Canary Islands, where, after a three weeks' stay at the one called Gomera, the damage was repaired. Here Columbus was informed that a Portuguese fleet was in those waters for the purpose of intercepting him. Fortunately it never came in sight, and on September 6th the voyage was resumed.

Day after day passed, filled sometimes with hope, sometimes with fear. Most of the sailors were superstitious ; some were inclined to be rebellious. When the sea happened to be calm, they were afraid that a region had been reached where winds never blow. When a steady breeze set in and wafted them swiftly along in the very direction they were to go, their complaint was, "How shall we ever sail back against it?"

Events Attending the Departure.

The day before the expedition sailed was spent in solemn and impressive religious ceremonies. Officers and men marched to the church, confessed their sins and offered up prayers, according to the custom of the Roman Catholic Church. The priests blessed the expedition, and early next morning the fleet set out to sea. Columbus took with him a letter from the sovereign of Spain to the Grand Khan of Tartary, a monarch whose realm had been visited and described by Marco Polo, and whom Columbus expected to visit before his return. Aboard the vessels it was announced that a prize, offered by the queen, awaited him who was first to see land not heretofore discovered. Thus did the greatest voyage in the world's history begin.

The further they proceeded, the more uneasy the sailors became. Columbus found it advisable to keep two reckonings of the distance daily traveled, a correct one for his own information, and an incorrect one showing a fewer number of miles than had actually been traveled, so that the men would think they were not so very far from Spain after all. Several times the sailors rebelled and wanted to turn back, but Columbus managed to persuade them to continue the voyage.

On the 7th of October a remarkable event happened. Martin Pinzon, from the deck of the *Pinta*, saw a flock of parrots flying toward the southwest. He concluded they must be flying to land. The heads of the vessels were also turned southwest. As they sailed onward, signs of land became numerous and unmistakable. A branch filled with berries went floating by, and birds that never fly far from shore alighted on the vessels.

Land in Sight.—At length the night of October 11th arrived. The vesper hymn which the crews sang every evening had ceased to sound over the waters. Columbus stood in the forepart of his ship, looking ahead into the dark. A little twinkling light in the distance suddenly attracted his attention. It was moving. He did not know it at the time, but the light was on land. Early next morning a gun sounded from the *Pinta*. Rodrigo de Triana [ro-drē'-go dā trē-ah'-nah], the sailor on watch, had summoned all hands; for there before them, dimly to be seen, was an unknown shore which had been approached in the night. A joyful shout went up, and all uncertainty was at an end.

Questions.—Where did Columbus go after receiving his commission? What friends had he there? What help did they give him? What were they to receive in return? What three vessels were fitted up? How was each obtained? Who was the commander of each? How many sailors were employed? How many men went with the expedition? How was this number finally procured? When was everything ready for the start? What accident befell the *Pinta*? Where was the damage repaired? What danger did Columbus escape? What fears did the men have? What did Columbus find it necessary to do on account of these fears? What was the remarkable event of October 7th? Why were the vessels turned towards the southwest? What signs of land soon began to appear? What happened the night of the 11th? The morning of the 12th? Who first saw land? What was now at an end?

FOR ADVANCED CLASSES.

Topics for Discussion.

First Voyage of Columbus to America.

References and Authorities.

Winsor's *Christopher Columbus*.

The Pinzons, 174. Terms of agreement, 181. First voyage, 178. Uncertainty of exact location of land first discovered, 216. Mistakes Cuba for Cathay, 224.

Irving's *Life of Christopher Columbus*.

Book II. — Preparations for the voyage, 119. Book III. — Departure, 125. Incidents of the voyage, 125. Terrors of the seamen, 132. Discovery of land, 145.

Winsor's *Narrative and Critical History of America*, vol. ii.

Columbus and his first voyage, 1 11.

Parallel Readings.

INDEX GUIDE for comparative examination of other works. — *Columbus, First Voyage of. Potos, Columbus's Departure from. Pinzon, Martin. Santa Maria, The. Triana, Rodrigo de. America, Discovery of, by Columbus.*

SPECIAL. — *Old South Leaflet*, No. 33: Letter of Columbus describing his first voyage. Read Joaquin Miller's inspiring poem, *Columbus*.

CHAPTER V.

THE NEWS BROUGHT BACK.

The land first seen proved to be one of the Bahama Islands. Columbus bestowed upon it the name of San Salvador (Holy Savior). In the light of early dawn the three vessels drew near and cast anchor. The intense interest with which the men examined the land before them may well be imagined.

Landing of Columbus.— The first landing of Columbus in the new world was made with great ceremony. Dressed in a rich uniform of scarlet, with the royal banner of Spain in his hand, the admiral in his own boat drew near the shore. He was joined by his captains,

Columbus's Landfall.

The island first seen by Columbus, and which received from him the name San Salvador, was known to the natives as Guanahani, or Cat Island. As Columbus failed to note its latitude and longitude, a question as to its exact location has arisen. Few now believe that the island known as San Salvador is the one upon which Columbus bestowed the name. Those who have studied the question carefully have arrived at different conclusions, a majority of which favor one of the three islands known as Grand Turk, Watling's, and Samana. The weight of authority, as recently summed up and expressed, inclines to Watling's Island.

each of whom held aloft the green-crossed banner of the enterprise. All were accompanied by retinues—the whole forming a most brilliant pageant as it approached the land. The first act of Columbus on landing was to kneel reverently, kiss the earth, and offer thanks to God. He then rose to his feet, drew his sword, and took formal possession in the name of



STATUE OF COLUMBUS AT GENOA.

the sovereigns of Spain. All present then took an oath to obey him.

Dark-skinned natives had gathered around and looked on with astonishment. To them the ships seemed as birds with white wings. They thought the visitors came from the sky. A few of the natives wore ornaments of gold, with which they readily parted; and when asked by signs where more of that

metal could be obtained, they pointed to the south. This led the Spaniards to further search, and erecting a large cross, they left the island and proceeded in the direction pointed out.

Further Exploration.—After exploring the island first discovered, Columbus hoisted his sails and turned southward. Before long, Cuba was sighted, and soon after Hayti, upon which the name of Hispaniola [Little Spain] was bestowed. The Spaniards landed from time to time along the coast to search and make inquiry for the gold and spices they hoped to find in abundance. At Hispaniola the Santa Maria was wrecked, and out of the wreck a fort was built named La Navidad. Leaving thirty-five men as a garrison, Columbus set out with the rest upon his return to Spain.

Celebration of Columbus's Return, March 13, 1493.—When the news of Columbus's safe return spread over Spain, great excitement prevailed. Public rejoicings and a general holiday were proclaimed. Columbus was now Spain's greatest admiral. The king and queen awaited him at Barcelona. The journey of Columbus to the Spanish court was quite different from the footsore and weary one made once before. Bells were now rung; cheers and praise were now showered upon him all along the route, and his progress was a series of triumphs.

In the presence of the assembled court Columbus received the hands of his sovereigns. The story of his adventures and of the new world beyond the seas was given in full. The curious objects he had brought back with him, among which were two natives of the new world, were examined with wonder. The islands that Columbus told about were thought to be among those lying off the southeast coast of Asia, or the Indies; hence the natives received the name Indians.

The Second Voyage and its Results.—Columbus was now provided with a large fleet and set sail upon a second voyage with fifteen hundred soldiers, missionaries, and adventurers. When Hispaniola was reached a sad discovery was made. The men left by Columbus on his first voyage had been massacred, and La Navidad destroyed. The fort was

rebuilt and strengthened, the settlement was renewed, and the hostile tribes of the island were subdued by the many new-comers. Columbus, continuing on his voyage, discovered a number of other islands, one of which was Jamaica (1493).

Third and Fourth Voyages.—A third voyage brought him to the mainland of the continent, near the mouth of the Orinoco River (1498); and a fourth and last, to the coast of Central America (1502).

Discovery of the Route to India.—It should be borne in mind that the main object of Columbus's voyages was not to discover a new continent, but to find a direct ocean passage to Asia. In this hope he was disappointed, and the honor he sought went to another. The first navigator to reach Asia by an ocean route was the Portu-

Last Days of Columbus.

The last days of Columbus were very sad. Many, jealous of his fame, tried to injure his reputation. False accusations were made against him at one time, and he was sent back to Spain in chains as a criminal. People became so indignant at this treatment, however, that his chains were quickly removed; but he never received the benefits to which he was entitled. His friend, Queen Isabella, having died, he was treated with more and more neglect; and at last, overcome by disappointment, the man who had given Spain a new world died (May 26, 1506) a victim of ingratitude. To the last he never knew that the region he had discovered was a new continent.

guese Vasco da Gama [vahs'co dah gah'mah], who in 1497 sailed from Lisbon around the Cape of Good Hope. After landing on the coast of India he returned with his ships laden with the costly goods of Asia.

Questions.—What did the land first seen prove to be? What name was given to it? Describe the landing of Columbus. What did the natives think of their white visitors? The coasts of what islands were explored? What inquiries were made? What name was bestowed upon Hayti? What followed upon reaching Hispaniola? How many did Columbus leave at Hispaniola? What fort was erected? Of what was this fort constructed? What effect had Columbus's return? What rank had he now? How was Columbus received by Ferdinand and Isabella? What islands did Columbus think he had visited? What name was bestowed upon their inhabitants? Tell what you know of Columbus's second voyage. By whom was he accompanied? What sad discovery was made upon reaching Hispaniola? What did the Spaniards do after their arrival? How many voyages did Columbus make? What did Columbus discover upon each of his voyages? In these voyages what was the main object

of Columbus? Who reaped the honor sought by Columbus? How did Gama reach India?

FOR ADVANCED CLASSES.

Topics for Discussion.

- I. Return of Columbus and Announcement of his Success. II. Further Voyages and Discoveries. III. Vasco da Gama.

References and Authorities.

Winsor's *Christopher Columbus*.

The return voyage, 218. Desertion of Pinzon, 226. Columbus arrives in Palos, 242. Received by the Spanish sovereigns, 245. Second voyage, 265. Subsequent ill-treatment of Columbus, 388. Pitiable death, 512. Vasco da Gama's discovery of a route to India, 333.

Winsor's *Narrative and Critical History of America*, vol. ii.

Death and character of Columbus, 23.

Irving's *Life of Columbus*, Book V.

Columbus's return voyage, 238. Reception, 260-271.

Parallel Readings.

INDEX GUIDE for comparative examination of various works and authorities.—*Cuba, Discovery of. Hayti, Discovery of. Santa Maria, Wreck of the. La Navidad, Fort. Columbus, Second Voyage of. Central America, Discovery of, by Columbus. Columbus, Last Days of. Da Gama, Vasco.*

SPECIAL.—*Epochs of American History*: Vol. i.—The race for India, 24. Da Gama's triumph, 25.

CHAPTER VI.

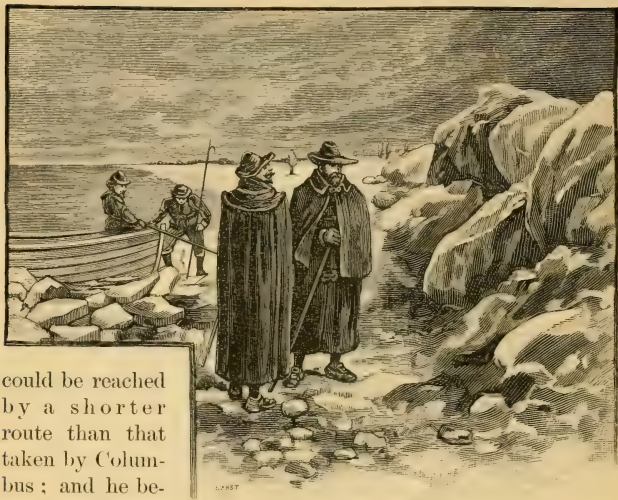
FIRST ON THE MAINLAND.

Voyage and Discovery by John Cabot.—The news that Columbus had found land on the other side of the Atlantic soon spread from Spain to other countries. About this time a Venetian sailor named John Cabot was living in Bristol, England. Upon learning of the discoveries of the Spanish admiral, Cabot began to devote much study to the shape of the earth. It seemed to him that this newly discovered region

Cabot's Expedition.

Cabot's expedition was fitted up at his own expense. The English king (Henry VII.) interested himself in the enterprise and granted a patent that gave many privileges. This patent was made out to John Cabot and his three sons, Lewis, Sebastian, and Santius, and by its terms they were authorized to take possession of all "isles, countries, regions, provinces, whatsoever they be," and hold the same in the king's name. Should any profits be made out of the adventure the king was to receive one-fifth.

Of that first voyage of Cabot there remains little record. Doubtless he found the shores bleak and barren, inhabited by a few savages, whose clothing was made of furs, whose weapons were bone-pointed pikes and darts, and whose occupations were hunting and fishing. Such a region could not be India. It was to him a "new-found land."



LANDING OF THE CABOTS.

could be reached by a shorter route than that taken by Columbus; and he believed this shorter route lay directly west

from England. An examination of a globe will show that he was correct; for the western continent, in the latitude of England, is much nearer the eastern than it is in the latitudes of Spain and the Canary Islands.

John Cabot, accompanied by his son Sebastian, set sail early in the summer of 1497, and after a short but stormy voyage sighted land (June 24). The name of *Prima Vista* was bestowed upon the land first seen, and it is believed to be a point at the extremity of what is now Cape Breton Island. Thus the mainland of the western continent was reached, the Cabots being the first Europeans to set foot upon its shore, as Columbus did not discover the coast of South America until some fourteen months afterwards.

Voyage of Sebastian Cabot.—A second voyage was made by Sebastian Cabot in May of the next year (1498). This

navigator at the time was only twenty-two years old, but he was already known for benevolence, courtesy, daring, and patience. With three hundred men he set out, bent on reaching India through whatever passage he might discover in the new-found land.

On arriving off the Labrador coast, he turned northward and entered a strange and unknown region. Everywhere the sea was filled with blocks of ice and icebergs. Monstrous animals of extraordinary appearance were often seen. Turning back, Cabot sailed south as far as the southern limits of what is now Maryland, and not finding the desired passage, returned to England.

Importance of these Discoveries.—The discoveries of the Cabots were very important. England's claims to a large part of North America were afterwards based upon these discoveries. These claims led to the English settlement of the Atlantic coast, and from these settlements grew this great English-speaking Republic of the United States.

Questions.—Who was John Cabot? Where did he live? What did he do upon learning of the discoveries of Columbus? What did he believe from his study of the globe? When did Cabot set sail? Who accompanied him?

Naming the New World.

Among those who came to America with Columbus upon his second voyage and who took an active part in the conquest of Hispaniola was Alonzo de Ojeda [o-hā'da]. Commanding in time an expedition of his own, he made explorations among the neighboring islands, and sailed along the shores of South America for hundreds of miles (1499). His pilot upon this occasion was a man of some intelligence, named Amerigo Vespucci [ah-mer-ē'go ves-poot'chē], or, Latinized, as was the custom in those days, Americus Vespucius. He, with keen observation, noted the features of the country, and afterwards, in a series of printed letters, gave an excellent description of the regions visited.



AMERICUS VESPUCCIUS.

These letters, being the first published description of the new world, were read with eagerness. People soon began to refer to the land beyond the Atlantic as the land of Americus. A German geographer, named Waldsee-

Muller, finally proposed the name of America for the new continent. It met with general acceptance, and soon began to appear in books and upon maps. This is the generally accepted theory concerning the name America. It is, however, stated that the natives found by early explorers about the southwest shores of the Caribbean Sea referred to their country as Amaraca; hence another theory gives the name as originating with the natives of the New World.

What kind of voyage did he have ? When and where did he first sight land ? How many months before Columbus did Cabot discover the mainland ? For what was Sebastian Cabot noted ? When was the second voyage made by him ? How old was he at the time ? What direction did he first take ? What direction did he next take ? How far south did he sail ? What claims were based upon Cabot's discoveries ? To what did these claims lead ?

FOR ADVANCED CLASSES.

Topics for Discussion.

I. The Cabots and Their Voyages. II. Americus Vesputius and the Name America.

References and Authorities.

Bancroft's *History of the United States*, vol. i.

Discovery of the mainland, 10.

Winsor's *Narrative and Critical History*.

Vol. iii.—Cabot's first voyage, 1. Sebastian Cabot, 2-3. Vol. ii.—Life and explorations of Vespucci, 129. Vespucci associated with Ojeda, 149. Naming America, 153.

Winsor's *Christopher Columbus*.

Cabot's landfall probably Cape Breton Island, 341. Voyage of Ojeda and Vesputius, 373.

Hildreth's *History of the United States*, vol. i.

Da Gama and Cabot contemporaneous discoverers, 36-37.

Bryant's *Popular History of the United States*, vol. i.

Naming America, 126. Uncertainty of exact location of Cabot's landfall, 129. Youthfulness of Sebastian Cabot, 130. King of England's patent to Cabot, 136.

Parallel Readings.

INDEX GUIDE for comparative examination of other works and authorities.—*Cabot, John. Cabot, Sebastian. Mainland, Discovery of. North America, English Claims to. Vesputius, Americus. Ojeda, Alonzo de. America, Origin of the Name.*

SPECIAL. — *Old South Leaflets*: No. 37, Early Notices of the Voyages of the Cabots. No. 34, Vespucci's Account of his First Voyage.

Review Work.

Why is the Mediterranean Sea historic ? What invention did much to lift the people out of ignorance ? Who was Marco Polo ? Sir John Mandeville ? Name two Portuguese discoverers. What do you know of Genoa and Venice ? What people of Asia crossed into Europe about the middle of the fifteenth century ? What three efforts did Columbus make to obtain assistance ? Why did Columbus move to Lisbon ? Who discovered Cape of Good Hope ? In what convent did Columbus live for two years ? How many days did it take for Columbus to go from Palos to San Salvador ? What is Hispaniola now called ? How many voyages did Columbus make ? Who was king of England at the time when the Cabots sailed ? Why did the discoveries of the Cabots prove very important ?

PREPARATORY GEOGRAPHY LESSON.

Upon a map of the West Indies note how near these islands are to Florida, Central America, Mexico, and South America.

Upon a map of Florida note the position of St. Augustine; Tampa Bay. Note that the coast of South Carolina is not very far north of the Florida coast.

Upon a map of Mexico note the coast line. Where is Vera Cruz ? In what direction from Vera Cruz is the City of Mexico ?

Upon a map of South and Central America note the narrowness of the Isthmus of Panama (Darien). In crossing this isthmus from the Caribbean Sea note how the Pacific Ocean would appear as extending southward, hence its early name of South Sea. Note how easily Peru may be reached from the isthmus.

Upon a map of the United States note the following rivers : Rio Grande, Colorado, and Gila ; Altamaha (Ga.), Coosa (Ala.), Mississippi, White (Ark.), Ouachita (La.), and Red (La.). Where is Mobile ? Santa Fé ?

First Comers from Four Nations.

CHAPTER VII.

THE SPANIARDS IN FLORIDA.

Ponce de Leon and his Discovery.—Among the many who came over with Columbus upon his second voyage was a stern old soldier, named Ponce de Leon [pon'sā dā lā'on], who aided very much in the conquest of Hispaniola, and was made governor of that island. Soon afterwards he was transferred to the smaller island of Porto Rico, but here his ambition prevented him from being long content. Moreover, he had heard of a wonderful fountain whose waters, when bathed in, made the old young again. This fountain was supposed to be on some unknown island to the northwest. De Leon fitted up three vessels and set sail in that direction, determined to find the fountain.

His search was of course unsuccessful; but during the progress of his voyage he sighted the mainland a little north of what is now Saint Augustine (1512). It was Easter Sunday, a day known to the Spaniards as Pascua Florida, so the name of the holy day was given to the land. Formal possession was taken, and for many years afterwards Florida belonged to the Spaniards. De Leon was appointed governor of the region he had discovered, but not long after his appointment he was mortally wounded in an encounter with the natives.

Spanish Attempts to Colonize.

Vasquez de Ayllon [vahn'kez dā il-yōn], a Spanish official of Hispaniola, hoping to win for himself the glory of making discoveries, sent a caravel (1520) to explore the coast north of where De Leon had landed. This caravel encountered in the vicinity of the Bahama Islands another caravel, which, unknown to De Ayllon, had been sent out to kidnap Indians for the Spanish mines and plantations of the West Indies. Both caravels proceeded in company to the coast of what is now South Carolina, where formal possession was taken for Spain (June 20, 1521).

De Ayllon soon afterwards obtained further permission to explore and form settlements. With three vessels and a large colony he sailed as far north as Chesapeake Bay. Near the spot where afterwards the English established the settlement of Jamestown, he began the settlement of San Miguel (1526). Sickmess and intensely cold weather were encountered by the colonists. De Ayllon himself died of fever (October 18, 1526), and shortly after his death the settlement was abandoned. Thus, by these explorations and attempts at colonization, Spanish claims to Florida were made to extend northward as far as what is now Maryland.

Attempt of De Narvaez to Conquer Florida.—

For some years after De Leon's death the Spaniards made no attempt to establish themselves in the region explored by him. At length Panphilo de Narvaez [pahn-fē'lo dā nar'vah-ez] determined upon its conquest. He landed for this purpose upon the west coast, near Tampa Bay, with three hundred men and eighty horses (April, 1528). The vessels were placed in charge of one Alvar Nuñez, better known as Cabeza de Vaca [kah-bā-zah dā vah-kah], with instructions to sail along the shores to the northwest. With his land forces De Narvaez marched into the interior.

The natives encountered by the Spaniards along the route were treated with great cruelty. After eight hundred miles of weary marching, the invaders

reached the coast exhausted. After they had embarked a storm arose, which wrecked the vessels. All the adventurers perished miserably, with the exception of De Vaca and three others, who made their way overland to Mexico.

Questions.—Who was among those who came with Columbus upon his second voyage? What island did he help to conquer? To what other island was he transferred from Hayti? What had he heard? What was the result of De Leon's explorations? How did Florida receive its name? What happened to De Leon? What did De Narvaez determine to conquer? Whom did he place in charge of his vessels? Where did he and the rest of his men march? How were the natives treated by De Narvaez? What happened to the expedition? Where did the survivors make their way? How?

FOR ADVANCED CLASSES.

Topics for Discussion.

- I. Ponce de Leon and the Discovery of Florida. II. Panphilo de Narvaez and his Attempted Conquest. III. Cabeza de Vaca and his Adventures. IV. Vasquez de Ayllon and his Attempted Colonization.

References and Authorities.

Bancroft's *History of the United States*, vol. i.

De Leon, fellow-voyager of Columbus, 22. Discovery and naming of Florida upon *Easter Sunday*, 23. Death of De Leon, 24. De Ayllon, a slave-seeker, 25. De Narvaez's expedition, 27-28. Character and adventures of De Vaca, 29-31.

Hildreth's *History of the United States*, vol. i.

Discovery of Florida upon *Palm Sunday*, 40. De Ayllon visits South Carolina coast, 40. Fate and survivors of the De Narvaez expedition, 44.

Winsor's *Narrative and Critical History*, vol. ii.

Origin of Fountain of Youth idea, 232. Discovery of Florida upon *Easter Sunday*, 232. De Leon authorized to colonize Bimini and Florida, 234. Circumstances of De Leon's death, 236. De Ayllon's motive not slave-hunting, 238. Ill-treatment of natives contrary to his instructions, 239. Attempts to colonize Chesapeake region, 246. De Narvaez defeated by Cortez, 367. Authorized to conquer Florida, 242. Account of expedition, 242-244.

Bryant's *Popular History of the United States*, vol. i.

De Leon's search, 146-148. De Ayllon's visit to Chicora, 149. De Vaca as survivor and historian of the De Narvaez expedition, 152.

Parallel Readings.

INDEX GUIDE for comparative examination of other works and authorities.—*Leon, Ponce de. Florida, Discovery of. Fountain of Youth, Search for. Narvaez, Panphilo de. Vaca, Cabeza de. Ayllon, Vasquez de. Chicora, Exploration of. San Miguel, Attempted Settlement of.*

SPECIAL.—*Old South Leaflet*, No. 33: De Vaca's account of his journey to New Mexico. Parkman: *Pioneers of France*, etc., vol. i., chap. i. *Harper's Magazine*, Oct., 1882: Spanish Discoveries.

CHAPTER VIII.

THE CONQUEST OF NEW SPAIN.

Spanish Notion of the West Indies.—For some time the Spaniards believed that the West Indies, southeast of North America, were the East Indies, southeast of Asia. So they went from island to island looking for gold, spices, and other products which formerly came to Europe across the Mediterranean from Asia.

Explorations of the Western Continent.—One of these seekers or explorers was Enciso [en-sē'so]. He landed upon the Isthmus of Panama about the time De Leon was ex-

Discovery and Exploration of the Pacific.

Nuñez de Balboa [noon-yez dā bal-boah] accompanied Enciso to the Isthmus of Panama, and going across the isthmus discovered the Pacific Ocean (1513). Eight years after, Magellan sailed into this ocean by way of the strait that now bears his name, and passed across to the shores of Asia. Here Magellan was killed, but his vessel continued by way of the Indian Ocean and Cape of Good Hope until it reached Spain. It had sailed completely around the world and proved the earth to be a sphere.

ploring Florida (1512). Another was Grijalva [grē-hal'vah], who reached the coast of Mexico (1518) two years before De Ayllon went to Chicora, now called South Carolina. The next year (1519) Pineda [pē-nā'dah] explored the northern shores of the Gulf of Mexico and discovered the mouth of a large river which is now believed to be the Mississippi.

The Aztecs and Cortez.—

Grijalva brought back with him an account of the Aztecs, a strange and almost civilized race of people living in the interior of Mexico. The Spaniards heard that these people lived in magnificent cities and were very wealthy. Velasquez [vā-lahs'kez], the governor of Cuba, decided to conquer the Aztecs, so that their riches would be his. He sent Hernando Cortez with an army of seven hundred men, who reached the coast of Mexico near what is now Vera Cruz (1520).

Conquest of Mexico by Cortez.—

Cortez was joined by the Tlascalans and other tribes of Indians who were enemies of the Aztecs. Making his way into the interior, he soon arrived at Tenochtitlan, where the City of Mexico now stands. The Aztecs had never before seen white men, and they looked upon the Spaniards at first with great fear, thinking them to be superior beings or gods.

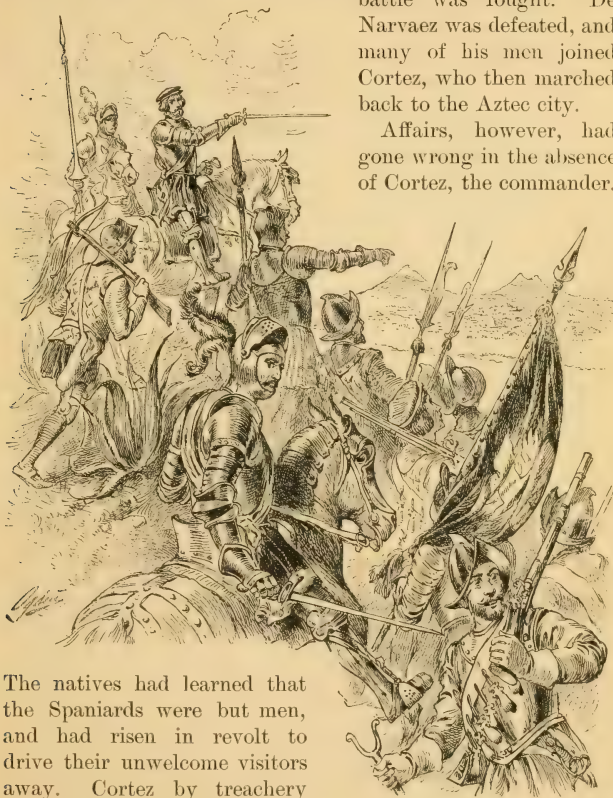
Meanwhile Velasquez had become jealous of Cortez, so he sent De Narvaez with a force to supersede him. This was the same De Narvaez who eight years after tried to conquer



MAGELLAN.

Florida. Cortez, returning to the coast with a portion of his army, refused to obey the orders sent by Velasquez, and a battle was fought. De Narvaez was defeated, and many of his men joined Cortez, who then marched back to the Aztec city.

Affairs, however, had gone wrong in the absence of Cortez, the commander.



CORTEZ IN MEXICO.

The natives had learned that the Spaniards were but men, and had risen in revolt to drive their unwelcome visitors away. Cortez by treachery took the Montezuma, or emperor, prisoner. The Aztecs at first did not dare to injure the Spaniards, for they feared that their own leader might be made to suffer.

Cortez compelled the unfortunate Montezuma to furnish large quantities of gold and supplies of food. Soon, however, Montezuma's people became very impatient and threatening, and the Spaniards thought it best to withdraw from

The Conquest of Peru.

A race similar to the Mexicans in intelligence and civilization lived in Peru. Their conquest was brought about by Francisco Pizarro [fransēs'co pē-zah'ro] (1531), a bold but ignorant man, who went there from Panama. He had a much smaller army than Cortez had, but met with less opposition. The Peruvian ruler was called the Inca, and Pizarro imprisoned him as Cortez had done the Mexican Montezuma. From both Mexico and Peru the conquerors obtained so much gold and silver that Spain became for a while one of the richest nations of Europe.

the city. A dark night was selected for the purpose. As quietly as possible the Spaniards marched out of the castle they had been occupying. But the natives were watching, and quickly assembled in thousands to cut off the retreat. A terrible night of conflict and slaughter followed, known in the annals of the expedition as *La Noche Triste* [lah no'chā trēs'tā].

By great courage and exertion Cortez and a part of his army made their way through the swarming natives, and escaped to the coast. Here reinforcements joined him, and returning he defeated the Aztecs. He took possession of all their wealth and destroyed much of their property; and because of this he is known in history as a great but cruel conqueror.

Questions.—What did the Spaniards think the West Indies to be? For what did the Spaniards seek? Who landed upon Panama? When? Who explored the coast of Mexico? When? What did Pineda explore? What river is he supposed to have discovered? What accounts were brought back by Grijalva? Which exploration was made first, Grijalva's or De Ayllon's? Who was Velasquez? What did he decide to do? Whom did he send to Mexico? When? Where did Cortez land? What natives assisted him? To what Aztec city did Cortez go? Why did the Aztecs not resist? Who was sent to supersede Cortez? Why? What did Cortez refuse to do? What did he then do? What did Cortez find upon returning to the Aztec capital? What had the natives learned? Whom did Cortez take prisoner? What did he compel Montezuma to do? What did the Spaniards think best to do? What is the night of their retreat called? Where did Cortez escape? What people joined him here? Why is Cortez known as a great and cruel conqueror?

FOR ADVANCED CLASSES.

Topics for Discussion.

- I. Spanish Exploration of the Gulf Coast Line. II. The Conquest of Mexico. III. Spanish Exploration and Conquests in the Pacific.

References and Authorities.

Bancroft's *History of the United States*, vol. i.

Grijalva's two voyages to the coast of Mexico, 24. Pineda discovers mouth of Mississippi, 25. Cabrillo traces Pacific coast line, 37.

Winsor's *Narrative and Critical History of America*, vol. ii.

Enciso, Pizarro, and Balboa associated in Caribbean Sea adventures, 193. Pacific discovered, 195. Grijalva explores, 203. Pineda proves Florida part of mainland, 237. Coast line from Rio Grande to St. John's rivers determined by De Leon's and Garay's expeditions, 238. Grijalva unrewarded, 348. Character of Cortez, 348. His relations with Velasquez, 351. His staunch lieutenants, 351. First adventures in Mexico, 351-356. Gains native allies, 356. Takes City of Mexico, 362. Defeats De Narvaez, 365-367. Completes conquest of Mexico, 367-396. Pizarro conqueror of Peru, 505. Magellan, 571.

Bryant's *Popular History of the United States*, vol. i.

Enciso and Balboa, 142-145.

Parallel Readings.

INDEX GUIDE for comparative examination of other works and authorities.—*Grijalva*. *Pineda*. *Cortez*. *Mexico*, *Conquest of*. *Enciso*. *Balboa*. *Pacific*, *Discovery of the*. *Pizarro*. *Peru*, *Conquest of*. *Magellan's Circumnavigation of the Earth*, *First*. *Cabrillo*.

SPECIAL.—Prescott: *Conquest of Mexico* and *Conquest of Peru*. Henty: *By Right of Conquest* (fiction). Wallace: *Fair God* (fiction). Drake: *Making of the Great West*. *Old South Leaflet*, No. 35: Cortez's account of the City of Mexico. Hubert Howe Bancroft: *History of the Pacific States*, vol. i., chaps. viii., ix., and xii.

CHAPTER IX.

THE QUEST FOR THE FABULOUS.

Where the Explorers Entered.—The Spaniards entered the territory of what is now the United States from two directions. One was from the southeast, and began with the discovery of Florida by Ponce de Leon; the other was from the southwest, after the conquest of New Spain, as Mexico was in those days called.

Glowing Reports and their Effect.—When Cabeza de Vaca and other survivors of the ill-fated De Narvaez expedition reached Mexico, they told some wonderful stories of what they had seen on their overland journey from Florida. They claimed to have seen new races of people richer than the natives of either Mexico or Peru, and living in cities grander than those

the Spaniards had already conquered. Of course, this was not true; but many believed these stories, among whom was Antonio de Mendoza, the viceroy of Mexico.

Coronado's Expedition and its Results.—Mendoza prepared an expedition to go in search of the rich regions described. Father Marco, a friar, was sent on before with presents, to make friends with the natives through whose territory the expedition was to pass. Under the leadership of Vasquez de Coronado [vahs'kez dā cor-o-nah'do], this expedition penetrated some distance into the interior (1540). It ended in disappointment, for the natives were few and very poor.

The Spaniards, however, gained much knowledge of the country around the Rio Grande [rē'o grahn'dā], Gila [hē'lah], and Colorado [kol-ō-rah'dō] rivers, and much new territory was added to Spanish possessions, making them extend into what is now the southwestern part of the United States.

De Soto and his Expedition.—Mendoza was not the only one who believed in the false reports made by Cabeza de Vaca. They were believed in far-off Spain by Hernando de Soto. De Soto had been one of the trustiest lieutenants of Pizarro in the successful conquest of Peru, and had returned to his native country to enjoy his riches. But when he heard that there were other races to conquer he decided to go again to

The Spaniards in the Southwest.

The Pacific coast was explored from Mexico northward as far as Cape Mendocino [mēn-dō-sē'no] by Cabrillo [kah-brēl'yo] (1542). In time, Spanish settlements and missions were established. Espejo [es-pā'ho] founded Santa Fé, the second oldest town in the United States, in 1582. Juan de Oñate [hwahn dā ōn-yah-tā] built a number of forts and took full possession for Spain (1595-1599).

the New World and win greater fame as a conqueror than either Cortez or Pizarro.

The expedition which De Soto took with him was fitted up at his own expense. It consisted of six hundred men, all of whom were chosen for strength and courage. The expedition landed near Tampa Bay, Florida (1539), and began a search for the wonders of which they had heard, and for which Coronado's expedition was seeking in the west.

Discovery of the Mississippi.—For almost three years this expedition wandered about in the territory now known as the southeastern part of the United States. Florida, Georgia, Alabama, Mississippi, Arkansas, and Louisiana were visited in succession. The Altamaha, Ogeechee, Coosa, Mississippi, White, and Ouachita rivers were discovered in the order named. De Soto's discovery of the Mississippi (1541) is one of the important events of American history.

The Fate of De Soto and his Men.—In time the Spaniards found themselves in Arkansas. It was here they began to realize that their expedition was a failure. They turned south to the Ouachita [wash'it-tah] River, down whose banks they proceeded to the marshes and bayous near its mouth. Here they made their way with difficulty, harassed by hostile natives and suffering from disease. Here also their leader, De Soto, was taken ill, and it was soon known that he could not live. While he was dying he called his followers

Spanish Cruelties.

The Spaniards were the most cruel of the several European peoples who had dealings with the Indians. De Soto and his men were among the most unmerciful of the Spaniards who came to America. As De Soto's expedition proceeded, the Indians became more and more unfriendly. Twice the Spaniards were fiercely attacked, once in Alabama near the Indian town of Mauvilla, where they lost sixteen men, and again in northwest Mississippi, where the powerful Chickasaw tribe made war upon them and killed forty in one battle.

about him, praised them for the faithfulness with which they had served him, gave them his last instructions, and appointed Luys de Moscoso [loo-ēs' dā mōs-kō-sō] his successor. De Soto was buried (1542) at the foot of a tree, but his followers, fearing that the Indians would disturb his body, sank it beneath the surface of the mighty river he had discovered.

Moscoso succeeded with great difficulty in building some small vessels, and in these the Spaniards drifted down the Mississippi, fighting their way against the Indians, who pursued them in canoes. Crossing the Gulf of Mexico, they arrived at a place of safety. Of the six hundred who set out upon the expedition, but three hundred and eleven returned after the three years of toil and hardship, to tell of their dangers and failures.

Questions.—From how many directions did Spanish explorers enter the territory of what is now the United States? What were they? What did the survivors of the De Narvaez expedition tell when they arrived in Mexico? Who was the viceroy of Mexico at the time? What did he do when he thought these reports were true? Why was Father Marco sent on before? Who was the leader of the expedition? When was it made? How did it end? What knowledge did the Spaniards gain? Who else believed the reports of De Vaca? Who was Hernando de Soto? Where did he decide to go again? Why? Of what did De Soto's expedition consist? Where did it land? When? How long did the Spaniards wander about? What States did they pass through? What rivers did they discover? What discovery made by them is very important? When was the Mississippi River discovered? In what State did the Spaniards find themselves? What did they here realize? In what direction did they now turn? What river did they descend? By whom were the Spaniards now harassed? What happened here to De Soto? What did De Soto do when he found himself dying? How many times was he buried? How did the survivors finally reach a place of safety? How many of the six hundred lived through the three years of hardships?

FOR ADVANCED CLASSES.

Topics for Discussion.

I. Spanish Exploration in the Southwest. II. De Soto and the Discovery of the Mississippi.

References and Authorities.

Bancroft's *History of the United States*, vol. i.

Rumors of the seven wonderful cities leading to Spanish exploration of New Mexico, 31. Coronado's expedition, 31-36. Influence of De Vaca's narrative upon De Soto, 38. De Soto's expedition and death, 39-49.

Winsor's *Narrative and Critical History of America*, vol. i.

Early exploration of New Mexico, 473. Friar Marco a forerunner of Coronado, 475. De Soto successor of De Ayllon and De Narvaez to Florida grant, 244. Account of De Soto's expedition, 245-252. Results unimportant, 253.

Bryant's *Popular History of the United States*, vol. i.

De Soto, 156. Spanish cruelties, 160. Discovery of the Mississippi, 165. Extreme limit of De Soto's exploration, 166. Subsequent fate of De Soto expedition, 168-171.

Parallel Readings.

INDEX GUIDE for comparative examination of other works and authorities.—*Mendoza, Antonio de. Marco, Father. Coronado, Vasquez de. Cibola, Seven Cities of. De Soto, Hernando de. Mississippi, Discovery of the. Moscoso, Luys de.*

SPECIAL.—Drake: *Making of the Great West. Old South Leaflet*, No. 20: Coronado's letter to Mendoza. Gayarré: *History of Louisiana*, vol. i., 14-21.

Review Work.

Why did Portuguese navigators explore the coast of Africa? Who were the Pinzons? What reward was Columbus to receive if successful in his discoveries? What part of the new world was called *Amaraca*? What was the name of the pilot of Ojeda's vessel? Why did England claim a part of America? Why is Easter Sunday famous in Spanish colonial history? Why did

De Ayllon visit what is now the coast of South Carolina? Name two Spanish conquerors who were successful. Name two who were unsuccessful. What two brothers had Sebastian Cabot? Who was Montezuma? How many times was De Soto buried? What was the fate of Magellan? Who is supposed to have discovered the mouth of the Mississippi River? When?

PREPARATORY GEOGRAPHY LESSON.

Upon a globe or a map of the world note the nearness of France to Newfoundland.

Upon a map of Canada and Nova Scotia note the St. Lawrence Gulf. Where is the Bay of Chaleurs? What large river empties into the St. Lawrence Gulf? This river is the outlet of what chain of lakes? Where is Montreal? Quebec? Kingston? From Montreal trace a journey up the Ottawa River and note how near an approach may be made to an arm of Lake Huron. What river forms the eastern boundary of Maine? What islands at its mouth? Where is Bay of Fundy? Annapolis?

Upon a map of the Middle States note how near the St. Lawrence River is to the State of New York. Where is Lake Champlain?

Upon a map of the Western States note the region about the great lakes. What State west of Lake Michigan? Where is the Fox River? Trace a journey up this river to where it approaches nearest the Wisconsin River.

Where does the Mississippi River rise? What falls near its headwaters? Note how near these falls are to Lake Superior.

Note the Illinois River. Trace a journey down this river to the Mississippi and on to the Gulf of Mexico. The mouths of what rivers are passed upon such a journey? Where is Memphis?

CHAPTER X.

NEW FRANCE AND ACADIE.

The First French Settlements.—Spain received much wealth from her conquests in America. Other nations would gladly have followed in her footsteps, had she not claimed all America for herself. Francis I, king of France, however, disregarded this claim and resolved to have a share in America's riches. "By what clause in Father Adam's will," he sarcastically asked, "does Spain claim all the new world?"

So Verrazano [ver-raht-tsay'nō], a Florentine navigator, was sent over by the king of France to explore (1524) the coast of what is now the United States. Long before the voyage of Verrazano, however, the waters about Newfoundland had be-

First Permanent French Settlement in America.

An honest, able, and patriotic Frenchman, named De Monts, was granted the privilege of trading with the Indians of New France. He arrived off the coast of what is now Nova Scotia, and entered the harbor of what is now Annapolis. The situation of this harbor so pleased Poutrincourt [poo-tran-koor'], one of the leaders of the expedition, that he obtained permission to establish himself near by. De Monts continued on and planted a settlement upon an island at the mouth of the St. Croix [sent kro-wah] River (1604). The winter was very severe. Next year the colony was transferred to the site selected by Poutrincourt, and this became the first permanent French settlement in America. It was called Port Royal (1605), and the neighboring territory was named Acadie [ah-kah-dē] or Acadia.

come known to the fishermen of the northwest coast of France, one of them, John Denys, having entered the Gulf of St. Lawrence in 1506. He drew a map of the region, and other French explorers followed him.

Jacques Cartier [zhahk car'-tyā] entered the gulf (1534) ten years after the voyage of Verazano, naming one of its bays Chaleurs [shah-ler]. The next year (1535) he ascended the St. Lawrence River to the Indian village of Hochelaga [hō-shel'-ah-gah], near the site of the present city of Montreal, and took formal possession of the territory, naming it New France.

Francis de la Roche [rōsh], lord of Roberval, was appointed viceroy of the territory, and Jacques Cartier was chosen as his captain-general. Cartier was sent first. He built a fort near the site of the present town of Quebec (1541). The colonists suffered much during the winter, and in the spring abandoned the settlement. Shortly after, Roberval arrived with reinforcements, but was too late to save the colony.

Champlain the Founder of Canada.—More than sixty years after Cartier's failure to colonize Canada, another attempt was made, this time by Samuel Champlain, a man of unusual energy and intelligence, who was sent over to New France, where he succeeded in founding the city of Quebec (1608). From this point he explored the country in several directions, entering at one time what is now the United



CHAMPLAIN.



CARTIER ON THE ST. LAWRENCE.

States, and discovering the lake that is now called Lake Champlain. Numbers of French immigrants arrived and other settlements were founded. Champlain directed the affairs of these settlements so wisely that he is called the "Father of New France."

Jesuit Missionaries and Explorers.—With the early French immigrants came the Jesuits, who were members of a religious brotherhood which has done much to spread the faith of the Catholic Church to

Champlain's Mistake.

Champlain made one serious mistake in his career of exploration. The Algonquin Indians of Canada and the Iroquois of central New York had long been enemies. The Iroquois was one of the strongest and most powerful tribes in America. Champlain sided with the Algonquins and thus made the Iroquois his enemies. The French, therefore, were never permitted to come southward from Canada to settle and explore in what is now New York. This is why so many French explorers went west and southwest from the St. Lawrence River, and why no part of the Atlantic coast of the United States ever came into the possession of France.

new and unexplored regions of the earth. These Jesuit missionaries went great distances into the interior, and thus some are known as great explorers. They often lived for years among the Indians, and won their friendship, thus making it easy for other French explorers to extend the boundaries of New France. So it was that France laid for herself in the new world the foundations of a mighty empire.

Questions.—What did Spain receive from her conquests? What did she claim for herself? What king ignored this claim? What did he sarcastically ask? Who was employed to make explorations for France? When? Where were his explorations made? What fishermen had already become familiar with American waters? Who was the first to enter the St. Lawrence Gulf? When? What bay did Cartier discover and name? When? What river did he ascend? When? To what point? What name was bestowed upon the region about the St. Lawrence? Who was appointed viceroy? Who, captain-general? What fort did Cartier build? When? What happened to this settlement in the spring? How long was it before another attempt to colonize was made? Who was Champlain? What exploration did he make? What city did he found? When? What is Champlain called? Who came with the early immigrants to Canada? What was laid for France by their labors?

FOR ADVANCED CLASSES.

Topics for Discussion.

I. Verrazano. II. Exploration and Settlement of Canada. III. First Permanent French Settlement in America. IV. Jesuit Missionaries and Explorers.

References and Authorities.

Bancroft's *History of the United States*, vol. i.

Breton fishermen and the Gulf of St. Lawrence, 14. Cartier's explorations, 15. Roberval and Cartier, and their rivalries, 17. Champlain and Quebec, 18, 21. Settlement of Port Royal, 19. Arrival of Jesuit priests, 20.

Winsor's *Narrative and Critical History of America*, vol. iv.

Verrazano and his memorable voyage, 5-9. Cartier, 47-62. Champlain, 101-130. De Monts and the settlement of Port Royal, 136-142.

Bryant's *Popular History of the United States*, vol. i.

Denys explores Gulf of St. Lawrence, 175. Voyage of Verrazano, 175. Enters New York Bay, 178. Cartier and Canada, 181. Explores St. Lawrence, 183. Reaches Hochelaga, 185. Roberval, 189.

Hildreth's *History of the United States*.

Vol. i.—Voyage of Verrazano, 42. Discoveries by French fishermen, 39. Cartier explores, 44. Roberval's colony, 46. Vol. ii.—Jesuits, 82.

Parallel Readings.

INDEX GUIDE for comparative examination of other works and authorities.—*Verrazano. Denys, John. St. Lawrence Gulf, Exploration of. Cartier, Jacques. St. Lawrence River, Discoveries of. Roberval, Lord. Champlain, Samuel. Quebec, Founding of. Jesuits, The. Port Royal, Settlement of. De Monts.*

SPECIAL.—*Old South Leaflet*, No. 17: Verrazano's Voyage. Parkman: *Pioneers of France in the New World*. Winsor: *From Cartier to Frontenac*.

CHAPTER XI.

LOUISIANA.

Pioneers of the Mississippi.—In the course of time a great trade in furs sprang up in Canada, and the French settlements about the St. Lawrence became very prosperous. Traveling fur-traders, or *coueurs de bois* [koo-rer deh bwah], as



LA SALLE TAKING FORMAL POSSESSION OF LOUISIANA.

they were called, made their way farther and farther westward. Lake Superior was discovered by Brulé in 1624. Nicollet [nē'co-lā] explored Wisconsin in 1634. Soon all the region about the great lakes was in possession of the French.

From the Indians of this western region the French learned

of a large river running in a direction almost opposite to that of the St. Lawrence. At first it was thought that such a river must flow into the great "South Sea" discovered by Balboa. French explorers soon went in search of it.

La Salle's Plans.

La Salle, "prince of explorers," as he is called, had spent several years with the Jesuits. He was very ambitious and talented. Coming to New France, he found many opportunities to show his ability. The thorough exploration of the great river, partially explored by Marquette and Joliet, was one of his many plans. Another was to build a chain of forts, extending from the St. Lawrence River along the great lakes and down the Mississippi to its mouth. This would strengthen the French power in America. It was necessary for France to do this, for by this time the English had established settlements up and down the Atlantic coast, and were pushing their claims westward.

La Salle went to France to obtain authority to carry out his purpose. The king readily granted it. La Salle was accompanied on his return by Chevalier de Tonty [ton'-tē], an experienced, one-armed soldier, who served his leader long and faithfully through many dangers. La Salle was confident that by sailing down the great river he could reach the South Sea and eventually China. To show his confidence, he named his home near Montreal La Chine [shēn]. The first of his proposed forts was built near the present town of Kingston, Canada, and was called Fort Frontenac [frōn-teh-nak'], in honor of Frontenac, who was then governor of New France.



LA SALLE.

Discovery of the Upper Mississippi. — Marquette [mar-ket'], a monk, and Joliet [zhō'lē-ā], a trader, succeeded in reaching it by going up the

Fox River from Lake Michigan until they came to a place where the Fox and Wisconsin rivers are

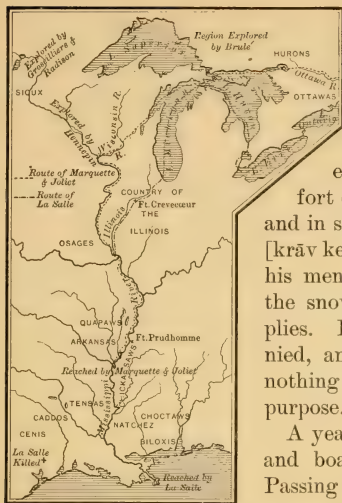
not far apart. Carrying their canoes over the little distance separating the two rivers, they drifted down the Wisconsin into the Mississippi (July, 1673), and down

the Mississippi as far as the mouth of the Arkansas.

Here they concluded that the Mississippi was the great river they had been in search of; so they returned to Canada and reported their discovery. They were soon followed by Robert Cavelier de La Salle [lah sahl'], who, however, made his way to

the Mississippi by a different route.

The Mouth of the River Explored. — La Salle reached the Mississippi by way of Lake Michigan and the Illinois River.



MAP SHOWING EARLY EXPLORATIONS
OF MISSISSIPPI VALLEY.

In the Illinois country he encountered difficulties and dangers. Iroquois messengers had incited the Indians against him, and his own men threatened his life. He erected a

fort on the Illinois River (1680), and in sadness called it Crève Cœur [krāv ker, broken heart]. Leaving his men here, he walked back over the snow to Quebec to secure supplies. In his absence the men mutinied, and destroyed his fort. But nothing could turn him from his purpose.

A year later he had men, supplies, and boats ready for the voyage. Passing down the Illinois River, he entered the Mississippi on the 6th of February, 1682. Short stops were

made at the mouths of the Missouri and Ohio rivers, but the first landing of importance was at Chickasaw Bluff, near what is now Memphis, where a log fort was erected and named Fort Prudhomme [pru-dom']. Here formal possession of the territory was taken for France.

La Salle then continued on his way down the river. After passing the mouth of the Red River the explorers encountered some hostile tribes, but they proceeded on their way. At last the mouth of the Mississippi

Hennepin's Exploration.

La Salle, while in the Illinois country, sent Father Hennepin [hen'eh-pin], Michel Accault [ak ko] and Anthony Auguelle to visit the head waters of the Mississippi (February, 1680). On this expedition they discovered and named the falls of St. Anthony, near which they were captured and held prisoners for some time by the warlike Dakota or Sioux Indians. They were finally liberated through the efforts of some traders, among whom was one named Du Luth. Neither these traders nor Father Hennepin was the first to reach the Minnesota country, as Groseilliers [gro-sā-yā] and Radison [rah-dē-song] had made their way to this region across lower Canada as early as 1659.

was reached. Here he erected a cross, April 9, 1682, and in the name of Louis XIV., King of France, he took possession of the river and its tributaries and all the land drained by them. In honor of his king he named the river St. Louis and the land Louisiana.

Questions.—What profitable trade sprang up in Canada? Who were *coureurs de bois*? Who discovered Lake Superior? What did Nicollet explore? Of what did the French learn from the Indians of the interior? Where was this river supposed to empty? Who went in search of it? Who was Marquette? Joliet? How did they reach the Mississippi? When? How far down this river did they make explorations? Why did they turn back? Who followed up their explorations? When did La Salle reach the Illinois country? Why did the Iroquois send messengers to the Illinois Indians? What did La Salle's men endeavor to do? What was the Illinois fort called? How did La Salle reach the Mississippi? When? In drifting down, where were short stops made? Where was the first landing of importance made by La Salle on the Mississippi? What fort was here erected? What was encountered below the mouth of the Red River? When did La Salle reach the mouth of the river? What name was bestowed upon the river? Upon the territory?

FOR ADVANCED CLASSES.

Topics for Discussion.

- I. French Exploration of the Upper Mississippi Valley. II. La Salle and what he did for France in the New World.

References and Authorities.

Bancroft's *History of the United States*, vol. ii.

The Jesuits and their missions, 138-139, 150, 153. Exploration of the upper Mississippi Valley, 153-159. La Salle and his adventures, 159-167. Takes possession of Louisiana, 168.

Winsor's *Narrative and Critical History*, vol. iv.

Brulé, 165. Nicollet, 166. Groseilliers and Radison, 168. Joliet and Marquette, 177-179. Du Luth, 181. La Salle, 182, 202-204. The Jesuits, 262.

Bryant's *Popular History of the United States*, vol. ii.

French pioneers, 500. French missions, 501. Marquette's voyage, 503. La Salle, 510. Hennepin's journey, 511. Mississippi Valley called Louisiana, 515.

Hildreth's *History of the United States*, vol. ii.

Lake Superior explored, 92. La Salle, 95. Hennepin, 97.

Parallel Readings.

INDEX GUIDE for comparative examination of other works and authorities.—*Marquette. Joliet. Brulé. Nicollet. Du Luth. La Salle. Hennepin. Mississippi, French Exploration of the. Louisiana, Early History of.*

SPECIAL.—*Old South Leaflet*, No. 46: Father Marquette at Chicago. Shea: *Exploration of the Mississippi Valley*. Winsor's *The Mississippi Basin*.

Review Work.

Why was the course of Columbus's vessel changed to the southwest? What was the Council of Salamanca? What conquest followed the discoveries of Espejo? Grijalva? Who first entered the St. Lawrence Gulf? Where was the Indian village of Hochelaga situated? Who was called the "Father of New France"? By what two routes did the early French explorers reach the Mississippi? Who was Du Luth? Who was the first circumnavigator of the globe? Who was the governor of Canada when La Salle set out to explore the Mississippi? Who founded Quebec?

PREPARATORY GEOGRAPHY LESSON.

Upon a map of the world note the position of the Western Continent. Between what two oceans does it lie? Which is the shorter distance: From England to Asia, around the northern part of North America, or the southern part of South America? Note that vessels sailing from England to the South Atlantic cross the tracks of vessels sailing between Spain and the West Indies.

Upon a map of North America note the coast line from Labrador northward. Note the inlets, bays, and sounds which indent the shore. Where is Davis Strait? Hudson Bay? Frobisher Sound? Where is the Hudson River?

CHAPTER XII.

THE NORTHWEST PASSAGE.

The Old Problem Revived.—The discoveries of Cabot, Balboa, and Magellan made it known that America was a new continent. The old question of a short route to India again arose. It was now England that wished to find such a route.

Attempt of the English to Solve the Problem.—If a passage could be found through the American continent, English ships could reach Asia without going the long distance around Cape Horn or Cape of Good Hope. A number of English seamen undertook to find such a passage. One of these, Martin Frobisher, sailed with a

Rise of England's Naval Power.

For almost a century after the discovery of America the vessels of Spain had been crossing to and from America undisturbed. English ships did not dare go where Spanish vessels might be met, for England was not then as powerful upon the ocean as Spain was. However, during the reign of Queen Elizabeth (1558-1603) a few of England's captains became very daring, and they proved that English ships and English men could hold their own with those of any other nation. From the beginning made in Elizabeth's time, England has become the greatest naval power of the world.

small fleet (1576) and explored much of the coast visited by the Cabots. The next year, with a larger fleet, he pushed on until blocked by ice. Eight years after (1585), John Davis entered the strait that now bears his name, but was compelled



IN SEARCH OF A NORTHWEST PASSAGE.

to turn back by the same ice that had prevented the passage of Frobisher. Both of these navigators believed that, were it not for this ice, they would have succeeded.

Attempt of the Dutch.—Another nation, the Dutch, also attempted to find a passage to India. No sooner had the way to the East Indies around Africa been made known by

the Portuguese than the ships of the enterprising little country of Holland followed this route to India by way of Cape of Good Hope. But this was a very long route and it was not always a safe one for Dutch vessels. So the Dutch East India Company, a company of merchants interested in the India trade, employed Henry Hudson, an Englishman, to visit the shores of North America (1609). He explored numerous inlets in the hope that one of them might prove to be the long-sought passage. Hudson entered the harbor now known as New York, and his vessel, the *Half Moon*, ascended the Hudson River for some distance. One year after this, Hudson entered the service of England and explored the strait and bay that bear his name. Here his crew rebelled, and he was forced into an open boat and sent adrift. He was never heard of more.

Questions.—What question again arose as soon as it was known that America was a new continent? What nation now desired a short route to India? Who undertook to discover a northwest passage? When did Frobenius make his voyage? What did he explore? When did Davis make his voyage? What strait did he discover? What other nation sought a northwest passage? What was the Dutch East India Company? What Englishman was employed by it? What harbor did he enter? What was the name of his vessel? What strait and bay did he explore while in the employ of England? What was his fate?



Sir Francis Drake.

Sir Francis Drake, called "the greatest seaman of his age," was one of few English captains who felt no fear of the great ships of war which guarded Spanish possessions in America. With five little vessels he sailed to the West Indies (1577) and made himself a terror to the Spaniards. Coasting along South America and passing through the Strait of Magellan, he boldly entered the Pacific Ocean, although Spain had forbidden the ships of all other nations to sail upon this ocean. Of his five vessels but one remained. In time he reached the coast of Oregon, which he called New Albion. Here he was treated kindly by the Indians, who crowned him king. From New Albion Drake crossed the Pacific and Indian Oceans, rounded Cape of Good Hope, and returned safely to England, his vessel being the second to sail around the world.

FOR ADVANCED CLASSES.

Topics for Discussion.

- I. English Explorations in America. II. Rise of England's Naval Power. III. Sir Francis Drake and the Second Circumnavigation of the Globe. IV. The Search for a Northwest Passage to India.

References and Authorities.

Bancroft's *History of the United States*, vol. i.

Search for the northwest passage, 62. Frobisher's three voyages, 63. Drake and Oregon, 66. Gilbert, 66. Amidas and Barlow, 69. Gosnold, 79. Pring and Weymouth, 81. Henry Hudson, 481-488.

Hildreth's *History of the United States*, vol. i.

Frobisher, 77. Gilbert, 78. Drake's voyage around the world, 79. Amidas and Barlow, 80. Gosnold and Pring, 90. Weymouth, 93. Voyages of Hudson, 97.

Winsor's *Narrative and Critical History*, vol. iii.

Hawkins and Drake, 59-73. Frobisher, 86. Davis, 89. Amidas and Barlow, 108. Henry Hudson employed by the Dutch, 103.

Bryant's *Popular History of the United States*, vol. i.

Early English voyages, 231-245. Hudson seeks northeast passage, 347. Then northwest passage, 348.

Parallel Readings.

INDEX GUIDE for comparative examination of other works and authorities.—*Drake, Sir Francis. New Albion, Discovery of. Frobisher, Martin. Davis, John. Hudson, Henry. Northwest Passage, Search for.*

SPECIAL.—*Harper's Magazine*, Jan., 1883: Old English Seamen. J. A. Froude: *English Seamen in the Sixteenth Century*. The student is advised to read Corbett's *Drake in the English Men of Action Series*, and Kingsley's novel, *Westward, Ho!* For an idea of dangers encountered by seekers of the northwest passage, consult the works and reports of Kane, Hall, De Long, Greely, Nordenskjöld, Peary, Nansen, and other latter-day explorers. For a fine conception of English heroism on sea in contest with the Spaniard, read Tennyson's poem, *The Revenge*.

Review Work.

What do you know of Columbus's last days? What great discoverer was a Venetian? What explorer was a Florentine? What did Cabrillo explore? Who succeeded De Soto in the command of the Spanish expedition? Name one survivor of the De Narvaez expedition. What two nations employed Henry Hudson? Who was called the "Prince of Explorers"? Name five French pioneers connected with the exploration of the Mississippi. Why was the French settlement of Port Royal, Nova Scotia, remarkable? What tribe of Indians were enemies of the French of Canada? Why did England seek a northwest passage? What explorer was crowned king? After whom was Louisiana named?

PREPARATORY GEOGRAPHY LESSON.

Upon a map of Mexico note the position of Yucatan. Where is the City of Mexico? What lake near it?

Upon a globe or map of the world note the nearness of northeast Asia and northwest America. What strait between the two? Note how comparatively near Japan is to Alaska. Note the Pacific islands between Asia and South America.

Upon a map of Europe note the distance of England from the Strait of Gibraltar. Where is Norway? Sweden? Denmark? In what direction is Iceland from Denmark? Note how near Iceland and Greenland are. Greenland and Labrador. Labrador and the New England coast.

Upon a chart of the ocean currents note the direction and position of the Japan current. Where does this current touch the American shores? What current flows from Africa to South America near the equator?

America of Old.

CHAPTER XIII.

ABORIGINAL RACES : SEMI-CIVILIZED.

The American or Red Race.—The original inhabitants of America are called Indians. Some scientists think there are five divisions of the human race, and that the Indian is one of the five. Others think there are only three principal divisions, and that the yellow races of Asia and the red races of America are but subdivisions of one of the three.

The white races now living are in large part civilized, but some are still barbarous. And so it was with the red race when the Europeans first came to America. Some of the Indians had made great progress; many were still in the savage state.

How the Aztecs have been Studied.—The Indians whom Cortez and Pizarro conquered were almost civilized. Much of the history of these Indians is unknown to us because a great part of their writings and inscriptions was destroyed by the conquerors.

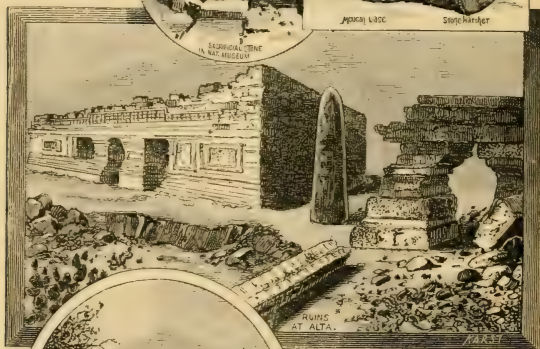
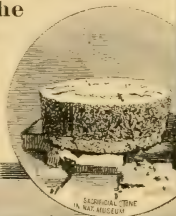
Origin of the Term Mexico.

In olden times, different tribes from the northwest made their way into what is now Mexico. It is supposed that the Mayas were among the first of these tribes. As other races followed, the Mayas were crowded into the peninsula of Yucatan, where the ruins of their large buildings and cities may now be found. These ruins are covered by great forests, which proves them to be very old.

Following the Mayas came the Toltecs, the Chichimecs, the Alcolhuas, and the seven Nahuatlécan tribes, one of which was the Aztecs. The favorite god of the Aztecs was Mextli, and in honor of this god they called themselves the Mexi, from which we get the present word Mexico.

There are men called archæologists who are able to tell much of the history, progress, and character of an ancient people by studying the ruins of houses, temples, and cities that still remain. These men have found out a great deal about the original inhabitants of Mexico.

Origin of the Aztecs. — The strange people whom Cortez conquered



REMAINS OF ANCIENT AMERICAN CIVILIZATION.

came from some region unknown to us, but called by them Aztlan. In 1325 they laid the foundation of their capital city, Tenochtitlan [ten-ōk-tēt-lan], near what is now the City of Mexico. They were a warlike race, always engaged in conquest and conflict.

Their city was built in a lake and was connected with the

mainland by drawbridges and causeways. These were so easily defended that within the city the Aztecs were secure from their enemies. The fish of the lake served as food. Fruit and vegetables were raised upon chinampas, or floating islands, which consisted of rafts covered with soil.

The government of the Aztecs was despotic. The Montezuma, or emperor, had supreme power over the lives of his subjects. Under him nobles, or caciques, ruled. Justice was well administered. The Aztec religion was idolatrous and cruel, as it permitted human sacrifice.

The language of the Aztecs was very abundant. This is one of the signs that they were civilized, for savage languages contain very few words. In writing they used signs, or hieroglyphs, and pictures. They wrote poetry, composed songs, and made a special study of oratory.

Aztec children were carefully educated. The father taught and advised his son; the mother, her daughter. Public schools gave three years' instruction in religious matters. Special schools were provided for boys and girls who were to become priests and priestesses.

In many arts the Aztecs were expert. They excelled as potters, stone-cutters, jewelers, and basket-makers. They polished the hardest stones. Many among them were skilled in woodworking, building, and weaving. In weaving their cloth they used feathers, rabbit skins, and cotton.

Industries and Commerce.—The farmers raised maize, cocoa, fruits, and other products. The agave was a very important plant to them. Its thorns were used as needles and its fibers as thread. Its juice when boiled could be made into honey-like sirup or sugar; when fermented, into their favorite intoxicating beverages of pulque and mescal.

Commercial Expeditions of the Aztecs.

Sometimes Aztec merchants would go from Tenochtitlan long distances into the surrounding country. Their goods would be carried on the backs of tlamenes, or porters, each of whom carried sixty pounds and went twelve miles a day. The richest of these merchants took armed escorts along for protection, and these would sometimes take possession of the region visited, and add it to the Montezuma's territory.

The Aztecs took special interest in commerce. They used grains of cocoa, squares of cloth, and quills filled with gold dust for money. One day in five, market places were thrown open, where traders and dealers from a distance came with goods to sell. No cheating or unfair dealing was permitted, for in a court near by were two judges ready to punish dishonesty.

Such was the people overcome by the Spaniards. Cortez would never have succeeded in the conquest of so powerful and intelligent a race had he not been assisted by many tribes who feared and hated the Aztecs, and were glad to see them destroyed.

Questions.—What are the original inhabitants of America called? Into how many divisions do some scientists think the human race is divided? What do others think? What difference was there in the several red races when the Europeans first came to America? What Indians were almost civilized? Why do we not know all about these races? Who are archæologists? From what region did the Aztecs come? When did they found Tenochtitlan? What kind of a race were they? What were chinampas? What was the government of the Aztecs? Religion? Language? What did they use in writing? How were Aztec children educated? In what arts did the Aztecs excel? What crops did farmers raise? Why was the agave a useful plant? In what did the Aztecs take special interest? How was unfair dealing prevented? Why did Cortez succeed in conquering so intelligent and powerful a people?

FOR ADVANCED CLASSES.

Topics for Discussion.

I. Original Inhabitants of Mexico. II. Aztec Civilization.

References and Authorities.

Foster's *Prehistoric Races*.

Civilizations in Mexico older than the Aztecs, 340. Origin of the Aztecs, 340. Toltecs and Chichimecs, 342-343.

Short's *North Americans of Antiquity*.

Origin of the Nahua nations, chap. vi.

Biart's *The Aztecs*.

Winsor's *Narrative and Critical History*, vol. i.

Migrations of Chichimecs, Colhuas, and Nahuas, chap. iii. Tradition of Votan, 133. The Toltecs, 139.

Parallel Readings.

INDEX GUIDE for comparative examination of cyclopedias and other works of reference.—*Aztecs, The. Mexico, Antiquities of.*

SPECIAL.—*Magazine of American History*, April, 1888: Conquest of the Mayas. Wallace: *The Fair God*. Prescott's Introduction to his *Conquest of Mexico* presents an excellent view of Aztec civilization.

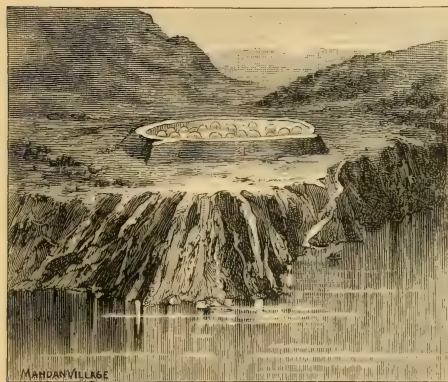
CHAPTER XIV.

ABORIGINAL RACES : SAVAGE.

Indian Character and Customs.—The Indians living in what is now the United States were quite different from those of Mexico.

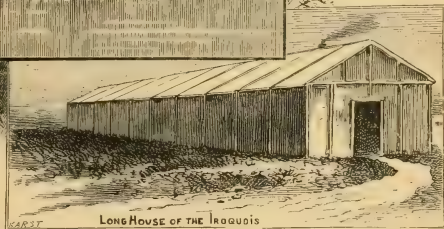
They were savage, lived a wild life, and moved about from one hunting place to another.

Much has been written of their life, habits, and cus-



toms.

As a rule they were brave, hospitable, and grateful, yet they were indolent, revengeful, and treacherous.



Indian Houses.—Their dwellings were wigwams generally covered with bark and skin. The Iroquois of New York, however, had well-built “long-houses.” The Mandans of Dakota had houses built with smooth, round roofs, and the Natchez of Mississippi and Pueblo Indians of Arizona built their houses of sun-dried brick.

The women, or squaws; of the tribe did most of the

necessary work. They tilled, planted, and harvested small fields of maize. They dressed skins and made them into garments and moccasins, which they often decorated with feathers and porcupine quills. They cured the meat of animals killed in the chase, and cooked the meals, which consisted of parched corn and broiled flesh. They sometimes boiled broth in closely woven baskets or rough clay pots, by means of hot stones dropped therein.

The men loved the chase, and seemed to have a desire to kill. They often went hunting, and delighted in war. Their weapons were very rude before the whites came and supplied them with better in exchange for furs. Bows and flint-tipped

Classification of Indian Races.

The Indians of North America were divided into numerous tribes, each with its own chief, villages, and hunting grounds. Indian tribes which

strongly resemble one another in language, manners, and customs are considered as belonging to the same Indian family. As up to a recent date this resemblance has only been partly known, many erroneous classifications of Indian races have been made. From long and careful investigation by the Smithsonian Institution, we now know that there were, when the whites first came to this country, fifty-eight distinct families. Some of these families were very large, included many tribes, and occupied large areas of territory. Others were so small as to include hardly more than a single tribe. Some of the larger Indian families were: The Eskimauan and Athapaskan of British America; the Algonquian, Iroquoian, and Muskogean east of the Mississippi; and the Siouan, Caddoan, and Shoshonean west of the Mississippi. The Algon-



INDIAN MEDICINE MAN.

quian family included all the tribes along the coast from Labrador to North Carolina and all the tribes between what is now Tennessee and the great lakes. The Wampanoags of Massachusetts, Pequots of Connecticut, Narragansets of Rhode Island, Powhatans of Virginia, Shawnees of

Kentucky and Indiana, Miamis of Ohio, and the Illinois, Sac, and Fox Indians of Illinois and Wisconsin all belonged to the Algonquian family. The Iroquoian family lived principally in New York and Canada, and were surrounded by tribes of the Algonquian family. The tribes in central New York, known as "the Five Nations," were Iroquois. The Muskogean, or Mobilian family inhabited the Southern States, and included such tribes as the Alibamu, Apalachi, Chicasa, Choctaw, Creek, Seminole, Yamasi, and others. West of the Mississippi, the Siouan tribes occupied the territory from Arkansas and the Indian Territory to Canada. The Caddoan territory lay south of that occupied by the Siouan tribes, including almost all of the present State of Texas. West of these two families lived the Shoshonean, whose territory extended to the Rocky Mountains. West of the Rockies were numerous smaller families. Of all the tribes and families mentioned, the Iroquois of New York and the Natchez of Mississippi were perhaps the most remarkable for superior intelligence and force of character.

arrows, clubs, stone-headed hatchets, and tomahawks were



INDIAN BURIAL.

used. In their wars they relied a great deal upon treachery and

cunning, and upon ambush and surprises. They were very cruel towards their prisoners, and sometimes tortured their captives or burned them at the stake.

Government.—In times of peace each tribe was governed by a wise man, or sachem. They obeyed the sachem because they respected his wisdom. In war they were led by a war chief. They followed him because they admired his bravery.

Indian Religion.

It is a great mistake to believe that the Indians worshiped a Great Manitou, or one God. They knew nothing of this worship until the whites came. Their religion was full of superstition. They believed in good spirits and evil spirits. The evil spirits received most of their worship, for according to the Indian's way of thinking, the good spirits would not injure him; the evil would, unless he satisfied them. This he tried to do by playing noisy instruments, by going through various kinds of dances, by offering sacrifices, and by making loud promises to them.

A very important man in the tribe was the priest, or medicine man. He conducted all religious ceremonies. He was thought to have power to call down rain, to heal the sick, to bring the tribe good 'luck, and to tell what was going to happen. To him a sick person was one in whom an evil spirit had come to live. He cured by making all kinds of hideous noises, so as to frighten the evil spirit away.

The Indian's pleasure in this life was plenty of good hunting. So heaven, in his understanding, was a happy hunting ground. When he died his favorite weapons and sometimes his dog were buried with him, because it was thought he would need them.

Some tribes buried their dead in a sitting posture within a mound of earth and stones. Others placed theirs upon a high platform far out on the prairie. Here food would be brought and left with the dead, in the belief that he, and not the birds, devoured it.

Both sachems and war chiefs were usually chosen by the members of the tribe.

The older and more experienced members of the tribe formed a council, which considered and regulated matters of importance. Smoking the calumet, or sacred pipe, was always an important ceremony when the council met. After the pipe had passed from lip to lip, those who had anything to say would make short but eloquent speeches, after which a decision would be reached.

Sometimes a number of tribes were allied for purposes of attack or defense against a common enemy. The Five Nations of the Iroquois in the north, and the Creeks of the south, were confederations of this kind.

Language.—The spoken language of the Indians was harsh and guttural. It had very few words. The Indians could not write, but sometimes they sent picture messages rudely drawn upon pieces of bark.

Passing Away.—The Indians, once so numerous, are rapidly disappearing. Very few wild tribes remain. They have been moved westward from the Atlantic to beyond the Mississippi. Only in the far West are they now found in sufficient numbers to give the whites trouble. The scattered tribes are now mostly gathered upon reservations set apart by the United States Government, and provided with schools and with the means of industrial improvement. Indian Territory has been set aside by the Government for the tribes which once lived east of the Mississippi River. Here may be found descendants of the Choctaws, Cherokees, Chickasaws, and other tribes, who have become partly civilized.

Questions.—What do you know of the Indians living in what is now the United States? What were some of the traits of character in the Indians? What were generally their dwellings? What Indians did not live in wigwams? What did the squaws do? What passions did the men seem to have? What weapons did they have? What did they rely upon in their wars? Who governed them in times of peace? Who led them in times of war? Who formed the council? What was an important ceremony? What kind of spoken language had the Indians? How did they sometimes send messages? To what region have the Indians been pushed? What territory has been set aside for them? Name some tribes that are becoming civilized.

FOR ADVANCED CLASSES.

Topics for Discussion.

I. Classification of the Indian Races. II. Tribal Organization. III. Character, Manners, and Customs. IV. Religion and Superstitions.

References and Authorities.

Smithsonian Institution.

Seventh Annual Report. Bureau of Ethnology, gives latest and most authoritative classification of the Indian Races.

Hildreth's *History of the United States*, vol. i.

Aboriginal inhabitants of North America: tribes, confederacies, languages, political systems, etc., 51-69.

Bancroft's *History of the United States*, vol. ii.

Language and manners of the Red Men, 101-108. Political and religious institutions, 109-124.

Parallel Readings.

INDEX GUIDE for comparative examination of other works and authorities.—*Indians, North American.*

SPECIAL.—Thwaites: *The Colonies*, 7-19. Fisher: *Colonial Era*, 5-12. Fiske: *Discovery of America*, vol. i., chap. i. Pickett: *History of Alabama*, chaps. ii.-v.

CHAPTER XV.

ANCIENT INHABITANTS OF AMERICA.

Whence Came the Indians?—How was America peopled? From where did the Indians originally come? These

are questions which interest many students, but which cannot be positively answered.

Asiatic Origin of Americans.

Some of the reasons given for believing that America received its first inhabitants from Asia are: First, the people on both sides of the Bering Strait look very much alike and seem to be of the same race; second, the red races of America are different from the yellow races of Asia, not because they are different kinds of people, but because difference in climate and difference in manner of living change the appearance of people after a long while; third, Japanese and Chinese junks have been wrecked and have drifted ashore upon the coast of British America within recent times; fourth, a learned scholar named Pickering, who had studied the language of the Peruvian Indians, found that it resembled very much the language of the Malays.

The Chinese is a very old nation, and Chinese writings have been translated which give an account of a visit to a country called Fu Sang, by a great traveler named Hwei Shin. This visit was made about the year 499, and from the description of Hwei Shin's journey, Fu Sang may have been Mexico or the southwestern part of the United States.

Some believe that America received its first inhabitants from Asia. There are three ways in which this could have been brought about. First, Asia and America are very close together at Bering Strait, and people could there cross easily. Second, the Japan current of the Pacific sweeps northward along the east coast of Asia and washes against the west shores of America. Boats and canoes could, therefore, have drifted by accident to America, and thus could make the country known. Third, the Malays of southeastern Asia were skilled sailors, and they have spread themselves over a number of islands in the Pacific. At one time or another

there might have been some adventurous enough to reach the shores of South America.

The Mound-builders.—Others believe that the Indian race originated in America. There is no way of proving positively either the American or the Asiatic theory to be the correct one. What has been proved, however, is that the Indians have lived in this country a very long time. It was once

believed that a race different from the Indians once lived here. This race is known as Mound-builders, because of their



INDIAN MOUNDS, DREW COUNTY, ARKANSAS.

peculiar custom of building mounds of earth.

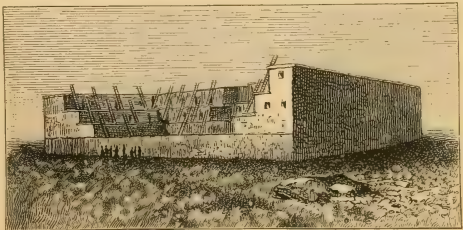
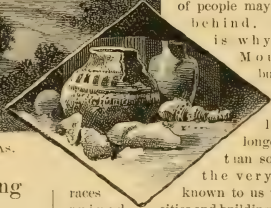
Latest Conclusions. — It is now known that the Indians living in this country when the Europeans came were descended from the Mound-builders, and were, therefore, of the same race. Many of the southern Indians built mounds after the whites came, just as the Mound-builders did thousands of years ago. So, although we do not know whether or not the Indians came from some other country, we know they were in America a very long time ago.

Indian Mounds.

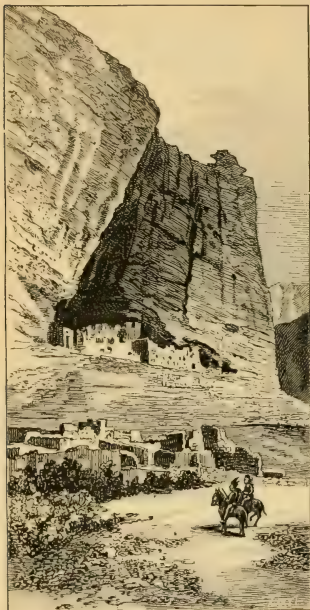
The Indian mounds found in America resemble hills of earth. Many of them, however, have the shape of birds, serpents, and various animals. Mounds of earth keep their shape much longer than buildings of stone and outlast anything else a race of people may leave behind. That

is why the Mound-builders may have lived longer ago than some of the very old

races known to us whose ruined cities and buildings have not yet wholly crumbled away. Some of the mounds are positively known to be very ancient, for on them are found growing trees which themselves are old. Many mounds have been dug into. Inside have been found all kinds of pottery, stone weapons, tools, and arrowheads, pipes, idols, and human bones. Of all the Indian tribes, the Natchez Indians are believed to have resembled most the ancient Mound-builders.



A PUEBLO.



CLIFF-DWELLINGS.

Pueblos and the Cliff-dwellers.—In the southwestern part of the United States are more wonderful remains than any the Mound-builders ever left behind. Here are to be found pueblos, which are large, semicircular houses, several stories in height, built of sun-dried brick. A whole Indian village often lived in one pueblo.

Buildings similar to pueblos are found at great heights, having been built in openings hollowed out in steep cliffs. The people who once inhabited these buildings are called Cliff-dwellers.

Questions.—What questions interest many students? What do some believe? In what three ways may America have received its first inhabitants from Asia? What are some of the reasons for believing this? What ancient Chinese traveler

is supposed to have visited America? When? What name was given to the country he visited? What do others believe in regard to the Indian race? What has been proved? What was once believed? Why were the ancient inhabitants of America called Mound-builders? What do Indian mounds resemble? Why do we know some of the Mound-builders lived very long ago? What are sometimes found inside of Indian mounds? What Indian tribe resembled most closely the ancient Mound-builders? What is now known about the relation of the Indians to the Mound-builders? What wonderful remains of ancient peoples are to be found in the southwest? What are cliff-dwellings?

FOR ADVANCED CLASSES.

Topics for Discussion.

- I. How America Came by its First Inhabitants.
- II. The Mound-builders and Their Remains.
- III. Pueblos and Cliff-dwellers.

References and Authorities.

Foster's *Prehistoric Races*.

Mounds and their distribution, 97, 171. The Mound-builders, 202. Mound-builders related to ancient Mexicans, 338.

Short's *North Americans of Antiquity*.

Ancient Pueblos and Cliff-dwellers, 275. Probabilities that America was peopled from the Old World, 498.

Winsor's *Narrative and Critical History*, vol. i.

Prehistoric archaeology of North America, 283.

Bryant's *Popular History of the United States*, vol. i.

The Mound-builders, 19. Fu Sang legend, 85.

Parallel Readings.

INDEX GUIDE for comparative examination of other works and authorities.—*Mound-builders*, *The Indian Mounds*, *Pueblos*. *Cliff-dwellers*, *The Fu Sang*, *Chinese Legend of*.

SPECIAL.—Fontaine : *How the World was Peopled*. *Century Magazine*, Dec., 1882, and Feb. and May, 1883 : The Zuñis. Mrs. Wallace : *Land of the Pueblos*. Vining : *An Inglorious Columbus*. Fiske : *Discovery of America*, vol. i., chap. i.

CHAPTER XVI.**PRE-COLUMBIAN DISCOVERIES OF AMERICA.**

The Phœnicians.—Did anyone before the time of Columbus ever visit and explore America? Let us see what answer can be made to this question. In ancient times a maritime people called the Phœnicians inhabited the southeast shores of the Mediterranean. It is known that Phœnician vessels passed in and out through the Strait of Gibraltar as long as three thousand years ago (1000 B.C.). Possibly the Phœnicians may have visited America.

Norse Discoverers.—The country around the North Sea was inhabited in ancient times by a people called the Norse, or Northmen. They were very

Ancient Phœnician Voyages.

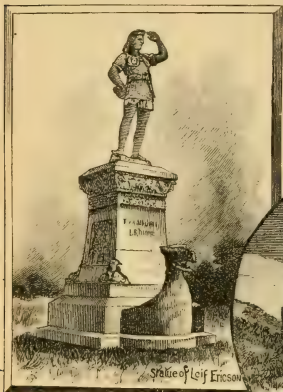
It was the custom of the Phœnicians to keep secret the places visited by their vessels, so that no other nation might learn where they obtained their wealth. We know, however, that their ships went as far north as Cornwall, England, for the tin to be found there; and quite a distance down the coast of Africa for ivory and gold.

Phœnician records tell of a land of Ophir, where gold and silver were very abundant. It is reasonable to believe that this may have been America. The first visit of the Phœnicians to America may have been accidental. In more recent times, Cabral, a Portuguese navigator, in trying to round the Cape of Good Hope was blown by a storm to the coast of Brazil (1500).

The Mayas of Yucatan had a tradition that a bearded white man came to their country from over the sea, and after teaching them many things went back again. They worship the memory of this visitor, regarding him as their god, Votan or Quetzal.

fond of war and adventure, and spent most of their time upon the water.

A chief, or ruler, of the Norsemen was called a viking. Norse



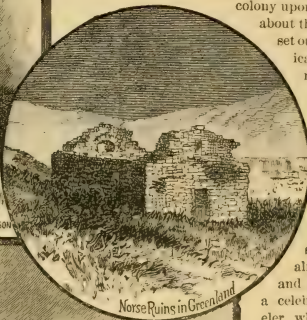
Irish, Welsh, and Basque Discoveries of America.

Some believe that the Norse vikings encouraged the ancient Irish and Welsh to make voyages. There is a tradition that Madoc, or Madog, a Welsh prince, after visiting this country embarked a large

colony upon ten vessels about the year 1170, set out for America, and was never more heard of.

Some of the Indians of North Carolina were found by the English settlers to be almost white ;

and Mr. Catlin, a celebrated traveler, who has lived a great deal with the Indians and studied their language and customs, asserts that the Mandan Indians of Dakota came originally from east of



the Mississippi, and that many of their words were Welsh in sound and meaning.

The language of the Indians along the Atlantic coast has been found to resemble very closely the language of a peculiar race of people who live on the slopes of the Pyrenees and are not French nor Spanish. These are the Basques, and as they are great fishermen and sailors, they, too, are supposed to have known about America before its discovery by Columbus.

bards, or poets, called scalds, often composed and sang verses which related the deeds and adventures of heroic vikings. These verses are called sagas, and from them we have learned incidentally that America was

known to the Norsemen long before the time of Columbus.

The Norsemen discovered Iceland in 860 ; then Greenland in

876 ; and in 986 they explored Labrador. Leif Ericson, last and greatest of Norse explorers, in the year 1000 reached a land south of Labrador. This land, supposed to be on the New England coast, he called Vinland ; and here was born Snorri, the first child of European parents known to have been born in America.

Credit Due Columbus.—An old stone tower at Newport, R. I., and a curiously marked rock found near Dighton, Mass., were long supposed to be relics of ancient Norse settlements in America. Nothing resulted from these old voyages of discovery. To Columbus is due the credit of discovering America, for he was the first to make known to civilized Europe the existence of land beyond the Atlantic.

Questions.—What ancient maritime people inhabited the southeast shores of the Mediterranean ? What is known about their vessels ? Who inhabited the country around the North Sea ? Of what were they fond ? What were their rulers called ? Their poets ? What is learned from their songs ? Who was Snorri ? Mention relics of Norse settlements. Who deserves the credit of discovering America ?

FOR ADVANCED CLASSES.

Topics for Discussion.

- I. Ancient Phœnician Voyages. II. The Northmen. III. Leif Ericson and Vinland. IV. Traditional Visits to America of the Welsh, Irish, and Basques.

References and Authorities.

Bryant's *Popular History of the United States*, vol. i.

Discovery of America by Madog, 66. Possible Phœnician discovery, 35. The Northmen, 36. Discovery of Greenland, 37. Voyage of Leif the Lucky, 40. Norse settlement of Vinland, 46-53. Birth of Snorri, 54.

Winsor's *Narrative and Critical History of America*, vol. i.

Ancient Phœnician voyages, 23. The Northmen in America, 60-69. Effect of Norse voyages upon the Welsh, 70. Possibility of Basque visitations to America, 74.

Fiske's *Discovery of America*, vol. i.

Ancient Irish voyages to Iceland, 149. Authenticity of Norse voyages, 151. Vinland, 165.

Parallel Readings.

INDEX GUIDE for comparative examination of other works and authorities.—*Phœnicians, The. Northmen, The. Ericson, Leif. America, Norse Discovery of. Vinland. Madog, Welsh Prince. America, Pre-Columbian Discoveries of.*

SPECIAL.—*Magazine of American History*, March, 1888 : Leif Ericson, by Mrs. Ole Bull. *Harper's Magazine*, Sept., 1882 : Visit of the Vikings. Longfellow : *The Skeleton in Armor* (poem). De Costa : *Pre-Columbian Discovery of America by the Northmen*.

Reference Outline for Review.

Showing Early Exploration of the United States by Nations
and in Chronological Order.

1498	Cabot.....	East Coast of United States.
1512	De Leon.....	Florida.
1519	Pineda.....	Florida and Louisiana.
1520	De Ayllon.....	South Carolina.
1524	Verrazano.....	East Coast of United States.
1528	De Narvaez.....	Florida.
1539	De Soto.....	Florida.
1540	Coronado.....	New Mexico.
1541	De Soto	Mississippi River.
1542	Cabrillo	California.
1579	Drake.....	Oregon.
1582	Espejo.....	New Mexico.
1583	Gilbert.....	Northeast Coast of United States.
1584	Amidas.....	Carolina.
1595	Onate.....	New Mexico.
1602	Gosnold.....	Massachusetts.
1603	Pring	New England.
1604	Weymouth . . .	Maine.
1609	Hudson	East Coast of United States.
1634	Nicollet	Wisconsin.
1659	Groseilliers.....	Minnesota.
1669	Joliet	Southeast Michigan.
1671	La Salle.....	Ohio River.
1673	Marquette.....	Mississippi River.
1681	La Salle.....	Mississippi River.
1686	La Salle.....	Texas.
1699	Iberville.....	Mississippi and Louisiana.

To TEACHERS.—These outlines are for reference purposes only. It is not intended that they shall be memorized.

English explorations in red; French in black; Spanish in blue.

Reference Outline for Review.

Exploration by Nations and Physical Subdivisions.

THE ATLANTIC COAST.

1498	Cabot.....	East Coast of United States.
1512	De Leon	Florida.
1520	De Ayllon.....	South Carolina.
1524	Verrazano.....	East Coast of United States.
1583	Humphrey Gilbert....	Northeast Coast of U. S.
1584	Amidas and Barlow...	Carolina.
1602	Gosnold.....	Massachusetts.
1603	Pring.....	New England.
1604	Weymouth.....	Maine.
1609	Hudson.....	East Coast of United States.

THE GULF COAST.

1519	Pineda.....	Florida and Louisiana.
1528	De Narvaez.....	Florida.
1539	De Soto.....	Florida.
1681	La Salle	Louisiana.
1686	La Salle.....	Texas.
1699	Iberville	Mississippi and Louisiana.

PACIFIC COAST AND WESTERN PLATEAU.

1540	Coronado.....	New Mexico and Arizona.
1542	Cabrillo	California.
1579	Drake.....	Oregon.
1582	Espejo	New Mexico.
1595	Onate	New Mexico and Texas.

THE MISSISSIPPI VALLEY.

1541	De Soto.....	Mississippi River.
1634	Nicollet	Wisconsin.
1659	Groseilliers and Radison..	Minnesota.
1669	Joliet	Southeast Michigan.
1671	La Salle.....	Ohio River.
1673	Marquette and Joliet.....	Mississippi River.
1681	La Salle.....	Mississippi River.

TOPICAL OUTLINE.

PERIOD OF DISCOVERY.	THE GREAT AWAKENING.	INCREASE OF GEOGRAPHICAL KNOWLEDGE.		Mediterranean commercial centers. Preëminence of Genoa and Venice. Water route to India desired. Polo's contribution to the Mandeville's world's knowledge. Invention of printing and its effect. Portuguese South Afric discoveries.	Revised of Learning.
		COLUMBUS.		THE IDEA. { Sun shines on lands unknown. The earth is round. Asia lies west as well as east. THE MAN. { An experienced seaman. Studious, persevering, courageous. HIS ACTION. { Patiently overcomes obstacles. Makes famous first voyage. Discovers land to the west.	America Discovered.
	FIRST COMERS FROM FOUR NATIONS.	NEWS BROUGHT BACK.		Columbus's last three voyages. The Cabots : First on the Mainland. Ojeda, Vespucci : America named. Balboa, Magellan : Oceans made known.	The Continents outlined.
		EXPLORE THE COAST.		De Leon, Grijalva, Pineda, De Ayllon. Verrazano, Frohisher, Davis, Hudson. Denys, Cartier, Cabrillo, Drake.	
		EXPLORE THE INTERIOR.		De Narvaez, Cortez, Espejo, De Soto. Champlain, Jesuits, Marquette. Joliet, La Salle, Dacan, Hennepin.	
		EXPLORERS' OBJECTS.		Wealth of the Indies. Quest for the fabulous. Northwest passage, Conquest.	

PREPARATORY GEOGRAPHY LESSON.

Upon a map of the Southern States note the coast line of Florida, South Carolina, and North Carolina. Where is St. Augustine? St. Mary's River? Port Royal? Note the distance from St. Augustine to mouth of St. Mary's River. Where is Roanoke Island? Ocracoke Inlet?

Upon a map of the New England States note the position of Cape Cod. Where is Martha's Vineyard? Elizabeth Islands? Kennebec River?

Upon a globe or a map of the world note the position of the Bermuda Islands. In what direction from these islands is Virginia?

Upon a map of Virginia and Maryland note the east coast. Where is Chesapeake Bay? What capes at its mouth? Where is the James River? The Chickahominy?

II. PERIOD OF COLONIZATION.

Attempted Settlements.

CHAPTER I.

FIRST SEEKERS FOR RELIGIOUS LIBERTY.

Division of the Church.—In the intellectual awakening which followed the invention of printing, the people of Europe gave much thought to the subject of religion. Religious writings were printed and widely distributed. The study and discussion of these writings caused some Christians to think differently from others. In time this difference of belief led to a division of the Church into two great branches, the Catholics and the Protestants.

First Colony of the Huguenots.—France suffered a great deal from religious dissensions between these two divisions of the Church. Here the Protestants were known as the Huguenots, and one of their great leaders was Admiral Coligny [cō-lēn-yē']. This nobleman conceived the plan of founding colonies for his people in America, and made three attempts to do so. The first colony was sent to South America under Durand de Villegagnon [doo-

The Growth of Religious Tolerance.

At the present day we never think of punishing anyone for having opinions different from ours, for we have come to be very tolerant of one another's beliefs. It has not always been so. A great deal of suffering was passed through before people came to understand what a blessed thing religious tolerance is.

For many years, and in many parts of Europe, Protestants and Catholics persecuted each other whenever they had the opportunity. When one was in power the other was made to suffer. Wars were frequent, and death and imprisonment were inflicted upon many on account of religious beliefs. It is not strange, then, that the people of Europe turned to America as a land in which they could be safe and free.

ron deh vĕl-gahn-yon] (1555), who built a fort near the Rio Janeiro River, and named it Coligny; but the expedition ended in a failure.

Second Colony.—Coligny's second colony, under the command of John Ribault [rĕ-bō], reached the coast of Florida (1562) near the mouth of a beautiful river, to which Ribault gave the name River of May, now called the St. John's River. Proceeding up the coast, the Huguenots landed near what is now Port Royal, S. C., where they built a fort, and called it Charlesfort, in honor of Charles IX., king of France. Leaving twenty-six men in charge, under Captain Albert [ahl-bare], Ribault returned to France for supplies. After Ribault's departure, Albert and his men became uneasy, and constructed a small brigantine, upon which they embarked for Europe. While at sea the horrors of starvation were endured until they were rescued by an English vessel.



Third Colony.—Coligny's third colony, under René Laudonnière [ren-nā lodon-yare] (1564), settled near the River of May, Florida, and built a fort, which was called Fort Caroline. Becoming discouraged, the French were about to abandon the colony, when Ribault arrived with six hundred additional colonists.

Menendez and St. Augustine.—News soon reached Spain of these trespasses upon Spanish territory, and Menendez, a cruel, bloodthirsty man, was sent with an army of 2,600 men to drive out the intruders. He determined to attack them by land, but before doing so built a fort and founded a town (1565) called St. Augustine, which is still in existence, and is, therefore, the oldest town within the present limits of the United States.

While the Spaniards were marching upon Fort Caroline, Ribault was sailing south to attack the Spanish fleet, having left 150 men to guard the fort.

The French Attacked.—By a strange act of carelessness there were no sentinels on duty to warn the French of the approach of the Spaniards. The fort was therefore surprised and easily taken. About twenty of the French escaped, and were afterwards picked up by the vessels left by Ribault. The rest were massacred.



OLD FORT ST. AUGUSTINE.

Ribault's fleet, proceeding southward along the coast, was wrecked in a storm, and his men barely escaped with their lives. Wearily they made their way by land towards Fort Caroline, only to find the Spaniards in possession of it.

In their hopes to escape, the French turned back into the wilderness and journeyed southward. They did not know that St. Augustine had been built and that this strong Spanish fort was directly in their path.

Massacre of the French.
—An advance party of 200 men soon found themselves near the fort. What were they to do? They could not remain in the forest and starve; surely it would be best to surrender and trust to the Spaniards for mercy. But Menendez, cruel man that he was, had no mercy to show them. The French, with hands tied behind, were led up to a line drawn in the sand and there were shot to death. When the rest of Ribault's men arrived the next day, they met a like fate.

Dominique de Gourgues.

No official step was taken by France to avenge the outrage committed by Menendez, but many gallant Frenchmen smarted under the injury done their countrymen. One, Dominique de Gourgues [goorg], took upon himself the task of punishing the Spaniards. Three vessels were fitted out by him, and with 180 men he landed in Florida. He was joined by a number of natives, who made common cause with him against the cruel Spaniards. Fort Caroline, with its garrison of 300 men, was captured. In the attack upon this fort the French sought to save from death as many Spaniards as possible, for De Gourgues had determined to treat the Spaniards as cruelly as they had treated the French. The captured Spaniards were hanged without mercy, and De Gourgues returned to France.

Questions.—To what did the people of Europe give much thought after the invention of printing? What were distributed? What did study and discussion cause? What nation suffered greatly from religious dissensions? French Protestants were known as what? Who was one of their greatest leaders? What plan did he conceive? How many attempts to colonize did he make? Under whom was the first colony sent out? When? Where? Under whom was Coligny's second colony sent out? What coast did it reach? What river was named? By what name is it now known? Where did the colony land? What did they call the fort? Who was left in command? What did Captain Albert and his men do after Ribault's departure? Under whose command was Coligny's third colony? Where was a fort built? What name was given to it? What prevented the abandonment of this settlement? Who was sent to drive the French from Florida? What was his character? How many men were in his army? What fort did he build? Why is St. Augustine famous? While the Spaniards were marching upon Fort Caroline, where did Ribault go with his fleet? How many men did he leave in the fort? Why was this garrison easily surprised? What misfortunes befell Ribault's vessels? Describe the wanderings of the shipwrecked French. Why did they turn back from Fort Caroline? What happened to them when they reached St. Augustine? What reasons were there for expecting no mercy at the hands of Menendez?

FOR ADVANCED CLASSES.

Topics for Discussion.

- I. The Huguenots. II. The Coligny Colonies. III. The Founding of St. Augustine. IV. Dominique de Gourgues.

References and Authorities.

Bancroft's *History of the United States*, vol. i.

Coligny's motive, 51. Character of Ribault, 51. First colony of Carolina, 52. Laudonnière's colony, 52-53. Spanish massacre of the French colonists, 55-58. De Gourgues' vengeance, 58-59.

Hildreth's *History of the United States*, vol. i.

The Huguenots, 71. Fort Caroline, 71. Second Huguenot colony, 72. Menendez and St. Augustine, 73. French colony destroyed, 74. De Gourgues, 75.

Winsor's *Narrative and Critical History*, vol. ii.

Campaign of Menendez against the French, 262-279. Dominique de Gourgues, 280-282.

Bryant's *Popular History of the United States*, vol. i.

Huguenot colony to South America, 189. Huguenot colonies to Carolina, 190-199. Expedition of Menendez, 205. St. Augustine, 213. Dominique de Gourgues, 214.

Parallel Readings.

INDEX GUIDE for comparative examination of other works and authorities. — *Tolerance, Religious. Huguenots, The. Ribault, John. Coligny, Gaspard de. Laudonnière, René de. Caroline, Fort. Menendez. St. Augustine, Founding of. Gourgues, Dominique de.*

SPECIAL.—Blackburn's *Admiral Coligny and the Rise of the Huguenots*, vol. ii., chap. iii.: The Admiral's Colonies. Fisher's *Colonial Era*, 21-22: Ribault, Laudonnière, and De Gourgues. Thwaites's *The Colonies*, 33: French attempt to colonize Florida. Carroll's *Historical Collections of South Carolina*, 23-24. Baird: *The Huguenots in America*, 21-79.

CHAPTER II.

RALEIGH'S FAILURES IN SOUTH VIRGINIA.

Delayed Occupancy.—England did not attempt to occupy the territory discovered and explored by the Cabots until near the end of the sixteenth century. Spanish power had been increasing all this time. The success of Menendez in driving the French Huguenots from Florida made the claims of Spain to the southeastern part of what is now the United States stronger than they were in the days of Ponce de Leon. It was fully time for England to form settlements in her American possessions.

Raleigh and the First Virginia Colony.—Sir Walter Raleigh, a favorite of Queen Elizabeth, undertook to carry out England's purpose to colonize America, and Philip Amidas and Arthur Barlow were sent to find a suitable location for a settlement (1584). These explorers arrived off the coast of Carolina near Ocracoke Inlet, and found the land "as goodly as sun e'er shone upon." The Indians were very friendly. The hospitable chief welcomed them to his land, and his father gave a great feast in honor of the white visitors.

Two natives accompanied Amidas and Barlow on the return voyage to England. The explorers gave a glowing account of the country visited. Such a beautiful country should be named for their queen. Elizabeth was called the Virgin Queen ; there-

Sir Humphrey Gilbert.

Sir Humphrey Gilbert, a good and wise knight, obtained from Queen Elizabeth of England a patent, or permission, to establish English colonies in America (1579). Gilbert, in his first attempt, sailed with two vessels. One was lost, the other returned after having gone but a short distance. Four years later (1583) Gilbert fitted up a much larger expedition. This consisted of five vessels, of which one deserted, another was abandoned, and a third was wrecked. The remaining two, the *Hind* and the *Squirrel*, after coasting along the Island of Newfoundland for some distance, turned back. One night a storm arose, and, unmindful of self, the gallant Gilbert sought in every way to inspire his men with courage. At one time in the night, as the two vessels drew near each other, he was heard to call out from the deck of the smaller one, "Cheer up ! cheer up ! We are as near heaven by sea as by land." About twelve o'clock his vessel went down, and he was never heard of more.

fore the name Virginia was bestowed upon that part of the coast of North America which England claimed.

Cruelty and Failure.—Raleigh found no difficulty in obtaining emigrants. A colony of 108 persons, under Ralph Lane as governor, was sent to Virginia (1585) in a fleet commanded by Sir Richard Grenville. The colonists landed on Roanoke Island. The neighboring Indians were not treated wisely or kindly. The whites at one time lost a silver cup, and to punish the Indians for stealing this cup a whole village was burned. At another time, the chief was treacherously

taken prisoner and put to death. By these cruelties the whites hoped to frighten the Indians into supplying the colony with food.

These acts, however, only provoked the Indians into hating the whites. The English were soon in great fear lest the natives should attack them. About this time Sir Francis Drake, in the course of one of his voyages, happened to land near by. Glad of the opportunity, the colonists embarked upon his vessels and sailed for England.

A New Attempt; Virginia Dare.—A few days after Drake's departure, Grenville arrived. Finding none of the settlers, he left fifteen men and returned to England. A new colony was now collected (1587). It consisted this time of men with families, who were willing to remain and make America their home.

When these new colonists arrived at Roanoke Island, they



SIR WALTER RALEIGH.



QUEEN ELIZABETH.



In vain, in vain, their heart-sick search.
No tidings reached them more,
No record save that silent word
Upon that silent shore.

—Margaret J. Preston.

found only the skeletons of the men Grenville had left. Shortly after the establishment of the colony, Virginia Dare was born, the first white child born in America of English parents. She was the granddaughter of John White, the governor of the colony.

A Lost Colony.—Before many weeks it was decided that White should go to England for supplies. If, in the meanwhile, the colonists moved to another location, the name of the new place was to be carved upon a post, with a crosspiece above it, that he might know where to find them when he returned. White, upon his arrival in England, became for a time interested in other matters. When, after two years, he again reached Roanoke, no colonists were to be found. Carved on the bark of a tree was the word CROATAN.

This was the name of a neighboring island, which was searched ; but no trace of the settlers was found to show that they were either alive or dead. Several expeditions were sent out from England to find them, but in vain. Their fate remains a mystery to this day. It is believed that they were mixed with an Indian tribe whose descendants are still living in North Carolina. With the failure of this colony, Raleigh, who had by this time expended more than forty thousand pounds in his American ventures, abandoned any further attempt at colonization.

Questions.—Until the end of what century did England not attempt to occupy her territory ? What success had strengthened Spanish power ? Who now undertook to carry out England's purpose to colonize America ? Who were sent to explore ? When ? What coast did they reach ? Where ? How was the land described ? How were they treated by the Indians ? Who gave a great feast to them ? Who accompanied the English upon their return ? What name was given to the country visited by Amidas and Barlow ? After whom ? Under whom was Raleigh's first colony sent out ? When ? Who commanded the fleet ? Where did the colonists land ? How did they treat the Indians ? Why and how did they punish the Indians ? Whom did they treacherously capture and put to death ? What did the whites hope to do by these cruelties ? What was the effect upon the Indians ? What was feared ? Who happened to land near by about this time ? What did the colonists now do ? Who arrived after the colonists had departed ? Who was left to hold possession ? Of what did the new colony consist ? Who was the governor ?

Who was Virginia Dare? Where did White go? How long did he stay? What did he find upon his return? Give an account of the lost colony. How much did his efforts to colonize America cost Sir Walter Raleigh?

FOR ADVANCED CLASSES.

Topics for Discussion.

I. Sir Humphrey Gilbert. II. Sir Walter Raleigh. III. First Attempted English Colonization of Virginia. IV. The Lost Colony.

References and Authorities.

Bancroft's *History of the United States*, vol. i.

Sir Humphrey Gilbert: His patent, 66. His relations with Raleigh, 67. His fate, 69. Raleigh's first colony, 71. Second colony, 75. Raleigh's fate, 79.

Hildreth's *History of the United States*, vol. i.

Gilbert, 78, 80. Colony of Roanoke, 81. The search for a lost colony, 87.

Winsor's *Narrative and Critical History*, vol. iii.

Raleigh's career, 105-107. His associations with Gilbert, 108. Preliminary exploration of Amidas and Barlow, 108-109. Naming Virginia, 110. Lane's colony, 111. White's colony, 113. Croatan, 115.

Bryant's *Popular History of the United States*, vol. i.

Gilbert, 232. His heroism, 239. Raleigh, 240. Amidas and Barlow, 241. The land named Virginia, 245. Raleigh's colonies, 246-253. Disappearance of White's colony, 254. Traces of the lost colony, 258.

Parallel Readings.

INDEX GUIDE for examining comparatively other works and authorities.—*Gilbert, Sir Humphrey. Raleigh, Sir Walter. Amidas and Barlow, Voyage of. Roanoke Island, Attempted Settlement of. Virginia, Origin of Name. Croatan. Grenville, Visit of, to Roanoke Island. Drake, Visit of, to Roanoke Island. Lost Colony, The. Dare, Virginia.*

SPECIAL.—Fisher's *Colonial Era*, 25: Gilbert and Raleigh. Thwaites's *The Colonies*, 40: Virginia Dare. Margaret J. Preston: *Croatan* (poem). Longfellow: *Sir Humphrey Gilbert* (poem).

CHAPTER III.

ENGLISH ATTEMPTS IN NORTHERN VIRGINIA.

Gosnold and Cape Cod.—The next attempt by England to colonize America was made by Captain Bartholomew Gosnold, who sailed (1602) in the ship *Concord* with thirty-two men, and after a passage of forty-nine days reached the coast of what is now Massachusetts. He was the first Englishman to set foot in that region. Sailing south, he found himself in a landlocked bay, and exploring further he discovered that its eastern shore terminated in a cape. He soon doubled this, and named it Cape Cod, from the abundance of codfish caught

Gosnold's Attempt to Colonize.

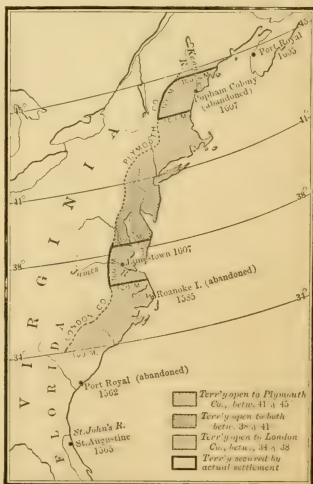
Continuing along the coast, Gosnold explored a number of islands, one of which he named Martha's Vineyard. He determined to form a settlement upon one of a chain of islands near the mainland, and in honor of the queen he called it Elizabeth—a name now applied to the whole chain. A fort and storehouse were built, and friendly relations established with the neighboring Indians, with whom a trade in furs, skins, and sassafras soon arose. The climate of the region was pleasant and the soil fertile; yet when the time came for the vessels to return to England, most of the men, for one reason or another, refused to stay, and the colony was abandoned.

by his men in the surrounding waters. A settlement which he attempted upon an island near the mainland was soon abandoned, and Gosnold returned to England.

Pring and Weymouth.—Gosnold took back reports as favorable as Amidas and Barlow had done. He was followed by Martin Pring (1603), who returned after a most successful voyage of six months. Next came George Weymouth, who made a number of landings on the New England coast, and

erected crosses to show that England claimed the territory (1604). After reaching the mouth of the Kennebec River, which the natives called the Sagadahoc, he kidnaped five Indians and returned to England.

Charter Grant of 1606.—Queen Elizabeth died in 1603. The long stretch of land from Nova Scotia to the St. John's River, which was called Virginia in her honor, was still unsettled. She was succeeded by King James I., who soon took up the question of planting colonies in America. In 1606 he issued a charter, granting land along the Virginia coast to two companies. To the "First



Colony," or the London Company, as it is usually called, he granted a tract of land fronting 100 miles on the Atlantic coast and extending 100 miles into the interior, to be located at such point as the company might select between the 34th and 41st parallels of north latitude. To the "Second Colony," or the Plymouth Company, he granted a similar tract of land, to be located between the 38th and 45th parallels of north latitude.

It will be seen that there was a belt of land between the 38th and 41st parallels, in which both companies had the right to locate, but the charter provided that neither company should settle within 100 miles of the other. The first on the ground, therefore, would have the choice of locations, and it was thought that this would stimulate both companies to active efforts.

The Plymouth Company's Failure.—The colony sent out by the Plymouth Company was called the Popham Colony, after Sir John Popham, one of the principal members of the company. George Popham and Raleigh Gilbert were the leaders of these colonists, and the ships *Mary* and *John and Gift of God* carried them over to the coast of what is now Maine. Skitwarres, one of Weymouth's kidnaped Indians, accompanied them.

They landed on an island at the mouth of the Kennebec River, and before winter set in erected a fort, storehouse, chapel, and fifty cabins. Although the winter proved unusually cold, the colonists suffered few hardships, as they were provided with abundant supplies. Notwithstanding this favorable beginning, however, they became discontented and homesick, and in the spring they abandoned the settlement.

These early attempts show what discouragements and dangers the first settlers in the New World had to overcome. Those who were to succeed in establishing the first permanent English settlement in America were to be men of great energy, perseverance, and courage. We shall soon learn who these men were.

Questions.—Who made the next attempt to colonize America? When? What was the name of the vessel? What coast did he reach? What cape did he name? Why? Who followed? When? Tell what you know about Weymouth's exploration. When did he sail? How did he take possession along

the coast? Where did he land? Whom did he kidnap? By what name was the whole east coast of the United States known? To what two companies was Virginia granted? Between what parallels was each grant? How far inland did the grants extend? What vessels brought Popham's colony over? Who returned with them? Where was a landing made? What was erected? How was the winter passed? Why was the colony abandoned? What did these early attempts at settlement show? What kind of men would those have to be who established the first permanent English settlement in America?

REFERENCE OUTLINE.

Attempted Settlements.

- 1541. Cartier in Canada (Quebec).
- 1562. Coligny in South Carolina (Port Royal).
- 1564. Coligny in Florida (River of May).
- 1585. Raleigh in North Carolina (Roanoke Island).
- 1602. Gosnold in Massachusetts (Elizabeth Island).
- 1606. Plymouth Company in Maine (Kennebec River).
- 1685. La Salle in Texas (Matagorda Bay).*

FOR ADVANCED CLASSES.

Topics for Discussion.

- I. Bartholomew Gosnold. II. Pring and Weymouth. III. The Popham Colony. IV. The London and Plymouth Companies. V. The Lesson taught by Early English Colonial Failures.

References and Authorities.

- Bancroft's *History of the United States*, vol. i.
- Voyage of Gosnold, 79. Pring and Weymouth, 81. Popham, 82. Gilbert and Popham's colony, 90. Its failure, 91. London and Plymouth (Western) Companies, 85.
- Hildreth's *History of the United States*, vol. i.
- Pring, 90. Weymouth, 93. The two Virginia companies, 94. North Virginia Company's failure, 150.
- Winsor's *Narrative and Critical History*, vol. iii.
- Gosnold's attempted settlement, 172. Pring, 173. Weymouth, 175.
- Bryant's *Popular History of the United States*, vol. i.
- Gosnold, 262. Pring, 266. Patent to the Virginia companies, 237. Popham Colony, 268.

Parallel Readings.

- INDEX GUIDE for comparative examination of other works and authorities.—*Gosnold, Bartholomew. Elizabeth Island. Attempted Settlement of. Pring, Martin. Weymouth, George. Popham, Sir John. Popham, George. Plymouth Company. Sagadahoc.*
- SPECIAL. Drake: *Making of New England*. Fisher's *Colonial Era*: Plymouth Company and Popham Colony, 82–83. Thwaites: *The Colonies*, 41.

Review Work.

What explorations did Verrazano make? Who discovered the St. Lawrence River? Which came first, the attempted settlement of Port Royal, S. C., or the settlement of Port Royal, Nova Scotia? Who was De Ayllon, and what coast did he visit? Who discovered Florida? Who founded Quebec? What right had England to claim the Atlantic coast of America?

* See chap. xvi., Second Period.

Virginia.

CHAPTER IV.

ENGLAND'S FIRST FOOTHOLD.

The First Permanent English Colony.—The London Company had already proceeded upon their colonial enterprise when the Plymouth Company made its unsuccessful attempt. Five months before the Popham Colony departed, 105 colonists, in the ships *Susan Constant*, *Good Speed*, and *Discovery*, under the command of Captain Christopher Newport, sailed down the Thames for South Virginia (December 19, 1606).

The Settlement of Jamestown.—After an unusually long voyage the vessels entered Chesapeake Bay. The capes at the entrance of the bay were named Charles and Henry, in honor of the king's sons. The colonists soon came to the mouth of a broad river, which they named the James, in honor of the king himself; and going about forty miles up the river they landed (May 17, 1607), and established the settlement of Jamestown, which proved to be the first permanent English settlement in America.

First English Church in America.—One of the first acts of the colonists was to provide a canvas-roofed structure in which the Rev. Robert Hunt, a "religious and courageous

First Colonial Government.

The Jamestown settlement was both a business venture and a civil colony. As a venture it was controlled by the London Company, which hoped to make profit out of the products and labors of the colonists. As a colony it was under the dominion of the English king, but instead of governing it himself, he gave the power to govern and to make rules and laws for the colony to two councils. One of these consisted of eleven members, who resided in England; the other consisted of seven members, who were to live in Virginia.

On the voyage across to America none of the colonists knew which seven among themselves were to be councilors. The names of those who had been selected were in a sealed box, and this box was not to be opened until the colonists reached America.

Many of the colonists were eager for the honor of being councilors. They became very jealous of one another over the matter. One man in particular they were almost certain would be one of the seven. This man was Captain John Smith. As a result of their jealousy he was accused of plotting against the interests of the king, and was arrested.

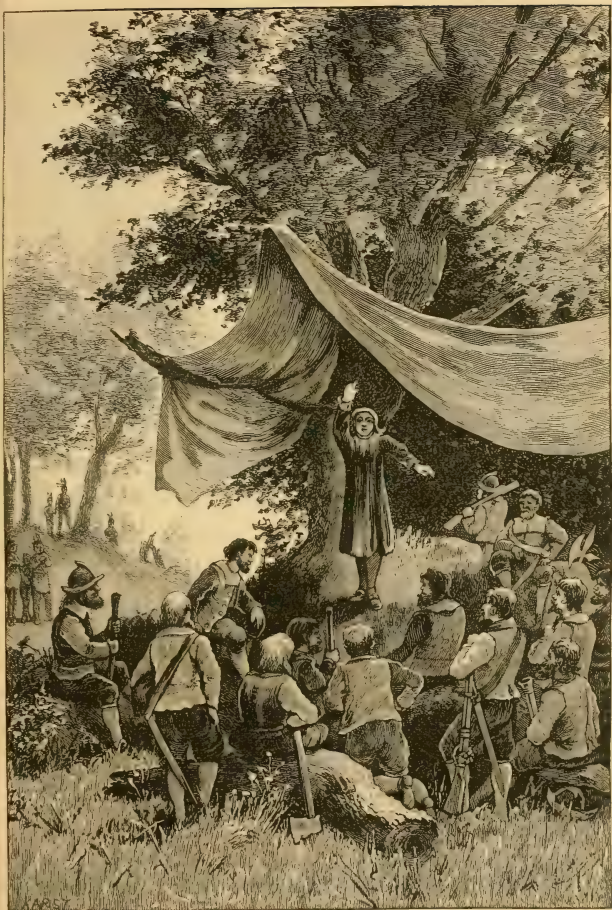
Upon opening the box, it was found that Bartholomew Gosnold, John Smith, Edward Wingfield, Christopher Newport, John Ratcliff, John Martin, and George Kendall had been appointed councilors; but Smith's arrest prevented him from serving. In the box, besides the names, were the instructions and laws for the government of the colony. Under these instructions each colonist was to have a share of what all owned together. All the food of the colonists was to be kept in a common storehouse, from which each would receive his allowance. If any crime should be committed, the criminal was to be tried by jury. If any lawsuits and disputes should arise, the council was to decide them. Edward Wingfield was chosen first president. This choice was very unfortunate, for he was indolent, selfish, and incompetent. The other members of the council were not much better, with the exception of Gosnold and Smith.

divine," held service morning and evening. This was the first English church within the present territorial limits of the United States, and was soon replaced by a plain log building.

The colonists at once went to work to make a home in the forest: some to clear a site for the future town; some to build a storehouse for supplies and log cabins for the men; others to set a palisade around the town for protection. Then Captain Newport, taking with him Captain John Smith, one of the ablest and bravest of the colonists, and a small party of men, set out on an exploring

trip up the James River. At the falls of this river, where the city of Richmond now stands, they found an Indian village, which was one of the residences of Powhatan, the most powerful chief of that region. After visiting Powhatan to secure his good will, they returned to Jamestown, and found that in their absence the settlement had been attacked by Indians. The Indians had been easily repulsed, but the fort was still unfinished; a second attack was expected, and in the emergency just passed Edward Wingfield, the president of the council, had shown himself incompetent and inefficient. The next day Newport sailed for England.

First Trial by Jury.—Captain John Smith was excluded from any part in the management of affairs because he had been accused of plotting against the king. He indignantly refused to accept the pardon which Wingfield offered him, and demanded trial by jury. Wingfield opposed this, but Smith insisted upon his right, and the council was compelled to yield. This was the first trial by jury in America. Smith was acquitted



THE FIRST ENGLISH CHURCH, JAMESTOWN, 1607.

and his accusers were compelled to pay a fine of one hundred pounds, which he generously donated to the public treasury. He could now take his place in the council, where he was so much needed.

Character of the Settlers.—Thus was begun the first permanent English settlement in America. Some historians describe the Jamestown settlers as vagabond adventurers, and as being disobedient and indolent. This is not true of all the first Virginia colonists. Some of them undoubtedly had noble motives in coming to America.

They were drawn from every walk of life. Forty-eight called themselves gentlemen—a term that has been quoted to their reproach. These gentlemen had never worked with their hands and were not fitted for the hard life in an American wilderness. But this is to their credit, for it shows they must have had great courage to brave the toils of pioneer life, knowing what these toils were, from the records of the several colonies that had already failed. We know that they were possessed of great spirit. Under incompetent officers their restlessness may have taken at times a form of disorder, but whenever they were wisely governed this disorder disappeared. Some did not possess all the qualities that make the perfect man, but a better element was in the majority; otherwise the colonists would have succumbed to the trials they were called upon to endure—trials which fell to the lot of no other colony.

Questions.—When was the first colony sent out by the London Company? How many did the colonists number? Upon what vessels did they embark? What was the name of the commander? What bay did the vessels enter? What names were given to the capes at its entrance? In honor of whom? To what river did they come? How far up did they land? When? What did this settlement in time prove? What was one of the first acts of the colonists? What different things did the colonists proceed at once to do? Whom did Newport and Smith visit? What city stands there to-day? What did they find on their return? Why was Smith excluded from the management? What did Smith demand? What was the result of Smith's trial? Why is this trial remarkable? How do some historians describe the Jamestown colonists? Is this true? Why were the "gentlemen" of the colony entitled to credit? What kind of rulers caused disorder in the colony? How do we know a better element was in the majority in the colony?

FOR ADVANCED CLASSES.

Topics for Discussion.

- I. The First Permanent English Settlement in America. II. Character of the Jamestown Settlers. III. First English Colonial Government.

References and Authorities.

Bancroft's *History of the United States*, vol. i.

London Company authorized to plant the first Colony of Virginia, 85. Provisions for the colony's government, 86. King frames code of laws, 87. Newport, 88. Description of first church, 89. London Company precedes Plymouth Company in sending colony to America, 89. Sufferings of Jamestown settlers, 91. Tribute to their steadfastness, 103.

Hildreth's *History of the United States*, vol. i.

First Virginia Colony, 99. Colonial government organized, 101.

Winsor's *Narrative and Critical History*, vol. iii.

Impracticable features of the first colonial government, 125. First Virginia Council, 128. Reverence and piety of Jamestown colonists, 129.

Bryant's *Popular History of the United States*, vol. i.

Form of government for the Jamestown colony, 267. Most notable persons in the colony, 269. Arrival of settlers and establishment of colony, 270.

Parallel Readings.

INDEX GUIDE for comparative examination of other works and authorities. *Newport, Capt. Christopher. Hunt, Rev. Robert. Jamestown, Founding of. Wingfield, Edward Maria. Charter, First Virginia. Council, First Colonial. Jury, First Trial by, in America.*

SPECIAL.—Cooke : *Stories of the Old Dominion. Harper's Magazine*, Nov., 1882 : Virginia in the Colonial Period. *Century Magazine*, Nov., 1882 : The Beginning of a Nation. Cooke's *Virginia : A History of the People*, Part I., chaps. iii. and iv. Fisher : *Colonial Era*, chap. iv. Thwaites : *The Colonies*, 66-71. Neill : *English Colonization of America*, chap. i. Lodge : *Short History of the English Colonies in America*, chap. i. If possible, examine some of the works of Captain John Smith, particularly his *True Relation*.

CHAPTER V.

THE FATHER OF VIRGINIA.

Sufferings of the Colonists.—The history of the Jamestown Colony, during the first months of its existence, tells of much suffering and misery. The site selected for the settlement was unhealthful. The colonists were attacked by malarial fevers, and many of them died, Gosnold being among the number.

Incompetent Officers.—To add to the gloom and discouragement which hung over the colony, it was found that much of the food brought from England had become spoiled, and a hostile attack by the Indians was expected at any time.

President Wingfield was detected in appropriating to his own selfish uses the best of the public stores. He was strongly suspected of an intention to seize the pinnace left by Newport and desert from the colony.

Captain John Smith.

Captain John Smith was one of the most remarkable men connected with the early history of the English colonies. Born at Willoughby, Lincolnshire, England, he entered early in life upon a career of adventure. He spent four years in the military service of Holland, and afterwards was engaged in the wars against the Turks. His adventures and escapes were many. At one time he was taken prisoner in battle and sold as a slave, but succeeded in escaping after slaying his master. Returning to England at a time when the colonization of America was occupying attention, he beheld in the New World opportunities to gain further experience. Smith did more to hold the Jamestown Colony together than any other man. His adventures and explorations in eastern Virginia would fill a volume. His interest in America continued long after he returned to England, and he issued a number of publications that did much to promote colonization; among these publications were: *A Map of Virginia*, with a Description of the Country; *A True Relation of Virginia*; *A General History of Virginia*, New England, and the Summer Isles, etc.



CAPTAIN JOHN SMITH.

Popular indignation was so aroused against him that he was superseded by Ratcliff, who proved equally incompetent.

One Trusted Leader.—

The good qualities of Smith showed themselves while the colonists were in the midst of their distress and sufferings. He nursed the sick, comforted the dying, encouraged the despondent, assisted everyone, and set an example of courage and

patience. He was soon looked up to with respect and affection. The direction of everything fell into his hands, and when autumn brought health, ripening corn, and game and fish in abundance, the colony had passed its first crisis, and Smith

had saved it by his courage, energy, and prudence.

Quarrel with the Indians.—As soon as corn began to ripen, Smith started down the river to obtain a supply. He found the Indians unwilling to trade. They seemed to take great delight in showing how much they had and in refusing to sell what they could easily have spared. During the nego-

tations for supplies a quarrel took place, and shortly after the visitors were attacked. In the engagement Smith captured an Indian idol, and the Indians, to get it back, gladly gave in exchange for it a boatload of corn. Upon arriving at Jamestown with the corn, he found that Wingfield, Kendall, and some others, taking advantage of the weakness of President Ratcliff, had seized the pinnace and were about to embark for England. Quickly Smith pointed the cannon of the fort at them, and compelled them to return.

Powhatan.—

Better times now set in, and Smith, leaving everything in order, set out to explore the Chickahominy River.

Upon this expedition he was captured by the Indians, and was taken first to Opecanough, then to Powhatan, who,

it is said, condemned him to death. Smith was bound hand and foot, was placed upon a rock, and the club of the executioner was raised, when Pocahontas, Powhatan's favorite daughter, threw herself upon Smith's neck and begged for his life. Her father yielded, and Smith was set free.

Smith elected President by the People.—When Smith returned he found the colony in a state of disorder. Food had become scarce again, and another conspiracy to abandon the colony had been formed. At this critical time Newport arrived with supplies from England.

Again leaving the colony in a prosperous condition, Smith, with fourteen companions, set out in an open boat to explore

Pocahontas.

Pocahontas proved herself a true friend of the struggling colonists. She often brought them corn and warned them of Indian attacks. She was at one time sold by a treacherous chief to a cruel colonist named Captain Argall. The Indians were about to go to war to rescue her, when John Rolfe, afterwards Secretary and Recorder-General of Virginia, requested her hand in marriage.

Powhatan gave his consent, and ever afterwards the old chief was the firm friend of the whites. Pocahontas was baptized under the name of Rebecca, and with her husband went to England, where she received every mark of attention and favor. She died there,

leaving a son, from whom are descended many eminent families of Virginia.



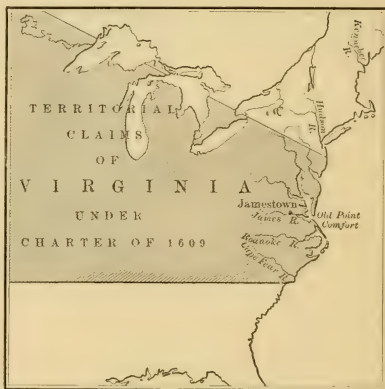
POCAHONTAS.

the shores of the Chesapeake. He sailed more than three thousand miles, explored both shores of the bay, visited many Indian villages, and passed through many dangers. Upon his return he found that the affairs of the colony had, as usual,

been mismanaged while he was absent. The colonists refused to submit any longer to Ratcliff and called upon Smith to be president, the first instance in our history where the people

The Charter of 1609.

The charter of 1606, it will be remembered, was issued to two colonies. The charter of 1609 was a separate one, issued to the first colony, or London Company, only. The first charter granted the company a tract of land one hundred miles square; the second charter granted it half the continent. The new grant extended from Point Comfort "all along the Sea Coast to the Northward, two hundred miles," and "all along the Sea Coast to the Southward, two hundred miles," and "up into the Land throughout from Sea to Sea, West and Northwest," and included all the islands within one hundred miles of the coast. The official name given to the company was "The Treasurer and Company of Adventurers and Planters of the City of London, for the first Colony in Virginia"; and it had power to govern colonies upon this tract of land, subject to the sovereignty of the king and to their rights as British subjects. The king guaranteed for himself and his successors that every subject who settled or was born within its limits should have the same "liberties, franchises and immunities" as those subjects born "within this our realm of England."



made choice of their own ruler.

A Vigorous Administration.—Now came order out of confusion. Smith took hold of

the government with a firm hand. Newport had brought reinforcements, and during the winter of 1608 and 1609, when the Indians refused to sell their corn, Smith made several daring expeditions against them, intimidating them by his boldness and compelling them to trade. His skill and energy were everywhere felt. Rules were established and enforced. Every-

one was compelled to work six hours a day. Additional cabins were built, and all caught the spirit of Smith's determination to establish the colony firmly.

A New Charter.—About this time a new charter for Virginia was granted by the king, under which Lord Delaware, a nobleman of much ability, was appointed governor for life. Nine ships sailed with 500 emigrants, under Captain Newport, Sir Thomas Gates, and Sir George Somers, who were to govern the colony until Lord Delaware arrived. A storm scattered the fleet, and the vessel which carried Newport, Gates, and Somers was wrecked upon one of the Bermuda Islands. The other vessels reached Jamestown in safety. In the absence of Newport, Gates, and Somers, Smith determined to retain control until one of them arrived.

Departure of John Smith.—At this time, however, Smith was injured by an accidental explosion of gunpowder and was compelled to go to England for medical treatment. He never returned to the colony whose interests he had served so faithfully, though several years afterwards he visited the North Virginia coast, and gave to that region the name which it now bears—New England. After his departure George Percy acted as governor.

Questions.—Of what does the history of Jamestown colony tell? By what were the colonists attacked? Who was among those who died? What added to the gloom and discouragement? In what was Wingfield detected? Of what was he suspected? By whom was he displaced? When did the good qualities of Smith shine forth? What did he do? What did autumn bring? Where did Smith go when corn ripened? What did he capture? How was it ransomed? What did Smith find upon his return to Jamestown? How were Wingfield and Kendall stopped? What did Smith do when better times set in? What happened to Smith upon this expedition? To whom was he brought when captured? Who interceded for him? What did Smith again find upon his return to Jamestown? Who arrived about this time? Upon what exploring expedition did Smith now set out? What did he accomplish in this exploration? What call was made upon him when he returned? Why is this call remarkable? How did Smith obtain corn? How did Smith now make his skill felt? What rule of labor was enforced? What was granted by the King of England about this time? Who was appointed governor? How many emigrants now set out from England? What was the fate of one of the vessels? Who were upon this vessel? What did Smith determine to do in the absence of a regu-

larly appointed governor? What accident befell Smith? What was he compelled to do? To what part of America did he afterwards make a voyage? What name did he bestow upon North Virginia?

FOR ADVANCED CLASSES.

Topics for Discussion.

- I. Life and Services of Captain John Smith. II. Powhatan and Pocahontas. III. The Second Virginia Charter.

References and Authorities.

Bancroft's *History of the United States*, vol. i.

Smith the only efficient member of the Jamestown government, 92. Smith, Powhatan, and Pocahontas, 93. Character of Smith, 96. Second Virginia charter, 99.

Hildreth's *History of the United States*, vol. i.

Smith's energy, 102, 107. Description of Powhatan, 102. Pocahontas, 104. Second Virginia charter, 108.

Winsor's *Narrative and Critical History*, vol. iii.

Smith's energy and services, 130. Second Virginia charter, 133.

Bryant's *Popular History of the United States*, vol. i.

Services of Smith to the colony, 278. Powhatan, 283, 286. Pocahontas, 285. Merits of Smith's administration, 289. The new charter of the Virginia Company, 291.

Parallel Readings.

INDEX GUIDE for comparative examination of other works and authorities.—*Smith, Captain John. Opocaneanough. Powhatan. Pocahontas. Charter, Second Virginia. New England, Origin of the Name.*

SPECIAL.—Charles Dudley Warner: *Captain John Smith*. Cooke's *Virginia*. Part I., chap. vii.; Pocahontas; chap. xii.: First American Ruler and Writer. Thwaites's *The Colonies*: Smith the savior of the colony, 71. Fisher's *Colonial Era*: Smith, 36-38; new charter, 39. Lodge's *History of the English Colonies*, Smith's services and character, 6.

CHAPTER VI.

PERMANENCY ASSURED.

Starving Time in Jamestown.—By Smith's return to England a strong hand was taken from the helm of government. His wisdom and ability were sadly missed, and colonial affairs, shortly after his departure, fell once more into confusion. Bad management and wastefulness brought on a period of so much destitution and suffering that it is always referred to in history as the "starving time." In six months the colony was reduced from 500 to sixty.

Virginia is Saved.—Gates, Somers, and Newport arrived from the Bermudas in small boats constructed from the wreck

of their vessel. The sight they beheld was a sad one. The food brought with them was sufficient to last only fourteen days. There was nothing to do but to abandon the colony where so much suffering had been experienced. With the few supplies now on hand they could make their way to the fishing settlements in Newfoundland, and from there to England. It was even proposed to burn the town and leave only smoking ruins behind, but to this Gates objected. The colonists all embarked and proceeded down the river. When half way to its mouth they were met by a small boat coming up stream, conveying the joyful news that Lord Delaware had arrived with abundant supplies. The colonists turned back, and it is said that when Lord Delaware entered the lately deserted town he fell on his knees and thanked God that Virginia had been saved.

Governor Delaware.—Delaware was a very able governor. Noble, dignified, and firm, he commanded respect and exacted obedience. All quarrels and disturbances were now over. Every morning the colonists assembled for prayer in the neatly kept, flower-decked church; then they repaired to the public storehouse for the day's allowance of food. Four hours of labor in the morning and two in the afternoon was the day's work allotted to each. The colony was soon upon the road to prosperity. Ill-health, however, compelled the governor to return to England and to remain there several years.

Homesteads Granted.—Sir Thomas Dale governed the colony first as high marshal, and in 1614 as deputy governor. He was a soldier and for a time enforced martial law, yet in 1615 he took the first decided step toward placing the colony on a permanent civil basis. He abandoned the old system of working the land in common, and gave to each man three acres of land for his own. Afterwards the number of acres was increased to fifty. This gave every man an incentive to work, because all that he made was his own.

The Culture of Tobacco.—The first colonists had wasted much time in looking for gold, but had found none. They had worked hard in hewing timber and staves, which were sold for little or nothing. Meanwhile tobacco, which they had grown

for their own use and sent to England as a curiosity, had become popular, and every ship that came out wanted more tobacco. The colonists, therefore, gave up their unprofitable ventures, and turned their attention to growing this plant. Its culture became so profitable that everyone planted it, and



SETTLERS CHOOSING WIVES.

at one time it was grown even in the streets of Jamestown itself. Deputy Governor Dale was compelled to limit the amount of tobacco which each man could plant, lest a famine should come upon the colony for want of corn. Tobacco soon came to be used as money, the prices of all articles being fixed at a certain number of pounds of tobacco.

Wives for the Colonists.

—Twelve years after its founding, Jamestown was a prosperous settlement, surrounded by well-cultivated plantations. The colonists owned lands and houses, and were rapidly acquiring wealth. But they were all men, and they could not be contented without the presence of wives. To remedy this defect, ninety excellent young women were sent over from England to become wives of the colonists. Each colonist securing a wife was required to pay her traveling expenses, which amounted to about one hundred and fifty pounds of tobacco.

It was a great day in Jamestown when the young women arrived. The settlers were promptly on hand to welcome them. The result was so happy that the young women who first came wrote back to England and induced sixty more to follow them the next year.

Causes of Permanency.—The giving of lands to each colonist, the development of the tobacco industry, and the establishment of homes assured the permanency of the colony.

Questions.—In what respect was Smith missed from the Virginia colony? What did bad management bring? To what number were the colonists reduced? Who arrived from the Bermudas? What was the only thing the colonists could now do? To what settlement did they hope to make their way? To what did Gates object? What caused the colonists to turn back? What kind of governor was Lord Delaware? What did he command and exact? What did all do every morning? What constituted a day's work? What was Delaware compelled to do? Why? Who became high marshal of Virginia? When? What kind of an officer was Dale? What step did he take

Introduction of African Slavery into Virginia.

As reports of Virginia's increased prosperity reached England, many wished to emigrate, but had not sufficient means to defray the expense of their passage. Many paid their way across the ocean by indenturing themselves to the Virginia planters. Indenturing means that the services of a person are given for a certain number of years in return for a sum of money. In 1619 a Dutch ship-captain landed twenty negroes from Africa, and offered them for sale. Slavery had existed in many parts of the world for thousands of years. Negro slavery had been introduced into the West India Islands by the Spaniards when the natives there were exterminated; yet this was the first introduction of slavery into the United States—and we shall see what evil consequences in time resulted. Here were servants indentured not for a few years, but for life. The first twenty were readily sold. They proved so docile and efficient that more were sought, and the adoption of African slavery became general.

toward insuring colonial permanency? What was assigned to each colonist? Why? What profitable agricultural product now came into general cultivation? What was the condition of Jamestown twelve years after its founding? What was needed by the settlers to make homes of their houses? Who were sent from England? What three things gave permanency to the colony?

FOR ADVANCED CLASSES.

Topics for Discussion.

- I. Trials and Discouragements of the Virginia Colonists. II. Lord Delaware. III. Establishment of Individual Land Tenure. IV. Beginning of Virginia's Agricultural Industries. V. The Introduction of African Slavery. VI. Factors assuring Permanency of the Jamestown Colony.

References and Authorities.

Bancroft's *History of the United States*, vol. i.

Lord Delaware, 100, 110. Allotment of lands, 107-108. History of slavery and the slave trade, 119-126.

Hildreth's *History of the United States*, vol. i.

Starving time, 110. Assignment of lands, 112. Corn and tobacco culture, 116. Women sent to the colony, 119. Negro slavery introduced, 119.

Winsor's *Narrative and Critical History*, vol. iii.

Tribute to Delaware's constancy, 136. Establishment of a fixed property in the soil, 141. General attention devoted to tobacco culture, 141. Introduction of slavery, 143. Prosperity and domestic felicity as elements of colonial content, 144.

Bryant's *Popular History of the United States*, vol. i.

Delaware's arrival in Virginia, 297. Culture and export of tobacco, 301. First slaves, 302. Young women sent and permanency assured, 306.

Parallel Readings.

INDEX GUIDE for comparative examination of other works and authorities.—*Starving Time*.

Delaware, Lord. *Dale*, Sir Thomas. *Gates*, Sir Thomas. *Yeadley*, Governor George. *Argall*, Captain Samuel. *Land*, Allotment of, to Virginia Colonists. *Slavery*, Introduction of. *Tobacco*, Culture of, in Virginia. *Wives*, Importation of, into Virginia.

SPECIAL. Cooke's *Virginia*, Part I., chap. xiv.: Lord Delaware; chap. xviii.: Dale, Argall, Yeadley, etc.; chap. xx.: The maids and the first slaves. Bruce's *Economic History of Virginia*, chap. iv.: Agricultural development. Neill: *English Colonization of America*, chaps. ii.-iv. Fisher: *Colonial Era*, 40-44. Thwaites: *The Colonies*, 72-73.

CHAPTER VII.

THE FIRST ASSEMBLY OF AMERICAN LAWMAKERS.

Sir George Yeadley Governor.—Sir Thomas Dale returned to England in 1616, carrying with him Rolfe and Pocahontas on a visit to the king. Captain Samuel Argall was sent out as deputy governor in 1617. He had spent several years in Virginia, but his rule was so harsh and tyrannical that bitter complaints were made against him and he was recalled.

In 1618 Lord Delaware sailed for Virginia, but died at sea, and the London Company elected as his successor George Yeardley, who a few years before had been in charge of the colony and was known to be just and honest and a firm believer in popular liberty. The king made him a baronet, and when Sir George Yeardley arrived in Virginia as governor, he was welcomed with great rejoicings.

Captain Samuel Argall.

Captain Samuel Argall is famous in history as the man who commanded a party of Virginians sent out by Sir Thomas Dale in 1615 to break up the French and Dutch settlements along the Atlantic coast, which he claimed as a part of Virginia. He captured Port Royal, Nova Scotia, where the French had made a settlement, and returning seized Manhattan Island, where Dutch colonists were then living.

The Progress of Popular Liberty.—About this time England was entering upon a great political contest which was to decide whether the people or the king should have the greater power in the affairs of the English government. The more liberty a people enjoy, the less is the power that their king or ruler can exercise.

To the London Company, by their charter, had been given full authority to make such laws and ordinances as were thought necessary for the good of the Virginia plantations. The idea of popular liberty had by this time gained such headway in England that the company determined to delegate some of this lawmaking power to the people in the colony. In this way the power of the Virginia governors would be lessened or limited, and the Virginia colonists would be freer and stronger.

The Colonial Assembly.—Sir George Yeardley was therefore authorized to call upon the people of Virginia to elect representatives to a general assembly. This lawmaking body, to which was intrusted the power to make laws for the local government of the colony, consisted of two members, or burgesses, elected by the freemen of each borough. The first meeting of the Colonial Assembly was held July 30, 1619. All the towns and plantations constituting the eleven boroughs were represented. Laws were passed regulating agricultural and religious matters, and dealings with the Indians.

The First Constitution.—In 1621 Virginia received from the London Company its first constitution, which granted free government, confirmed the institution of the Colonial Assembly, or House of Burgesses, and provided for the selection of a council to assist the governor in his administration of affairs. The sole power of levying taxes and appropriating money rested with the House of Burgesses, which represented the people. This carried out the principle which in England gave the same powers to the House of Commons.

Under this constitution Sir Francis Wyatt ruled as governor until 1624, when the London Company was dissolved, and the colony became a royal province whose governors were appointed by the king.

Questions.—When did Dale return to England? Who went with him? Who succeeded Dale? When? What kind of a man was Argall? How did he rule? Why was he recalled? Who succeeded Delaware as governor? When? How was Yeardley received by the Virginians? Upon what was England entering about this time? What was this contest to decide? What power had been given to the London Company? What did the company determine to do? What would be the result to the colonists? What was Yeardley authorized to do? Of what was the first Colonial Assembly composed? When was its first meeting held? How many boroughs were represented? What were among the first laws passed by this assembly? When did Virginia receive its first constitution? What did this constitution grant? Confirm? Provide? Who ruled as governor under the constitution? Until what year? What became of the London Company? What did Virginia become in 1624?

REFERENCE OUTLINE.

Virginia Colony.

- 1607. Founding of Jamestown.
- 1610. { "Starving time."
- 1610. { Arrival of Lord Delaware.
- 1613. Marriage of Pocahontas.
- 1615. { Tobacco culture begun.
- 1615. { Land tenure established.
- 1619. { Sir George Yeardley, Governor.
- 1619. { First Colonial Assembly.
- 1619. { Introduction of African Slavery.
- 1621. { Sir Francis Wyatt, Governor.
- 1621. { First Virginia constitution.
- 1624. Virginia becomes a royal province.

FOR ADVANCED CLASSES.

Topics for Discussion.

- I. Sir George Yeardley. II. First Colonial Assembly. III. First Virginia Constitution.

References and Authorities.

Bancroft's *History of the United States*, vol. i.

Yeardley and his administration, 110, 135-137. First Colonial Assembly, 112. First constitution for Virginia, 117.

Hildreth's *History of the United States*, vol. i.

Yeardley, 117. First Colonial Assembly, 118. First constitution, 123.

Winsor's *Narrative and Critical History*, vol. iii.

Yeardley, 142. First Colonial Assembly, 143. First Virginia constitution, 145.

Bryant's *Popular History of the United States*, vol. i.

Yeardley, 305. Beginning of self-government, 306.

Parallel Readings.

INDEX GUIDE for comparative examination of other works and authorities.—*Yeardley, George. Argall, Samuel. Self-government, Beginning of. Assembly, First Colonial. Wyatt, Sir Francis. Constitution, First Virginia.*

SPECIAL.—Cooke's *Virginia*, Part I, chap. xix.: The first American assembly and constitution. Thwaites: *The Colonies*, 73-74. Fisher: *Colonial Era*, 43-44.

Review Work.

What attempt to settle did the English make on the southeast coast of what is now the United States? Who was Virginia Dare? Who was Snorri? What part did Sir Richard Grenville take in the attempted settlement of Roanoke Island? Sir Francis Drake? What were the main points of difference between the Virginia charter grant of 1606 and that of 1609? For what people did Admiral Coligny attempt to found colonies in America? What were the French about to do when Ribault arrived at Fort Caroline? Why was this fort easily captured? What settlement did Gosnold attempt? Who named New England? State any interesting events in the early career of John Smith. In the later history of Pocahontas.

PREPARATORY GEOGRAPHY LESSON.

Upon a map of the Middle States note the location of New York City. Between what two rivers is it? Where is Albany? Note the territory between the Delaware and Connecticut rivers. To what States does this territory now belong? What river flows into Delaware Bay? Where is Wilmington?

Upon a map of Europe note the relative positions of England and Holland. Where is the Isle of Jersey? In what part of England is Southampton? Plymouth?

Upon a map of the New England States note the coast line. Where is Cape Cod? Provincetown? Boston? Plymouth? Salem? Cape Ann? Where is Portsmouth? Dover? What river separates New Hampshire from Maine? Where is Saco? Note the relative positions of Salem, Mass., and Providence, R. I. Of Salem and Hartford, Conn. Where is Newport? New Haven? Saybrook?

New Netherland.

CHAPTER VIII.

THE INDIA COMPANIES.

The Founding of New York.—There is trustworthy evidence that Verrazano, when he was exploring the Atlantic coast, sailed into the Hudson River and visited the site of New York in 1524. It was eighty-five years later when Henry Hudson ascended the river which bears his name, and to him belongs the honor of opening the door to Dutch settlement.



HENRY HUDSON.

The Dutch East India Company.—The explorations of Hudson around the Hudson River did not benefit the East India Company, in whose service he was employed ; but some Amsterdam merchants, influenced by the reports brought back by Hudson, the next year sent a vessel for the purpose of trading with the In-

dians (1610). In time a trading post was established upon Manhattan Island (1613), and the settlement that grew up around it received the name of New Amsterdam. The establishment of this post was followed by that of others. Dutch vessels explored the coast of Long Island, Connecticut, and New Jersey (1614). Upon these explorations Holland based a claim to the region between the Connecticut and Delaware rivers, and gave to the territory so claimed the name of New Netherland.

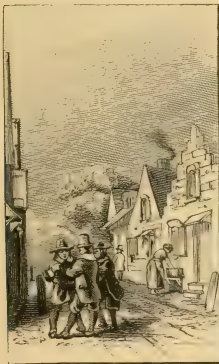
The Dutch West India Company.—England objected to the establishment of these trading posts upon what she considered her territory. The Dutch soon found that if they hoped to retain the territory they must take full possession of it and establish colonies, or England would do so. About this time

Holland was at war with Spain, and a company, called the Dutch West India Company, was formed to equip and send out privateers. The company hoped to make much profit out of the Spanish vessels captured by these privateers. To obtain its charter, however, the company had to agree to undertake the colonization of New Netherland (1621).

Colonization of New Netherland.—Several at-

The Patroons.

The West India Company decided to confer the title of Patroon upon anyone who should establish a colony of not less than fifty adults. This carried with it the privilege of purchasing of the Indians a tract of land sixteen miles square. As land was very scarce in Holland, and the Dutch as a rule are fond of owning land, these reasons induced many enterprising men from Holland to come to New Netherland. Each Patroon was required to furnish all necessary farming implements, and to support a minister and a school-master. The labor of his colonists so increased the value of his land that the Patroon soon became very wealthy.



est was taken at first in the development of the country, for these

tempts were made to fulfill the terms of this charter. A few additional trading posts were erected. One, called Fort Orange, was located near the present city of Albany (1623). A colony, with Peter Minuit as governor, was shortly after established upon Long Island (1624). Little inter-



SCENES IN NEW AMSTERDAM.

settlers soon turned their attention to the fur trade, and the company itself was too much occupied with capturing Spanish treasure-ships to give much thought to New Netherland.

Thrift of the New Colony.—England's claim to the territory around the Hudson prevented many of the Dutch from emigrating to that region. But an alliance between England and Holland against Spain being formed, the Dutch were persuaded that England was now too good a friend to interfere with their claims in America.

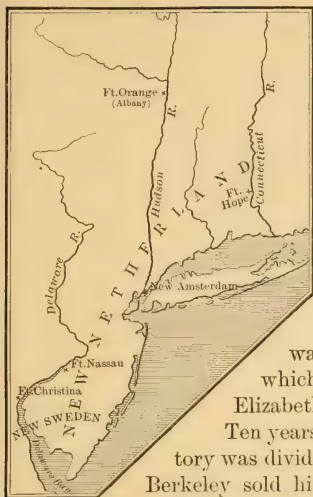
Therefore many came to New Netherland. Thrifty settlements began to appear, and quaint villages, with straw-thatched and gable-roofed houses, sprang up on all sides. Among the early arrivals were Walloons, as Dutch Protestants were in those days called.

Governors of the Colony.—Minnuit served as governor until 1632, when he was succeeded by Wouter Van Twiller. Van Twiller extended the limits of the colony and caused Fort Hope to be established upon the Connecticut River, near what is now Hartford (1633). He was succeeded by William Kieft, who in turn was followed by Peter Stuyvesant.

England Takes Possession ; New York and New Jersey.—After fifty years of existence as a Dutch colony, New Netherland passed into the hands of the English (1664), and its name was changed to

New Sweden.

Gustavus Adolphus, King of Sweden, intended to establish Swedish colonies in America, but died without doing so. It was left to Oxenstiern, his prime minister, to carry out his intentions. In 1638 a company of Swedes and Finns, under the leadership of Peter Minnuit, who had been the first governor of New Netherland, entered Delaware Bay. A tract of land was purchased, extending from what is now Cape Henlopen to a point up the Delaware River, near Trenton. This territory was named New Sweden. A fort was built and a settlement begun near what is now Wilmington, and it received the name of Christina. More of these people came over (1643), and Swedish settlements soon extended as high as the Schuylkill River, within the limits of what is now Pennsylvania. As the settlements of Holland and Sweden expanded, there arose a dispute over territory between the colonists of New Netherland and those of New Sweden. Fort Casimir was built by the Dutch (1651) within a few miles of the settlement of Christina, and the Swedes, viewing the fort as a menace, drove their unwelcome visitors away. Their triumph was, however, short-lived. Peter Stuyvesant was governor of New Netherland at the time, and the plucky old soldier went down to New Sweden with an army of 600 men (1655), and compelled the inhabitants to acknowledge this territory as belonging to New Netherland.



New York, after the Duke of York, brother of the English king, to whom it was given. The duke in turn granted a part of the territory to Lord Berkeley and Sir George Carteret. In honor of the latter, who had been governor of the Isle of Jersey, this region was called New Jersey. The first settlement made

in New Jersey by the English was at Elizabethtown (1664), which received its name in honor of Elizabeth, the wife of Carteret.

Ten years after (1674), the granted territory was divided into East and West Jersey.

Berkeley sold his interest to English Quakers, who, in sympathy with William Penn, gained possession of West Jersey. These Quakers established local government and popular liberty, and invited to the settlement their persecuted friends beyond the ocean. In 1702 the parts were reunited and became a royal province, with boundaries corresponding to those of the present State of New Jersey.

Questions.—What early explorer visited New York Bay? When? What honor belongs to Henry Hudson? What was done by Amsterdam merchants? When? Why? Where was a trading post established? When? What was it called? What followed upon the establishment of this post? What name was given to the region claimed by Holland? What other country claimed this territory? What did the Dutch have to do to retain possession? What company had been formed in Holland? For what purpose was this (Dutch West India) company formed? To what did the company have to agree before it could obtain a charter? What was built in fulfillment of its terms? When and where was Fort Orange established? When did Peter Minuit establish his colony? Where? To what did the settlers turn their attention? Why did not the West India Company give much thought to New Netherland? Why were Dutch colonists now persuaded to come to New Netherland? Who were Walloons? Who succeeded Minuit? When? What fort did Van Twiller establish?

By whom was he succeeded? How long was New Netherland a Dutch colony? Into whose possession did it then come? When? To what was its name changed? After whom? To whom did the Duke of York grant a part? In honor of whom was New Jersey named? What was the first English settlement made in New Jersey? When? For whom was it named?

REFERENCE OUTLINE.

New Netherland.

- 1609. Hudson explores.
- 1613. Dutch settle at New Amsterdam (N. Y.).
- 1623. Dutch build Fort Orange (Albany, N. Y.).
- 1633. Dutch build Fort Hope (near Hartford, Conn.).
- 1638. Swedes settle Delaware.
- 1651. Dutch build Fort Casimir (N. J.).
- 1655. Dutch conquer Swedish settlements.
- 1664. { English conquer New Netherland.
- { English settle Elizabethtown (N. J.).
- 1674. Jersey divided into East and West.
- 1702. Jersey reunited and made a royal province.

FOR ADVANCED CLASSES.

Topics for Discussion.

- I. The Dutch India Companies. II. The Dutch Colony of New Netherland. III. Patroons and Walloons. IV. The Colony of New Sweden.

References and Authorities.

- Bancroft's *History of the United States*, vol. i.
Dutch West India Company, 478, 494. East India Company, 480. Patroons, 497. New Sweden, 501-503. Stuyvesant, 507. Swedish and Dutch claims conflict, 509. Surrender of New York to the English, 519.
- Hildreth's *History of the United States*, vol. i.
Walloons, 140. Patroons, 142. New Netherland history, 142-149.
- Winsor's *Narrative and Critical History*, vol. iv.
West India and East India Companies, 396. Colonization of New Netherland, 398. Walloons, 400. Swedes intrude upon Dutch territory, 403-404. New Netherland becomes New York, 408.
- Bryant's *Popular History of the United States*, vol. i.
First fort upon Manhattan Island, 358. West India Company, 364. Walloons, 365. Patroons, 430. Van Twiller, 443. Kieft, 444. Swedes settle Delaware, 466.

Parallel Readings.

- INDEX GUIDE for comparative examination of other works and authorities.—*India Companies, The Dutch, Orange, Fort, New Amsterdam, Settlement of, Patroons, The, New Netherland, The, Minuit, Peter, Kieft, William, Van Twiller, Wouter, New Sweden, York, Duke of, Elizabethtown, English Settlement of, Stuyvesant, Peter.*
- SPECIAL. Roosevelt: *New York*, chaps. i. iv. Mrs. Martha J. Lamb: *History of the City of New York*, chaps. iii. xi. Fisher: *Colonial Era*, 179-185. Thwaites: *The Colonies*, 196-203. Irving: *Knickerbocker's History of New York* (humorous).

New England.

CHAPTER IX.

LANDING OF THE PILGRIMS.

Origin of the Puritans.—During the time the colonization of America was occupying the attention of the English, there was but one method of worshipping God permitted by law in England. There were many, however, who did not approve of the government and ceremonies of the Established Church, as it was called. They claimed that the forms of worship should be purified, and in a spirit of ridicule they were called Puritans. They were also called “Nonconformists,” because they did not conform to the method of worship of the Established Church of England.

Persecuted Separatists.—As long as they remained members of the Church and tried to change its form of worship to what they thought was right, they had but ridicule to bear. When, however, they did not succeed, and found it necessary to separate themselves from the rest of the Church and form congregations of their own, they were then branded as Separatists, and cruelly persecuted. At one time the king (James I.) declared that he would “harry them out of England.”

Flight to Holland.—A number of Separatists took refuge in Holland. Here they were treated kindly and remained eleven or twelve years. They felt, however, they could not stay there permanently, for the customs, manners, and language of the people were strange to them. After much thought, they decided to cross the sea, and in America find a refuge for themselves and a place where their children could grow up undisturbed.

Sailing of the Mayflower.—Only the ablest and strongest were permitted to attempt the first voyage. Two vessels, the *Speedwell* and the *Mayflower*, were secured. The former set sail from Holland and joined the latter at Southampton, England. August 5, 1620, they started on their voyage to

The Mayflower Compact.

While the Mayflower was anchored in the harbor of Provincetown the leaders of the expedition met in the cabin and drew up a solemn written agreement for the government of the colony. This agreement is known as the Mayflower Compact. The colonists pledged themselves to frame "just and equal laws," and promised "all due submission." This was a most significant step in the development of self-government in America, for under this compact the colonists not only made laws and rules for their own government, but consented to be governed. Many years afterwards we shall find Thomas Jefferson asserting: "Government derives its just powers from the consent of the governed." There were forty-one signers to the Mayflower Compact. John Carver was chosen the first governor.

America, but had not sailed far before the Speedwell sprang a leak, and the vessels turned back. At length the Mayflower set out alone (September 6). On board were 102 settlers, under the leadership of William Bradford, William Brewster, John Carver, and Miles Standish. These Separatists had moved so from place to place that they had come to call themselves Pilgrims.

The First Land Sighted.

—After a long and stormy voyage, Cape Cod was sighted (November 9). Rounding the cape, they entered the peaceful

harbor of what is now Provincetown. Many of the colonists here went ashore, and Captain Miles Standish, with fourteen others, set out to explore the country. They were gone several days, during which they met a small party of Indians, who fled on seeing the white strangers. Farther on they came to a ruined hut, an old ship-kettle, a dilapidated palisaded fort—remains of some unknown settlement of the past—and mounds of earth, into which they dug. One of these contained four or five bushels of corn. They took of this corn enough to fill their pockets, and, with the kettle, returned to the vessel. Here an attack from thirty or forty Indians was repulsed.

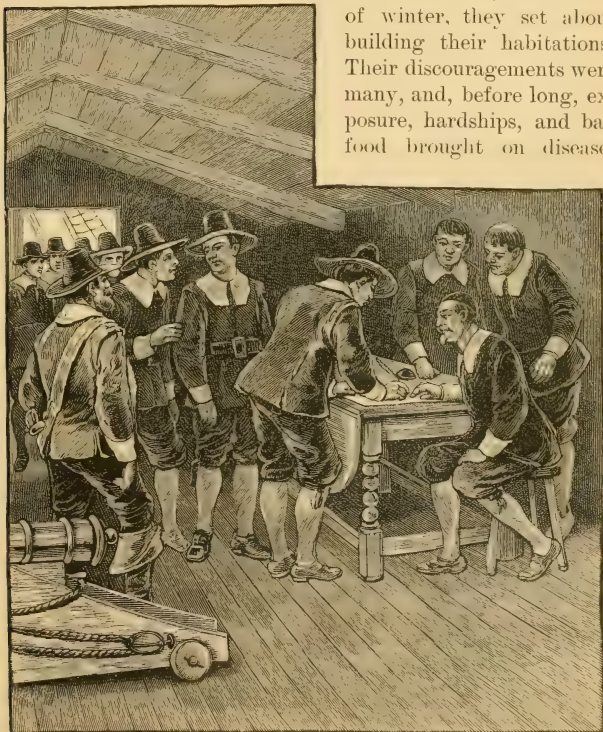
Plymouth Rock.—Leaving Provincetown, the Mayflower continued along the coast a distance of fifty miles before making another landing. An exploring party was again sent ashore. Such good reports were brought back that it was de-



CAPTAIN MILES STANDISH.

cided to land. This region was down on the maps as Plymouth, and the name was not changed. The rock upon the beach first trod by Pilgrim foot in landing has since become historic as Plymouth Rock, and the event is known as the Landing of the Pilgrim Fathers.

Trials and Heroism.—The colonists formed themselves into nineteen households, and each household was given a plat of land. Here, in the midst of winter, they set about building their habitations. Their discouragements were many, and, before long, exposure, hardships, and bad food brought on disease.



SIGNING OF THE "COMPACT" ON THE MAYFLOWER.

Samoset, Squanto, and Massasoit.

One day an Indian entered the town, and to the surprise of the settlers uttered the words: "Welcome, Englishmen." He proved to be Samoset, and the little English he knew had been learned from fishermen who had visited the Maine coast. Samoset shortly afterwards appeared with another Indian, named Squanto, who had lived some time in England, having been stolen by one of the early expeditions. Through the friendship of these two Indians peace was made between the whites and Massasoit, chief of the neighboring Wampanoags. Squanto proved a friend indeed to the settlers, for he taught them much that was useful in the New World; among other things, they learned how to plant and cultivate corn, to catch and to dry fish.

Half of their number died before the winter was over. History gives us few pictures more sad than that of this little band of suffering Pilgrims upon that bleak shore. Surrounded by unknown dangers, they never gave up their determination to remain, and they endured the gloom and despair of that first winter with a heroism that has ever been admired.

Brave little Captain Miles Standish was the John Smith of the Plymouth Colony. He cheered the drooping spirits of the settlers and organized a company for defense against

the Indians who lurked about the settlement. Spring brought better times to the colony.

Questions.—How many methods of worship were permitted by law in England at the time the English colonization of America began? Of what did some of the English people not approve? What name was given them in ridicule? Why were they also called Nonconformists? What were they called when they formed congregations of their own? What did the king declare he would do to them? Where did a number of Puritans take refuge? How were they here treated? How long did they remain? Why did they not desire to remain longer? What did they decide to do? Who only were permitted to go upon the first voyage? What two vessels were secured? When did they leave Southampton? Why did they return? Which of the two vessels finally departed for America? Who were the leaders? Why were these Puritans called Pilgrims? What kind of voyage did they have? What cape did they reach? What harbor? What did Miles Standish set out to do? What did he find upon this expedition? How long was he gone? What did he bring back? What happened upon his return? How many miles farther did the Pilgrims sail? Who here went ashore? By what name was the region already known? Upon what rock did the Pilgrims land? Into how many households were the colonists divided? What was the first work they set about? What brought on disease? How many died? What other leader was Standish like?

FOR ADVANCED CLASSES.

Topics for Discussion.

- I. Puritans, Nonconformists, Separatists, and Pilgrims. II. The Voyage of the Mayflower. III. The Mayflower Compact. IV. Captain Miles Standish. V. The Plymouth Colony.

References and Authorities.

Bancroft's *History of the United States*, vol. i.

Enforcing conformity in England, 185. The Pilgrims, 194. Their migration to Holland, 199. Why they left Holland for America, 201. Voyage of the Mayflower, 206. Mayflower compact, 207. Plymouth Colony established, 209.

Hildreth's *History of the United States*, vol. i.

The Puritans, 153. Mayflower voyage, 157. Compact, 158. Plymouth Colony, 160. Exploits of Standish, 166.

Winsor's *Narrative and Critical History*, vol. iii.

Puritans and Separatists, 218. Mayflower voyage, 267. Compact, 269. Landing of the Pilgrims, 271.

Bryant's *Popular History of the United States*, vol. i.

The Puritans, 370. Mayflower voyage, 386. Compact, 388. Miles Standish, 391. Nonconformists, 523.

Parallel Readings.

INDEX GUIDE for comparative examination of other works and authorities. — *Puritans, The. Pilgrims, The. Mayflower, The. Mayflower Compact, The. Plymouth Colony, The. Standish, Captain Miles. Samoset. Squanto. Massasoit.*

SPECIAL.—Fiske: *Beginnings of New England*, chap. iv. Gregory's *Puritanism in the Old World and in the New*, Part I., chap. iii.; Rise of Puritanism in England; Part II., chap. i.: Founding of New Plymouth. Palfrey's *History of New England*, vol. i., chap. iii.: Puritanism in England; chap. v.: Colony of Plymouth. Fisher: *Colonial Era*, chap. vii. Thwaites: *The Colonies*, chap. vi. Moore: *Pilgrims and Puritans*. Drake: *Making of New England*. Mrs. Hemans: *Landing of the Pilgrim Fathers* (poem). Holmes: *Robinson of Leyden* (poem). The reading of Longfellow's poem, *Courtship of Miles Standish*, is especially urged.

CHAPTER X.

THE TYRANNY OF INTOLERANCE.

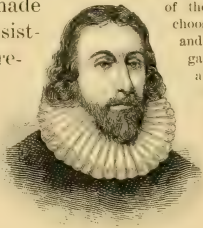
Individual Settlements.—The Plymouth Colony grew very slowly. From time to time a few scattered settlements sprang up along the Massachusetts coast. Some of these settlements at first consisted of but one person, living to himself and leading a hermit-like existence. Such was the settlement made by William Blackstone, a man of much talent who had settled near what is now Boston.

The Salem Colony.—A party of Puritans in Dorchester, England, attracted by reports of the country about Cape Ann, bought a large tract of land from the Plymouth Company in

1628. They organized the Massachusetts Bay Company, and their first colony was planted at Salem, under John Endicott as governor. The next year Charles I. granted them by charter the power to govern.

The Puritan Migration.

—The people of England had been restricted in religious affairs, but they had long enjoyed a certain amount of civil liberty. Their laws were made by a parliament consisting in part of representatives chosen from among themselves. During the reign of Charles I., who succeeded his father, James I., a contest arose between the king and parliament that resulted in civil war. The years leading up to this event were years of great uneasiness. Many made their way across the ocean to avoid the war which they saw was coming on. Large numbers of Puritans left England, and this Puritan migration soon peopled the shores of Massachusetts Bay.



JOHN WINTHROP.

Massachusetts Bay Company, Colony, and Charter of 1629.

The territory purchased by the Massachusetts Bay Company lay between the Charles and the Merrimac Rivers and extended from ocean to ocean. The members of the company at first lived in England, without any intention of themselves settling in America. Afterwards a majority of the members joined what is known in history as the Puritan migration and moved to America, taking the Massachusetts Bay Company charter with them.

The provisions of this charter were very liberal. It gave to the members of the company the privilege of choosing annually a governor and eighteen assistants. It also gave them the power to make all laws for the government of the colonies, provided such laws did not conflict with those of England.

When the company moved to America, John Winthrop, its president, became governor of the colony. When the charter was transferred to America, and the members of the company themselves became colonists, it furnished another important instance of the establishment of self-government in America.

At first only members of the company had any voice in the management of colonial affairs. The privilege of voting, however, was in time extended to all "freemen" who were members of the Church. As the members of the Massachusetts Bay settlements increased, representatives from each came together at Boston and formed a lawmaking body called the General Court.

The Settlement of Boston.—In 1630 the first party of immigrants, consisting of about one thousand persons, arrived. The site selected for settlement was unsuitable. The scarcity

and brackishness of the water caused much suffering. By the advice of William Blackstone, the settlers removed to Shawmut, as the peninsula of Boston was then called. Here they found many springs of fresh water and fared much better. The settlement was called Boston. In ten years there were more than twenty thousand inhabitants in the colonies about Massachusetts Bay.

Puritan Intolerance.—It would seem that the long period of persecution in England should have taught the elders and rulers of the Puritan colonies of Massachusetts the benefits of peace and tolerance ; but it proved otherwise. No liberty of conscience was permitted. Everyone had to obey the rules of the Puritan Church, and these rules were very severe. Many who came to Massachusetts were forced to leave on account of their religious beliefs, just as many of the Puritans themselves had been obliged to leave England. These made their way to Maine, New Hampshire, Rhode Island, and Connecticut. William Blackstone, who had very kindly befriended the early settlers of Boston, was so provoked at the intolerance of his neighbors that he sold out and moved farther back into the wilderness.

Roger Williams.—Among the first to rebel against the stern religious rule of the Boston leaders was an eloquent young Puritan minister of Salem named Roger Williams. He boldly proclaimed that under the law all religious sects were entitled to protection, and that civil magistrates had no right to restrain the conscience or interfere with modes of worship.

Such doctrines were denounced as heresy. The preacher was commanded to appear in Boston, but refused. Steps were taken to send him back to England ; but he es-

Anne Hutchinson.

One of the early customs was to hold meetings to repeat and discuss the teachings and sermons of the pastors. To these meetings no women were admitted. A woman of great intellect and piety, named Mrs. Anne Hutchinson, conceived the idea of holding similar meetings for persons of her sex. In time she began to express opinions of her own. The cry of heresy was raised against her, and, though the governor, Sir Henry Vale, was her friend, she, too, was banished (1637), and with a few friends went into the wilderness as Roger Williams had done.

caped into the wilderness (1636), bearing with him the sympathy and affection of his congregation.

Questions.—What sprang up from time to time along the Massachusetts coast? Who was the first to settle near what is now Boston? What part of the coast attracted favorable attention and from whom? What company was organized? What was its first colony? In what year was it established? Who was the governor? In what had the people of England been restricted? How are laws made in England? What arose between the king and the parliament of England? Why did many make their way across the ocean? When did the first party of immigrants arrive? To what place did they move their settlement? Why? How many inhabitants did the Massachusetts colonies number in ten years? What should persecution in England have taught the Puritan elders and rulers? What had everyone to obey? What were many forced to do? What became of William Blackstone? Who was Roger Williams? What ideas were boldly proclaimed by him? What was he commanded to do? Where was he to be sent? Where did he escape?

FOR ADVANCED CLASSES.

Topics for Discussion.

- I. The Massachusetts Bay Company's Colony and Charter. II. The Puritan Migration. III. The Founding of Boston. IV. Religious Intolerance of the Early Massachusetts Settlers. V. Roger Williams and Anne Hutchinson.

References and Authorities.

Bancroft's *History of the United States*, vol. i.

Massachusetts Bay charter and company, 224. Massachusetts Colony, 226. Puritan intolerance banishes Episcopalians, 223. Persecutes Anabaptists and Quakers, 312. Roger Williams, 249. Anne Hutchinson, 260. Transfer of Massachusetts charter, 231.

Hildreth's *History of the United States*, vol. i.

Massachusetts Bay Company charter, 179. Colony, 181. Roger Williams, 227. The Hutchinson controversy, 242, 246, 253, and 257. Intolerance prevails over tolerance, 310-311.

Winsor's *Narrative and Critical History*, vol. iii.

Massachusetts Bay Colony, 311. Charter, 312. Banishment of Roger Williams and Anne Hutchinson, 312.

Bryant's *Popular History of the United States*.

Vol. i.—Puritan migration, 317. Intolerance, 521. Boston, 532. Roger Williams, 533, 542, 544-546. Mrs. Hutchinson, 553-556. Vol. ii.—Liberty of conscience, 51. Puritan bigotry, 53.

Parallel Readings.

INDEX GUIDE for comparative examination of other works and authorities.—*White, Rev. John. Endicott, John. Massachusetts Bay Colony. Massachusetts Bay Company. Winthrop, John. Puritan Migration. Williams, Roger. Hutchinson, Mrs. Anne. Intolerance, Religious.*

SPECIAL.—Fiske's *Beginnings of New England*, chap. iii.: The Planting of New England. Gregory's *Puritanism in the Old and in the New World*, Part II., chap. ii.: Founding of Massachusetts. Palfrey: *History of New England*, vol. i., chap. viii. Fisher: *Colonial Era*, chap. vii. Thwaites: *The Colonies*, 124-137.

CHAPTER XI.

NEW ENGLAND SETTLEMENTS.

New Hampshire.—After the failure of the Popham Colony, the old Plymouth Company made no further attempts to establish colonies. In 1620 this company received a new charter, granting to it all the land lying along the Atlantic between the parallels of forty and forty-eight degrees, and extending across the continent from sea to sea. In this charter the king called this tract of land New England, a name which had been given to it by John Smith.

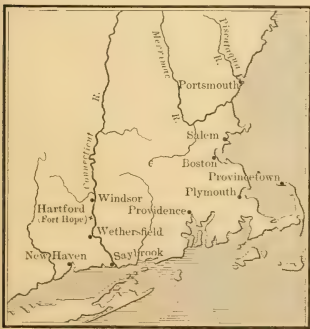
The Plymouth Company sold parts of this New England grant to a number of different persons. One transfer to the

Early New Hampshire History.

Many, choosing not to endure the religious tyrannies of Massachusetts, made their way to what is now New Hampshire. Flourishing settlements sprang up, which, after the death of Gorges and Mason, were allowed to govern themselves. In the course of time Massachusetts claimed jurisdiction over this territory. This claim was resisted. Contentions arose that did not end until 1679, when the authorities in England decided against Massachusetts. New Hampshire was thenceforth regarded as an independent colony.

Massachusetts Bay Company has already been mentioned. The first sale, however, was made to Sir Ferdinando Gorges (1622). It included the lands lying about the Piscataqua River. Laconia was the name given to this region.

Sir Ferdinando Gorges associated with himself Captain John Mason, and under their joint interests settlements were made at Ports-



mouth and Dover, N. H., (1623,) and seven years after at Saco, Me. Mason obtained from the Plymouth Company

(1629) a separate grant to that part of the Gorges grant lying south and west of the Piscataqua. Five years later this portion received the name of New Hampshire.

Connecticut.—The claims of the Dutch to the territory now known as Connecticut led them as early as 1633 to build a fort, called Fort Hope, near the present site of Hartford. In that year a vessel from Plymouth ascended the river, and, notwithstanding the threats of the Dutch, passing Fort Hope, proceeded farther up and established an English settlement at Windsor. The inhabitants about Massachusetts Bay heard that the Connecticut Valley was very fertile, and many, glad to escape persecutions and controversies, moved to this region. Among others were Rev. Thomas Hooker and his congregation of more than one hundred persons, who made the

First American Written Constitution.

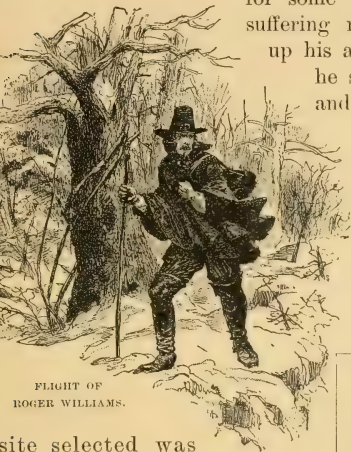
By 1639 a number of settlements had been made up and down the Connecticut River. The principal one of these was Hartford. In that year they united for mutual protection and benefit, and adopted a constitution. This was the first written constitution of which we have any record, prepared by the people for the organization of a government. The written constitution which Virginia had received eighteen years previously was granted by the London Company and was really a charter. The government of the Connecticut colonies under this constitution was very liberal. The New Haven Colony was not included in the union, but remained independent of the others. Its laws were so severe and strict that they have been called the Blue Laws.

journey overland and on foot, driving their cattle through the woods (1636). They named their town Hartford.

John Davenport and New Haven.—A party of Puritans from England, under Rev. John Davenport and Theophilus Eaton, arriving in Boston, decided not to remain, but sailed around to the Connecticut coast, where they bought land of the Indians, and upon a beautiful bay established New Haven (1638.)

Saybrook.—Meanwhile the land around the Connecticut River had been sold by the Plymouth Company, and was transferred to Lords Say and Brook, two Puritan noblemen. They sent out a colony under John Winthrop, son of the first governor of Massachusetts Bay Colony. Winthrop built a fort and laid off a town, which he named Saybrook, in honor of his proprietors (1635).

Roger Williams and Providence.—When Roger Williams was compelled to flee from Massachusetts, he wandered for some time through the forests suffering many hardships. Taking up his abode among the Indians, he soon won their friendship and esteem by his kindly ways and unselfish disposition. Joined by four or five others, he established a settlement, which he named Providence (1636).



FLIGHT OF
ROGER WILLIAMS.

Beginnings of Rhode Island.—The

Rhode Island Charter.

The settlements about Narragansett Bay were incorporated in 1643 as the Providence Plantations under a charter obtained by Roger Williams, who visited England as the agent of the colonists. In 1663 Providence Plantations was united with Rhode Island, and a new charter was granted by Charles II. to the "Governor and Company of Rhode Island and the Providence Plantations." This charter defined the limits of Rhode Island almost as they now exist. The principles of religious tolerance and local government formed its most important features. Its provisions were so satisfactory that at the time of the Revolution this charter was adopted by the State as a constitution, and continued in force until 1842. We speak of the State as Rhode Island, but its official name to-day is "Rhode Island and the Providence Plantations."

site selected was within the territory of the Narragansett Indians, whose chief, Canonicus, became a firm friend of Roger Williams. Here the exiled minister was followed by his family and several members of his congregation; and, in time, Providence became the refuge of many who had been persecuted on account of their religious belief. Others came in 1638, and through the intercession of Williams obtained permission to settle upon the island now called Rhode Island, where William Coddington in the same year established the settlement of Newport.

Questions.—What was the conduct of the Plymouth Company after the failure of the Popham Colony? What did this company receive? When? What grant did it contain? By what name did the king designate the land described? To whom did the Plymouth Company sell parts of New England? To whom was the first sale made? When? What lands were granted to Sir Ferdinando Gorges? Whom did Gorges associate with himself? What settlements were established? What separate grant did Mason obtain? When? What name did Mason's grant receive? What fort was built by the Dutch in Connecticut? Where? What English settlement was made near Fort Hope? Who settled and named Hartford? Where did Davenport and Eaton settle? To whom was the country about the Connecticut River sold? By whom? What do you know of the founding of Saybrook? How did its name originate? What happened to Roger Williams after he left Massachusetts? What settlement did he establish? Who was the chief of the Narragansetts? What did Williams's settlement become? Who founded Newport? When?

REFERENCE OUTLINE.

Massachusetts.

- 1620. { Mayflower Compact.
- { Pilgrims landed at Plymouth.
- 1628. Salem founded.
- 1630. { Boston founded.
- { Charter transferred to America.
- 1636. Roger Williams banished.
- 1675. King Philip's War.*

Maine and New Hampshire.

- 1622. Granted to Gorges.
- 1623. Settled under Gorges and Mason { Dover.
- { Portsmouth.
- 1629. Mason receives separate grant.
- 1630. Saco founded.

Rhode Island.

- 1636. Roger Williams founds Providence.
- 1638. Coddington founds Newport.
- 1643. Rhode Island charter obtained.

Connecticut.

- 1633. { Dutch build Fort Hope.
- { English settle Windsor.
- 1635. Saybrook founded.
- 1636. { Hooker colony established.
- { Pequot War begins.*
- 1638. New Haven founded.
- 1639. First written constitution.

* See chapter ii., Third Period.

FOR ADVANCED CLASSES.

Topics for Discussion.

I. Early Maine and New Hampshire History. II. English Settlement of the Connecticut Valley. III. New Haven and Saybrook. IV. The Settlement of Rhode Island. V. First American Written Constitution.

References and Authorities.

Bancroft's *History of the United States*, vol. i.

New Hampshire, 218, 286. Emigration to Connecticut Valley, 265. Connecticut constitution, 270. New Haven, 271. Rhode Island settled, 254.

Hildreth's *History of the United States*, vol. i.

New Hampshire, 200. Connecticut migration, 229, 231. Founding of Providence, 230. New Haven Colony, 260.

Winsor's *Narrative and Critical History*, vol. iii.

Gorges and Mason's grants, 310. Early Maine history, 321. New Hampshire, 326. Connecticut, 330. Rhode Island, 335.

Bryant's *Popular History of the United States*, vols. i. and ii.

Early Maine and New Hampshire history, vol. ii., 419. Connecticut Valley settlements, vol. i., 547, 549, 551. Connecticut Constitution, vol. ii., 23. New Haven settled, vol. ii., 27. Williams's colony, vol. ii., 39.

Parallel Readings.

INDEX GUIDE for comparative examination of other works and authorities.—*Gorges, Sir Ferdinando. Mason, John. New Hampshire, Settlement of. Laconia. Hooker, Rev. Thos. Davenport, Rev. John. New Haven Colony. Constitution, First Connecticut. Williams, Rev. Roger. Providence Founded. Canonius. Coddington, William. Rhode Island Charter.*

SPECIAL.—Fiske: *Beginnings of New England*, chap. iii. Gregory: *Puritanism*, Part II., chap. iii. Fisher: *Colonial Era*, chaps. vii. and viii. Thwaites: *The Colonies*, 140–452. Palfrey: *History of New England*, 444, 511, 516, 522, and 528.

Review Work.

Who named Cape Cod? What river was called by the Indians Sagadahoc? Who was Raleigh Gilbert? Humphrey Gilbert? Walter Raleigh? Why did the charter of 1606 give to both the London and Plymouth Companies the right to settle on land between the 38th and 41st parallels? How did the Indians of the New England coast learn a few English words before any English settlement was made? What kidnaped Indian came back to America and was of great service to the whites? What was the difference between the Pilgrims and other Puritans? What was New Hampshire first called?

PREPARATORY GEOGRAPHY LESSON.

Upon a map of Maryland note the Chesapeake Bay. Potomac River. Where is Annapolis? Baltimore? St. Mary's?

Upon a map of Pennsylvania note the position of Philadelphia. At the junction of what two rivers is it?

Upon a map of the South Atlantic States note the Chowan River in North Carolina. Note how near it is to Virginia. Where is Albemarle Sound? Note the mouth of the Cape Fear River; of the Ashley River. Where is Charleston? Port Royal? Savannah? Frederica, Ga.? Note how near Georgia and South Carolina are to Florida; St. Augustine is to Savannah.

Maryland.

CHAPTER XII.

FIRST FOR LIBERTY OF CONSCIENCE.

A Refuge for Catholics.—The coming of the Pilgrim Fathers to New England suggested to Sir George Calvert, the first Lord Baltimore, a Catholic nobleman, the idea of establishing a refuge in America for the persecuted of his Church. He visited Virginia in 1628, and found that the Virginia colonists were unwilling to admit Catholics; so he sailed up the Chesapeake Bay (1629). This region pleased him very much, and returning to England, he won the king's promise to give him the land for his colony. Before this promise was carried out, George



CECIL CALVERT, LORD BALTIMORE.

Clayborne's Rebellion.

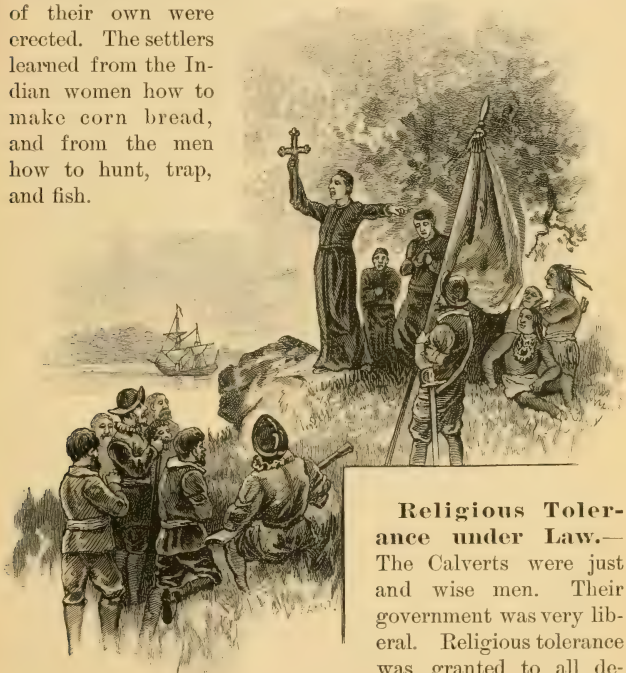
When Lord Baltimore arrived in Maryland, William Clayborne, a Virginia trader, had already established himself upon the Isle of Kent, near the mouth of the Potomac, and, though the island was within the limits of Calvert's grant, refused to give up possession. A controversy arose, some blood was shed, and Clayborne was driven away (1635). Failing to obtain redress at the hands of the authorities in England, he returned and stirred up a rebellion (1645). The rebels were at first successful, and Lord Baltimore was driven from the colony. But the rightful authority was soon reestablished.

Calvert died, and his eldest son, Cecil Calvert, became the second Lord Baltimore. To him Charles I. gave the land, and granted one of the most liberal charters ever written by an English king. The territory was named Maryland, after Henrietta Maria, wife of the king.

The Founding of Maryland.—Leonard Calvert, a younger brother of Lord Baltimore, with 200 Catholics, in the ships Ark and Dove, sailed to

the Potomac, and a short distance above its mouth established a settlement (1634), which they called St. Mary's, as a compli-

ment to the queen. They called themselves "Pilgrims of St. Mary." They were kindly received by the natives. The hospitality of the Indian villages was extended to the newcomers until houses of their own were erected. The settlers learned from the Indian women how to make corn bread, and from the men how to hunt, trap, and fish.



THE CATHOLICS IN MARYLAND.

Religious Tolerance under Law.—

The Calverts were just and wise men. Their government was very liberal. Religious tolerance was granted to all denominations, and under the charter the colonists

enjoyed many privileges of self-government.

In 1649 the legislature passed an act confirming the toleration which the proprietors of the colony had already granted. This liberal policy attracted many settlers, and among those who arrived were large numbers of Puritans. After a while they

tried to take the control of the colony from its rightful proprietor. Contentions and civil war between the Puritans and Catholics lasted some years. Peace came in 1660, and under the governorship of Philip Calvert, a younger brother of Lord Baltimore, prosperity began. When William and Mary by revolution came to the throne, Lord Baltimore was deprived of his right to appoint the governors, though he remained proprietor of the land. In 1694 the capital was removed to the old Puritan settlement of Providence, which was then called Anne Arundel Town, in honor of Lord Baltimore's wife. This name was shortened into Annapolis.

The Founding of Baltimore; the Dividing Line.

—Baltimore was founded in 1729, and it is now one of the large cities of the United States. As the populations of Maryland and Pennsylvania increased, trouble arose over the boundary line. These troubles were adjusted during the four years between 1763 and 1767. The dividing line was established by two surveyors named Mason and Dixon, and this line has since become famous as dividing the South from the North.

Questions.—Who was Sir George Calvert? What suggested to him the idea of a refuge for the persecuted of his Church? What did he find when he visited Virginia? Where did he then go? What promise did he win from the king? To whom was this promise carried out? Why? What was the character of the charter granted? What, and for whom, was the territory named? Who founded the first settlement? Its name? What name did the settlers give themselves? What did the Indians extend to the newcomers? What kind of men were the Calverts? What was granted to all denominations? What act was passed by the Maryland legislature in 1649? What did this liberal policy do? Who arrived? What contentions arose? Under whom did prosperity begin? Of what right was Lord Baltimore deprived? Where was the capital removed in 1694? What name was given to it? Why? To what was the name shortened? When was Baltimore founded? When were boundaries fixed? Why is Mason and Dixon's Line so called? Why has this line become famous?

FOR ADVANCED CLASSES.

Topics for Discussion.

- I. The Calverts and their Colonial Enterprise. II. The Settlement of Maryland. III. The Puritans in Maryland. IV. Clayborne's Rebellion. V. Mason and Dixon's Line. VI. The Maryland Toleration Act.

References and Authorities.

Bancroft's *History of the United States*, vol. i.

William Clayborne, 151. Sir George Calvert, 155. Cecil, Lord Baltimore, 159. St. Mary's Settlement, 160. Tolerance in Maryland, 162. Puritans in Maryland, 165, 167, 173. Oath and Act of Tolerance, 168. Mason and Dixon's Line, 570.

Hildreth's *History of the United States*, vol. i.

Calvert, 205. Settlement of St. Mary's, 209. Clayborne's opposition, 208. Religious toleration, 213. Toleration Act, 347. Puritan emigration to Maryland, 353.

Winsor's *Narrative and Critical History*, vol. iii.

Calvert, 517. His patent to Maryland, 520. William Clayborne, 522, 527. Freedom of Christian worship granted to all comers in Maryland, 524. St. Mary's, 526. Religious toleration characteristic of the Maryland colony from the first, 530. Toleration Act, 534. Puritans invited to Maryland, 535.

Bryant's *Popular History of the United States*, vol. i.

George Calvert, 485. Maryland colony, 490. Clayborne, 500. Toleration, 510.

Parallel Readings.

INDEX GUIDE for comparative examination of other works and authorities. — *Baltimore, Lord. Calvert, Cecil. Clayborne, William. St. Mary's, Settlement of. Rebellion, Clayborne's. Line, Mason and Dixon's. Toleration, Act of. Baltimore, Founding of.*

SPECIAL. — Browne's *Maryland: The History of a Palatinate*, chaps. ii. and iii. Fisher: *Colonial Era*, chap. v. Thwaites: *The Colonies*, 81-86. Lodge: *History of the English Colonies*, chap. iii.

Pennsylvania and Delaware.

CHAPTER XIII.

THE PROPRIETARY OF PENN'S WOOD.

Penn's Grant.—After the death of Oliver Cromwell, Admiral Sir William Penn loaned a large sum of money to Charles II., and assisted in restoring him to the throne of England. The admiral's son, William Penn, who had become a Quaker, inherited from his father a large estate, including a claim against the king for the money loaned him. In payment of this claim William Penn accepted a grant of 40,000 square miles of land west of the Delaware River (1681). Penn proposed to call the land New Wales, but the king, in honor of Admiral Penn, named it Pennsylvania (Penn's wood). Penn's principal reason for accepting this grant was to establish a home for his Quaker brethren, who, like himself, were persecuted in England. He published an invitation to all who were willing to assist him in building up his estates in the New World.

The Settlement of Pennsylvania.—In May, 1681, two shiploads of immigrants arrived, and established themselves near the mouth of the Schuylkill. The next year Penn himself followed in the ship *Welcome*, accompanied by more than a hundred of his Quaker friends and neighbors. Swedish and Dutch settlements had already been made near by,* but the Quakers were not looked upon as intruders. Penn was known to be a man of great piety and kindness of heart. All gave him a warm greeting when he landed (December 27, 1682).



WILLIAM PENN.

In 1683 a town with broad streets was laid out at the mouth of the Schuylkill and named Philadelphia, which means "brotherly love."

Penn's Treaty.—

Penn felt that the Indians were the rightful owners of the land, and he paid them for it, although he had already bought it from the King of England. A great meeting of Quakers and Indians was held near

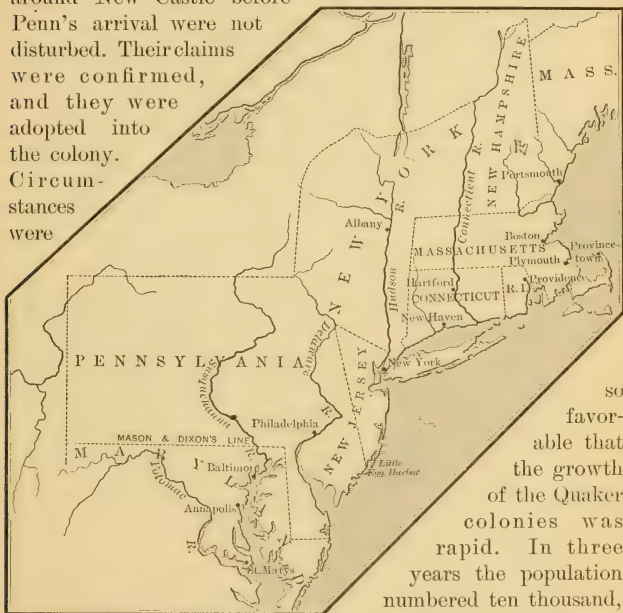
Philadelphia under the spreading branches of a gigantic elm tree, since famous as Penn's Elm. In an eloquent address Penn told the red men that the Quakers had come to live in peace with them, and wanted their friendship. Many expressions of good will were exchanged, and a treaty, which was never broken, was made between them. Other colonies suffered from Indian cruelties, but the Pennsylvania settlement escaped, and it is said that no Quaker was ever killed by the Indians.

A Liberal and Peaceful Government.—Penn instituted a form of government very liberal in its nature. It

* See page 96.

provided for the proprietary and governor, who was Penn himself; and a provincial council and general assembly, elected by the freemen of the province. Petty contentions were everywhere discouraged, and differences were submitted to official "peacemakers." The Swedes and Dutch who occupied the land around New Castle before

Penn's arrival were not disturbed. Their claims were confirmed, and they were adopted into the colony. Circumstances were



so favorable that the growth of the Quaker colonies was rapid. In three years the population numbered ten thousand, and Philadelphia contained

more than six hundred houses. Among the early comers was a large colony of Germans, who established themselves at Germantown.

Refuge for Quakers.—Penn returned to England in 1684, and having great influence with James II., who had just ascended the throne, exerted this influence in behalf of imprisoned and persecuted Quakers, many of whom soon found their

way to peaceful homes in Pennsylvania. Their descendants still live in this State and are among its best citizens.

The Beginning of Delaware.—Delaware was included in Penn's American territory. He had acquired it of the Duke of York, who claimed it as a part of New Netherland, though it had been granted to Cecil Calvert as a part of Maryland. The Calverts, however, had lost their influence with the English Crown, and the Penns held the disputed territory. The Penn family granted a separate legislature to Delaware in 1703 ; but the province still remained under the authority of the governor of Pennsylvania, the right to appoint governors for Pennsylvania and Delaware and the proprietary rights to the territory remaining in Penn's family undisturbed until the Revolution, when the two provinces became States.

Questions.—Who was William Penn ? What did he inherit ? What did he accept in payment ? What name did he propose to give to the land ? What name was given to it ? By whom ? Why did Penn accept this grant of land ? When did the first colony come over ? Where did they establish themselves ? When did Penn himself arrive ? How was he received ? Who had already made settlements near by ? Penn was known to be what ? When was Philadelphia founded ? What kind of government did Penn institute ? For what did it provide ? What were discouraged ? What growth was shown in three years ? Who were among the early comers ? When did Penn return to England ? How did Delaware come into the possession of Penn ? To whom had it been granted ? When was it given a separate legislature ? How long did the authority to appoint governors and the proprietary rights to the territory remain in the Penn family ?

REFERENCE OUTLINE.

Maryland.

- 1631. Kent's Island occupied by Clayborne.
- 1634. Settlement of St. Mary's.
- 1635. } (Clayborne's rebellions.
- 1645. }
- 1649. Toleration Act.
- 1694. Annapolis made capital.
- 1729. Baltimore founded.
- 1763. } Boundaries established.
- 1767. }

Delaware.

- 1638. Settled by Swedes.
- 1655. Conquered by Dutch of New Netherland.
- 1664. English conquest of New Netherland.
- 1682. Added to Penn's grant.
- 1703. Given separate legislature.

Pennsylvania.

- 1681. { Granted to William Penn.
 { First Quaker settlement.
- 1682. { Delaware added to Penn's grant.
 { William Penn arrives.
- 1683. Philadelphia founded.

FOR ADVANCED CLASSES.**Topics for Discussion.**

- I. The Quakers. II. William Penn. III. The Settlement of Pennsylvania. IV. Penn's Treaty. V. History of Early Delaware.

References and Authorities.

- Bancroft's *History of the United States*, vol. i.
 The Quakers and their faith. 528. William Penn, 556. Pennsylvania charter, 552. Settlement, 554. Penn's treaty, 567.
- Hildreth's *History of the United States*, vol. ii.
 William Penn, 62. His letter to the Indians, 64. Purchase of Delaware, 65. Philadelphia founded, 73.
- Winsor's *Narrative and Critical History*, vol. iii.
 Fox and his followers, 469. William Penn, 473. First vessel sent to Pennsylvania, 480. Acquisition of Delaware, 480. Voyage of the *Welcome*, 482. Penn's attitude towards the Indians, 490.
- Bryant's *Popular History of the United States*, vol. ii.
 William Penn, 480. Quaker settlement begins, 488. Penn's treaty, 493.

Parallel Readings.

- INDEX GUIDE for comparative examination of other works and authorities.—*Quakers, The. Penn, William. Pennsylvania, Settlement of. Treaty, Penn's. Philadelphia, Founding of. Delaware, Early History of.*
- SPECIAL.—Fisher: *Colonial Era*, chap. xi. Thwaites: *The Colonies*, 207 210, 215 217. Lodge: *History of the English Colonies*, chaps. xii. and xiii.

Review Work.

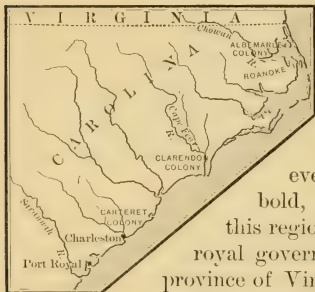
After whom was Delaware Bay named? Who was prime minister of Sweden when New Sweden was settled? Which was settled first, Christina or St. Mary's? How did New Jersey receive its name? What was the fate of Henry Hudson? What difference in purpose was there between the Dutch East India and the Dutch West India Company? (See chap. viii.) Which was settled first, New Netherland or New England? What were Dutch Protestants called? French Protestants? With what two colonies was Peter Minuit connected?

Carolina.

CHAPTER XIV.

THE LORDS PROPRIETORS.

The Carolina Grant.—The land around Roanoke Island and Cape Hatteras, and as far south as the St. John's River,



was the region to which the name Virginia had first been given. The English continued to call this land by that name, although for a long time they made no further attempt to colonize it. However, from year to year many bold, liberty-loving men moved to this region to escape the tyranny of the royal governors who were sent out to the province of Virginia. As early as 1653 Rev.

Roger Green led a

colony to the Chowan country, and settled near the present site of Edenton. Many more followed, and soon a number of scattered settlements arose. In 1660 settlers from New England located near Cape Fear River.

The Proprietary Company.—In 1663 Charles II. granted the territory of Carolina to eight noblemen, who made a company under the name of The Lords Proprietors of the Province of Carolina.

The grant extended along the Atlantic Ocean as far south as the 31st parallel and to the west as far as the "South Seas."

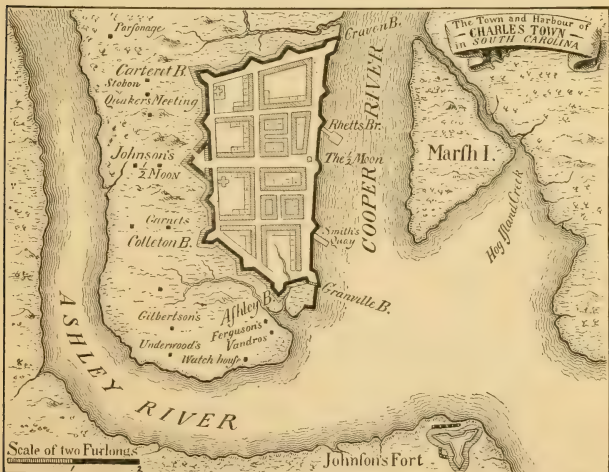
The Name Carolina.

In 1630, Charles I., King of England, granted the land lying between parallels 31 and 36 north latitude to Sir Robert Heath, and named it Carolina in honor of himself. Charles I. lost his head and Sir Robert Heath, who was one of his ministers, lost his office, so that no settlers were sent out to Carolina while Oliver Cromwell ruled England as Protector. When Charles II., after the Restoration, granted this land to the Lords Proprietors, he also called it Carolina. As his own name was Charles, some authorities hold that he named the province for himself, while others contend that he retained the name in honor of his father.

Liberality to Settlers.—The Lords Proprietors were very eager for people to settle their territory. They hoped to acquire great wealth by selling and renting land to the immigrants. They promised a liberal government and religious tolerance. In those days of oppression this made Carolina a very desirable region in which to settle. Germans and Swiss from Europe; Dutch from New Netherland, dissatisfied with the rule of the English, who had just taken possession (1664); and, particularly, large numbers of French Huguenots, with their high culture and independent spirit, fleeing from the tyranny of Louis XIV.—all these came over, laid out farms and vineyards, introduced useful occupa-

The Lords Proprietors.

The members of this company were George, Duke of Albemarle; Edward, Earl of Clarendon; William, Earl of Craven; John, Lord Berkeley; Sir Ashley Cooper; Sir George Carteret, Sir John Colleton, and Sir William Berkeley. The original grant included the territory between thirty-one and thirty-six degrees north latitude; afterward the grant was extended to the southern limit of Virginia.



CHARLES TOWN IN SOUTH CAROLINA.

tions, and by their industry and thrift implanted such elements of strength as few other American colonies enjoyed.

Albemarle and Clarendon Colonies.—After the Proprietors had taken possession, they organized into a colony the

The Grand Model.

Up to the year 1670 the form of government was satisfactory to the Carolina colonists. But when the Lords Proprietors saw their vast domain filling up with settlers, the scheme of establishing a grand American empire presented itself. Sir Ashley Cooper, who had become Earl of Shaftesbury, and John Locke, one of the most renowned of philosophers, with much thought and deliberation drew up "fundamental constitutions" consisting of 120 articles. These articles provided for an aristocracy, with two orders of nobility: the landgraves, or earls, and the cassiques, or barons. The distribution of the honors made Albemarle first Palatine, Craven first High Constable, Berkeley first Chancellor, Ashley Chief Justice, Carteret Admiral, and Colleton High Steward. The territory was to be divided into counties, each containing 48,000 acres; and the population into freeholders and tenants. The tenants, or common people, were to have no political rights, and were never to reach higher rank, no matter how deserving. The proposed form of government was deemed a Grand Model by its originators. But it did not suit the liberty-loving Carolina colonists. After twenty years of effort to establish it, the plan had to be abandoned.

settlements which had already been made by Virginians around the Chowan River. This organization was called Albemarle Colony, and William Drummond was appointed as its governor. At the time of the grant (1663) a Captain Hilton was exploring the coast of Carolina. He had been sent by John Yeamans, an English planter of Barbadoes, to find a suitable location for settlement. Yeamans went to England, and, obtaining the desired grant of land from the Lords Proprietors, returned and established, near the mouth of the Cape Fear River, a colony that afterwards became known as the Clarendon Colony (1665).

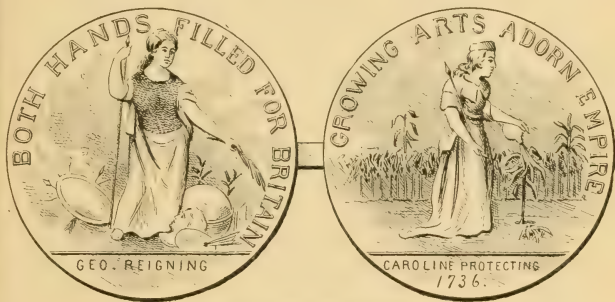
The Founding of Charleston.—These two colonies were planted in what is now North Carolina. In 1670 William Sayle arrived with a

large number of immigrants, and landed within the limits of what is now South Carolina. These colonists first stopped at Port Royal, but, not being satisfied with the place, proceeded to the Ashley River, and upon the west bank of this river laid the foundation of a city, which they named Charles Town. Ten years later (1680) the colony was removed to a more suitable site, called Oyster Point, and the city became known first

as Oyster Point Town, then as New Charles Town, and finally as Charleston. This colony was called the Carteret Colony.

Governor Yeamans and Slavery.—Governor Sayle died the year after the Carteret Colony was founded (1671). Joseph West acted as governor until the one appointed by the Lords Proprietors arrived (1672). This was Sir John Yeamans, the man who had established the Clarendon Colony.

Yeamans was followed by so many Cape Fear settlers that the Clarendon Colony was soon afterwards abandoned. Yea-



MEDAL COMMEMORATIVE OF THE DIVISION OF CAROLINA.

mans brought with him a number of negro slaves from his plantations on the Barbadoes. This was the first introduction of slavery into South Carolina.

Revolution of 1719.—As time passed on, the Proprietors violated more and more the promises they had made. The people had great cause to complain of the rents and taxes. Trade with the West Indies had brought prosperity to the colonies, yet restrictions were put on this trade. Finally, in 1719, South Carolina rebelled against the Proprietors, turned out their governor, and elected Colonel James Moore to govern the province in the name of the king. The king sustained the people and recognized Governor Moore, who served until the arrival of General Francis Nicholson, the first royal governor, in 1721.

Carolina Divided.—Because of these troubles, seven of the eight Proprietors sold their interests to the king, who divided Carolina into two provinces in 1729. For many years there had been two governors for the territory, and the two parts had been called North Carolina and South Carolina. Upon the legal separation these names were given to the provinces. A medal was struck off to commemorate the event of division.

Questions.—To what land was the name Virginia first given? Who from year to year moved to this region? Why? Who led a colony to the Chowan River? When? Who located near the Cape Fear River? To whom was Carolina granted? What company did they form? Why did the Lords Proprietors want people to go to Carolina? What promises did they make? Name four classes of people among the early settlers. Into what colony were the Chowan River settlements organized? Who was the governor? Who was Sir John Yeamans? Where did Yeamans plant a colony? When? Where did William Sayle establish a colony? When? What do you know of the founding of Charleston? What was the Charleston colony called? Who succeeded Sayle? Whom did the Lords Proprietors appoint governor of the Carteret Colony? What became of the Clarendon Colony? Who introduced slavery into South Carolina? What causes of complaint did the Carolina settlers have? What action did they take against the Proprietors? How did the king treat this action? What was the result of these troubles? When was Carolina divided? What names were given to the two provinces? What was done to commemorate the event?

REFERENCE OUTLINE.

Carolina.

- 1563. Huguenots attempt Port Royal settlement.
- 1584. Visited by Amidas and Barlow.
- 1585. {
- 1587. { Raleigh attempts Roanoke settlements.
- 1653. Roger Green settles Chowan River country, N. C.
- 1660. New Englanders attempt Cape Fear River settlement.
- 1663. { Visited by Captain Hilton.
- { Granted to Lords Proprietors.
- 1665. Yeamans founds Clarendon Colony.
- 1670. Sayle founds Carteret Colony, S. C.
- 1672. Slavery introduced into South Carolina.
- 1680. Charleston founded.
- 1729. Divided into { North Carolina.
- { South Carolina.

FOR ADVANCED CLASSES.

Topics for Discussion.

I. The Lords Proprietors, Province of Carolina. II. Early History of the Carolinas. III. The Grand Model.

References and Authorities.

Bancroft's *History of the United States*, vol. i.

Proprietaries of Carolina, 408. Roger Green and the Albemarle settlements, 410. Yeamans's colony, 411. John Locke's constitution for Carolina, 415. Carteret Colony, 420. Huguenots, 432.

Hildreth's *History of the United States*, vol. ii.

Lords Proprietors, 25. Clarendon Colony, 28. The Grand Model, 23. Carteret Colony, 33.

Winsor's *History of the United States*, vol. v.

Lords Proprietors, 286. Chowan River settlements, 287. Clarendon Colony, 286. Fundamental constitutions of Locke, 291. Carteret Colony, 307.

Bryant's *Popular History of the United States*, vol. i. —

The Carolina grant, 268. Green's colony, 271. New Englanders at Cape Fear, 272. Yeamans's Cape Fear colony, 275. Chowan settlements organized as Albemarle Colony, 276. Locke's fundamental constitutions, 277. Sayle's Charleston colony, 281.

Parallel Readings.

INDEX GUIDE for comparative examination of other works and authorities.—*Lords Proprietors, The. Green, Rev. Roger. Albemarle Colony. Grand Model, The. Yeamans, Sir John. Clarendon Colony. Sayle, William. Carteret Colony. Charleston, Founding of.*

SPECIAL.—Fisher: *Colonial Era*, chap. vi. Thwaites: *The Colonies*, 87-95. Moore: *History of North Carolina*, 1-27. Wheeler: *History of North Carolina*, chap. iv. Lodge: *History of the English Colonies*, chaps. v. and vii.

Review Work.

What region was formerly called Chicora? Who visited it in 1520? Who was John Ribault? What did the French call their fort at Port Royal, S. C.? When was St. Augustine founded?

Georgia.

CHAPTER XV.

PHILANTHROPY AND PROTECTION.

The Spaniards Threaten Carolina.—The settlement of the Carolinas by the English brought them near to the Spaniards, who occupied St. Augustine and regarded the Carolina territory as a part of Florida. They threatened to invade South Carolina and attack Charleston, and once they actually did so (1706). They influenced the Indians to make war upon the English, and persuaded the South Carolina slaves to run

away from their masters. To protect the Carolina settlement, the English desired to occupy the country between the Altamaha and Savannah Rivers, and there to establish military posts strong enough to keep back the Spaniards.

Margravate of Azilia.

While the Lords Proprietors owned South Carolina, they felt the need of a colony between the Altamaha and Savannah Rivers to protect them from the Spanish in St. Augustine. They granted the tract which afterward became Georgia to Sir Robert Montgomery, who promised to found a colony. He named his grant the "Margravate of Azilia" and issued a glowing circular, but failed to establish a colony, thus forfeiting his claim. In 1729 the king bought out the interests of the Lords Proprietors in the Carolina grant, and the Margravate of Azilia came into his possession.

young English officer, who had retired from the army and had become a member of Parliament. He visited the various places of confinement, and found so much suffering and misery that he formed a plan for securing in America a tract of land where the unfortunate debtors and poor people of London might earn a living. Many philanthropists united with him, and Oglethorpe applied to the king for a grant of land and a charter.

The Georgia Charter.—Oglethorpe's application was well received, because the colony he proposed would protect South Carolina from the Spanish. In 1732 King George II. granted to a Board of Trustees, for the benefit of his poor subjects, a tract of land lying between the Savannah and the Altamaha rivers, and extending westward from the heads of these rivers in direct lines to the

James Oglethorpe.—At this time it was the custom in England to imprison men who could not pay their debts, and the English prisons were full of persons of this class. Parliament appointed a committee to visit the debtors' prisons, and one of this committee was James Oglethorpe, a brilliant



JAMES OGLETHORPE.

“South Seas.” He named the land Georgia, and the trustees were to hold it for twenty-one years.

The Founding of Savannah.—Parliament appropriated a large sum of money and wealthy citizens subscribed liberally to pay the expenses of the enterprise. None but worthy and honest men were permitted to join the colony, and Oglethorpe selected them with great care. The first ship, with 120 emigrants, arrived at Charleston in January, 1733, where a kindly reception was accorded them. Continuing on their course, they landed at Port Royal; but Oglethorpe and a few others,



pushing southward, found an admirable site for a city upon the bank of what is now the Savannah River. Here they were joined by the others, and the foundations of the present city of Savannah were laid (1733).

Treaties with Indians.—Oglethorpe bought the land on which Savannah was built, and Tomochichi, the chief of the tribe, earnestly expressed a desire for peace. He presented Oglethorpe with a handsome ornamented buffalo robe, lined with eagle feathers, and called attention to its softness and warmth, saying they were emblems of love and protection, which the Indians hoped to receive from their white friends. Through the friendship of Tomochichi other lands were bought from the chiefs of the Creek Indians, and treaties of peace were

made with them which they kept faithfully for many years. The land purchased included all the Atlantic coast, and extended up the Savannah River as far as Augusta.

Augusta and Other Settlements.—As emigrants arrived, other settlements were made. In 1734 a colony of Salzburgers, driven from their native country by religious persecution, established themselves thirty miles in the interior,



OGLETHORPE AND TOMOCHICHI.

at a pleasant spot which they named Ebenezer. In 1735 a company of Scotch Highlanders settled at Darien, and in this same year the city of Augusta was founded. Another company of emigrants founded the city of Frederica in 1738. In eight years the population of the Georgia colonies numbered more than twenty-five hundred.

First Prohibition of Slavery.—Oglethorpe's colony was for the most part a military one. Strict regulations were enforced. Slavery and trade with the West Indies were not

permitted. From both of these sources the neighboring Carolina colonists were becoming wealthy. The Georgians were therefore dissatisfied until these regulations were changed.

War Threatened.—In 1737 it was known that war would soon arise between England and Spain. Oglethorpe hastened to England, and securing a well-disciplined body of men, returned with the appointment of commander-in-chief of all militia of South Carolina and Georgia. We shall learn how he distinguished himself in the war that occurred two years afterwards. The trustees surrendered their charter, and Georgia became a royal province in 1752.

Questions.—What did the settlement of the Carolinas by the English do? How did the Spaniards regard the Carolina territory? What did they threaten? What did they influence the Indians to do? What did they persuade the slaves to do? What did the English desire to do? What custom at this time prevailed in England? Who was James Oglethorpe? On what committee was he appointed? What did he find in the places of confinement? What plan did he form? By whom was a grant of land made? To whom? What did Parliament and wealthy citizens do? Where did Oglethorpe's first ship arrive? Where did it land? Where was Savannah founded? Who was Tomochichi? How did he receive Oglethorpe? What present did he give him? What four settlements were made and by whom? What was the growth of the Georgia colony? What for the most part was Oglethorpe's colony? What was prohibited to the early Georgia colonists? Why did these prohibitions cause dissatisfaction? When did Oglethorpe return to England? Why? When did Georgia become a royal province?

REFERENCE OUTLINE.

Georgia.

- 1732. Oglethorpe receives grant.
- 1733. Savannah founded.
- 1734. Salzburgers settle Ebenezer.
- 1735. { Augusta founded.
- { Darien founded.
- 1738. Frederica founded.
- 1740. Oglethorpe invades Florida.*
- 1742. { Spaniards invade Georgia.
- { Spaniards defeated at Bloody Marsh.*
- 1752. Georgia becomes a royal province.

* See chap. vii., Third Period.

FOR ADVANCED CLASSES.

Topics for Discussion.

I. Settlement of Georgia. II. James Oglethorpe.

References and Authorities.

Bancroft's *History of the United States*, vol. ii.

Oglethorpe and the Georgia charter, 281. First Georgia colony, 282. Oglethorpe and Tomochichi, 282. Moravians, 287. Salzburgers at Ebenezer, 289.

Hildreth's *History of the United States*, vol. ii.

Savannah founded, 365. Immigration to Georgia, 366. Celebrated visit of the Wesleys, 369.

Winsor's *Narrative and Critical History*, vol. v.

Oglethorpe's character and motives, 361-362. First Georgia colony, 367. Tomochichi, 369. Salzburgers and Moravians, 374.

Bryant's *Popular History of the United States*, vol. iii.

Oglethorpe, 143. Settlement of Georgia, 144. Treaty with the Indians, 146. Highlanders, 148. The Wesleys in Georgia, 151.

Parallel Readings.

INDEX GUIDE for comparative examination of other works and authorities. - *Georgia, Settlement of.* Oglethorpe, James Edward. *Savannah, Founding of.* Tomochichi.

SPECIAL. - Fisher : *Colonial Era*, chap. xx. Thwaites : *The Colonies*, chap. xiii. Lodge : *History of the English Colonies*, chap. ix. Jones : *History of Georgia*, vol. i., chaps. iv.-vii. Bruce : *Life of Oglethorpe in Makers of America Series*.

PREPARATORY GEOGRAPHY LESSON.

Upon a map of the Southern or Gulf States note the coast line. Where is Matagorda Bay, Tex. ? Lavaca ? Where is Pensacola ? From Pensacola follow the coast westward, noting in succession the following : Mobile, Biloxi,



Lake Pontchartrain, and Lake Borgne. Note how near the Mississippi River is to the southern shore of Lake Pontchartrain. Trace the river up to the mouth of the Red River. Note the position of New Orleans, Natchez, and Natchitoches.

Louisiana.

CHAPTER XVI.

FRENCH BARRIERS TO WESTWARD EXPANSION.

French Settlements in Louisiana.—The French forts in the upper valley of the Mississippi River in time became trading posts, but La Salle's attempt to settle Louisiana was a failure. A long war between England and France prevented for several years further efforts to make settlements. Peace was made in 1697, and in 1699 Pierre Lemoine, *Sieur d'Iberville* [d'ē-ber-vēl], a brave Canadian naval officer who had distinguished himself in the war and had seen much service in Canada, was selected by the French ministers



D'Iberville

to establish a colony at the mouth of the Mississippi.

Iberville, accompanied by a younger brother, **Bienville** [beyan'vél], sailed with his fleet to Pensacola, where he found the Spaniards in possession. Sailing on westward, he explored Mobile Bay, and at length dropped anchor in the deep water at Ship Island. Leaving his fleet here, he embarked in small boats and entered the Mississippi through one of its mouths. After proceeding up as far as the mouth of the Red River, he turned back. At the opening of a bayou named

La Salle in Texas.

After reaching the mouth of the Mississippi, La Salle returned to Canada and then to France. Here he was provided with the ships *Joly* and *Amiable*, the brig *La Belle*, and the ketch *St. Francis*; and with a colony of 250 persons he set out to occupy the territory he had explored for France. This colony included twelve young gentlemen, five priests, fifty soldiers, and twelve families of immigrants, all well supplied with provisions and implements.

The *St. Francis*, being a slow sailer, was captured by Spanish privateers. The remaining vessels safely entered the Gulf of Mexico, and sailed north-west. La Salle missed the mouth of the Mississippi and sailed along the line of what is now known as the coast of Texas.

An exploring party found an inlet, the channel of which they staked so that the vessels could enter in safety.

This the Joly and La Belle did ; but the Amiable struck a sand bar and soon went to pieces. The bay which they entered was called St. Bernard, and is now known as Matagorda. As soon as the colonists landed, Beaujeu [bo-zhoo], La Salle's naval commander, returned to France, leaving the La Belle. But this vessel was soon wrecked, and the colonists were left to depend upon themselves in a strange region. They ascended a river which they named Les Vaches (Lavaca), because they mistook the buffaloes grazing on its banks for cattle. They landed and built Fort St. Louis (1686).

La Salle made two expeditions to the northeast, hoping to reach the French posts or forts in Illinois. Accompanied by his brother, nephew, and eighteen others, he penetrated to the eastern part of what is now Texas. Here, in revenge for some fancied injury, Lancelot, one of the men, formed a plot against him, and was joined by three others, Liotot, Hiens, and Duhault. La Salle, enticed from camp, was waylaid and killed by Duhault. The expedition went to pieces after La Salle's death. The dissatisfied ones joined the neighboring Indians. La Salle's brother and six others made their way to the land of the Arkansas, where a small post, or fort, had been established (1685). Here they learned from two Frenchmen that Tonty had journeyed down to the mouth of the river to join La Salle, and not finding him had returned, little knowing how much his old commander, then wandering in the wilds of Texas, needed his gallant services.

As soon as the Spaniards of Mexico heard of the establishment of Fort St. Louis, so near them, they determined to destroy it. A force under Alonzo de Leon was sent (April, 1689) to attack it, but the settlement was found deserted. The few who had escaped death from starvation and sickness had wandered away and were captured by the neighboring Indians, from whom several were afterwards recovered.

Manchac, leading east from the Mississippi, Iberville sent his boats on down the river. He himself took a canoe and returned to his vessels by way of this bayou and a chain of lakes. One of the lakes he named Maurepas, another Pontchartrain, after the French ministers under whom the expedition had been sent out.

Biloxi and M6bile.—On the coast of the present State of Mississippi a settlement was made and a fort was built named Biloxi (1699), after a friendly tribe of Indians. This was the first capital of Louisiana. In 1702 the capital was moved to a new fort built on Mobile Bay at the mouth of Dog River. This settlement was the first made by white men in Alabama and was called Mobile. Nine years later, in consequence of overflow, a new site was chosen where the present city of Mobile stands. Here the capital remained until 1720, when it was moved back to Biloxi.

The growth of this colony was slow. In a few years Iberville died (1706), and France lost interest in a colony which was a constant tax upon her treasury. The preservation of the colony was due to Bienville,

its governor. Under the name Louisiana was included the entire Mississippi Valley from the Alleghanies to the Rocky Mountains. In 1712 the King of France granted this territory to Anthony Crozat, who only tried to make money out of the



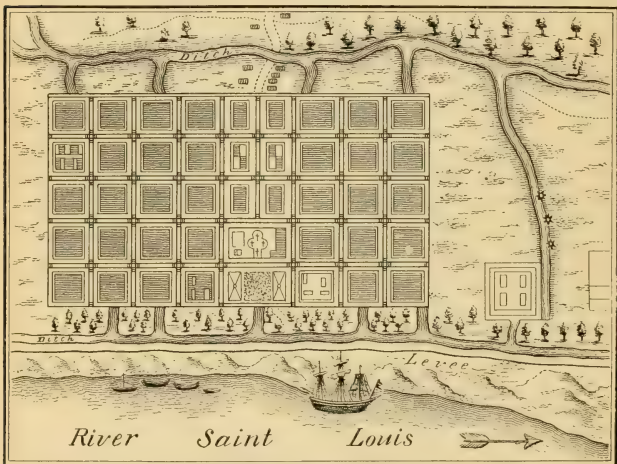
DEATH OF LA SALLE.

grant by trade and commerce, and did very little to build up the colony. Fort Rosalie was built near the present town of Natchez (1716). A post at Natchitoches, on the Red River, had already been built (1714) to repel the Spaniards of Mexico, whose

claims extended to this region. After a few years he voluntarily surrendered his grant to the king.

The Mississippi Company.—In 1717 Louisiana passed into the hands of John Law, a Scotchman living in France. He organized the celebrated Mississippi Company, the members and stockholders of which were promised great wealth, to be made by colonizing and selling lands in Louisiana.

Beginning of New Orleans.—Emigrants were sent



PLAN OF NEW ORLEANS IN 1718 AND 1720, FROM DUMONT'S LOUISIANA.

over, part of whom settled at Biloxi, while the rest went on to the Mississippi River. Selecting a spot but a few feet above the surrounding swamps, Bienville laid the foundation of the city of New Orleans (1718), but the capital of Louisiana was not established there until four years later (1722).

Agricultural Progress.—Lands along the river were sold and granted, and plantations were laid out. Slaves were brought from San Domingo and other West India islands. Posts were established on the river above and below. Inter-

course was opened with the settlements in Illinois and Canada. The Mississippi Company failed, but a permanent impulse had been given to colonization. The Jesuits introduced the cultivation of sugar cane (1751), which added to the agricultural prosperity of the colony.

Forecast of a Struggle.—Thus was the French power firmly established in the heart of the continent, from the Gulf of St. Lawrence on the northeast to the Gulf of Mexico on the southwest ; but on the Atlantic seaboard the English colonies were growing in population and wealth, and their pioneers were already pushing beyond the mountain barriers which separated them from Louisiana.

Questions.—What did the forts in the upper valley of the Mississippi become ? What did La Salle fail to do ? What prevented further settlements ? Who was Iberville ? What was he selected to do ? What was his brother's name ? What exploration did Iberville make ? What river did he enter ? How far up did he ascend ? How and by what route did Iberville return ? What lakes did he name ? When was Biloxi founded ? Of what importance was Biloxi ? What changes were made in the location of the capital ? To whom was the preservation of the colony due ? Where was Fort Rosalie built ? When ? Natchitoches ? What extent of territory did Louisiana cover ? Why did not Louisiana prosper under Crozat ? Who was John Law ? What company did he organize ? Where and when was New Orleans founded ? By whom ? When was sugar-cane culture introduced ? Between what two gulfs did the American dominions of France extend ? Toward what point were the English pioneers pushing forward ?

REFERENCE OUTLINE.

Louisiana.

- 1542. Visited by De Soto.
- 1681. Explored by La Salle.
- 1685. Arkansas Post established.
- 1690. { Explored by Iberville and Bienville.
 { Settled at Biloxi, Miss.
- 1702. First settlement in Alabama.
- 1711. Mobile, Ala., founded.
- 1712. Granted to Crozat.
- 1714. Natchitoches Post established.
- 1716. Fort Rosalie (Natchez) built.
- 1717. Granted to Mississippi Company.
- 1718. New Orleans founded.
- 1722. New Orleans becomes the capital.
- 1751. Sugar-cane culture introduced.

FOR ADVANCED CLASSES.

Topics for Discussion.

- I. La Salle in Texas. II. Iberville and Bienville. III. The Settlement of Biloxi. IV. John Law and the Mississippi Company. V. Early Colonial History of Louisiana. VI. The Founding of New Orleans.

References and Authorities.

Bancroft's *History of the United States*, vol. ii.

La Salle in Texas, 170-174. Iberville and Bienville, 188. Law and the Mississippi Company, 227. New Orleans founded, 228.

Hildreth's *History of the United States*, vol. ii.

La Salle in Texas, 98. Iberville colonizes lower Louisiana, 220. Biloxi settlement, 221. Mississippi Company, 281. New Orleans founded, 281.

Winsor's *Narrative and Critical History*, vol. iv.

La Salle's attempted colonization of lower Louisiana, 233-239.

Bryant's *Popular History of the United States*, vol. ii.

La Salle at Matagorda Bay, 517. Iberville's expedition, 522. Biloxi, 523. Law and the Mississippi scheme, 527. New Orleans, 531.

Parallel Readings.

INDEX GUIDE for comparative examination of other works and authorities.—*Texas, Attempted French Colonization of. La Salle, Death of. Iberville. Bienville. Biloxi, Settlement of. Law, John. Mississippi Company. New Orleans, Founding of.*

SPECIAL.—Gayarré: *History of Louisiana*. Martin: *History of Louisiana*. Grace King: *New Orleans—The Place and the People*. Chambers: *Louisiana—A Sketch in Outline of Its Past and Present*. Grace King's Bienville, in the *Makers of America* Series. Catherwood: *Story of Tonty*.

Review Work.

Why were the French so interested in the Mississippi and its tributaries? How far down the river did Marquette and Joliet come? Who explored the head waters of the Mississippi? What was the fort built in the Illinois country by La Salle called? What event influenced Dominique de Gourgues to sail to Florida with 180 men? Where and when was the first colonial government established? The first American constitution written? Why did France lose her interest in the Louisiana Colony? Who was Tonty? Who had the stronger claim to Delaware, the Duke of York or Cecil Calvert?

PREPARATORY GEOGRAPHY LESSON.

Upon a map of Virginia note the location of Richmond. Note, as you go back from the coast, what ridges of mountains are encountered.

Upon a map of the New England States note the location of Hartford, Windsor, and Fairfield, Conn. In what part of Connecticut is the Mystic River? Note that this river is not very far from Narragansett Bay. In what part of Massachusetts is Swansea? Deerfield? Hadley?

Upon a map of the Southern States locate New Berne, N. C. Natchez, Miss. Note the region of country in northeast Louisiana west of Natchez; the relative position of Natchez and New Orleans.

TOPICAL OUTLINE.

ATTEMPTED SETTLEMENTS.

FIRST FOR RELIGIOUS LIBERTY.

Villegagnon : South America.
 Ribault : Charlesfort, S. C.
 Laudonnière : Ft. Caroline, Fla.

French.

Inexperience.
 Want of endurance.
 Spanish atrocity.

FAILURES IN SOUTH VIRGINIA.

Ralph Lane : Roanoke.
 John White : Lost colony.

English.

Cruelty to Indians.
 Want of supplies.
 White's abandonment.

ATTEMPTS IN NORTH VIRGINIA.

Gosnold : Elizabeth Island.
 Plymouth Co. Popham, Col.

English.

Discontent.
 No perseverance.
 No strong motive.

VIRGINIA.

London Co. Smith : Jamestown.

English.

Self-government. Col. Assembly.
 Robert Hunt and the Church.
 Friendly Indians. Pocahontas.
 Individual landholding. Homes.
 Industry. Tobacco culture.

NEW NETHERLAND, N. JERSEY.

Dutch Cos. : New Amsterdam.
 English conquest : Elizabethtown.

Dutch.
 English.

Profitable fur trade.
 Dutch contentment. Patroons.
 Swedes found New Jersey.
 First refuge for Quakers.

NEW ENGLAND.

Standish : Plymouth Colony.
 Mass. Bay Co. : Salem.
 Wirthrop : Boston.

English.

Separatist migration.
 Home rule. Mayflower Compact.
 Friendly Indians. Massasoit.
 Puritan intolerance settles R.
 Island, N. Hampshire, Maine.

MARYLAND.

The Calverts : St. Mary's.
 The Puritans : Annapolis.
 Baltimore.

English.

Complete religious liberty.
 Refuge for Catholics.
 Self-government granted.

PENNSYLVANIA, DELAWARE.

Peter Minuit : Christina, Del.
 Wm. Penn : Philadelphia.

English.

William Penn's beneficence.
 Friendship with Indians.
 Home for persecuted Quakers.
 Religious liberty. Home rule.

CAROLINA : NORTH, SOUTH.

Green : Albemarle Colony,
 Edenton.
 Yeamans : Clarendon Col.,
 Cape Fear. [ton].
 Sayle : Carteret Col., Charles-

English.

Virginians fleeing tyranny.
 Liberal Lords Proprietors.
 Failure of the Grand Model.

GEORGIA.

Oglethorpe : Savannah.

English.

Philanthropy and protection.
 Selected colonists.
 Indians friends. Tomochichi.

LOUISIANA.

Iberville : Biloxi.
 Bienville : New Orleans.

French.

Enterprise of Iberville.
 Energy of Bienville.
 John Law's Miss. Colony.

*Causes of Failure.**Causes of Success.*

Reference Outline for Review.

Showing Settlements by Nations.

1562	South Carolina	Port Royal	Ribault.*
1564	Florida	Caroline	Laudonnière.*
1605	Nova Scotia	Port Royal	De Monts.
1608	Canada	Quebec	Champlain.
1685	Arkansas	Arkansas Post	Tonty.
1685	Texas	Matagorda Bay	La Salle.*
1699	Mississippi	Biloxi	Iberville.
1702	Alabama	Mobile	Iberville.
1714	Louisiana	Natchitoches	St. Denis.
1718	Louisiana	New Orleans	Bienville.
1565	Florida	St. Augustine	Menendez.
1582	New Mexico	Santa Fé	Espejo.
1699	Florida	Pensacola	Riolle.
1714	Texas	San Antonio	Teran.
1613	<i>New York</i>	<i>New Amsterdam</i>	<i>Dutch.</i>
1638	<i>Delaware</i>	<i>Christina</i>	<i>Minuit.</i>
1585	North Carolina	Roanoke Island	Raleigh.*
1602	Massachusetts	Winnepesaukee Island	Cosnold.*
1607	Maine	Kennebec River	Plymouth Co.*
1607	Virginia	Jamestown	London Co.
1620	Massachusetts	Plymouth	Pilgrims.
1623	New Hampshire	Portsmouth	Mason.
1630	Maine	Saco	Gorges.
1633	Connecticut	Windsor	Puritans.
1634	Maryland	St. Mary's	Calvert.
1636	Rhode Island	Providence	Williams.
1658	North Carolina	Lenoir	Green.
1664	New Jersey	Elizabeth	Carteret.
1670	South Carolina	Charleston	Sayle.
1681	Pennsylvania	Philadelphia	Penn.
1733	Georgia	Savannah	Oglethorpe.

English settlements in red; French in black; Spanish in blue;
Dutch and Swedish in italics.

* Attempted settlements.

Reference Outline for Review.

Showing Chronological Order of Settlements.

- 1562 Port Royal, S. C.
- 1564 Caroline, Fla.
- 1565 St. Augustine, Fla. (1579. Drake explores Oregon.)
- 1582 Santa Fé, N. M.
- 1585 Roanoke Island, N. C. (Davis seeks N. W. passage.)
- 1602 Elizabeth Island, Mass.
(1604. De Monts explores Bay of Fundy.)
- 1605 Port Royal, Nova Scotia.
- 1607 Kennebec River, Me.
- 1607 Jamestown, Va.
- 1608 Quebec, Canada. (1609. Hudson explores New Netherland.)
- 1613 New Amsterdam, N. Y.
- 1620 Plymouth, Mass.
- 1623 Portsmouth, N. H. (1629. Brulé explores Lake Superior.)
- 1630 Saco, Me.
- 1633 Windsor, Conn.
- 1634 St. Mary's, Md. (1634. Nicollet explores Wisconsin.)
- 1636 Providence, R. I.
- 1638 Christina, Del.
- 1653 Edenton, N. C.
- 1664 Elizabethtown, N. J. (1669. Joliet explores Lake Huron.)
- 1670 Charleston, S. C.
(1671. Marquette and Joliet explore Mississippi River.)
- 1681 Philadelphia, Pa.
(1681-1682. La Salle explores Louisiana.)
- 1685 Arkansas Post, Ark. Matagorda Bay, Tex.
- 1699 Pensacola, Fla. Biloxi, Miss.
- 1702 Mobile, Ala.
- 1714 San Antonio, Tex. Natchitoches, La.
- 1718 New Orleans, La.
- 1733 Savannah, Ga.

III. PERIOD OF COLONIAL DEVELOPMENT.

The Growing Colonies.

CHAPTER I.

THE BEGINNING OF INDIAN EXTINCTION.

The Indians and the First Virginia Settlers.—When the English landed at Jamestown, the Indians with whom the

English and French Treatment of the Indians Contrasted.

The French had less difficulty with the Indian than the English had. The French associated with him, hunted with him, and bought his furs. The English despised him, took his land from him, and pushed him out of the way. The French made a comrade of him; the English, an enemy. By his aid the French were able to make long journeys of exploration; because of his opposition, the English were for many years prevented from making their way into the interior.

colonists first came in contact were inclined to be hostile. But seeing how few the settlers were, Powhatan thought his people would never have cause to fear the presence of the whites. So he said to his braves: "Let them alone, they harm you not; they but take a little land."

The Indians and the First Massachusetts Settlers.—The Pilgrim Fa-

thers, standing upon the bleak coast of Massachusetts, were greeted with the words, "Welcome, Englishmen!" from Samoset, a friendly Indian who came as a messenger from Massasoit, chief of the neighboring Wampanoags [wam-pa-no'ags]. The Narragansetts, however, were not disposed to be so friendly. They sent the Plymouth settlers a rattle-snake skin filled with arrows, which was their way of declar-

ing war. But no war was waged, for Miles Standish, filling the snake-skin with powder and shot, sent it back with a message so defiant that Canonicus, the Narragansett chief, concluded it would not be wise to attack so bold an enemy. This was the chief who afterward became a warm friend of Roger Williams.

Powhatan, a Friend.—As the Jamestown settlers increased in number, the Indians became alarmed. They saw that it was not a little land the whites wanted, but large stretches of country. Several times they were ready to make war upon the colony; but Captain John Smith, while making expeditions into the Indian country, had shown himself so fearless that Powhatan was affected with admiration, and thought it best to have the whites as friends and not as enemies. The marriage of Pocahontas and John Rolfe awakened the feeling of friendship in the old chief's mind.

Opecancanough, an Enemy.—So long as Powhatan lived, this friendship continued. But when he died he was succeeded by one who had long cherished a feeling of intense hatred towards the whites. This was Opecancanough.

First Indian Massacre, 1622.—Opecancanough saw that, unless the whites were destroyed, the Indians would soon be driven from the land. He had little difficulty in stirring up his followers to hostility. He determined upon a general massacre of the Virginians, and so secretly were his plans carried out that several plantations and outlying settlements were taken completely by surprise. He put to death 349 colonists (1622). Jamestown, however, escaped, having received warning from a friendly Indian in time to make a successful resistance.

First Indian War in Virginia.—A bloody war followed this massacre. The colonists were reduced in number from 4,000 to 2,500; and the plantations and settlements from 80 to 6. The Indians, however, were driven from that part of Virginia, and a large area of new territory was opened to settlement.

Second Indian Massacre, 1644.—Twenty-two years

of peace and prosperity followed. But all this time Opecan-canough, in the back country to which he had been driven, was nursing his hatred and waiting for revenge. At last the time arrived when, winning to his cause several Indian tribes, he again fell upon the outlying Virginia settlements (1644). On the first day of the attack 500 colonists were massacred.

Second Indian War in Virginia.—A force from Jamestown at length reached the scene. The Indians were defeated, pursued, and killed. Opecan-canough, now 100 years old, was himself captured and taken to Jamestown, where he was shot by an enraged soldier. After his death Virginia enjoyed a long season of peace and security.

Questions.—How were the Indians inclined towards the first Virginia settlers? What did Powhatan say? How were the Pilgrim Fathers greeted by Samoset? How did the Narragansetts show their hostility? Why did not Canonicus make war against the Plymouth Colony? Why did the Virginia Indians become alarmed? What prevented them from making war? Who succeeded Powhatan? Tell about the first Indian massacre in Virginia. The first Indian war. How many years of peace followed this war? Tell about the second massacre and war.

FOR ADVANCED CLASSES.

Topics for Discussion.

- I. Territorial Claims of England, France, and Spain. II. Indian Wars of the Virginia Colony.

References and Authorities.

Bancroft's *History of the United States*, vol. i.

Spain's claims to the Chesapeake, 59. England's claim extending into the backwoods without bound, 85. Massacre and war, 128.

Hildreth's *History of the United States*, vol. i.

French claim to North America, 46. Spanish claim, 49. English claim, 37. Indian massacres and wars, 124, 526.

Winsor's *Narrative and Critical History*, vol. iii.

Indian wars in Virginia, 145, 147.

Bryan's *Popular History of the United States*.

Vol. i. Indian massacre of 1622, 478. Vol. ii. Opecan-canough and the war of 1644, 203.

Parallel Readings.

INDEX GUIDE for comparative examination of other works and authorities.—*Claims, Conflicting. Indian War, First Virginia. Opecan-canough. Indian War, Second Virginia. Jamestown, Massacre of.*

SPECIAL.—Cooke: *Virginia*, 124, 182. Doyle: *Virginia*.

CHAPTER II.

INDIAN CONFLICTS : NORTHERN COLONIES.

The Pequot War.—The settlers of Connecticut were not permitted to locate without opposition. They had moved too far from the seacoast and had occupied lands which the Indians had resolved not to give up. The most powerful of the Connecticut tribes was the Pequots, whose chief was Sassacus.

Scarcely had the colonists established themselves in their new homes, when these Indians made war upon them (1634).

The Pequots lurked about the Connecticut villages, waylaid settlers, committed murder, and destroyed so far as they could everything belonging to the whites. The colonists realized that there could be no peace unless the Indians were subdued. A force of ninety men from Hartford, Wethersfield, and Windsor, under Captain John Mason, marched into the Indian country to attack the principal Pequot village on the Mystic River. Mason and his men were accompanied by seventy friendly Indians, under Uncas, chief of the Mohegans.



BLOCKHOUSE FOR DEFENSE.

Mason surprised the Indian village one morning two hours before dawn. The Pequot sentinel had only time to shout "Owanux ! Owanux !" ("Englishmen ! Englishmen !") before the attack began. The village was burned to the ground and more than five hundred men, women, and children were put to death (1637).

Sassacus, with 300 warriors, hastened to the assistance of the village, but arrived too late. The whites went on with the war until the Pequot tribe was completely dispersed. Sassacus himself was driven west towards the Hudson. Many of his

people were captured and sent as slaves to the West Indies. The few warriors that were left joined the Mohegans and Narragansetts. The Pequot War was followed by forty years of peace, during which the New England colonists increased in number to more than sixty thousand.

King Philip's War.—Massasoit (the chief of the Wam-

panoags), who was friendly to the settlers along the Massachusetts coast, had been succeeded by his sons Philip and Alexander. They had no friendly feelings for the whites, whose settlements were extending every day farther and farther into the interior. They saw how rapidly the English were increasing in number, and knew that the Indians would soon have to give up their lands if the



PURITANS GOING TO CHURCH.

whites were not driven away. Many tribes joined Philip, and soon all New England was engaged in a bloody conflict, which is known in history as King Philip's War.

This war began (1675) with an attack upon Swansea, Mass., in which several persons were killed. The whole country quickly became alarmed, and troops were sent from Boston and

Plymouth against the savages. Philip was besieged at Pocasset for thirteen days, but managed to escape. The Indians next burned the town of Deerfield (September 1, 1675), and attempted to do the same with Hadley and Hatfield, but were repulsed. The insecurity of their homes and the sudden attacks made by the Indians led the colonists to build block-houses for common refuge and defense. Even in the daytime, and in going to church, it was not safe for them to pass along the road unarmed.

Attack on the Narragansetts.—The Indian uprising soon extended to the tribes of Maine and New Hampshire. The Narragansetts, who were early friends of Roger Williams, did not openly join in the hostilities, but it was believed that they encouraged Philip. A force sent against them destroyed one of their towns, in which many had taken refuge. More than a thousand were killed, and the rest then joined Philip. The Indians now attacked town after town, but the colonists successfully defended their homes.

Philip's Death and its Results.—Philip went to New York and tried in vain to get the Mohawks to join the New England Indians in their war against the whites. Soon after his return to his home at Pokanoket, or Mount Hope, he was attacked by Captain Church, one of the most celebrated Indian fighters at that time. In trying to escape, Philip was shot by an Indian deserter acting under Church (August 12, 1676).

The war in Massachusetts ended with King Philip's death. It was the most destructive war in which the early colonists engaged. More than six hundred settlers were killed and as many dwellings destroyed. But it broke the power of the Indians, and opened more land for settlers.

Questions.—What was not permitted to the settlers of Connecticut? Why? Who were the Pequots? Who was the Pequot chief? What did the Pequots do as soon as the Connecticut settlements were established? What was their manner of fighting? What did the colonists realize? Tell what you know of the Pequot War. How many years of peace followed the Pequot War? What was the next tribe to give trouble? Who had succeeded Massasoit as chief of the Wampanoags? Why did they feel unfriendly toward the Connecticut settlers? What was the great conflict with the New England Indians

called? With what did King Philip's War begin? What town was attacked and burned? What two towns escaped? What common refuge had the colonists when they were attacked? In what manner did they go to church? Give a reason why the Narragansetts were attacked. With what did the war in Massachusetts end? What was the result of King Philip's War?

FOR ADVANCED CLASSES.

Topics for Discussion.

I. Pequot War. II. King Philip's War.

References and Authorities.

Bancroft's *History of the United States*, vol. i.

Pequot War, 266. King Philip's War, 386.

Hildreth's *History of the United States*, vol. i.

Pequot War, 247. King Philip's War, 477-491.

Bryant's *Popular History of the United States*.

Vol. i.—Pequot War begins, 556. Vol. ii.—Pequot War, 1-17. Philip's War, 401-419.

Fiske's *Beginnings of New England*.

Pequot War, 129. King Philip's War, 211-236.

Parallel Readings.

INDEX GUIDE for comparative examination of other works and authorities.—*Pequots, The*. Sassacus. Mason, Captain John. King Philip's War. Church, Captain.

SPECIAL.—Doyle's *English in America*: vol. i., *Puritan Colonies*, 215-234; vol. ii., 213-229.

Lodge: *English Colonies*, 259, 373. Thwaites: *The Colonies*, 136. Drake: *Making of New England*.

CHAPTER III.

INDIAN CONFLICTS: SOUTHERN COLONIES.

The Tuscarora War.—That which had happened to the Northern colonists, when they moved farther into the interior, took place at a later date among the Southern colonies. The

Graffenreid's Colony.

The fertile lands of Carolina attracted a very desirable class of immigrants. Among the hard-working people who made their way to this region from different European countries was a colony of 600 Germans and Swiss under Baron de Graffenreid. These established themselves on the Neuse River (1710), and called their settlement New Berne.

country back of the North Carolina settlements was occupied by the cruel Tuscaroras, who belonged to the Iroquois family of Indians. During forty years of growth the North Carolina settlements pushed into the interior and encroached upon the hunting grounds which afforded the Indians their necessary sup-

port. This continual and increasing occupation of their lands aroused the jealousy of the Tuscaroras, who were made still more hostile and revengeful by the unjust treatment they received from white traders. Therefore they determined to attack the settlers at the first opportunity; and such an opportunity occurred when the Albemarle colonists were quarreling among themselves about who should be governor. The Indians thought it a good time to begin a massacre.

The Tuscaroras were joined by neighboring tribes who were equally alarmed by the spread of white settlements, and a conspiracy was thus formed which aimed at the complete de-



INDIAN WARRIORS.

struction of the colonists. Beginning on September 11, 1711, an attack was made at several different points and extended from the Roanoke River to the Neuse and to Pamlico Sound. Houses and barns were burned, from which the inhabitants

fled only to be horribly massacred by the infuriated savages. On the Roanoke 150 were killed, and about half as many at New Berne. Assistance, however, soon came.

Defeat of the Tuscaroras.—In the backwoods of Virginia was a trail, or path, leading from Carolina to New York, along which Iroquois and Tuscaroras journeyed when they visited each other. Governor Spottswood of Virginia guarded this trail, and kept the Iroquois back from helping the Tuscaroras. Captain John Barnwell came up from South Carolina with

a force of militia and Yemassee Indians, and defeated the Tuscaroras with great slaughter (1712).

End of the Tuscarora War.—The next year (1713) Colonel James Moore attacked the Tuscarora chief, Handcock, in his palisaded fort of Nahucke, near what is now the village of Snow Hill. The fort, with 800 prisoners, was taken. This ended the war; for it so disheartened the Tuscaroras that they abandoned Carolina and pushed on to New York, where they joined the Iroquois confederacy. The colonists then made a treaty with the Coree and other remaining tribes.

The Yemassee War.—The peace that followed the Tuscarora War did not last long. The Yemassees, who had

The Natchez War.

When the French established Fort Rosalie, in the lower Louisiana territory, they were brought in contact with the Natchez. At first these Indians were friendly, but as time passed their feeling changed. De Chopart, the cruel commandant of Fort Rosalie, determined to establish an additional settlement, and selected a site upon which the Natchez village of the White Apple was located. He haughtily demanded that the Indians should leave; but they pleaded for time to gather their crops, and meanwhile planned a conspiracy, which was successfully executed (1729). Fort Rosalie was captured. Not a single building was left standing. Of the 700 men that garrisoned the fort, few escaped to tell the tale. The success of the Natchez was of short duration, however. A force of French and Choctaws, under Commandant-General Perier, arriving from the lower settlements, compelled them to take refuge in the swamps beyond the Mississippi, whither they were pursued. Many of them were captured, and the remainder took refuge with the Chickasaws.

so bravely assisted the whites against the Tuscaroras, were the first to break it. These Indians were incited against the English by the Spaniards of Florida. The Yemassees were joined by warriors from the Muskogean and other tribes. More than ten thousand engaged in the bloody work.

End of the Yemassee War.—The Yemassee War began with an attack upon Pocotaligo (April 15, 1715). In a few hours, more than one hundred settlers were killed. Governor Craven of South Carolina, at the head of a company of cavalry, was fiercely attacked by more than five hundred Yemassee warriors, but he repulsed them. Shortly after, Colonel Mackay, with a force from Charleston, destroyed the Yemassee town of Coosawhatchie and drove the Indians toward the south. The war ended after long and stubborn fighting, by which over four hundred of the whites lost their lives. The Indians were driven beyond the Savannah River, where they were secure from attack, Georgia not yet having been settled by whites. For a long period afterwards the Carolina settlements spread westward without opposition.

Questions.—To what family did the Tuscaroras of North Carolina belong? During forty years of growth what had the North Carolina settlements done? What reasons had the Tuscaroras for becoming hostile? What opportunity did they seize to attack the whites? What conspiracy was formed? When did the attack begin? How far did it extend? What resulted? What help did Governor Spottswood of Virginia give the Carolinians? Who defeated the Tuscaroras? Where was the Tuscarora chief Handcock attacked? By whom? How many prisoners were taken? What became of the Tuscaroras? What was the next tribe to make war upon the whites of Carolina? Who incited the Yemassee? How many Indians engaged in the war? With what attack did the Yemassee War begin? When? What victory did Governor Craven win? What town did Colonel Mackay destroy? How many whites lost their lives in this war? Where were the Yemassee driven?

REFERENCE OUTLINE.

COLONIAL WARS : INDIAN.

Indian Wars.

- 1622. First Indian War (Opecancanough), Virginia.
- 1636. Pequot War (Sassacus), Connecticut.
- 1644. Second Indian War (Opecancanough), Virginia.
- 1675. Wampanoag War (King Philip), Massachusetts.
- 1711. Tuscarora War (Handcock), North Carolina.
- 1715. Yemassee War (Sanute), South Carolina.
- 1729. Natchez War (Great Sun), Louisiana.
- 1757. Cherokee War (Ouconostota), South Carolina.*
- 1763. General Indian War (Pontiac), Northwestern Territory.*

* See chap. xi., Third Period.

FOR ADVANCED CLASSES.

Topics for Discussion.

I. The Tuscarora War. II. The Yemassee War. III. The Natchez War.

References and Authorities.

Bancroft's *History of the United States*, vol. ii.

Tuscarora War, 203-205. Natchez War, 232.

Hildreth's *History of the United States*, vol. ii.

Yemassee and Tuscaroras, 228. Tuscarora War, 268. Yemassee War, 276.

Winsor's *Narrative and Critical History*, vol. v.

Tuscarora War, 218. Yemassee War, 318, 321. Natchez War, 46.

Bryant's *Popular History of the United States*, vol. iii.

Tuscarora War, 91. Yemassee War, 94.

Parallel Readings.

INDEX GUIDE for comparative examination of other works and authorities.—*Tuscaroras*, *The*. *Handcock, Chief*. *Graffenried's Colony*. *Yemassee*, *The*. *Natchez War*, *The*.

SPECIAL.—Gayarré's *History of Louisiana*, vol. i., 309-349: The Natchez. Moore: *History of North Carolina*. William Gilmore Simms: *The Yemassee* (fiction). Clarke: *History of North Carolina*.

Review Work.

Who was the chief of the Virginia Indians before Opecancanough? When and where was the first English settlement in Connecticut made? What Massachusetts colony did Massasoit befriend? Why did the sons of Massasoit and the Wampanoags become unfriendly to the Connecticut settlers? When was the Albemarle Colony founded? What claim had Spain to Georgia and South Carolina? Which was founded first, New Orleans or Fort Rosalie (Natchez)?

CHAPTER IV.

THE EARLY AMERICAN REBELLION.

The Virginians' Love of Liberty.—The Virginians were loyal to the king and to the mother country; but they also loved liberty and right, and hated tyranny. Two of the royal governors soon learned that the people were willing to fight against injustice and oppression. These two were Sir John Harvey and Sir William Berkeley.

Sir John Harvey was removed by the Colonial Assembly (1635) because of his tyrannical actions, and particularly because, as was charged, he had sold lands belonging to the people. The king, though at first disposed to sustain the governor, became convinced that the people were right, and three years later removed Harvey from office.

Sir William Berkeley was governor for thirty years. At first he was just and courteous to everyone, and the people were greatly pleased with him ; but being an ardent royalist he was removed by Cromwell, who permitted the people to elect their own governor and to make their own laws.

Although the Virginians were free and prosperous under Cromwell, they were at heart loyal to King Charles and rejoiced when he was restored to the throne. A month before the res-



toration they reelected Berkeley governor, and the king promptly sent him a commission. Thus far the king and the people of Virginia seemed to be on friendly terms.

Discontent in Virginia.—But the king, regardless of the rights of the people, gave all the land in Virginia to two

of his noblemen ; he imposed heavy taxes and deprived the people of the liberties they had enjoyed. Berkeley had grown harsh and cruel, and enforced these unpopular measures. The people, therefore, became discontented and indignant, and

Beginning of Colonial Discontent in Virginia.

Among the causes of discontent were the following : England passed laws which interfered with the trade of the colonists, taking all this trade to herself. She imposed such heavy taxes upon what was raised and sent out of the colony and what was brought into it that the planters had very little profit left for themselves. She took away the right to vote from every colonist unless he owned land or was a "housekeeper" or "freeholder." The royal governors of Virginia prevented the Colonial Assembly from making popular laws. They did this by "proroguing," or dismissing, the assembly whenever it was about to pass a law which the governor did not approve.

the spirit of resistance sprang up and prevailed throughout the province.

Berkeley Fails to Defend the Colonists.—During this period of dissatisfaction the Indians attacked the back settlements of Virginia (1675). Governor Berkeley paid no attention to the attack and made no effort to protect the colonists. They suspected that the reason for this was that he was carrying on an extensive trade with the Indians for his own benefit, and did not wish to lose this trade by interfering.

Bacon's Rebellion.—Nathaniel Bacon, Jr., a brave and popular young lawyer, asked permission to pursue the Indians, but he was refused. When again they ravaged the frontier (1676), killing the overseer of Bacon's plantation and one of his servants, he placed himself at the head of a party of colonists, and set out without the governor's authority to punish the savages. Berkeley proclaimed him a rebel and ordered him to stop, but Bacon marched on and defeated the Indians at Bloody Run, near the present city of Richmond.

The People Uphold Bacon.—Berkeley then tried to put Bacon under arrest, but the people opposed this, and the governor was forced to give up the idea. Now was the time for the people to right many wrongs which had been imposed upon them. But first they must punish the Indians. The cry went up for Bacon to lead them.

Bacon's Attack ; Berkeley Defeated.—With a large

force Bacon proceeded to Jamestown and compelled the governor to issue a commission to him as "General of Indian Wars"; then marching to the headwaters of the Pamunkey River, he



NATHANIEL BACON AND HIS MEN.

drove the Indians from the country. While Bacon was gone upon this expedition, Berkeley again proclaimed him a rebel. Most of the people sided with Bacon, but a few sided with the governor. On Bacon's return civil war followed. Berkeley

was driven from Jamestown and that town was burned to the ground to keep it from ever falling into Berkeley's hands again. The ruins of its church may still be seen.

Bacon's Death; Berkeley's Cruelty.—Bacon died in the midst of his success. His party now had no able leader, and Berkeley received assistance from England and once more came into power. He revenged himself most cruelly by putting to death twenty-three of the rebels. Even the king was disgusted with Berkeley's cruel conduct and so called him back to England. He died shortly after reaching England and within one year of Bacon's death.

Questions.—To whom were the Virginia colonists brave and loyal? What did they love and hate? What two governors were made to feel this? What happened to Harvey? Why? How long was Berkeley governor? How did he act at first? What happened to him? Why? What did Cromwell permit the people to do? Who was reflected? Before what event? Tell what you know of the causes of discontent among the Virginians. What spirit prevailed? What happened while the people were thus dissatisfied? Why did not Berkeley make an effort to protect the colonists from the Indians? Who asked for permission to pursue the Indians? What did Bacon do when the Indians made a second attack? What was he proclaimed? Where did he defeat the Indians? For what was now the time? What was the first thing to be done? What did Bacon compel the governor to issue? Where did he then march? Who sided with Bacon? What followed upon Bacon's return? What happened to Jamestown during the course of war? How did Berkeley come into power again? How many rebels did he put to death? What effect had Berkeley's cruelty?

FOR ADVANCED CLASSES.

Topics for Discussion.

- I. Sir William Berkeley, Governor of the Virginia Colony.
- II. The Beginnings of Colonial Discontent with England.
- III. Bacon's Rebellion.

References and Authorities.

Bancroft's *History of the United States*, vol. i.

Sir William Berkeley, 445, 458, 467. The great rebellion in Virginia, 455-468. Colonial discontent, 454, 456, 472.

Hildreth's *History of the United States*, vol. i.

Sir William Berkeley, 366. His cruelties, 551. Bacon's Rebellion, 531-533, 542-545. Discontents in Virginia, 526.

Winsor's *Narrative and Critical History*, vol. iii.

Bacon's Rebellion, 150.

Bryant's *Popular History of the United States*, vol. ii.

Colonial discontent, 291. Berkeley's inefficiency, 296. Bacon's Rebellion, 296-313.

Parallel Readings.

INDEX GUIDE for comparative examination of other works and authorities.—*Harvey, Gov. John. Berkeley, Sir William. Bacon, Nathaniel.*

SPECIAL.—Cooke's *Virginia*: General Discontent, 230; Bacon and Berkeley, 237-298. Doyle's *English in America*: volume upon Virginia, Maryland, and the Carolinas, chap. ix.

CHAPTER V.

A VESTIGE OF SUPERSTITION.

Witchcraft in Europe.—The belief in witchcraft was a result of that superstition which abounded in the Dark Ages and led to a faith in sorcery, enchantments, and familiarity with evil spirits. The delusion prevailed over a great part of Europe and affected both the ignorant and intelligent classes. During a part of the seventeenth century almost everybody believed in the existence of witches and of their evil work. In England laws were passed against witchcraft, making it a crime, and thousands of women were hanged, burned, or otherwise punished, upon the charge of having committed the crime.

Witchcraft in America.—The strange infatuation crossed the Atlantic and made Salem, Mass., its chief center. Learned and pious men embraced and even defended it. Among these was the Rev. Increase Mather, a graduate of Harvard and of Dublin College, and the author of more than a hundred separate books. He was not so active in the prosecution of witches as was his son, Cotton Mather, also a graduate of Harvard, a clergyman, and the author of more than three hundred books and pamphlets. It was through the misguided zeal of the son, and largely due to his active defense of the reality of witchcraft, that the imaginations of the unlearned were inflamed and the Salem excitement became a mania.

A most remarkable instance of belief in witches occurred in the history of Massachusetts. The thirteen-year-old daughter of John Goodwin of Boston was reproved by an aged servant of the family. The child, for revenge, pretended to be bewitched and accused the old servant of being the witch. The Rev. Cot-

ton Mather, two of whose books had done much to spread the belief in witchcraft, brought the old servant to trial, and she was found guilty and put to death (1688).

Prosecutions by Samuel Parris.—Although the people were greatly excited over the subject and many more accusations were made, no other prosecution occurred until four years after, when Samuel Parris, a fanatic and narrow-minded minister of Salem, accused his Indian servant, Tituba, of bewitching his daughter and niece. Tituba was whipped until a false confession was wrung from her. Mr. Parris then began to prosecute others. Those whom he accused were generally people whom he disliked.

The Innocent Suffer.—Sarah Good, Martha Cory, Rebecca Morse, Sarah Cloyce, and others, all good and upright

women, were accused and put into prison. At the trials Parris questioned the witnesses in such a way as to get the answers he wanted, and he kept back all testimony in favor of the prisoners. Those found guilty were hanged.

Wardwell, Cory, and Willard.

In spite of denials, those arrested were punished. Finally, a woman named Deliverance Hobbs, when arrested, pretended to be guilty. She was released, and others, believing this to be the only way to escape, also pretended to confess themselves guilty. Samuel Wardwell confessed and was safe; but, ashamed of himself for doing so, retracted his confession and spoke out boldly against the superstition. He was hanged. Stubborn old Giles Cory refused to speak when accused. He was pressed to death. John Willard, an officer, was convicted and executed because he refused to arrest accused persons.

Attention was next directed to those who doubted the existence of witches. Edward Bishop, a farmer, and George Burroughs, a graduate of Harvard College and a rival of Parris in the ministry, were both imprisoned for disbelief.

Magnitude of the Delusion; Its Sudden Disappearance.—For six months the witchcraft delusion raged in Salem. At the end of this period 20 persons had been hanged, 55 tortured into confession, 150 thrown into jail, and more than two hundred and fifty accused were awaiting trial. At last the Colonial Assembly of Massachusetts took away the power of the judges who had been trying the witchcraft cases.

The delusion then went down as suddenly as it had arisen. The people soon realized that they had been guilty of horrible and cruel acts. Parris was driven from Salem, and remorse tortured many who had taken an active part in the prosecutions.

Questions.—Of what was the belief in witchcraft a result? How widely did the delusion prevail? What classes of people were affected by it? Where were laws made at one time against witchcraft? In what American town did witchcraft find its chief center? What sort of men defended it? Tell something of the two New England men who advocated it. In what colony did a most remarkable case of belief in witchcraft occur? What child was first to accuse anyone of witchcraft? Whom did she accuse? Why? What was done to the old servant? When did the next prosecution take place? Who was Samuel Parris? Whom did he first accuse? What was done to Tituba? Whom did Parris then begin to prosecute? What four good women were among those put in prison? What kind of questions would Parris put at the trials? What happened to those who were found guilty? Who else were prosecuted besides those accused of witchcraft? Why were Edward Bishop and George Burroughs imprisoned? How long did the witchcraft delusion last? How many were hanged? Tortured? Thrown into jail? How was the delusion stopped? What happened to Parris?

FOR ADVANCED CLASSES.

Topics for Discussion.

The Salem Witchcraft Delusion.

References and Authorities.

Bancroft's *History of the United States*, vol. ii.

Witchcraft at Salem, 58-65.

Hildreth's *History of the United States*, vol. ii.

Witchcraft, 145. In Boston, 148. At Salem, 152.

Bryant's *Popular History of the United States*, vol. ii.

The witchcraft delusion, 450-472.

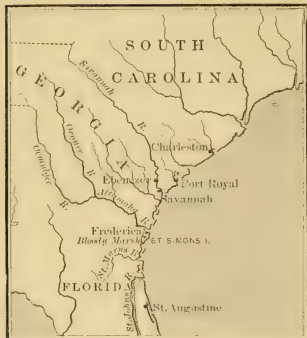
Parallel Readings.

INDEX GUIDE for comparative examination of other works and authorities.—*Salem Witchcraft*. Mather, *Reverends Increase and Cotton*. Parris, *Rev. Samuel*. Cory, *Giles*.

SPECIAL.—Doyle's *English in America*. *Puritan Colonies*, vol. i.: The witchcraft tragedy. 384. Longfellow: *Giles Cory* (poem). *Encyclopædia Britannica*: Witchcraft.

PREPARATORY GEOGRAPHY LESSON.

Upon a map of the New England States locate Dover, N. H.; Salmon Falls, Me.; Haverhill and Deerfield, Mass.; and on a map of New York find Schenectady.



Upon a map of North America note the nearness of Canada to New England; of Massachusetts to Nova Scotia; of Georgia and South Carolina to Florida.

Upon a relief map of the United States note the valleys that lead from Canada down into New York and New England.

Upon the accompanying map note the relative positions of St. Augustine, Savannah, and Charleston. Note how vessels would go from St. Augustine to St. Simon's Island. At the mouth of what river is this island? Note the position of Bloody Marsh, and of Frederica.

CHAPTER VI.

COLONIAL QUARRELS: ENGLISH AND FRENCH.

James II. and His Tyrannies.—The Duke of York, to whom New Netherland had been granted,* in time became King of England under the title of James II. He sought to take away from the English people many of their rights and liberties. The colonies received a large share of his attention. Most of them were compelled to give up their charters, and tyrannical governors were sent over by the king to execute his commands.

The Charter Oak.—In Connecticut the people refused to give up their charter. The officer sent by the king called a meeting, at which he made a

First Colonial Revolts against England.

When James was deposed in England his tyrannical governors in America were driven from office by the colonists. Sir Edmund Andros, the "tyrant of New England," was seized by the people of Boston and imprisoned (1689). Nicholson, the acting governor of New York, was compelled to leave, and Jacob Leisler assumed charge. Leisler did not promptly surrender his authority to the new governor sent over by William and Mary. His delay gave his enemies an excuse to accuse him of treason. He was found guilty and executed.

* See chap. viii., Second Period.

formal demand for it. The charter lay upon the table in full view. Suddenly the candles were put out, and when they were again lighted the charter had disappeared. William Wadsworth had carried it off, and it was hidden in the hollow of an old oak. Thus the charter was preserved.

Revolution of 1688.—But the people of England soon rebelled, and the famous English Revolution of 1688 took place. James was driven from the throne and was succeeded by his daughter, Mary, and her husband, William, Prince of Orange. Louis XIV., King of France, took up the cause of James, and made war upon William and Mary. In European history it is called the War of the English Succession.



THE CHARTER OAK.

King William's War.—The French and English colonies in America had long been jealous of one another, so they also, in sympathy with their mother countries, engaged in war. This war is known in American history as King William's War. It lasted eight years (1689–1697). During the progress of this war the French of Canada and their Indian allies made a number of incursions into English territory. Dover, N. H. (1689), Salmon Falls, Me. (1690), and Schenectady, N. Y. (1690), were surprised and their inhabitants massacred. The last named town was burned, and but two houses were left standing.

First Colonial Congress; Haverhill Massacre.—The English colonists were soon aroused to action. A congress, composed of representatives from Massachusetts Bay, Plymouth, Connecticut, and New York, met in New York to decide how best to retaliate upon the French (1690). Two expeditions to Canada were planned, one to go by sea, under Sir William Phips; the other by land, under General Winthrop. Neither accomplished anything. In the last year of the war Haverhill,

Mass., suffered from Indian attack and massacre. Hostilities ceased when the Treaty of Ryswick was signed (1697).

Queen Anne's War; Deerfield Massacre.—Five years after, there arose in Europe the War of the Spanish Succession (1702–1713), and in it France and England fought against each other. So the French and English colonists again went to war. Anne, another daughter of James II., had succeeded William and Mary on the throne of England. In American history this war is known as Queen Anne's War. Deerfield, a frontier settlement of Massachusetts, was the town to suffer this time. A force under De Rouville came from Montreal, attacked the town (1704), massacred fifty of its inhabitants, took more than one hundred captives, plundered the neighboring villages, and burned the houses.

The English in turn made an expedition from Boston against Acadia (1710). They captured Port Royal and changed its name to Annapolis. Since that time the province, under the name of Nova Scotia, has belonged to England.

The capture of Quebec was also planned. The expedition went by sea, but was wrecked at the mouth of the St. Lawrence River. A force of New York, Connecticut, and New Jersey militia, under General Nicholson, set out by land to capture Montreal, but met with no success (1711). Two years afterwards (1713), peace was declared by the Treaty of Utrecht.

King George's War; Capture of Louisburg.—A third war between the colonies, known as King George's War, began in 1744. Like the other two, it had its origin in a European war—the War of the Austrian Succession—which created between French and English fresh enmity that affected their rival colonies in America. It lasted but four years and is marked by but one important event—the capture of Louisburg, one of the strongest fortresses in America (1745). The attacking forces were led by Generals Pepperel and Warren, and consisted for the most part of Massachusetts colonists, who won much glory by their success. At the close of the war, which ended with the Treaty of Aix-la-Chapelle (1748), Louisburg was given back to the French.

Questions.—Under what title did the Duke of York succeed to the throne of England? What did he seek to do? What were most of the colonies compelled to do? Whom did the king send to rule them? Where did the people refuse to give up their charter? Who made a formal demand for it? What happened? Where was the charter hidden? By whom? What king took sides with James? What did Louis XIV. do? What was this war called? What did the American colonies of France and England do when these nations went to war? What name was given to this war in America? How long did it last? What three towns were surprised by French and Indians? What met in New York in 1690? Why? What two invasions of Canada were planned? What was the result? What was the last town to suffer from Indian attack? What treaty ended the war? What war arose five years afterwards? What was this war called in America? What Massachusetts town suffered from French attack in Queen Anne's War? What successful expedition was made by the English from Boston? To what was the name of Port Royal changed? The capture of what other city was planned during Queen Anne's War? Why was the expedition a failure? What peace treaty ended the war? When was it signed? What was the third war between the colonies called? In what European war did this war originate? How many years did it last? What was the one important event of this war? By whom was Louisburg captured? How did Louisburg rank as a means of defense? What peace treaty ended this war? What disposition was made of Louisburg?

REFERENCE OUTLINE.

COLONIAL WARS : ENGLISH AND FRENCH.

1689-1697.—King William's War of English Succession.

- | | | |
|-------|---|-------------------------------------|
| 1689. | { | Dover (New Hampshire) Massacre. |
| | { | Sir Edmond Andros imprisoned. |
| | { | Schenectady (New York) Massacre. |
| | { | Salmon Falls. |
| 1690. | { | Colonial Congress at New York. |
| | { | Canadian expeditions { Phips. |
| | | { Winthrop. |
| 1697. | { | Haverhill (Massachusetts) Massacre. |
| | { | Peace Treaty of Ryswick. |

1702-1713.—Queen Anne's War of Spanish Succession.

- | | |
|-------|-------------------------------------|
| 1704. | Deerfield (Massachusetts) Massacre. |
| 1710. | Port Royal (Nova Scotia) taken. |
| 1711. | { Quebec expedition. |
| | { Montreal expedition (Nicholson). |
| 1713. | Peace Treaty of Utrecht. |

1744-1748.—King George's War of Austrian Succession.

- | | |
|-------|----------------------------------|
| 1745. | Capture of Louisburg. |
| 1748. | Peace Treaty of Aix-la-Chapelle. |

FOR ADVANCED CLASSES.

Topics for Discussion.

- I. English Revolution of 1688 and its Effect upon American Colonial History. II. First Colonial Revolts against English Authority. III. King William's War. IV. Queen Anne's War. V. King George's War. VI. First Colonial Congress.

References and Authorities.

Bancroft's *History of the United States*.

Vol. i.—Revolution of 1688, 598. Massachusetts revolts, 599. Leisler's revolt, 601. Vol. ii.—King William's War, 180-185. Queen Anne's War, 192-206. King George's War, 300, 305-311. Treaty of Utrecht and its territorial results, 211. Aix-la-Chapelle Treaty, 311.

Hildreth's *History of the United States*, vol. ii.

English Revolution, 113. Massachusetts rebels, 113. Leisler, 116. First intercolonial war, 126, 130-135, 136, 141, 193, 195. Second intercolonial war, 258-276. Third intercolonial war, 394-401. First Colonial Congress, 133.

Bryant's *Popular History of the United States*, vol. iii.

English Revolution, 12. Leisler, 14. First intercolonial war, 29. Second, 45. Third, 208.

Parallel Readings.

INDEX GUIDE for comparative examination of other works and authorities.—*Charter Oak*. The. Wadsworth, William. *Andros, Sir Edmund*. *Leisler, Jacob*. *King William's War*. *Schenectady Massacre*. *Haverhill, Indian attack upon*. *Ryswick, Treaty of*. *Congress, First Colonial*. *Queen Anne's War*. *Deerfield, Massacre of*. *Fort Royal, English Capture of*. *Utrecht, Treaty of*. *King George's War*. *Louisburg, Capture of*. *Aix-la-Chapelle, Treaty of*.

SPECIAL.—Fisher : *Colonial Era*, chaps. xii. xiv. Fiske : *Beginnings of New England*, 271-274. Johnson : *History of the French War*, chaps. vi. x. Parkman : *Frontenac and New France*, chap. xvii. Parkman : *A Half Century of Conflict*, vol. i., chaps. iii.-v.; vol. ii., chaps. xviii.-xx.

Review Work.

How long after the founding of Salem did the witchcraft delusion break out? When was Annapolis, N. S., settled by the French? What Indian attack in Virginia happened about the same time as King Philip's War in Massachusetts? When was the first Colonial Assembly established in Virginia? Who was governor of Virginia when the Tuscarora War took place? Was this before or after Berkeley's time?

CHAPTER VII.

COLONIAL QUARRELS : ENGLISH AND SPANISH.

Queen Anne's War and Carolina.—The Spaniards of Florida proved very troublesome neighbors to the early settlers of South Carolina. In the War of the Spanish Succession, mentioned in the last chapter, both Spain and France were opposed to England. While the English colonies at the north were carrying on war with the French of Canada, the English

of South Carolina were engaged with the Spaniards of Florida.

In the first year of the war (1702), Governor Moore of South Carolina, with 1,200 colonists and Indian allies, proceeded against the Spanish fort of St. Augustine ; but he found it too strong and abandoned the enterprise. An expedition against the Appalachian Indians, who were allies of the Spaniards, was successful.

Spaniards Attack Charleston and are Defeated.—

A French and Spanish fleet, under Le Feboure, with more than a thousand men, attempted the capture of Charleston (1706). Nine hundred soldiers, under Colonel William Rhett, defended the city. The Spaniards demanded that the English surrender, but Governor Johnson replied: "I hold this country for the Queen of England. My men will shed the last drop of their blood to defend it from the invader." The Spaniards landed troops at the three neighboring points of James Island, Wando Neck, and Seawee Bay. The first force was driven off by Captain Drake ; the second, numbering 200 men, was captured by Captain Cantey ; and the third surrendered to Captain Fenwick. Colonel Rhett, in the meantime, collected a small fleet and drove off the ships of the enemy.

War with Spain.—After the war ended, the Spaniards showed their ill-feeling by protecting runaway slaves from South Carolina and inciting the Indians to hostility. Later the colony of Georgia was planted (1733), and soon afterwards it was seen that another war between England and Spain would take place. It was declared in 1739.

Oglethorpe Invades Florida.—Oglethorpe had returned from England, whither he had gone after establishing the Georgia colony, bringing with him a well-disciplined company of 600 men.* As commander-in-chief of the Carolina and Georgia forces, he was ordered to invade Florida. With 900 men, most of whom were friendly Indians, he appeared before St. Augustine (1740), but finding the fort strongly garrisoned he returned without attacking it.

* See chap. xv., Second Period.

Oglethorpe's Stratagem.

After the battle of Bloody Marsh, Oglethorpe planned a night attack upon the main body of the enemy. His plan was revealed to the Spaniards by one of his men who deserted. Knowing that the deserter would also tell how small was the English force, he thought of a way to deceive the Spanish commander. A Spanish prisoner was set at liberty and given a sum of money to carry a letter to the deserter. This letter pretended to tell the deserter what to do, and thus make it appear to the Spaniards that the deserter was a spy. The letter told the deserter to make the Spaniards believe that the English were weak, and to induce them to make an attack. If he failed in this he was to try to keep them in those parts for three days longer, when a powerful fleet and force from Charleston would arrive.

As intended, this letter was taken to Montiano. It puzzled the Spanish commander very much, and the deserter was regarded just as Oglethorpe intended he should be. The Spaniards held a council of war and decided to retreat. Three vessels, coming in sight off the bar just at this time, made it appear that the reinforcements mentioned in Oglethorpe's letter were about to land. The Spaniards hastily embarked, and in the panic to escape abandoned a great quantity of their military stores.

In retaliation fifty-six vessels and a force of about seven thousand men, under Montiano, governor of St. Augustine, appeared off St. Simon's Bar, for the purpose of attacking Frederica (1742).

Oglethorpe, from his fort on St. Simon's Island, made a gallant defense, but the enemy's ships forced their way past it, and going up the Altamaha River, landed 5,000 men. These marched back to attack the fort, but Oglethorpe abandoned it before they arrived.

Battle of Bloody Marsh.

—The Spaniards then advanced upon Frederica. A part of their force was routed and driven back some distance. Oglethorpe hastened to Frederica for reinforcements. In his absence the men whom he had left to watch the Spaniards were repelled by a force under Don Antonio Barba ; but a platoon

and company of rangers, under Lieutenants Mackay and Sutherland, wheeled aside during the retreat, and, concealing themselves in a grove of palmettoes, attacked the pursuing Spaniards, whose victory was now turned to crushing defeat. This gallant action is known as the Battle of Bloody Marsh. The Spaniards soon after abandoned the attempt to conquer Georgia.

Oglethorpe's Remarkable Success.—The success of Oglethorpe in this campaign was indeed remarkable. With his little band, numbering scarcely six hundred men, he had defeated and driven back a well-equipped army of 5,000, destroyed

some of their best troops, captured provisions, ammunition, and military stores, and saved Georgia and Carolina from being overrun and plundered by the Spaniards.

Questions.—Who proved very troublesome neighbors to the South Carolina and Georgia settlers? In what war were Spain and France against England? In the first year of the war who proceeded against St. Augustine? Why was Governor Moore compelled to abandon the enterprise? What expedition was more successful? Under whom did a fleet attack Charleston? When? Who defended the city? What did Governor Johnson reply to the Spanish demand for surrender? At what three points were Spanish troops landed? What happened to the first Spanish force? Second? Third? Who in the meantime drove off the enemy's ships? How did the Spaniards show their ill-feeling after the war ended? After Georgia was settled it was seen that what would soon take place? When was war between Spain and England declared? Who was commander-in-chief of the Georgia and Carolina forces? What was he ordered to invade? Why did he fail to attack St. Augustine? How did the Spanish retaliate? What point did Montiano propose to attack? Up what river did the Spanish ships force their way? How many men did the Spaniards land? Why did these march back? Upon what town did they next advance? What happened to a part of their force? What happened while Oglethorpe had gone for reinforcements? What two lieutenants won the battle of Bloody Marsh? Why was Oglethorpe's success remarkable? From what did he save Georgia and Carolina?

REFERENCE OUTLINE.

COLONIAL WARS: ENGLISH AND SPANISH.

South Carolina and Florida.

1702. Governor Moore invades Florida.

1706. Le Feboure fails to capture Charleston.

Georgia and Florida.

1739. War between England and Spain declared.

1740. Oglethorpe invades Florida.

1742. { Montiano invades Georgia.
 { Spaniards defeated at battle of Bloody Marsh.

FOR ADVANCED CLASSES.

Topics for Discussion.

I. Queen Anne's War in the South. II. The War between the Georgia and Florida Colonies.

References and Authorities.

Bancroft's *History of the United States*, vol. ii.

Expedition of South Carolina against St. Augustine, 193. Charleston attacked by Spaniards,

194. War between England and Spain, and Georgia's part therein, 292-299.

Hildreth's *History of the United States*, vol. ii.

Moore's expedition, 228. Charleston attacked, 231. Spanish attack Georgia, 383.

Bryant's *Popular History of the United States*, vol. iii.

Moore's expedition, 81. Spanish invasion, 85. Spanish invasion of Georgia, 158.

Parallel Readings.

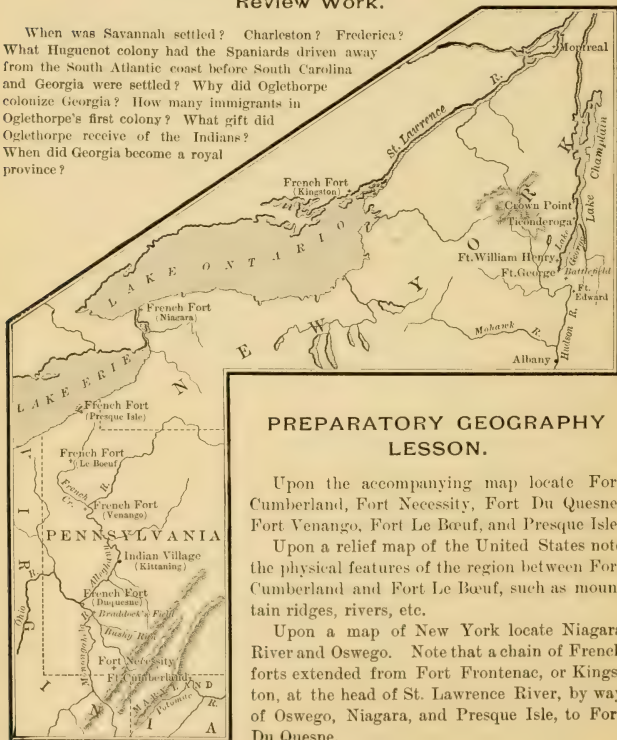
INDEX GUIDE for comparative examination of other works and authorities.—*South Carolina, Spanish Invasion of. Le Febvre. Rhett, Colonel William. Oglethorpe, General James. Montiano. Bloody Marsh, Battle of.*

SPECIAL.—Fisher: *Colonial Era*, chap. xx. Jones: *History of Georgia*, vol. i., chap. xxii.

Bruce: *Life of General Oglethorpe*, chap. xv.

Review Work.

When was Savannah settled? Charleston? Frederica?
What Huguenot colony had the Spaniards driven away
from the South Atlantic coast before South Carolina
and Georgia were settled? Why did Oglethorpe
colonize Georgia? How many immigrants in
Oglethorpe's first colony? What gift did
Oglethorpe receive of the Indians?
When did Georgia become a royal
province?



PREPARATORY GEOGRAPHY LESSON.

Upon the accompanying map locate Fort Cumberland, Fort Necessity, Fort Du Quesne, Fort Venango, Fort Le Boeuf, and Presque Isle.

Upon a relief map of the United States note the physical features of the region between Fort Cumberland and Fort Le Boeuf, such as mountain ridges, rivers, etc.

Upon a map of New York locate Niagara River and Oswego. Note that a chain of French forts extended from Fort Frontenac, or Kingston, at the head of St. Lawrence River, by way of Oswego, Niagara, and Presque Isle, to Fort Du Quesne.

Upon a map of British America note the relative positions of Louisburg, Quebec, Montreal, and Kingston.

Upon the accompanying map note the position of Crown Point. At the head of what lake is Ticonderoga? Where is Fort William Henry? George? Edward?

The Struggle for Supremacy.

CHAPTER VIII.

A YOUTH AND HIS MISSION.

Conflicting Claims.—The three intercolonial wars were forerunners of a mighty struggle to decide whether the greater part of North America would belong to England or France. The French claimed the valleys of the Ohio and Mississippi rivers because of the explorations of La Salle and other French pioneers. This claim conflicted with several grants made by England to her colonies, as these grants were intended to extend from sea to sea.

The Ohio Company.—The English colonies spread westward very rapidly, in the period following King George's War. Virginia was the first colony whose extension beyond the Alleghanies was checked by the French claims. The Ohio Company, consisting of Virginia and London gentlemen, had been organized in 1748, and had received from the king a grant to a large tract of land in the region known as the Great Woods, lying between the Kanawha and Monongahela rivers. Surveyors sent out to locate the land for settlement found that French troops were already in possession west of the Ohio River, and had imprisoned three English traders in a fort at Presque Isle [presk-êl], on Lake Erie.

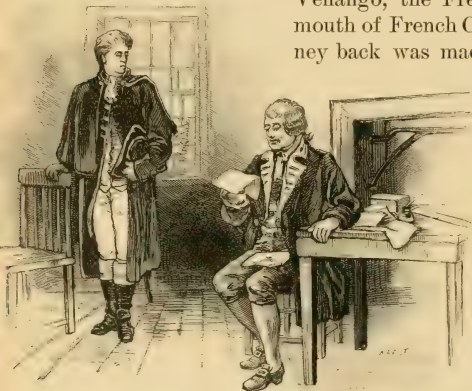
Governor Dinwiddie of Virginia determined to send a formal protest against French occupation of Virginia territory; and to carry this protest he selected Major George Washington, a young man then only twenty-one years of age, but already noted for courage, intelligence, and good judgment.

Washington's Journey.—Washington set out with an

interpreter, and at Will's Creek (now Cumberland, Md.) he was joined by a frontiersman named Gist, an Indian guide. Thence he proceeded through the unbroken wilderness to the French fort Le Bœuf, on French Creek, fifteen miles south of Lake Erie. Here he was politely received by the French commandant, to whom he delivered Dinwiddie's message. The commandant positively refused to withdraw.

Washington's Return.—Washington returned by way of Venango, the French fort at the mouth of French Creek. His journey back was made in midwinter

and he encountered many dangers. At one time, while crossing a river on a rude raft, he fell into the icy water and narrowly escaped drowning. At another time he was shot at by an ambushed



GEORGE WASHINGTON AND THE FRENCH COMMANDANT.

savage, but again escaped. Finally his horse gave out, and he was compelled to go on foot the rest of his way back to the white settlement, where he found another horse. He arrived at Williamsburg after having been gone eleven weeks.

Virginians Aroused; Washington Appointed Lieutenant-Colonel.—The answer brought back by Washington aroused Virginia to activity. The Ohio Company, at his suggestion, sent a party to build a fort at the junction of the Alleghany and Monongahela rivers. Governor Dinwiddie called out six companies of volunteers, and the Assembly voted an appropriation to pay the expenses of defending their province. Washington was appointed lieutenant-colonel, and set

out with two companies, April, 1754. When he arrived at Will's Creek he learned that the force of the Ohio Company had been driven off by the French, who had completed the fort and called it Du Quesne [doo kăn].

Great Meadows and Fort Necessity. — Crossing the mountains, he came to a broad plain called Great Meadows. Here he was told by a friendly Indian, named Half-King, that a French scouting party was near. Washington, with forty men, surprised the French, whose leader, Jumonville, was killed, and all but one of the party were either killed or taken prisoners. At Great Meadows Washington now threw up intrenchments, which he called Fort Necessity. Here he was joined by the rest of the Virginia troops and by a company from South Carolina under Captain Mackay. Colonel Fry died at Will's Creek, and Washington was now in command.

He began to advance cautiously, but being warned of the approach of the French, he returned to Fort Necessity to await their coming. The fort was soon surrounded by a large force of French and Indians, and an attack was made. The fight lasted all day. At nightfall the French asked for a truce, and offered to let Washington's force march out with their arms and flags, and return unmolested to Fort Cumberland. As Washington's ammunition was exhausted, he accepted the offer. Upon his

Franklin's Plan of Union.

The British government saw that to overcome the French it was necessary for the English colonies to act together. It recommended that the colonies form a union. Delegates met at Albany, N. Y. (1754), and after entering into a league with the Iroquois Indians, considered a plan of union, drawn up by Benjamin Franklin, one of America's greatest thinkers. The plan provided for the organization of a general government, consisting of a President-General, appointed by the crown, and a Grand Council, chosen by the Colonial Assemblies. This government was to have power over all the colonies, just as the United States Government now has power over all the States. The plan was favored by all the delegates except those from Connecticut; but when submitted to the king and to the various colonial assemblies for approval, it was rejected by both, and, curiously enough, for the same reason.

The king thought that the appointment of the Grand Council by the Colonial Assembly gave the colonies too much power. The colonists thought that the appointment of the President-General by the king gave the king too much power. Thus early did the king see that a union of the colonies was dangerous to his authority, and the colonists show that they were unwilling that the king increase his authority over them.

return to Virginia the Assembly voted him the thanks of the province.

Questions.—Of what were the intercolonial wars forerunners? What was this struggle to decide? What valleys did the French claim? Because of whose explorations? With what did this claim conflict? In what period did the English colonies spread westward very rapidly? What was the first colony to be checked in its westward growth by the French? What company had been formed? What grant had it received? What did its surveyors find upon reaching the Great Woods? How did the French show their hostility? What did Governor Dinwiddie determine to do? Whom did he select to take his message to the French? How old was Washington at the time? Give the particulars of Washington's journey. Of his return. What effect had the answer brought back by Washington? What did Governor Dinwiddie do? To what rank was Washington promoted? What did he learn at Will's Creek? Where did he then go? What was Washington told when he came to Great Meadows? Whom did Washington surprise? Give an account of the result. What name did he give to his intrenchments? By whom was he joined? What happened to Washington now? Why? Where did Washington return? Why? Tell what then happened. What offer did Washington accept? Why?

FOR ADVANCED CLASSES.

Topics for Discussion.

- I. Conflicting Territorial Claims of France and England. II. The Ohio Company. III. Beginning of the French and Indian War. IV. Washington's Journey. V. Franklin's Plan of Union.

References and Authorities.

Bancroft's *History of the United States*, vol. ii.

French occupation of territory west of Alleghanies, 186. Basis of England's claim to Western Canada, 222. Rival claims to Ohio valley, 343. The Ohio Company, 362. Franklin's plan of union, 387. Washington's mission, 378. Beginnings of the French War, 381-385.

Hildreth's *History of the United States*, vol. ii.

Conflicting claims and the Ohio Company, 433. Beginnings of the French War, 426-441. Plan of union, 442.

Bryant's *Popular History of the United States*, vol. iii.

Conflicting claims, 251. Ohio Company, 257. Washington, 259. French begin hostilities, 260. Union proposed, 261.

Parallel Readings.

INDEX GUIDE for comparative examination of other works and authorities.—*Territorial Claims, French. Territorial Claims, English. Ohio Company, The. Dinwiddie, Governor. Washington, George, Early Career of. Fort Du Quesne. Jumonville. Necessity, Fort. Great Meadows, Battle of. Plan of Union, Franklin's.*

SPECIAL.—Fisher: *Colonial Era*, chap. xviii. Johnson: *History of the French War*, chap. xi. Roosevelt's *Winning of the West*, chap. ii.: The French of the Ohio Valley. Sloane's *French War and the Revolution*, chap. iii.: English and French in North America. Winsor's *Mississippi Basin*: chap. xiv., Undeclared War; chap. xv., Rival Claimants for North America. Hart's *Formation of the Union*, 28; The Albany Congress.

CHAPTER IX.

THE OLD FRENCH WAR.

England and France Sustain their Colonies.—Thus far the contest had been between Virginia troops and the French forces in the Ohio territory, but the mother countries rallied to the support of their respective colonies. France sent reënforcements to Canada. England sent Sir Edward Braddock with two regiments to Virginia (January, 1755) to take charge of military operations as commander-in-chief, and the war known as the French and Indian War began. No formal declaration of war had been made, and both nations hesi-

tated. The governors of five colonies met in council, and planned three distinct campaigns. One of these was against Fort Niagara, another against Crown Point, and the third against Fort Du Quesne.

General Braddock's Boastful Advance.—The expedition against Fort Du Quesne was undertaken by the commander-in-chief himself.

Braddock was a vain,

stubborn, and over-confident general who believed that British troops could not be conquered. His campaign preparations were very elaborate. He could not be persuaded that warfare in America was different from what it was in Europe. The advance into the enemy's country was made from Fort Cum-



FRENCH SOLDIERS.

berland, Maryland, with drums beating, flags flying—the army presenting a beautiful appearance.

Washington, with about one thousand colonial troops from Virginia, Maryland, and New York, had joined the expedition. He was serving as aid-de-camp to the general, and having had

Expulsion of Acadians.

When, during Queen Anne's War, England took possession of Acadia she permitted the Acadians to remain. They were a quiet, frugal, and industrious people, and their settlements had greatly increased. Although their country belonged to England, the Acadians sympathized with their fellow-countrymen of Canada. They took no active part in the war between the English and French, yet it was thought that they would do so at the first opportunity. England decided to drive them out of their country and distribute them among the English colonies, where they could do no harm to the English cause. Colonel Monckton, with 3,000 troops from Boston, took possession of the Acadian forts about the Bay of Fundy. One feature of the expulsion was especially cruel, members of the same family being separated from one another, and villages and farm buildings being burned. More than six thousand were torn from their homes, forced on board British vessels, and carried away. Many escaped to the wilderness and were sheltered by the Indians. At one point, under Boishebert, a gallant and effective resistance was made. Of those carried off, many reached the French settlements in lower Louisiana, where their descendants are found to this day.

experience in backwoods fighting, he tried to put Braddock on his guard, but in vain. A celebrated woodsman, named Captain Jack, offered to lead the advance with his rangers so as to prevent surprise, but met with a haughty refusal from the English general. Precautions, he thought, were for inexperienced colonial troops, but British regulars were invincible.

General Braddock's Defeat and Fall.—The result was as might have been expected. The movements of the English were watched all along by Indian scouts, who reported to the commandant at Fort Du Quesne. As the British drew near, a young and gallant French officer, named De Beaujeu, sallied out of the fort with a force, arranged his men advantageously in ambush, and when the English came up poured into them a deadly fire

that threw them into confusion. Little then did scientific tactics avail. Braddock was mortally wounded, his army routed, and the total destruction of the whole expedition was prevented only by Washington. He, with his Virginians, covered the rear of the retreating army, and fought the enemy

according to his own method. Thus ended in failure the Fort Du Quesne campaign.

Crown Point Expedition Successful.—The expedition against the French fort at the mouth of the Niagara River was abandoned as soon as General Shirley, the leader of the expedition, heard of the Du Quesne failure. The advance against Crown Point, however, met with better success. Baron Dieskau, a brave German officer in the service of France, defended this point. The English forces consisted of ill-equipped and inexperienced men from New York and New England. They were led by Sir William Johnson, through whose influence a number of Mohawk Indians, under their chief, Hendrick, joined the expedition.



BRITISH SOLDIERS.

Battle at Lake George; French Defeated.—The opposing forces met at the head of Lake George. Dieskau defeated an advance party of the English under Colonel Williams, and following up his advantage attacked the main body. In the early part of the battle Johnson was disabled and the command fell to General Lyman. The French were defeated, and Dieskau, severely wounded, was taken prisoner. After building Fort William Henry near the scene of battle, the victorious army returned.

Questions.—What had the contest thus far been? Who was appointed commander-in-chief of the English? When did he arrive? Why did both nations hesitate? What three campaigns were planned? Which one did Brad-

clock lead? What kind of a general was he? What could he not be persuaded to believe? In what manner was the advance into the enemy's country made? Who had joined the expedition? Who offered to lead the advance so as to prevent surprise? What French officer sallied out to meet Braddock? What was the result? Who prevented the total destruction of the English army? How? What was the result of the Niagara expedition? Which of the three expeditions met with better success? Who was Dieskau? Who led the English against Crown Point? Where did the opposing forces meet? What partial success did Dieskau have? What was the result of his attack upon the main body? What fort did the English build?

FOR ADVANCED CLASSES.

Topics for Discussion.

I. Braddock's Defeat. II. Johnson's Lake George Expedition. III. Expulsion of the Acadians.

References and Authorities.

Bancroft's *History of the United States*, vol. ii.

Braddock's expedition, 420-424. Dieskau's defeat, 435-437. Acadians expelled, 429-434.

Hildreth's *History of the United States*, vol. ii.

Braddock's defeat, 459. Lake George expedition, 462. Shirley's failure, 464. Acadians expelled, 456.

Bryant's *Popular History of the United States*, vol. iii.

Braddock, 263-270. Johnson's expedition, 283-288. Acadians expelled, 274-280.

Parallel Readings.

INDEX GUIDE for comparative examination of other works and authorities.—*Braddock, Sir Edward. De Beaujeu. Fort Du Quesne Expedition. Shirley, General, Expedition of, against Niagara. Crown Point, Capture of. Johnson, Sir William. Dieskau, Baron. Acadians, Expulsion of. Boishebert.*

SPECIAL.—Fisher: *Colonial Era*, chap. xviii. Johnson: *French War*, chaps. xii. and xiii. Sloane's *French War and the American Revolution*, chap. iv.: The Outbreak of the War. Winsor's *Mississippi Basin*, chap. xix.: The Ohio and St. Lawrence won. Hart: *Formation of the Union*, 30. Read Longfellow's *Evangeline*.

CHAPTER X.

ENGLAND VICTORIOUS.

Montcalm's Successes.—After the capture of Dieskau the command of the French fell to the Marquis de Montcalm, one of the ablest and bravest officers that ever served in the armies of France. This selection of a commander was very important, because now England had formally declared war against France. A fort had been built near Oswego by Shirley,

upon his return from the unsuccessful Niagara expedition. Montcalm captured and destroyed this fort (1756); he also captured Fort William Henry, with its garrison of 2,000 men under Colonel Moore (1757).

Fort William Henry Massacre.—Permission to retire in safety to Fort Edward, farther south, had been granted to the English garrison of Fort William Henry as one of the terms of surrender. Scarcely had they left the fort when they were attacked by the Indians of Montcalm's army. A horrible massacre took place. Montcalm and his officers did all in their power to stop the slaughter, but they found it impossible to control the fury of the savages.

William Pitt Prime Minister.—About this time William Pitt, a man of great ability, became prime minister of England. From this time on, the English prosecuted the war very vigorously. Officers were sent from England to drill and



MONTCALM.

train the men of the colonial armies. Lord Loudon was put in command. Loudon made an attempt to capture Louisburg (1757), but was unsuccessful, and was superseded by Abercrombie.

Last Important French Success.—The capture was planned of Louisburg, Ticonderoga, and Du Quesne. The three attacking armies gathered at Halifax, Albany, and Phila-

Capture of Fort Frontenac.

While Abercrombie was proceeding against Ticonderoga, a smaller expedition, under Colonel Bradstreet, marched to Oswego and embarked for Fort Fontenac, which surrendered after a two days' siege. Large quantities of stores and ammunition, intended for Fort Du Quesne, fell into the hands of the English. The success of the second English expedition against Fort Du Quesne was thus largely due to the capture of Fort Frontenac.

Abercrombie himself led the expedition against Ticonderoga. Montcalm had greatly strengthened this fort. In attacking it, Abercrombie was defeated with a loss of almost

two thousand men. This, however, was the last important French success in the war.

English Victories.—Generals Amherst and Wolfe led the



SIR JEFFREY AMHERST.

expedition against Louisburg. After besieging it for two months they captured the city, with almost six thousand prisoners (July, 1758). Amherst next took command in New York, and Ticonderoga and Crown Point fell into his hands (1759). Fort Du Quesne had already been taken by Washington, and its name had been changed to Fort Pitt. Amherst's success was closely followed

by that of General Prideaux, who captured Fort Niagara (1759), but lost his life in the engagement.

French Retreat to Canada.—The French were greatly weakened by these English successes. They were receiving little help from the mother country. Driven at all points from the disputed territory, they took refuge in Canada, which the English now determined to conquer.

The fate of Canada depended on Quebec, the strongest fortress in America. Eight thousand men, commanded by General Wolfe, a gallant young officer, who had distinguished himself under Amherst at the siege of Louisburg, set out for the St. Lawrence, bent upon the capture of the fortress. Wolfe erected fortifications upon the Island of Orleans, just below the city, and his batteries soon opened fire.

The Siege of Quebec.—Far up the rugged heights that rose almost perpendicularly from the water's edge stood the principal fort, little affected by the bombardment. The skillful Montcalm was in charge of the French defenses, and for a time it looked as if English success were doubtful. At last Wolfe found it necessary to resort



GENERAL WOLFE.

to desperate measures. In one of his reconnoiterings he had noticed a rough, partly hidden path which led to the plains above, known as the Plains of Abraham.

In the darkness of the night his men embarked and floated silently down the river to the foot of the path. By great good fortune the difficult ascent was made, and in the morning the English were drawn up in line of battle on the plains.

English Capture of Quebec; Montreal Surrenders.—The opposing forces were about equal in number, and the contest was a fierce one. Both commanders displayed the greatest bravery, and both fell mortally wounded. The English were successful, the French

taking refuge in the city, which soon after surrendered (1759). The fall of Quebec was followed by the surrender of Montreal.

Capture of Fort Du Quesne.

The expedition against Fort Du Quesne was led by General Forbes, a gallant Scotch officer (1758). The French had gathered a large number

of Ottawas and other Indians, and awaited his coming with boasts that they would serve him as they had served Braddock. Forbes was joined at different points by bodies of colonial troops, among whom were Colonel Washington and other Virginians. The progress of the English army was slow, but their delay proved advantageous, for many of the Indian allies of the French grew weary of waiting, and went to their homes, leaving the French greatly reduced in numbers. A reconnoitering party, sent forward under Major Grant,



WHERE WOLFE LANDED.

rashly attempted to surprise and capture the fort, but were driven back with great loss. Following up this victory, a strong detachment under De Vitre appeared before the principal encampment of the English and gave battle, but was repulsed. Forbes now advanced upon the fort, but on drawing near found only smoking ruins. The French had abandoned the field. From the ashes of Fort Du Quesne sprang the present city of Pittsburg, so named in honor of the great English prime minister.

The War Ends; Treaty of Paris.—The power of France in the New World was now destroyed. All her territory was taken from her except two small islands south of Newfoundland. The treaty which ended the war was signed at Paris (1763). By this treaty France ceded Canada and the eastern half of the Mississippi Valley to England, and the western half to Spain. In addition to the territory given up by France, England also received Florida from Spain. To compensate the king of Spain for the loss of Florida, France ceded to him the western half of the Mississippi Valley. This territory was that part of Louisiana lying west of the Mississippi River, and included "New Orleans and the island on which it stands," although this "island" was east of the Mississippi.

Questions.—Who succeeded Dieskau in the command of the French? Why was this appointment important? What two forts did Montcalm capture? What happened to the garrison of Fort William Henry? Who became prime minister of England about this time? Who were sent from England? Who was put in command? What unsuccessful attempt did Loudon make? Who was then put in command? The capture of what three places was planned? Where did the three attacking armies gather? Which expedition did Abercrombie lead? What was the result of his attack upon Ticonderoga? Who led the expedition against Louisburg? What was the result of this expedition? Where did Amherst now take command? What two forts now fell into his hands? What other fort had already been taken? What new name was given to it? Who captured Niagara? Where did the French take refuge after the English successes? Upon what did the fate of Canada depend? Who set out to capture Quebec? How did the English gain the heights? What was the result of the battle of the Plains of Abraham? What other town besides Quebec surrendered? What treaty ended the war? What territory was ceded by France to England by the Treaty of Paris? By Spain? What territory was ceded by France to Spain? For what reason?

FOR ADVANCED CLASSES.

Topics for Discussion.

- I. Montcalm and His Victories. II. Loudon and Abercrombie. III. Amherst. IV. Wolfe and the Capture of Quebec. V. Treaty of Paris and its Resulting Territorial Changes.

References and Authorities.

Bancroft's *History of the United States*, vol. ii.

Montcalm's victories, 464, 490, 553. Loudon, 447. Amherst, 481, 502. Wolfe's Quebec expedition, 503-512. Treaty of Paris and territorial changes, 562.

Hildreth's *History of the United States*, vol. ii.

French capture Oswego, 470. Fort William Henry, 475. Defeat Abercrombie, 482. Amherst captures Louisburg, 481. Ticonderoga and Crown Point, 486. Wolfe and Quebec, 488-491. Treaty and territorial accessions, 502.

Bryant's *Popular History of the United States*, vol. iii.

Montcalm, 289-294. Amherst, 297, 302. Wolfe and Quebec, 304-310. Treaty and results, 311.

Parallel Readings.

INDEX GUIDE for comparative examination of other works and authorities.—*Montcalm*, Marquis de. *William*, Massacre of *Fort Pitt*, William. *London*, Lord. *Abercrombie*, General. *Amherst*, General. *Crown Point*, Capture of, by Amherst. *Niagara*, Capture of *Fort*, by *Prideaux*. *Du Quesne*, Capture of, by *Forbes*. *Wolfe*, General. *Louisburg*, captured by Amherst and Wolfe. *Quebec*, Fall of. *Abraham*, Heights of; *Battle of*. *Paris*, *Peace Treaty of*.

SPECIAL.—Johnson: *French War*, chaps. xiv.-xxi. Sloane's *French War and the Revolution*: Chap. v., French successes; chap. vi., English successes. Winsor's *Mississippi Basin*, chap. xxi.: The Treaty of Paris. Hart's *Formation of the Union*: 33, conquest of Canada; 34, geographical results. Parkman: *Montcalm and Wolfe*.

CHAPTER XI.

OUCONOSTOTA AND PONTIAC.

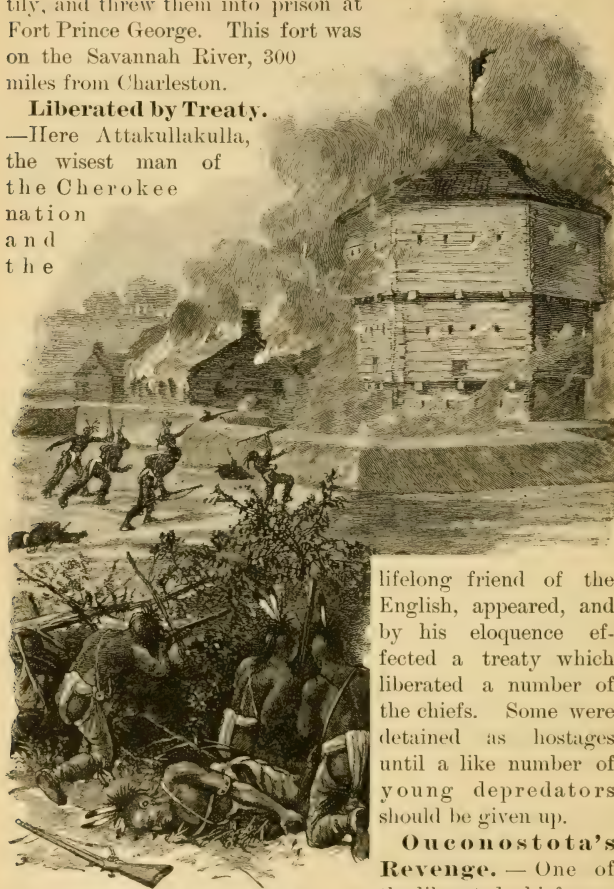
Cause of the Cherokee War.—As the French war drew to a close there arose in the South one of the fiercest Indian wars in American history. The Cherokees had long been friends of the English, and had assisted them in the war against the French. A party of young warriors, while returning through the backwoods of Virginia from the capture of Fort Du Quesne, lost their own horses, and caught some that seemed to be without owners. Those to whom the horses belonged followed these Indians, and, forgetting how bravely the Cherokees had been helping the English, fired upon them. Fourteen were shot, and many others were made prisoners.

Governor Lyttleton Imprisons the Chiefs.—This affair was reported to the Cherokee nation, and, contrary to the advice of older men, a band of young braves took the war path and ravaged the Carolina frontier. Governor Lyttleton summoned a force and proceeded against them. He was met by thirty-two headmen of the tribe, who explained that the young warriors had resorted to war against the advice of their chiefs. Had the governor acted wisely, he might have averted the terrible war which followed. He received the chiefs very haugh-

tilly, and threw them into prison at Fort Prince George. This fort was on the Savannah River, 300 miles from Charleston.

Liberated by Treaty.

—Here Attakullakulla, the wisest man of the Cherokee nation and the



INDIAN ATTACK IN PONTIAC'S WAR.

lifelong friend of the English, appeared, and by his eloquence effected a treaty which liberated a number of the chiefs. Some were detained as hostages until a like number of young depredators should be given up.

Ouconostota's Revenge. — One of the liberated chiefs was Ouconostota, a man who wielded great influence over the tribe. Smarting under

who wielded great influence over the tribe. Smarting under

his wrongs, he sought revenge. He drew Captain Cotymore from the fort by stratagem and killed him. For this the hostages, twenty-two in number, were mercilessly put to death.

The Cherokee Uprising.—The whole Cherokee nation now rose, and a terrible period of bloodshed followed. Colonel Montgomery and 1,200 men were sent from Amherst's army at the North (1760) to help the Carolinians. Montgomery captured several villages, but later met with so much resistance that he was glad to give up the attempt to punish the savages.

Cherokees Defeated ; Treaty Made.—Amherst next sent Colonel James Grant, who took the field with 2,600 men. As he advanced, the Cherokees made desperate attacks upon his troops, all of which he repulsed. Grant taught the Indians a terrible lesson. He burned fourteen of their towns, destroyed their fields, and laid waste their territory. For many a day his name was another word for destruction. Many joined Attakulakulla in suing for peace, and a treaty was made.

Pontiac's War.—The English soon found that, although they had compelled France to give up her territory, they could not occupy it without a further struggle. The Indians were unwilling to surrender their rights. Pontiac, the powerful chief of the Ottawas, beheld with anger his dominion transferred to the English. Possessed of ability rarely met with in an Indian, he organized one of the greatest Indian conspiracies ever formed against the whites. Of the twelve forts about the great lakes, acquired by the English from the French, eight fell into his hands, several of them being captured by stratagem. Detroit escaped surprise by the merest accident.

End of the War.—Pontiac's War lasted three years. The power of the Indian confederacy was broken only by most vigorous measures upon the part of the English. The treaty that ended the war was signed at Oswego (1766) by a number of chiefs assembled for the purpose.

Battle of Bushy Run.

The same barbarities which characterize every Indian war were practiced in this. The settlements of northwest Virginia and western Pennsylvania suffered most severely. In the early part of the contest Fort Pitt was besieged by the Indians, but Colonel Henry Bouquet marched from Philadelphia to its relief and defeated the Indians at the battle of Bushy Run (1763).

Questions.—What arose in the South as the French war drew to a close? What tribe had helped the English in this war? What happened to a party of young Cherokee warriors? How did the young braves of the tribe revenge themselves? Who proceeded against them? Who waited upon Governor Lyttleton? What did they explain? How did he treat these thirty-two chiefs? Who was Attakullakulla? What did he effect? Who was Oconostota? How did he avenge himself? Whom did the English punish for Captain Cotymore's death? What now followed? Whom did Amherst send from New York to help the Carolinians? What did Colonel Montgomery do? Whom did Amherst next send? What did Grant do? Who sued for peace? What did the English soon find? Who was Pontiac? What did he do? How many forts did the Indians capture? What was one of the forts that escaped? How long did Pontiac's War last? Where was the treaty ending the war signed? When?

FOR ADVANCED CLASSES.

Topics for Discussion.

I. The Cherokee War. II. Pontiac's War.

References and Authorities.

Bancroft's *History of the United States*.

Vol. ii.: Lyttleton provokes war with Cherokees, 513-521, 550. Vol. iii.: Pontiac's War, 41-49.

Hildreth's *History of the United States*, vol. ii.

Cherokee War, 491, 497. Pontiac's War, 504, 506.

Bryant's *Popular History of the United States*, vol. iii.

Pontiac's conspiracy and war, 312-327.

Parallel Readings.

INDEX GUIDE for comparative examination of other works and authorities. — *Cherokees, War with the. Oconostota. Attakullakulla. Grant. Col. James. Pontiac's War. Bushy Run, Battle of.*

SPECIAL. — Sloane's *French War and the Revolution*, chap. ix.: Cherokees and Pontiac.

Martin's *History of North Carolina*, vol. ii., chap. vi.: Cherokee War. Parkman: *Conspiracy of Pontiac*. Clarke: *History of North Carolina*.

The Thirteen English Colonies.

CHAPTER XII.

COLONIAL PROGRESS.

Results of the Colonial Wars.—The French and Indian War is remarkable for its many important results. It made the English power in America supreme. It taught the colonies the benefit of acting together, and made them acquainted with one another. It gave colonists military training

under experienced officers, and this training was soon to be of great service to them. The war inspired them with courage and confidence in themselves.

The cession of Canada to the English made secure the northern frontier of New England and New York. The surrender of French forts and posts in the Ohio and Mississippi valleys removed the barriers that at one time stopped the Atlantic seaboard colonies from expanding westward. The conquest of the Indians of the South and West cleared the way for the pioneer who was soon to cross the Alleghanies.

Increase of Population.

—Greatly had the colonies increased in population since the time when a few struggled for existence upon the banks of the James. They now numbered almost three millions. This population had every element of strength, as it had been drawn from the liberty-loving of all Europe. America offered many inducements in the way of land and homes, and in the undisturbed possession of the fruits of his labor by whoever was enterprising and industrious. The tide of emigration that set in from Europe during colonial days has not yet ceased.

Traits of Character Developed.—Life in a new region is always full of hardships. Those who first came and wrested their homes from the American wilderness learned many a lesson of courage, perseverance, and endurance. It is no wonder that their descendants showed the same traits of character, and grew to love liberty, right, and country.

Colonial Governments.

One by one the colonies of England had been planted along the Atlantic coast, and had finally grouped themselves into thirteen colonial organizations, each separate and distinct from the others in its relation to the mother country. Under the different grants, relinquishments, and purchases there had come to exist three forms of colonial government. Virginia, New York, New Jersey, North Carolina, South Carolina, New Hampshire, and Georgia were royal provinces, whose governors were appointed by the king, and whose laws were made by a legislative body consisting of two houses, the upper one of which was appointed by the king, the lower elected by the people. Maryland, Pennsylvania, and Delaware were proprietary colonies, the proprietors appointing the governor. Massachusetts, Connecticut, and Rhode Island were charter colonies, and under their charters enjoyed many of the privileges of self-government, such as the choosing of their own governors.

Home Life.—The early settlers had first to think about shelter and food. In the beginning their dwellings were rude, being sometimes built of bark like the huts of the savages, and sometimes constructed of logs, cut from the trees which had to be felled before the land could be cultivated.

The furnishings of the house were few, the conveniences for housekeeping fewer still. Platters and bowls of wood often took the place of crockery, and the few cooking utensils brought from the mother country were used in more ways than one.

Improvements in Life and Industry.—But time brought many improvements. The sawmill was introduced at an early day, and neater structures replaced the cabins of the first settlers. Cattle, hogs, and horses were brought from Europe, and American farm life became comfortable and prosperous. The natural resources of the country were developed in the several lines of agriculture, commerce, and manufactures. In those colonies where staple products became profitable articles of export, wealth accumulated very rapidly and the luxuries of life soon made their appearance.

Rise of American Inventive Talent.—In those days of slow sailing, voyages to and from Europe took much time. The colonists had to depend upon themselves for many articles of convenience. The necessity of making and devising articles they needed, or of finding substitutes, developed that spirit of invention for which the Americans have ever since been famous.

Questions.—Why is the French and Indian War remarkable? What did it make? What did it teach? What did it give to the colonists? What did it inspire? What made the northern frontier secure? What removed the barriers to westward expansion of the English colonies? What cleared the way for the pioneer? How many did the English colonists now number? From what had the population been drawn? What did America offer to the enterprising and industrious? What kind of life is always peculiar to a new region? What did those who first came learn? What did their descendants grow to love? What had the early settlers first to think about? What kind of houses had they at first? What furnishings and conveniences had they? What were introduced at an early day? What were brought from Europe? What were developed? What took much time in those days? This made the colonists depend upon whom? What developed the American spirit of invention?

FOR ADVANCED CLASSES.

Topics for Discussion.

- I. Effects of the French and Indian War upon the English Colonies. II. Colonial and Pioneer Life. III. Colonial Governments.

References and Authorities.

Bancroft's *History of the United States*, vol. ii.

Results of peace, 563.

Hildreth's *History of the United States*, vol. ii.

Population and extent of rival colonies, 447. Effects of the war, 514.

Taylor's *Origin and Growth of the English Constitution*; Introduction.

Parallel Readings.

INDEX GUIDE for comparative examination of other works and authorities.—*French and Indian War, Results of. Colonial Life. Colonial Governments.*

SPECIAL.—Hart's *Formation of the Union*; Effects of the war, 34, 39; colonial government, 13. Wilson: *The State*. Fiske: *Civil Government*.

CHAPTER XIII.

THE BEGINNING OF AMERICAN INDUSTRIES.

First Colonial Industry.—Agriculture was among the first industries developed in the New World. The early colonists made many attempts to cultivate products that could be readily and profitably sold. Silk-raising, wine-making, hemp-growing, and several other agricultural enterprises were attempted, but in none of them was much success attained.

Virginia's Agricultural Prosperity.—Virginia was the first to succeed, being fortunate in the cultivation of the tobacco plant. The first to experiment successfully with it was John Rolfe, the husband of Pocahontas. The Virginia colonists soon improved the methods of cultivation used by the Indians. The quality of the leaf became better and the yield greater. Little by little they discovered the best method of curing the leaf, and at an early day they established a system of inspection which permitted only the best quality of tobacco to be sent out of the colony. Virginia tobacco came into great demand in the markets of the world; and as early as 1736 more than twenty-five thousand tons of shipping were required to transport the crop. The tobacco industry spread to North Carolina and Maryland, where it was carried on with like success.

Carolina's Sources of Wealth.—The early Carolina colonists found sources of great wealth in the immense pine forests which covered that part of the country. Tar, pitch, rosin, turpentine, and lumber were produced in abundance, and a profitable trade with the West Indies sprang up.

Colonial Money.

In the early days the colonists had very little of what we call money. They traded by exchanging and bartering goods and produce. In Virginia tobacco took the place of money; in South Carolina rice was used in the same way. In the Indian trade leaden bullets and peculiar species of shells strung together, called by the Indians wampum, were used. When the Virginians began to store their carefully inspected tobacco in warehouses, they received certificates to show who owned the tobacco. Instead of passing the tobacco from hand to hand when they traded, they could more conveniently transfer the tobacco certificates. As the need for money increased, foreign coins, particularly those of Spain, came into use. An attempt was made by Virginia, in 1645, to establish a mint. Massachusetts, in 1651, was more successful, and among its earliest coins were shillings and sixpences, stamped with the figure of a pine tree. Lord Baltimore established a mint in London for his Maryland colony, about the year 1659. Massachusetts issued paper money as early as 1690, and her example was soon followed by other colonies.

Introduction of Rice Culture.

—The introduction of rice culture into South Carolina marked an era in the development of that colony. In 1696 Thomas Smith obtained some rice seed from the island of Madagascar, planted it, and made the discovery that it did best upon marshy ground. Plantations were laid out along the rivers, and the rice industry became very important. In the years following the French and Indian War the exportation reached nearly seventy million pounds. Indigo was also cultivated with great success. Charleston soon became a commercial center of wealth and

refinement, and with a population of 15,000 stood fifth in size of the American cities.

Cotton.—A small quantity of cotton was raised in the Southern colonies, but in those days the lint was separated from the seed by hand, and this made the production of a bale of cotton require a great deal of labor. In time the cotton gin was invented, and cotton became the great agricultural staple of the South.

Industries of the Middle Colonies.—The Middle colonies developed agriculture with great success. Here were nu-



EARLY AMERICAN COINS.

merous well-tilled small farms, whose thrifty owners sent their products to the seaport towns. Philadelphia was so well situated that it attracted the produce trade of all the surrounding country, and soon became the largest city in America. For the same reason, New York became an important center and ranked next in size.

Industries of the Northern Colonies.—Soil and climate in the Northern colonies

Pirates.

The English colonies carried on a flourishing trade with the West Indies. Their commerce suffered much from pirates. Vigorous and systematic measures were resorted to. After a desperate battle the pirate Teach, or "Blackbeard," as he was called, was captured at Ocracoke Inlet, in 1718, by Lieutenant Maynard, who was sent for the purpose by Governor Spotswood of Virginia. Another, named Steed Bonnett, was captured with all his men by Colonel William Rhett of Charleston. Being found guilty, all were hanged. Captain Kidd, another notorious American pirate, was captured, taken to London, and executed.

were not so well suited to agriculture as in the Middle and Southern colonies. The people had therefore to turn their attention to other occupations. All along the coast were excellent fishing grounds, and much profit was found in the catching, curing, and exporting of fish.

Beginnings of Commercial Prosperity in New England.—The New England fisheries were rapidly developed, and soon became famous. With the growth of the fisheries came the building of fishing vessels, which led to development of shipbuilding interests. New-England-built vessels were sent to many parts of the world and sold with their cargoes. Trade by ships was carried on with the West Indies, to which flour, salted fish, horses, and cattle were exported; and the same vessels brought back the products of those islands, also Spanish milled dollars, which formed the basis of our currency. The New Englanders also found much profit in trade with the Indians and with the other colonies along the Atlantic seaboard. Many articles were made for exchange; and manufactures would have sprung up rapidly had not England discouraged them, as she wished to control this trade for her own manufacturers.

Questions.—What was among the first industries to be developed in the New World? What products did the colonists make many attempts to cultivate? What were some of the agricultural enterprises attempted? What colony was first to succeed? With what plant? Who first grew it successfully? What did the Virginians improve? What rigid system did they establish? How many tons of shipping were required to transport the crop in 1736? To where did the tobacco industry spread? What natural sources of wealth had the Carolina colonists? What were produced in abundance? What trade sprang up? Who introduced rice into South Carolina? When? How many pounds did rice exportation reach? What else did the Carolinians cultivate with success besides rice? What number of population had Charleston? How did it stand in regard to other American cities? Why was not more cotton raised in those days? What invention afterwards made cotton the principal crop of the South? What did the Middle colonies develop? Where could farm products be sent? What two cities grew up because of this produce trade? What was the largest city in America in colonial times? Why had the people of the Northern colonies to turn their attention to occupations other than agriculture? In what did they find much profit? Give an account of commercial prosperity in New England.

FOR ADVANCED CLASSES.

Topics for Discussion.

- I. Development of Southern Colonial Industries. II. Industries of the Middle Colonies. III. Industries of the Northern Colonies? IV. Colonial Money. V. Piracy in Colonial Times.

References and Authorities.

Hildreth's *History of the United States*, vol. ii.

Colonial commerce, 431. Paper money, 285, 290-294, 296. Colonial pirates, 199, 278. Indigo culture, 416.

Bancroft's *History of the United States*, vol. ii.

Colonial commerce with the West Indies, 243.

Parallel Readings.

INDEX GUIDE for comparative examination of other works and authorities.—*Tobacco, Culture of, in Virginia. Rice, Introduction of, into Carolina. Fisheries, Rise of New England. Shipbuilding, Beginnings of New England. Colonial Trade. Colonial Money. Colonial Pirates. Kidd, Captain. Bonnett, Steed. Teach, Edward.*

SPECIAL.—Thwaites's *The Colonies*, chaps. v., viii., x.: Economic life in the colonies. Hart's *Formation of the Union*: Colonial development, 8. Bruce: *Economic History of Virginia*. Weedon: *Economic and Social History of New England*. Lodge: *English Colonies in America*. Coffin: *Old Times in the Colonies*.

CHAPTER XIV.

THE DEVELOPMENT OF SECTIONAL DIFFERENCES.

Virginia and Massachusetts representing Sectional Colonies.—The first grant of American territory that led to permanent English colonization was a sectional one. By its terms the territory granted was divided into South Virginia and North Virginia, and assigned to the London Company and Plymouth Company respectively. In the southern portion was planted the Colony of Virginia, which was first in point of time; in the northern, that of Massachusetts. Each of these colonies naturally exerted an influence upon those which followed, and in time each represented, to a fair extent, the thought, development, and progress of its particular section.

Differences in Character and Sentiment.—Both received their first settlers from England, but the class of people from which one drew its immigrants was different from that of the other. Those who came to Virginia came as to

another portion of their native country, and brought with them a pride in still being English subjects. They were loyal to both Church and State. Those who came to Massachusetts, and to the other New England colonies, came as to another country altogether. They were thoroughly dissatisfied with the condition of State and Church in England, and they were seeking a place where they would not be interfered with.

Cavalier and Puritan.—These two classes had been



HARVARD COLLEGE, 1726. (FROM THE MASSACHUSETTS HISTORICAL SOCIETY.)

opposed to each other in England. As Cavaliers and Puritans they were upon opposite sides in the conflict known as the English Revolution of 1642-48. When, as a result of this conflict, King Charles I. was driven from the throne and put to death, Cavalier Virginia sympathized with his followers and offered to many a refuge. In time the son of the executed monarch became king, and proceeded to punish those who had caused his father's death. Then Puritan Massachusetts became a place of safety for refugees; and Connecticut afforded a place

of concealment to two of the judges who had sentenced Charles I. to death.

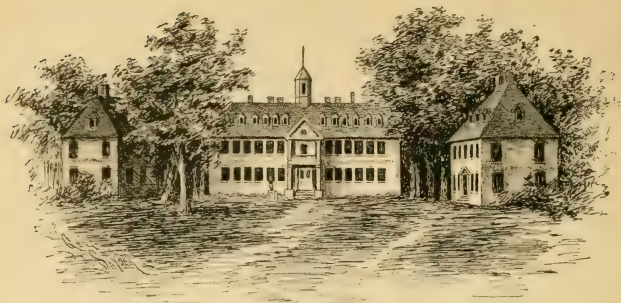
The Effect of Different Interests and Occupations.—But Massachusetts and Virginia were too far apart for these antagonisms to be continued in the New World. In time, both colonies came to have many interests in common. Many occasions arose for them to coöperate with and to assist each other, and to regard each other as Americans. But being separated as they were, and following different occupations, the people of the Northern and Southern colonies grew more and more unlike. This difference showed itself in the way they lived, in what they thought, and in their characters and dispositions.

Difference in Mode of Life.—In the North the people lived comparatively near together. Farmhouses were grouped into rural villages; and cities and towns sprang up along the coast. In the South the white families lived long distances apart, for the introduction of slavery made it possible to cultivate large plantations. The South had few large towns and cities. Many of the county seats of Virginia and North Carolina consisted of but a courthouse, a jail, an inn, and a store. At the close of the French War Virginia contained the greatest number of inhabitants of all the colonies, and yet Norfolk, its largest town, had a population of only seven thousand, and in Williamsburg, its capital, there were but two hundred houses.

First American Colleges.—All the colonies recognized the necessity of education. The compact settlements of the North made it possible to have common or public schools. The

Industrial Differences.

North and South were attaining prosperity along different lines. The interests of the North led to commerce, and afterwards to manufacture. The interests of the South lay in agriculture. Pursuits and occupation have an effect upon character. Hence, as the industrial pursuits of the North and the South became more and more different so did the character of each people. We must remember this when we come to that part of history which will tell us of a bitter war between these two sections. Had the interests of the two sections been the same, no antagonism could ever have arisen. It was only when laws were made which seemed to promote the interests of one at the expense of the other that sectional difference grew into sectional antagonism, and then into sectional conflict.



WILLIAM AND MARY COLLEGE.

first college in America was established at Cambridge, Mass., (1638,) and the Rev. John Harvard having bequeathed to it his books and half of his estate, the college took his name. The second college was established at Williamsburg, Va., (1693,) by Rev. James Blair, and, being endowed by the reigning sovereigns of England, it was given in their honor the name of William and Mary College. The founding of Harvard College was immediately followed by the introduction of the printing press, the first of which was set up at Cambridge (1639).

Virginia Characteristics.—The wealth of Virginia increased very rapidly. The grand old manor houses became homes of culture and refinement, where hospitality was dispensed in a manner so lavish that traditions of it are handed down to this day. Earliest of all the colonies to become a royal province, it had received a number of governors from England who brought with them much of the polish, grace, and courtliness which added so many charms to society in colonial Virginia.

A few schools were established previous to the founding of William and Mary College, but under the conditions that then existed they were not numerous. In the early years of the colony many wealthy planters sent their sons and daughters to England to be educated ; some engaged private tutors at

their homes ; and often the rector of the parish was tutor in the family of a wealthy planter, or was the schoolmaster for the children of his congregation. Thus opportunities for education were not lacking, and the intellectual development of this colony was remarkable. Among the Virginians who gathered at stated intervals at the county seat or the capital in the later colonial days were some of the brightest minds that have adorned American society.

The development of legal talent in Virginia was extraordinary ; and when the learning and skill of the lawyer matured into the wisdom of the statesman the world beheld with admiration a senate of peerless men, including Patrick Henry, Jefferson, Madison, Lee, Randolph, Pendleton, and others, whose connection with the history of our country has made their names immortal.

Questions.—Into what was the first grant of English territory divided ? To what company was each division granted ? Which colony was planted first, Massachusetts or Virginia ? What did each of these colonies exert ? How did the colonists who came to Virginia regard America ? To what were they loyal ? How did those who came to Massachusetts regard America ? With what were they dissatisfied ? What were they seeking ? In what had the two classes been opposed to each other ? With what side did Virginia sympathize ? Massachusetts ? To whom did Connecticut afford a place of concealment ? In time, what did both colonies come to have ? What occasions arose ? Why did they grow more and more unlike each other ? How did this difference show itself particularly ? How did the people in the North live ? How were rural villages made ? How did the people in the South live ? Which section had the more cities and towns ? What made it possible to cultivate large tracts of land in the South ? Which was the more populous colony at the close of the French War ? What did the population of Norfolk number ? How many houses had Williamsburg ? What necessity did the colleges recognize ? What made the establishment of common schools possible in the North ? Where was the first American college established ? When ? After whom was this college named ? Where was the second college founded ? When ? By whom ? In honor of whom was it named ? What important event followed the founding of Harvard College ? What increased very rapidly in Virginia ? What did the old manor houses become ? What did the English governors bring with them ? How did wealthy planters secure the education of their sons and daughters ? What service did the rector of the parish perform ? What opportunities were not lacking ? What development was remarkable in Virginia ? Name some of the great men Virginia produced in colonial times.

FOR ADVANCED CLASSES.

Topics for Discussion.

- I. Massachusetts and Virginia as Typical Northern and Southern Colonies. II. Cavaliers and Puritans. III. Industrial Differences of the Colonies, and Effects upon Colonial Life and Character. IV. First American Colleges.

References and Authorities.

Bancroft's *History of the United States*.

Vol. ii.: Population of the colonies, 389-391. Colonial Life in Virginia, 394. Character of the colonies, 327. Colonial Life in New England, 401. Vol. i.: Cromwell and English Revolution, 329.

McMaster's *History of the People of the United States*.

Colonial life in New England, 11-26. In the South, 26, 72-75. Differences of occupation and opinion, 10.

Doyle's *Virginia*, vol. i., 256-274.

Parallel Readings.

INDEX GUIDE for comparative examination of other works and authorities.—*Cromwell, Oliver. Rupert, Prince. Cavaliers. The. Harvard College, Founding of. Harvard, Rev. John. William and Mary College, Founding of. Blair, Rev. James. Education in the Colonies. Coins, Early American.*

SPECIAL. Fisher's *Colonial Era*; Blair, and William and Mary College, 278-290. Cooke: *Virginia*. Bruce: *Economic History of Virginia*. Weedon: *Economic History of New England*. Palfrey's *New England*, vol. ii. Lodge: *English Colonies*.

BIOGRAPHICAL REVIEW EXERCISE.

Answer these questions in regard to each: Who was he? What did he do?
Answer very fully when the name is given in prominent type.

Pepperel.	Le Feboure.	Mackay.	Braddock.
Andros.	Berkeley.	Barba.	Tituba.
Graffenreid.	Barnwell.	Burroughs.	Spottswood.
Rolle.	Sassacus.	Alderman.	Opecancanough.
King Philip.	Mason.	Uncas.	Massasoit.
Moore.	Craven.	De Chopot.	Perier.
Harvey.	Bacon.	Goodwin.	Mather.
Parris.	Cory.	Wardwell.	Willard.
Leisler.	Phips.	Warren.	Rhett.
Sutherland.	Oglethorpe.	Dinwiddie.	Half-King.
Franklin.	Jumonville.	Boisehebert.	Amherst.
Monckton.	Lyman.	Johnson.	Montcalm.
Loudon.	Abercrombie.	Prideaux.	Forbes.
De Vitre.	Wolfe.	Lyttleton.	Pontiac.
Montgomery.	Ouonostota.	Grant.	Bouquet.
Thomas Smith.	Bonnett.	Kidd.	Maynard.
Teach.	Harvard.	Blair.	Cantey.
Shirley.	Blackbeard.	Bradstreet.	Attakullakulla.

Reference Outline for Review.

The Old French War.

Operations at Five Objective Points of the War.

PRELIMINARY.

- 1753 Washington's journey.
- 1754 { **Fort Du Quesne built.**
- { **Battle of Great Meadows.**
- { **Fort Necessity captured.**

FIVE OBJECTIVE POINTS.

I. FORT DU QUESNE:

- 1755 **Braddock's defeat.**
- 1758 **Captured by Forbes and Washington.**

II. FORT NIAGARA:

- 1755 Shirley fails to capture.
- 1756 Montcalm captures Oswego.
- 1759 **Captured by Prideaux.**

III. TICONDEROGA AND CROWN POINT:

- 1755 { **First encounter at Lake George.**
- { **Second encounter at Lake George.**
- 1757 **Fort William Henry captured.**
- 1758 { **Abercrombie's defeat.**
- { **Fort Frontenac taken by Bradstreet.**
- 1759 **Captured by Amherst.**

IV. LOUISBURG:

- 1755 **Acadians expelled.**
- 1757 **Loudon fails to capture.**
- 1758 **Captured by Amherst and Wolfe.**

V. QUEBEC:

- 1759 **Battle of Abraham Heights.**
- 1759 **Captured by Wolfe.**

PEACE TREATY.

- 1763 Signed at Paris.

English reverses in blue; English successes in red.

Reference Outline for Review.

The Old French War.

Chronological Order of Events.

- 1753 Washington's journey.
- 1754 { Fort Du Quesne built.
- 1754 { Battle of Great Meadows.
- 1754 { Fort Necessity surrendered.
- 1755 Braddock's defeat.
- 1755 { Shirley fails to capture Niagara.
- 1755 { First encounter at Lake George.
- 1755 { Second encounter at Lake George.
- 1755 { Acadians expelled from Nova Scotia.
- 1756 Oswego captured by Montcalm.
- 1757 { Fort William Henry captured by Montcalm.
- 1757 { Loudon fails to take Louisburg.
- 1758 { Fort Du Quesne taken by Forbes and Washington.
- 1758 { Abercrombie defeated at Ticonderoga.
- 1758 { Bradstreet captures Fort Frontenac.
- 1758 Louisburg taken by Amherst and Wolfe.
- 1759 Fort Niagara taken by Prideaux.
- 1759 { Amherst captures Ticonderoga and Crown Point.
- 1759 { Wolfe captures Quebec.
- 1763 Treaty of Paris.

PREPARATORY GEOGRAPHY LESSON.

Upon a map of the United States note the relative position of (1) the Atlantic States : (2) of Boston, New York, Philadelphia, Charleston, and Williamsburg (Virginia). How would a vessel sail from Boston to Halifax, Nova Scotia ? From Boston to Charleston, South Carolina ?

Upon a map of Massachusetts locate Boston, Cambridge, Lexington, Concord. In what direction from Boston is Concord ?

Upon a map of the New England States note the direction from Boston to Ticonderoga, New York. From Boston to Quebec by way of the Kennebec River, Maine. Where are the Green Mountains ?

MAP No. 1



MAP No. 2



IV. PERIOD OF REVOLUTION.

The Struggle for English Liberty in America.

CHAPTER I.

COMMERCIAL SLAVERY.

Tyranny and Revolution.—Sometimes a king or a government deprives the people of their rights, and compels them to obey unjust laws. Such a use of power is called tyranny. When a few people forcibly resist the laws, there is insurrection. When a large body of people unite in overthrowing their government, there is rebellion. A rebellion that succeeds in establishing a new government is a revolution. Tyranny often provokes insurrections which lead to rebellions, and end in revolutions. We are now to consider a case of this kind, known as the “American Revolution.”

England's Oppressive Policy.—The colonists had

James Otis and Writs of Assistance.

To find out if anyone was violating the Navigation and the Importation Acts, authority was granted to colonial courts to issue Writs of Assistance (1761). These writs were search warrants, giving the officers of the king authority to search private dwellings. James Otis, of Massachusetts, eloquently denied that this authority could be rightly given, and in Boston and Salem the officers were resisted. The eloquence of Otis made a deep impression. Soon the people came to think about this question: “Ought Americans to submit to laws in the making of which they have no share?”

The people of England were represented in the lawmaking body known as the House of Parliament, but in this body the colonists were not allowed representation. They had lawmaking bodies of their own, which were known as Colonial Assemblies. The colonists soon came to believe that they should obey such laws only as were passed by the Colonial Assemblies.



JAMES OTIS.

long been dissatisfied with England's policy towards them. They had often to submit to tyrannous governors and unjust laws. Their welfare seemed to concern the mother country very little. They were in every way prevented in their attempts to establish industries and build up enterprises that competed or conflicted with the business interests of England.

Laws restricting American Trade and Industry.

—Navigation Acts (1651) compelled the colonists to send their products to England, instead of to those markets of the world where better prices could be obtained. Importation Acts (1733)

Two Centers of Political Thought.

Two centers of political thought were slowly forming—the one in Virginia and the other in Massachusetts. From these centers was to blaze forth the genius of such men as Patrick Henry and James Otis, of Thomas Jefferson and the Adamses, of Pendleton, Carr, Randolph, Lee, Hancock, and Mason. A serious step was to be taken by the American people. They were to change their condition from being governed to governing. A transfer of sovereignty from England to America was soon to be made, and the principle of self-government, which has done so much for the progress of the human race, was to be given to the world.

made it difficult for the colonists to trade with the West Indies. American shipbuilding was looked upon by England as interfering with the interests of English shipbuilders. American manufacturing was prohibited (1751), so that English goods might find a ready market in America. Even between any two colonies, trade was discouraged, so that each would be compelled to deal directly with the mother country to the profit of English merchants.

Evasion of Unjust Laws.

—The colonists often sought to evade many of the unjust laws passed by the English Government. When they were compelled to obey, much ill-feeling resulted. Up to the end of the French and Indian War it had been impossible to resist this oppression. So long as the French held Canada, the English colonists might at any time need the help of England to resist an invasion. Now that this danger was over, the colonists realized more keenly the wrongs imposed upon them by the mother country.

The Spirit of American Independence.—The colonies had also increased greatly in strength and population.

Success in the Indian and intercolonial wars had given them confidence in themselves. The life they had been leading taught them to love liberty more and more. Thus the spirit of American independence grew slowly and naturally, and the time was near at hand when oppression could no longer be submitted to; when Englishmen of America would demand equal rights with Englishmen of England; when the principles of English civil liberty would have to be fought for upon American soil.

Questions.—What is tyranny? Rebellion? Revolution? What effect had England's policy long produced upon the colonists? To what were they compelled often to submit? What did the Navigation Acts compel the colonists to do? When were they passed? What effect had the Importation Acts? When were they passed? How did England look upon American ship-building? Why did England prohibit American manufacturing? Why was trade between the colonists themselves limited? When an unjust law was passed, what did they do? What resulted when officers compelled them to obey an unjust law? Why had not the colonists all this time resented the injustice of England? Why did the colonists now feel themselves stronger? What success had inspired them with confidence in themselves? What had been growing slowly and naturally? What time was now near at hand?

FOR ADVANCED CLASSES.

Topics for Discussion.

- I. English Restrictions upon American Colonial Trade. II. James Otis and Writs of Assistance. III. Virginia and Massachusetts as Leaders in the Opposition to England.

References and Authorities.

Hildreth's *History of the United States*.

Vol. i.: Navigation Acts, 471. Restrictions upon intercolonial trade, 474. Vol. ii.: Restlessness of the colonies under trade restrictions, 430. Writs of Assistance and James Otis, 498.

Bancroft's *History of the United States*.

Vol. ii.: Speech of James Otis on Writs of Assistance, 547. Laws against manufactures in the colonies, 81. Interference with American industry, 239. Vol. iii.: Navigation Acts evaded by the colonists, 59. Samuel Adams, 76, 157.

Fiske's *American Revolution*, i.

Writs of Assistance, 12. Virginia Stamp Act Resolutions, 20. Massachusetts's resistance to Stamp Act, 22-23.

Parallel Readings.

INDEX GUIDE for comparative examination of other works and authorities.—*Navigation Acts. Importation Acts. Otis, James. Writs of Assistance.*

SPECIAL.—Winsor's *Narrative and Critical History*, vol. vi., chap. i.: The Revolution Impending. Hart's *Formation of the Union*, 46: Writs of Assistance. Cooke's *Virginia*, Part III., chap. ix.: Virginia and Massachusetts.

CHAPTER II.

UNJUST TAXATION.

No Taxation without Representation.—England's lawmaking body is called the Parliament. It consists of an upper house, or House of Lords, and a lower house, or House of Commons. In the House of Commons the English people are represented. It has long been an established principle of English government that the people can never be taxed without their consent. This consent is expressed by their representatives in the House of Commons.



ONE OF THE STAMPS.

Being Englishmen and free, the colonists had come firmly to believe that they, too, could not be taxed without their own consent, and that

this consent could be expressed only by the lawmaking body in which they were represented—the Colonial Assembly. When, therefore, Grenville, Prime Minister of England, announced (1764) that a tax would be imposed upon the colonies, by act of Parliament and not by act of Colonial Assembly, a storm of indignation arose throughout the colonies.

Passage of the Stamp Act.—The measure announced was passed (1765), and from the peculiar way in which the tax was to be collected it is known as the Stamp Act. When news

The Stamp Act.

Under provisions of the Stamp Act every legal document had to be drawn upon stamped paper furnished by the British Government. Every pamphlet, newspaper, and almanac published in the colonies had to bear a stamp. The value of the stamps, all of which were to come from England, ranged from a halfpenny to six pounds.

England claimed that the colonies should pay a part of the cost of the French and Indian War, and this tax was levied for that purpose. But the colonists had already borne more than their proportion. They had furnished, fed, and clothed more than twenty-five thousand men. The injustice of the measure fell, therefore, with all the more force.

of it reached America, everyone realized that an act of tyranny was about to be enforced. Bells were tolled in Boston as if for some great calamity. In New York the act was printed and circulated under the heading, "The Folly of England and the Ruin of America."

The Act Resisted.—Every colony evaded and resisted the Stamp Act. Newspapers were printed, and the picture of a death's head took the place of the required stamp. Lawyers agreed to disregard the absence of stamps from all court documents. No one would use them. Stamp-selling officers were compelled to resign. In

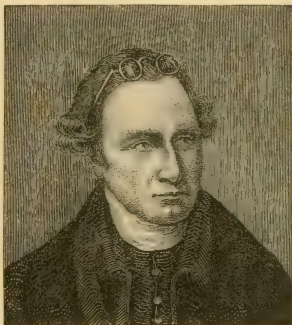
North Carolina Colonel John Ashe, Speaker of the Colonial Assembly, declared that the people of that colony would resist the act to the death.

Virginia's Defiance.—The first word of defiance came from Virginia. There had been elected to the Virginia Colonial Assembly, from Louisa County, a young lawyer named Patrick Henry. When the Assembly convened, this young orator intro-

Patrick Henry.

Patrick Henry was born at Studley, Hanover County, Virginia, May 29, 1736. He was instructed chiefly by his father, and after engaging in several occupations took up the study of law, fitting himself for his professional duties in a very short time. His progress

was at first slow; but a celebrated case, known as the Parsons Case, made him widely known. This was an action of the clergy against the people. Henry, by his great eloquence, won a complete victory for the people, when at first it was thought that the people's case was hopeless. Henry was ever the friend of popular freedom, and did much to shape public sentiment and inspire the colonists in their resistance



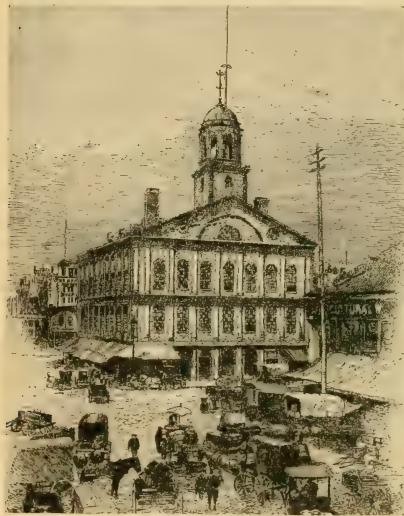
PATRICK HENRY.

to English oppression. He it was who boldly uttered: "If we wish to be free . . . we must fight. . . . There is no retreat but in submission and slavery. . . . Our chains are forged. The war is inevitable, and let it come. . . . Is life so dear and peace so sweet as to be purchased at the price of chains and slavery? Forbid it, Almighty God! I know not what course others may take, but as for me, give me liberty or give me death." Henry became the first governor of the Commonwealth of Virginia. He died in 1799.

duced a series of resolutions, which have since become historical. These resolutions set forth (1) that Virginia had inherited all the rights of English subjects ; (2) that two charters confirmed these rights to the Virginians ; (3) that the taxation of the people by themselves was a distinguishing characteristic of British freedom ; (4) and that the General Assembly of the

colony had the sole right and power to levy taxes and imposts on the colonists.

South Carolina Supports Virginia.—An excited debate arose over these resolutions. Henry's eloquence, however, secured their adoption. Angry at this, Governor Fauquier, exercising the power vested in royal governors, dissolved the Assembly. But he was too late, for the work was done.



FANUEIL HALL.

Virginia had given the signal to the continent, and the colonies quickly responded. A congress was proposed by Massachusetts. South Carolina promptly seconded the proposition, and sent her liberty-loving patriot son, Christopher Gadsden, as her representative.

The Stamp Act Congress.—The congress assembled in New York City, October 7, 1765. All the colonies were represented except New Hampshire, Virginia, and North Carolina, whose governors had prevented the election of delegates.

Resolutions of a similar character to those which Henry had prepared were adopted ; and respectful memorials and protests to King and Parliament were drawn up. This congress is known as the Stamp Act Congress.

The Declaratory Act.—The opposition to the Stamp Act resulted in its repeal (March 18, 1766), one year after its passage. But with the repeal the Declaratory Act was passed, asserting that Parliament had a right to make laws for the colonists in every case whatsoever. The next year (1767), instigated by Charles Townshend, Chancellor of the Exchequer, the English Government passed a Revenue Act, imposing a tax, or duty, upon imported articles, such as wine, oil, and fruit, tea, glass, lead, paper, and paint.

The same principle for which the colonists had been contending was involved — no taxation without representation. Again strong opposition arose. Samuel Adams drew up the protest of Massachusetts. Town meetings, to give expression to popular sentiment, were held in Boston and thronged Faneuil Hall, which from that day has been called the “cradle of liberty.” The Virginia Assembly denounced the act, and was again dissolved by the governor. The members repaired to the Raleigh Tavern, near by, and continued to hold meetings.

The Tea Tax.—The colonists agreed to import nothing from England until this objectionable act should be repealed. The trade of the London merchants suffered greatly when the colonists stopped buying and importing goods from England. Influence was brought to bear upon Parliament, until the act was repealed, with the exception of the clause imposing a tax on tea. It was thought that surely the colonies would thus be



THE RALEIGH TAVERN.

satisfied, and the claim of Parliament be maintained. The tax was a very small one, but the colonists were contending for a principle, not for a reduction of taxes. The right to tax America had either to be enforced or given up.

Questions.—Of what does the English Parliament consist? In which of the two divisions are the English people represented? What has been long established as a principle of English government? How is the consent to be taxed expressed? What had the colonists come to believe? How did the colonists believe that their consent to be taxed could only be expressed? What did Prime Minister Grenville announce? When? How did the colonists receive this announcement? When was the measure passed? By what name was it known? When news of the passage of this measure reached America, what did everyone realize? What was done in Boston? In New York? How did the colonies evade the Stamp Act? What did Colonel Ashe say? From where did the first word of defiance come? Who introduced resolutions into the Virginia Assembly? What did these resolutions set forth? What effect had Henry's resolutions? What secured their adoption? What did Governor Fauquier do? What had Virginia given? What did Massachusetts propose? Whom did South Carolina send to take part in the proposed congress? Where did this congress assemble? When? What colonies were not represented? Why? What resolutions did this congress adopt? What two memorials and protests were drawn up? How is this congress known? When was the Stamp Act repealed? What act was passed with the repeal of the Stamp Act? What act was passed in 1767? By whom was this act instigated? Upon what articles did this act impose taxes, or duties? What principle was involved? What again arose? Who drew up the protest of Massachusetts? What did the Virginia Assembly do? Whose trade suffered when the colonists stopped importing? What did the London merchants do? How much of the act was repealed? Why were not the colonists now satisfied? What had now to be either enforced or given up?

FOR ADVANCED CLASSES.

Topics for Discussion.

I. The Stamp Act. II. Patrick Henry. III. The Second Colonial or Stamp Act Congress.

References and Authorities.

Hildreth's *History of the United States*, vol. ii.

Taxation of America proposed, 518. Stamp Act, 524. Henry's resolutions, 525. Stamp Act Congress, 529. Repeal of Stamp Act, 535.

Bancroft's *History of the United States*, vol. iii.

Stamp Act, 55-57, 101, 204. Patrick Henry, 66, 110. Stamp Act Congress, 149.

Fiske's *American Revolution*, vol. i.

Stamp Act, 17. Stamp Act Congress, 21.

Parallel Readings.

INDEX GUIDE for comparative examination of other works and authorities. *Stamp Act, The.*

Taxation without Representation. Henry, Patrick. *Stamp Act Resolutions, Virginia.* Gadsden, Christopher. *Congress, The Stamp Act. Declaratory Act, The.* Adams, Samuel. *Revenue Act, The.*

SPECIAL.—Winsor's *Narrative and Critical History*, vol. vi., chap. i.: The Revolution Impending. Hart's *Formation of the Union*: The Stamp Act, 48. Tyler: *Patrick Henry*. Hosmer: *Samuel Adams*. Cooke's *Virginia*, Part III., chap. ii.: Henry the prophet of the Revolution. For an English view of the controversy between Great Britain and America, consult Greg's *History of the United States*.

CHAPTER III.

AGITATION.

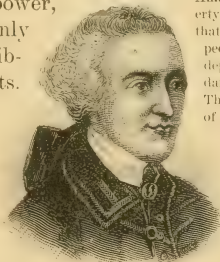
Character and Policy of George III.—In 1760 George III. became King of England. By this time the English people had come to be the freest people in Europe. The great ambition of this king, however, was to increase his own power, which he could do only by taking away the liberty of his subjects. He wished to be a powerful king in fact as well as in name.

King George was very ignorant of the character of the American colonists and very stubborn in persisting in a course upon which he had once set his mind. Thus it was that he authorized or instigated many oppressive measures which a wiser monarch would never have tried to enforce.

Acts of oppression became frequent as his reign advanced. The British ship-of-war *Romney* compelled several

Significance of the Pending Contest.

The contest in which the colonists were now engaged meant more than many suppose. It was a contest upon American soil for English liberty. A great writer has said that it is impossible for a free people despotically to govern a dependent people without endangering their own freedom. The setting aside of the rights of the English in America would have prepared the way for the setting aside of the rights of the English in England. Many wise statesmen recognized this, and there arose in England friends of America, among whom were Pitt, Burke, Barré, and others, who in Parliament opposed all oppressive measures. But the measures of the king, shaped by his ministry, generally prevailed.



JOHN HANCOCK.

Battle of Alamance.

Resistance in North Carolina at one time reached open rebellion. The hardy farmers living in the back counties, no longer able to stand the oppressions of officials, rose in revolt. An organization existed among these farmers, called the Regulators, who, to the number of about twelve hundred, engaged the royal governor, Tryon, in a bloody conflict at Alamance (1771), in what is now Orange County. They were, however, repulsed with severe loss, and Tryon followed up the victory with many acts of cruelty. By some this is regarded as the first battle of the American Revolution. It was certainly the first battle waged upon American soil in opposition to the governmental authority of England.

citizens of Massachusetts to become sailors. It also seized a sloop, called the *Liberty*, belonging to John Hancock. Two regiments of soldiers were sent to Boston to intimidate the people (1768). These soldiers had to be supported and cared for by the people of the city.

Acts of Resistance.—The colonists soon began to show a spirit of resistance. A conflict between British soldiers and Boston citizens took place in the streets of Boston, in which encounter four citizens were

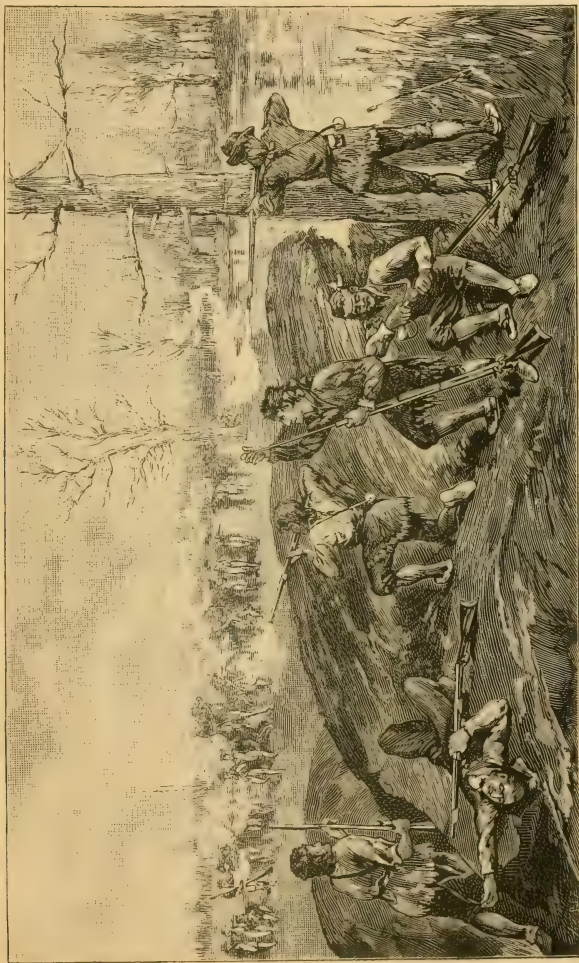
killed and seven wounded (1770). This is known as the Boston Massacre. A war vessel, called the *Gaspee*, engaged in enforcing the Revenue Act, was secretly captured at night by citizens of Rhode Island and burned (1772).

A Shrewd Subterfuge.—

The removal of all duties except that on tea did not mend matters. The colonists refused to import tea from England, and smuggled it from Holland. From this cause the trade of English tea merchants suffered greatly; so the English Government adopted a shrewd policy, granting to shippers a rebate upon tea sent to America. This rebate enabled dealers, despite the importation tax, to sell the tea more cheaply in America than they could in England or

Committees of Correspondence.

The necessity for the colonies to act in harmony had been seriously felt. The first step to this end was taken when young Dabney Carr, a member of the Virginia Assembly, proposed in that body the organization of a committee to correspond with like committees of other colonies upon matters pertaining to the general welfare (March, 1773). The measure was supported by Patrick Henry and Richard Henry Lee, and speedily met with favor in the other colonies. A system of intercolonial committees of correspondence was therefore instituted, and the colonies were brought into close communication with one another. Thenceforth they were to act in concert. Massachusetts had already a similar plan in operation among her cities and towns.



BATTLE OF ALAMANCE.

Holland. Thus was the endeavor made to tempt the colonists to give up their determination not to be taxed by England ; but the attempt did not succeed. They were contending for something more than cheap tea.

Boston Tea Party.—Ships loaded with tea set sail for four ports—Boston, Philadelphia, New York, and Charleston. Before their arrival a general plan of action was agreed upon. In Philadelphia, New York, and Charleston those who were

The First Continental Congress.

An impulse was felt to come together for solemn consultation. Virginia proposed a general congress of the colonies (May 27, 1774). This First Continental Congress assembled at Philadelphia, in Carpenters' Hall (Sept. 5, 1774). It was composed of the most eminent men among the colonists, and in average of ability and intelligence it has never yet been equaled by any representative gathering of which anything is known. Peyton Randolph, of Virginia, was chosen president. The deliberations of this body resulted (1) in an agreement to have no intercourse with England until all offensive acts were repealed ; (2) in the issuance of addresses to the king, to the British people, and to the colonies, formally setting forth colonial grievances ; and (3) in the recommendation that another congress assemble in the following May.

to receive and to dispose of the tea were compelled to resign their commissions. The tea commissioners in Boston refused to resign. The Massachusetts colonists, headed by Samuel Adams, demanded that the tea-laden vessels in the port of Boston return to England. The demand not being complied with, a party of men, about fifty in number, disguised themselves as Mohawk Indians, took forcible possession of the vessel one night, and, tearing open the hatches, emptied the contents of 342 chests into the sea. This act of the Boston Tea Party, as it was called, was applauded

throughout America. In England it was looked upon as riot and lawlessness, and caused much anger.

Further Oppressive Measures.—The prime minister, who was now Lord North, determined to humble the Massachusetts Colony, and show the American people how all-powerful a government can be. The Boston Port Bill (1774) declared the port of Boston closed to shipping of any kind. The Regulating Act annulled the charter of Massachusetts and abolished its free government ; soldiers were again quar-

tered upon the people. A law was passed (1774) forbidding any Massachusetts judge to try any revenue officer or soldier for murder if he should kill any citizen who was enforcing England's objectionable laws. Thus was it that the Northern colony was singled out to bear the brunt of English anger.

Colonies Rally to the Support of Massachusetts.

—Sympathy for suffering Boston poured in from all sides. Marblehead offered her wharves free of charge to the Boston merchants. Provisions and supplies in great abundance were sent overland from all colonies; even so remote a colony as South Carolina making contributions. Warm words of encouragement went up from Virginia. Washington offered to equip, at his own expense, one thousand men and march to the relief of Boston if necessary. "An attack upon Massachusetts," said Henry, "is an attack upon Virginia." A day was set apart for fasting and prayer. The Almighty was invoked to avert the impending calamity to civil liberty.

Questions.—When George III. became king, what had the British people come to be? What was the king's ambition? Of what was he ignorant? What did he authorize or instigate? Why? What were now committed against the colonists? What did the Romney do? Why were soldiers sent to Boston? What did the colonists soon begin to show? What was the Boston massacre? What happened to the Gaspee? Why did not the removal of all duties except that on tea mend matters? What shrewd plan did the English Government devise? Why did it not succeed? To what four ports were tea-laden vessels sent? In what cities were the tea commissioners compelled to resign? Where did the tea commissioners refuse to resign? What did Samuel Adams demand? What happened when his demand was refused? How was the Boston Tea Party looked upon in England? Who was now prime minister? What did he determine to do? What bill and act were passed to punish Massachusetts? What law? What poured into Boston from all sides? What did Marblehead offer? What were sent overland from all the colonies? What did Washington offer to do if necessary? What did Henry say? What was set apart?

FOR ADVANCED CLASSES.

Topics for Discussion.

- I. English Oppression and Colonial Resistance in Massachusetts.
- II. Battle of Alamance.
- III. The Tea Tax and Boston Tea Party.
- IV. England's Measures to Punish Massachusetts.
- V. Colonial Committees of Correspondence.
- VI. The First Continental Congress.

References and Authorities.

Hildreth's *History of the United States*.

Vol. ii.: Boston riots, 527. Non-importation agreement, 532, 541, 551. Boston massacre, 554. Vol. iii.: Boston Tea Party, 29. Continental Congress, 42.

Bancroft's *History of the United States*, vol. iii.

Mutiny Act, 105. Massachusetts plans resistance, 272. Battle of Alamance, 401. Tea thrown overboard in Boston Harbor, 456. Virginia proposes Committees of Correspondence, 436. Punishment of Massachusetts, 471-482. The First Continental Congress, 61-66.

Fiske's *American Revolution*.

Boston massacre, 66. North Carolina Regulators, 75. Gaspee affair, 76. Committees of Correspondence, 89. Boston tea controversy, 82-90. Boston Port Bill, 95. Continental Congress assemblies, 110.

Parallel Readings.

INDEX GUIDE for comparative examination of other works and references.—*George III. Pitt, William. Hancock, John. Boston Massacre, The. Gaspee, Burning of the. Alamance, Battle of. Boston Tea Party, The. Boston Port Bill, The. Regulating Act, The. Committees of Correspondence, Colonial. Congress, First Continental.*

SPECIAL.—Winsor's *Narrative and Critical History*, vol. vi., chap. i.: The Revolution impending, Hart's *Formation of the Union*: The spirit of violence in the colonies, 56. Hosmer: *Samuel Adams*. Clark's *History of North Carolina*: Battle of Alamance.

CHAPTER IV.**ARMED RESISTANCE.**

Minute Men and the Battle of Lexington.—The people of Massachusetts resisted by force the operation of the Regulating Act. It was now plain that an armed conflict was about to take place. Preparations went rapidly forward. Henry's memorable saying, "Liberty or Death," became the watchword. Men armed and organized themselves into companies, and took oath to be ready at a minute's warning. Stores and munitions of war were collected at various points.

When informed of these preparations, General Gage, the English military governor of Massachusetts, hastened to fortify the peninsular neck of Boston. He then sent a detachment of troops to destroy some military stores which the Americans had collected at Concord, near Boston. The road to Concord lay through the town of Lexington. At five o'clock in the morning the British forces entered this town and found opposed to them a company of 130 "minute men," as they were called, under Captain Parker. Major Pitcairn, of the British, ordered the minute men to disperse, and when they refused

they were fired upon (April 19, 1775). Seven of them were killed.

Paul Revere.—Gage endeavored to keep his Concord expedition a secret from the colonists, but the movements of the British were closely watched. The expedition set out in the night ; but signal lights, hung in the tower of Christ Church, warned of their departure, and Paul Revere, waiting upon the other side of the river, with his horse bridled and saddled, set out immediately when he saw the lights, and gave timely notice of the enemy's approach.

The Country Aroused.—The

British went on to Concord, but many of the stores had been removed and hidden.

Meanwhile the country was aroused, and men from surrounding towns poured in with astonishing rapidity.

The British, while searching the town, were attacked and compelled to retreat. The

march back was one long struggle. The Americans, posting themselves along the road, behind rocks, barns, and trees, poured volley after

volley into the ranks of the passing soldiers. Thoroughly exhausted, and barely escaping capture, the expedition finally reached Boston after losing 273 of its number.

War Begins.—Now indeed was the country stirred up. Men from all the New England colonies gathered rapidly about Boston. John Stark came from New Hampshire, Nathanael Greene from Rhode Island, and Benedict Arnold from Connec-



GEORGE WASHINGTON OF VIRGINIA, COMMANDER-IN-CHIEF OF THE AMERICAN ARMY.

ticut, all leading to the scene of conflict companies of recruits and militia. The number of Americans around Boston soon reached 1,600. Gage found himself besieged, and war had commenced.

Green Mountain Boys; the Capture of Ticonderoga and Crown Point.—The need of cannon and munitions of war suggested to Arnold the capture of the old, well-supplied forts of Ticonderoga and Crown Point. Authority was given him to raise a force of 400 men among the Berkshire Hills of western Massachusetts for the purpose of capturing the forts.

A second expedition, composed of Green Mountain Boys, under the command of Ethan Allen, had already set out for the same purpose. Arnold over-

Israel Putnam.

The eagerness of the New Englanders to reach the scene and to take part in the events that were to follow is illustrated in the case of Israel Putnam, a noted patriot of Connecticut, who, while plowing, hearing the news of Lexington, dropped the plow-handles, mounted a horse, and in eighteen hours traveled the hundred miles intervening between his farm and the patriot camp.

took and joined this expedition. Ticonderoga was surprised and captured (May 10, 1775), and about the same time another party of Green Mountain Boys, under Seth Warner, took Crown Point. Arnold, with a party of his Berkshire men, then cap-

tured the post of St. John's, on Lake Champlain, with its garrison, and returned to Boston.

The Appointment of Commander-in-Chief.—On the day that Ticonderoga fell, the Second Continental Congress assembled at Philadelphia. John Hancock, of Massachusetts, presided. Washington, Franklin, Lee, Henry, John and Samuel Adams, Livingston, Benjamin Harrison, and others took part in the proceedings. This congress had really no authority to act as a government, but it knew that the people, from a spirit of patriotism, would follow its instructions. The armed patriots assembled around Boston were now looked upon as the Continental Army, and Congress took a most important step when it selected a commander-in-chief.

John Hancock aspired to the position; but there was one whose fitness, experience, and ability were so marked that he

was unanimously chosen. This was Colonel George Washington, of Virginia, who became commander-in-chief of the American Army (June 15, 1775). Washington accepted the appointment in all modesty. "Since Congress desire it," said he, "I will enter upon the duty and exert every power I possess in their service, and for the glorious cause. But I beg it may be remembered by every gentleman in the room, that I this day declare, with the utmost sincerity, I do not think myself equal to the command I am honored with."

Questions.—What act did Massachusetts resist? What was now seen? What became the watchword? What oath did men take? What were collected? What did Gage hasten to do? To where did he dispatch an expedition? Why? What took place at Lexington? Who gave warning of the British expedition to Concord? Why did the British accomplish very little at Concord? Why were the British compelled to retreat from Concord? How many did they lose on the retreat? Who were among those to gather about Boston? How many did the Americans number? What did the need of cannon suggest to Arnold? What authority was given him? Who led the Green Mountain Boys? Tell something of the capture of Ticonderoga. Who captured Crown Point? St. John's? Who presided over the Second Continental Congress? Who were among those to take part in its proceedings? What important step did this congress take? Who aspired to the position of commander-in-chief? Who was appointed? When? What did he say in accepting?

FOR ADVANCED CLASSES.

Topics for Discussion.

- I. Beginning of the Revolutionary War in Massachusetts. II. Minute Men, Lexington, and Paul Revere. III. Selection of a Commander-in-Chief for the American Army.

References and Authorities.

Hildreth's *History of the United States*, vol. iii.

Minute men, 51. Lexington, 67. Selection of officers for Continental Army, 80.

Bancroft's *History of the United States*, vol. iv.

Gage's expedition to Concord, 152. Revere, 153. Militia and alarm-men, 154. Lexington, 156. Washington chosen general, 205.

Fiske's *American Revolution*, vol. i.

Revere and Lexington, 121-122. Washington appointed to command, 133-136.

Parallel Readings.

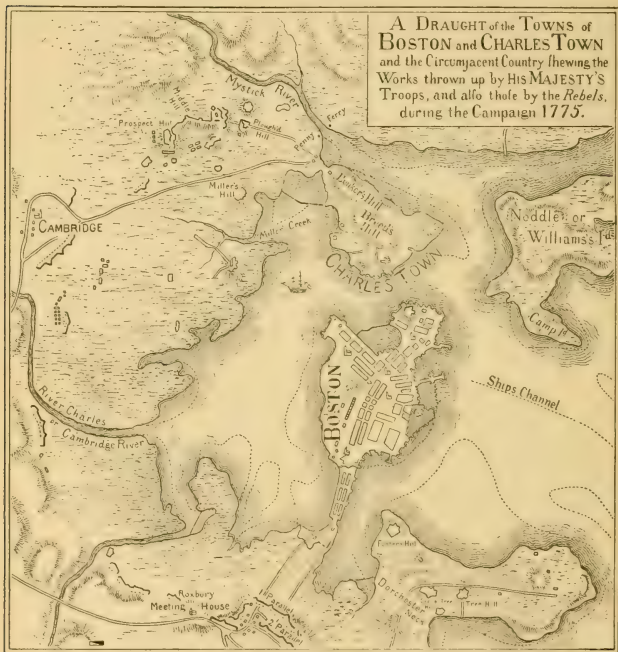
INDEX GUIDE for comparative examination of other works and authorities.—*Minute Men*, *The Gage, General. Revere, Paul. Lexington, Battle of.* Putnam, Israel, Allen, Ethan. *Green Mountain Boys.*

SPECIAL.—Winsor's *Narrative and Critical History*, vol. vi., chap. ii.: The Revolution Precipitated. Hart's *Formation of the Union*, 63: The outbreak of hostilities. Lanier's *Lexington* and Longfellow's *Paul Revere* (poems).

CHAPTER V.

INDEPENDENCE DECLARED.

Americans Fortify Breed's Hill.—The American forces about Boston were under the temporary command of General



Artemus Ward, whose headquarters were at Cambridge. The first thing to be done was to compel the British to leave Boston. To do this, a position overlooking the town must be fortified, and Bunker Hill was the position selected. At midnight a

force of 1,200 men, under Colonel Prescott, proceeded to Bunker Hill, but concluded that Breed's Hill, a little farther on, was a better position, and so took possession of it. By morning the fortifications were almost finished.

The British in Boston now numbered about eleven thousand, Generals Howe, Clinton, and Burgoyne having arrived from England to coöperate with Gage. The British decided that the Americans must not be permitted to retain so threatening a position, hence preparation was made to carry Breed's Hill by storm before the fortifications could be further strengthened.

Battle of Bunker Hill.—Three thousand British veterans, under Generals Howe and Piggott, crossed from Boston and advanced steadily up the hill to the attack (June 17, 1775). Would inexperienced Americans have the courage to stand in battle against the disciplined troops of England? Much depended upon the manner in which the defenders of Breed's Hill would act in this their first trial. Bravery meant hope for the success of the American cause; cowardice meant discouragement from the effects of which it would be difficult to recover.

Breed's Hill.

By some chance this battle, fought on Breed's Hill, has come to be called the Battle of Bunker Hill. It was a dearly bought British victory, their loss numbering 1,054, while that of the Americans was 449. Although a defeat, it was a benefit to the Americans, for it showed them that, inexperienced as they were, they could give battle to British regulars with coolness and courage.

The Americans were commanded by Generals Prescott, Stark, and Putnam. Many of the volunteers were excellent marksmen. They were not permitted to fire until the British were quite near, and then they poured into their advancing foes a volley so deadly that none could withstand it.

The British soon rallied from the confusion into which they had been thrown, and advanced to the second attack with the same result. A third time they charged up the hill. The ammunition of the Americans had now given out. They failed to receive the support that should have reached them from headquarters. With muskets as clubs they tried to hold their

ground, but the contest was unequal. They fell back, but they had shown to the world that in courage the Americans were the equals of the British.

Washington Takes Command.—Washington arrived from Philadelphia and took command of the army at Cambridge

(July 3). His first duty was to organize an efficient army out of the raw material there assembled. The task was not a small one. Many of the men desired to return to their homes, for their enthusiasm had cooled. Reënforcements, however, from Pennsylvania, Maryland, and Virginia, under the brave Daniel Morgan, arrived, and these, by their obedience to orders, set so excellent an example that the army was held together.

Washington Enters Boston.—Washington was soon ready to begin operations against the British. His first move was to fortify Dorchester Heights, overlooking Boston. The British did not dare to pass through another Breed's Hill experience, for they were now opposed by an able commander and by

Expedition of Montgomery, Arnold, and Morgan to Quebec.

After the American army had driven the British from Boston, and had little to do in that vicinity, Morgan and Arnold, with a force, were sent to coöperate with General Richard Montgomery, who was leading an expedition against Canada from northern New York. Arnold and Morgan went by way of Kennebec and Chaudière Rivers. The journey through the wilds of Maine was made in the dead of winter. The march occupied thirty-three days, and so great were the fatigue and hardship attending it that more than two hundred perished, and many more abandoned the army. With 700 gaunt and suffering men the indomitable leaders reached Quebec, and were joined by General Montgomery, who had succeeded in capturing Montreal (November 3, 1775). Quebec was defended by Sir Guy Carleton. The city was stormed from different points (December 31) with great bravery, and barely escaped capture. Montgomery was killed, Arnold was wounded, and Morgan was captured, but was afterwards exchanged. The expedition proved fruitless.

a better disciplined army. They decided to abandon the city. Their entire force embarked (March, 1776), the greater part sailing for Halifax, N. S. Washington entered the city in triumph, and took possession of valuable stores which the British had found impossible to carry away with them.

British Attack Fort Moultrie.—Sir Henry Clinton had left Boston in January (1776) with 2,000 men to operate against the Southern colonies. He was joined off the coast of the

Carolinas by Sir Peter Parker, with additional forces and ten ships of war.

When Clinton and Parker approached Charleston, they found the city defended by a fort upon Sullivan's Island. This fort was built of palmetto logs, and in honor of its commander was called Fort Moultrie. The British opened a heavy bombardment (June 28), but Colonel

Moultrie promptly responded with such effect that the British had to withdraw, and Charleston was saved.

Sergeant Jasper.—During the bombardment Sergeant Jasper performed a brave deed that deserves to be remembered. The flag of the fort had been torn from its fastenings by a shot from the enemy, and it lay outside of the fortifications. Undaunted by the hot fire from the fleet, the brave sergeant leaped over the parapet, seized the flag, and affixing it to a sponge staff set it up in full view, so that enemy and friend alike could see that the Americans still held the fort. For this deed he was offered a lieutenant's commission by Governor Rutledge, but modestly declined it.

Battle of Moore's Creek Bridge, N. C.

Many sturdy Scotch had settled in the interior of the Carolinas. They were loyal to King George III., and proposed to show their loyalty. A force of 1,600 of them were proceeding to the coast to welcome Clinton, when they were intercepted at Moore's Creek Bridge (February 27, 1776) by Colonel Richard Caswell with 1,000 militia. The Scots were routed after a fierce engagement, the patriots taking 900 prisoners and capturing 2,000 stands of arms.



COLONEL MOULTRIE.

First Steps to Secure Independence.—The operations around Boston and Charleston showed the colonists that England was determined to subjugate and punish them. To be independent of England was now the desire.

In April, 1776, North Carolina took the first pronounced step toward the independence of all the colonies by authorizing her delegates in Congress to concur with the delegates from the other colonies in declaring independence. Virginia followed

closely by passing resolutions, drawn up by Pendleton and introduced by Thomas Nelson, instructing her delegates to propose to Congress that it declare the colonies free and independent States (May 25, 1776). Shortly afterwards the Virginia colonists adopted a Bill of Rights (June 15) and a Consti-



SERGEANT JASPER REPLACING THE FLAG.

tution (June 29), under which the Commonwealth was organized, with Patrick Henry as first governor. South Carolina had already organized an independent State government (March, 1776), with John Rutledge as president and Henry Laurens as vice-president.

Lee's Famous Resolution of Independence.—In



THE CONTINENTAL CONGRESS SIGNING THE DECLARATION OF INDEPENDENCE.

Mecklenburg Declaration of Independence.

Up to this time the colonists had little idea of separating themselves from the mother country. They had been simply fighting against wrong and oppression. But American independence was being thought of more and more. Christopher Gadsden, of South Carolina, in a public speech had boldly advised independence as early as 1766. After the battle of Lexington this idea rapidly gained ground. The news of this battle had scarcely reached North Carolina when the patriots of Mecklenburg County assembled in convention at Charlotte, and passed formal resolutions (May 20, 1775) that were a virtual declaration of independence.

resolutions with so much eloquence as to overcome all opposition.

Independence Declared.—The people of the colonies were not unanimous upon the subject of independence. Although contending for their rights, many were bound to the mother country by ties of interest and affection. But the king had spurned every petition for a redress of grievances, and an armed conflict had been forced upon America. This conflict was rebellion so long as the colonists considered the king as their sovereign. A formal declaration of independence would make them consider themselves as sovereign. They had to choose between two things: either to be oppressed and humiliated, or to be free and independent. The resolution of Lee was adopted (July 2), and a Declaration of Independence, drawn up by Thomas Jefferson, of Virginia, signed by representatives of all the colonies, was proclaimed to the country (July 4, 1776). A copy of the Declaration was sent to each of the States.

accordance with the instructions of Virginia, Richard Henry Lee moved in the Continental Congress (June 7, 1776), assembled at Philadelphia: "That these United Colonies are and of right ought to be free and independent States . . . and that all political connection between them and the State of Great Britain is and ought to be totally dissolved." This motion was seconded by John Adams, of Massachusetts, who, in the many days' debate that followed, urged the adoption of the



JOHN RUTLEDGE.

Great Principles of Human Liberty Announced.

—This action of the Continental Congress was taken with great care and with a deep sense of its solemnity and importance. Though the paper was drawn up by Thomas Jefferson, there were on the Committee with him John Adams of Massachusetts, Benjamin Franklin of Pennsylvania, Roger Sherman of Connecticut, and Robert Livingston of New York. The responsibility felt by these men was expressed by Adams, who declared that “the greatest question has been decided which was ever debated in America, and a greater, perhaps, never was or will be decided among men.”

In those days there were no telegraph lines or railroads, but riders were sent posthaste to every State with copies of the Declaration. The soldiers in the army listened to the reading of it with heads uncovered. The news was carried to every village, and the joy of the people was expressed by the ringing of bells and the firing of cannon. The feelings which inspired the great statesmen were only a reflection of the desire for independence that thrilled in the hearts of the people. It was felt that thenceforth the fight was not to be for their rights as Englishmen but for their freedom as Americans.

The hall in which Congress held its memorable meeting has since been known as Independence Hall. The bell which proclaimed the glad tidings, although its sides are cracked and its voice is hushed, is to-day treasured as the old Liberty Bell.

Questions.—Who commanded the American forces about Boston? What was the first thing to be done? What hill overlooking the town was selected for fortification? What hill was concluded to be more suitable? How many British were now in Boston? Under what generals? Tell something about the Battle of Bunker Hill. When was it fought? When did Washington take command? What had he to create? Why did many wish to return home? What reinforcements arrived? What did Washington at once begin to do? What Heights did he fortify? Why did not the British attack Dorchester Heights? What did they now decide to do? When did the British leave Boston? When had Sir Henry Clinton left Boston? Why? Who joined him? What fort defended Charleston? Who commanded Fort Moultrie? Tell something of the attack upon Fort Moultrie. What brave deed performed during this attack deserves to be remembered? What reward was offered to Sergeant Jasper? What did the operations around Boston and Charleston show the col-

onists? What was now the desire? What colony took the first step towards independence? What colony followed? What did North Carolina authorize her delegates in Congress to do? What did Virginia instruct her delegates to do? What State government had already been organized? What did Richard Henry Lee move in Congress? Who seconded the motion? Why did not all the Americans believe in independence? Between what two things did the colonists have to choose? Who drew up the Declaration of Independence? When was it proclaimed? The effect of the proclamation? In what hall was Congress holding session? Tell something of the Liberty Bell.

FOR ADVANCED CLASSES.

Topics for Discussion.

- I. Siege of Boston. II. Battle of Breed's Hill. III. Washington's Operations around Boston. IV. Quebec Expedition of Montgomery, Arnold, and Morgan. V. First British Attack upon Charleston. VI. The Mecklenburg Declaration of Independence. VII. The Virginia Bill of Rights. VIII. The American Declaration of Independence.

References and Authorities.

Hildreth's *History of the United States*, vol. iii.

Siege of Boston, 69. Battle of Bunker Hill, 82. Washington assumes command, 85. Invasion of Canada, 102. Mecklenburg Declaration, 73. Battle of Moore's Creek Bridge, 119. Independence declared, 136.

Bancroft's *History of the United States*, vol. iv.

Siege of Boston, 166. Breed's Hill, 215-229. Washington's operations around Boston, 239, 326. Montgomery in Canada, 296. Arnold's Quebec expedition, 298-308. Attack on Fort Moultrie, 404-410. Virginia Bill of Rights, 416. Declaration of Independence, 423, 437-416.

Fiske's *American Revolution*, vol. i.

Siege of Boston, 136. Battle of Breed's or Bunker Hill, 140-143. Washington's operations around Boston, 169-171. Canadian operations, 165-168. Declaration of Independence, 183, 191-197.

Lossing's *Field Book of the American Revolution*.

Vol. i.: Battle of Bunker Hill, 538-546. Arnold's Quebec expedition, 187. Vol. ii.: Attack upon Charleston, 548.

Parallel Readings.

INDEX GUIDE for comparative examination of other works and authorities.—*Bunker Hill, Battle of. Washington, commander-in-chief. Boston, Siege of. Fort Moultrie, Attack upon. Moore's Creek Bridge, Battle of. Jasper, Sergeant. Mecklenburg Declaration of Independence, The. Lee, Richard Henry. Independence, Declaration of. Jefferson, Thomas. Hall, Independence. Liberty Bell, The.*

SPECIAL.—Winsor's *Narrative and Critical History*, vol. vi., chap. ii.: The Revolution precipitated. Hart's *Formation of the Union*, 77: Independence declared. Cooke's *Virginia*, Part III., chap. xiv.: Virginia Bill of Rights, proposal for independence, etc. The student is advised to read carefully Jefferson's *Declaration of Independence*. Holmes's *Grandmother's Story of Bunker Hill Battle* (poem).

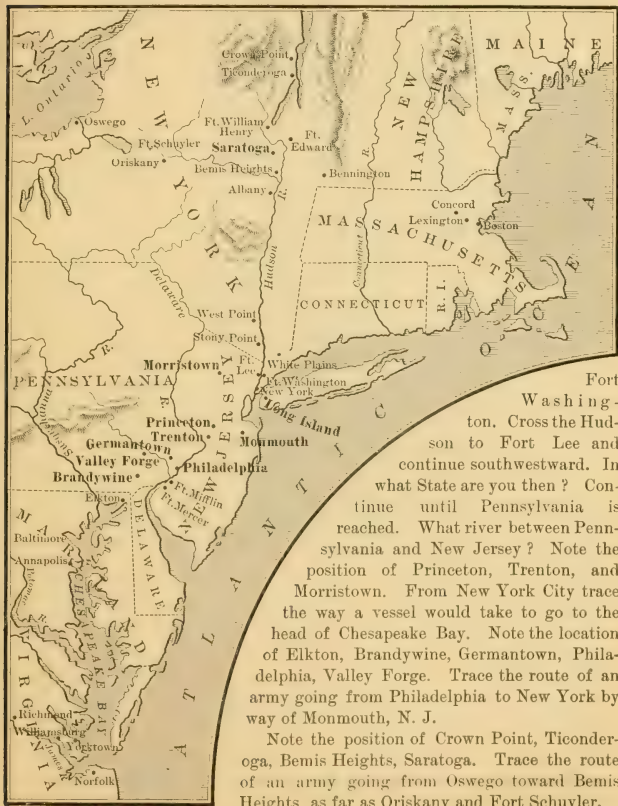
Review Work.

What tyrannical governor of colonial Virginia was rebelled against? Why is the Charter Oak famous? Who was Sir Edmund Andros? What colony was settled the same year the Importation Acts were passed? When and where did the First Colonial Congress assemble? In what other war besides that of the Revolution were Forts Ticonderoga and Crown Point taken?

PREPARATORY GEOGRAPHY LESSON.

Upon the accompanying map note the position of Boston, New York, Philadelphia, Yorktown. Note the point marked Long Island. Here a battle was fought in defense of New York. Where is Bennington? Fort Edward? Where is Concord? Lexington?

From Long Island pass up the Hudson, noting both White Plains and



Fort Washington. Cross the Hudson to Fort Lee and continue southwestward. In what State are you then? Continue until Pennsylvania is reached. What river between Pennsylvania and New Jersey? Note the position of Princeton, Trenton, and Morristown. From New York City trace the way a vessel would take to go to the head of Chesapeake Bay. Note the location of Elkton, Brandywine, Germantown, Philadelphia, Valley Forge. Trace the route of an army going from Philadelphia to New York by way of Monmouth, N. J.

Note the position of Crown Point, Ticonderoga, Bemis Heights, Saratoga. Trace the route of an army going from Oswego toward Bemis Heights, as far as Oriskany and Fort Schuyler.

The War for American Independence.

CHAPTER VI.

THE WAR IN THE NORTH.

Battle of Long Island.—British reënforcements arrived in America, and Washington soon learned that New York would be attacked. Hastening from Boston to the defense of that city, he posted about four thousand men under Generals Sullivan, Stirling, and Putnam on Long Island, near Brooklyn. General Howe soon arrived from Halifax, and General Clinton from Charleston, where he had been repulsed. Ten thousand Hessians and English, under Grant and Von Heister, were landed. A battle took place in which the Americans suffered disastrous defeat. Fortunately a dense fog concealed their movements and withheld the British from following up the victory. Washington was thus enabled to withdraw his forces secretly across the East River.

The British Capture New York.—The defeat on Long Island compelled Washington to abandon the defense of New York. He retreated up the Hudson, and was followed by the British. In a skirmish at Harlem Heights he gained an advantage over them. The armies next met at White Plains (September 28), where the Americans were again defeated. Crossing to the west bank of the Hudson, Washington posted himself at Fort Lee. Directly opposite, on the east bank, stood Fort Washington, to defend which he had left Colonel Magaw with 3,000 men. This fort, with its whole garrison, fell into the enemy's hands (November 16), and the capture of Fort Lee closely followed.

Washington Retreats through New Jersey ; Crosses the Delaware.—Washington now retreated into New Jersey, closely pursued by Cornwallis and Knyphausen. Defeats had so discouraged many of his men that his forces were reduced to 3,000. Across the State he hastened, and reaching the Delaware crossed to the other side (December 8).

He took care to move all the boats for miles up and down the stream beyond the reach of the pursuing British ; so that when Cornwallis reached the river he was compelled to give up the pursuit. Meanwhile he quartered his men in the several villages and towns near by.

The Capture of Trenton.—

Hearing that the enemy's forces were thus divided, Washington determined to strike a quick, bold blow upon one of the divisions. Recrossing the river at night, amid the drifting ice, he marched with 2,400 men upon Trenton, where Colonel Rahl and some two thousand Hessians



THE ADVANCE ON TRENTON.

were encamped. The advance was made through a blinding snowstorm, and the surprise was complete (December 26). Rahl was mortally wounded, and more than one thousand Hessians captured. By morning the Americans were safe again, with their prisoners, on the other side of the river.

Effect of the Battle of Trenton.—The victory at Trenton gave new life to the American cause, for it dispelled much

The Hessians.

Both the people of America and the people of England were divided among themselves on the question of the war now being fought between the two countries. In America those who favored independence were called Patriots. Those who felt no desire to throw off allegiance to the British crown were called Tories. On the other hand, the war was very unpopular with the people of England. The king found it so difficult to get men for his armies that he was compelled to hire soldiers of other powers. Russia indignantly declined to furnish him any, but the rulers of several petty German states, among which was Hesse-Cassel, were willing to do so. These furnished about twenty thousand men under four experienced generals—Riedesel, Knyphausen, Von Heister, and Donop.

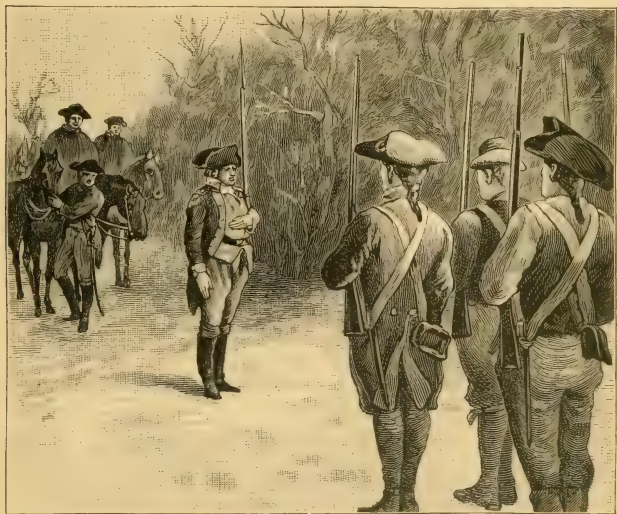
of the gloom that had settled upon the country. Many enlisted in the American army, and with an increased force Washington was able boldly to enter New Jersey. Cornwallis now fell back to Princeton, where he received heavy reënforcements. Then he advanced upon the American position near Trenton, intending to give battle the following day. In the first skirmish, which took place (January 2, 1777), the advantage was with the Patriots.

Battle of Princeton.—Washington now showed himself a skillful general. A part of the British forces had remained at Princeton, and were to arrive before the battle. Washington determined to attack this force, but Cornwallis in his front was to know nothing of the movement. The Americans quietly removed their baggage to a safe place, and silently withdrew in the night. By morning they were at Princeton. The British forces were up, and about to march forward to join Cornwallis. A hot battle followed (January 3). The personal bravery of the commander-in-chief did much toward winning the victory for the Americans. With a loss of 400 men, or four times the American loss, the British were routed. Cornwallis, hearing the sound of distant cannon, hastened to the rescue, but arrived too late. Both armies now went into winter quarters—the Americans at Morristown Heights.

Foreigners in the American Army.

The gallant struggles of the Americans were winning the admiration of Europe. Frederick the Great of Prussia, one of Europe's greatest generals, admired the courage and ability of Washington, Arnold, and other American generals. A number of foreigners joined the American army, and did good service in the cause of liberty. Among these were the French nobleman Lafayette; the Poles, Pulaski and Kosciusko; and the Germans, De Kalb and Steuben.

The British Enter Philadelphia ; Battle of Brandywine.—When operations were again resumed, Washington found himself called to the defense of Philadelphia. Eighteen thousand British under Lord Howe put to sea from New York. Howe, believing the Delaware River to be well defended, sailed around into Chesapeake Bay and landed (August 25, 1777) at Elkton, Md., seventy miles from the city in which the Ameri-



STEUBEN DRILLING RECRUITS AT VALLEY FORGE

can Congress was holding its session. Washington intercepted the enemy at Chad's Ford, on Brandywine Creek (September 11). The Americans were greatly outnumbered, and were compelled to fall back, after making a brave resistance. The British entered Philadelphia in triumph. Congress was compelled to adjourn to Lancaster (September 26), and shortly after to York, Pa.

Germantown and Valley Forge.—The main body of

The Conway Cabal.

A famous and unsuccessful plot to displace Washington, known as the Conway Cabal, was brought to light about this time. It had for its object the making of General Gates, of whom we shall learn in the next chapter, commander-in-chief of the Americans. The plot amounted to nothing, for Congress had full confidence in Washington, his men all loved him, and the whole country realized, even in its day of darkest gloom, that none in his position could have better encountered the many difficulties with which he was surrounded, could have better held together his little army and saved them from destruction in the face of overpowering numbers, or could have shown more indomitable qualities in the midst of defeat than this American Fabius, as he has admirably been called.

the British encamped at Germantown, six miles from Philadelphia. Here Washington attacked them (October 3), but without success, losing more than eleven hundred men. The British now obtained control of the Delaware by capturing Forts Mercer and Mifflin. The Patriots retired to Valley Forge, and passed the long, desolate winter in gloom and suffering. Many were without shoes, most were poorly supplied with clothing, all were without sufficient food. These hardships tried their fortitude and patriotism

to a far greater extent than the more exciting experiences of the battlefield.

At Valley Forge the Americans were joined by Baron Steuben, an eminent and experienced German general, who had enlisted in the American cause. Steuben was of great service in reorganizing the army and drilling the men according to the best methods of war known in Europe. When operations were again resumed, the good results of his labors were clearly seen.

Questions.—What did Washington soon learn? What did he do? Whom did he post upon Long Island? Tell something of the battle of Long Island. What enabled Washington secretly to withdraw his army? What was he now compelled to do? What skirmish did he have with the pursuing British? Battle? Where did he then post himself? Tell something of the capture of Fort Mifflin. Where did Washington now retreat? Followed by whom? Reached what river? What precaution did he take? What did Cornwallis do? Tell something of the Hessian surprise at Trenton. What did the victory at Trenton give? What was Washington now able to do? Tell something of the battle of Princeton. How many men did the British lose in this battle? Where did the Americans go into winter quarters? What city did Washington now have to defend? Where did the British land? Where did Washington intercept them? Tell something of the battle of Red Bank, or Brandywine. What was Congress compelled to do after the American defeat at Red Bank? Tell

something of the battle of Germantown. What forts on the Delaware fell into the hands of the British? To what winter quarters did the Americans now retire? Tell something of their sufferings. Who joined them at Valley Forge? Of what service was Steuben?

FOR ADVANCED CLASSES.

Topics for Discussion.

- I. Washington's Defense of New York City. II. The Hessians. III. Washington's New Jersey Maneuvers. IV. Foreigners in the American army. V. Washington's Defense of Philadelphia. VI. The Conway Cabal.

References and Authorities.

Hildreth's *History of the United States*, vol. iii.

Battle of Long Island, 148. White Plains, 154. Washington's retreat, 156. Battle of Trenton, 166. Princeton, 168. Brandywine, 218. Germantown, 223. Foreigners in the American army, 192-195. Conway Cabal, 232.

Bancroft's *History of the United States*.

Vol. v.: Defense of New York, 26. Long Island, 29-38. White Plains, 71. Washington's retreat across New Jersey, 81-85. Capture of Hessians, 97-99. Princeton, 106. Campaigns around Philadelphia, 175-181. Vol. iv.: England obtains Hessians.

Fiske's *American Revolution*.

Vol. i.: Defense of New York, 204-214. New Jersey operations, 224, 230-237. Operations around Philadelphia, 312-324. Hiring of German troops, 161. Vol. ii.: Conway Cabal, 34-36.

Lossing's *Field Book of the American Revolution*, vol. ii.

Long Island, 607. Trenton, 21. Princeton, 26. Brandywine, 169. Germantown, 108. Conway Cabal, 130.

Parallel Readings.

INDEX GUIDE for comparative examination of other works and authorities.—*Long Island, Battle of. Fort Washington, Surrender of. Washington's Retreat across New Jersey. Hessians, The. Trenton, Washington's Capture of. Princeton, Battle of. Brandywine, Battle of. Philadelphia, British Capture of. Germantown, Battle of. Valley Forge. Steuben, Baron. Conway Cabal.*

SPECIAL.—Winsor's *Narrative and Critical History*, vol. vi., chaps. iv. and v.: The struggle for the Hudson and the struggle for the Delaware.

CHAPTER VII.

THE FIRST GREAT VICTORY.

Burgoyne's Invasion of New York.—During the early part of 1777 an expedition numbering about eight thousand British, Hessians, and Canadians was organized in Canada under Sir John Burgoyne for the purpose of invading New York. By overrunning the Hudson River Valley and co-operating with the British forces already in possession of New

Fort Schuyler, Oriskany, and Bennington.

Burgoyne expected many Tories and Indians to join him along the route, and for this reason a part of his expedition, under Colonel St. Leger, went by way of the St. Lawrence River, Lake Ontario, and Oswego, so as to march down the valley before joining Burgoyne's army on the Hudson. St. Leger besieged Fort Schuyler, defended by the American Colonel Gansevoort and 700 men, which fort lay in the path of the British. A force of militia, under brave General Herkimer, attempting to relieve this fort, was defeated at the battle of Oriskany. Arnold, from the Hudson River, then advanced. His forces were small, yet he succeeded in making St. Leger believe that the approaching Americans were overwhelmingly numerous. St. Leger's allies deserted him and he was compelled to beat a hasty retreat, leaving a quantity of his supplies to the Americans. As Burgoyne's army proceeded on its way, a body of troops, under Colonel Baum, was sent eastward to capture and destroy some stores that had been collected at Bennington, Vt. A body of New Hampshire militia, under Colonel Stark, hastily gathered, and the oncoming British were met and severely repulsed (August 15), losing more than eight hundred men.



BURGOYNE.

southward Burgoyne advanced the more difficult he found it to obtain supplies for his army. Meanwhile Schuyler, ably assisted by Generals Arnold, Lincoln, and Morgan, was making preparations to receive him. Fortifications directed by Kosciusko were erected on Bemis Heights, near by.

The plans of the battle were all arranged,

York City, it was hoped to cut off New England from the rest of the revolting colonies.

To resist this invasion, General Schuyler gathered a force of New York and New England militia in the vicinity of Fort Edward, while Washington sent

as many troops from his army as he could spare. In all, the Americans numbered about five thousand.

As the British advanced, the Americans fell back, abandoning in succession Forts Crown Point, Ticonderoga, and Edward. Only at the second-named place did they make any resistance. At last, Schuyler took up a position at Stillwater, near Saratoga.

First Battle near Saratoga. — The farther



GATES.

when at the last moment Schuyler was, in the opinion of many, unjustly deprived of his command, and Gates, a general of little real ability, was put in his place. On the 19th of September the two armies came together in battle. Most of the fighting on the American side was done by that part of the army commanded by Arnold, who for hours repeatedly repulsed the British advance, Gates rendering but little assistance and encouragement. The result was indecisive.

Arnold Displaced.—Arnold was convinced that, had he received the proper reinforcements, a complete victory would have been won. This caused ill feeling between Gates and Arnold, and when everybody praised Arnold for the bravery he had shown in battle, Gates became very jealous. As a consequence, he deprived Arnold of command before the next battle took place.

Second Battle near Saratoga ; Surrender of Burgoyne.—A second battle was fought (October 7). The British were led by Generals Philips, Riedesel, and Fraser, three of the most skillful officers ever sent to America. The field was hotly contested. For some time Arnold looked on ; but unable to control himself, he rushed without authority into the thickest of the battle. His men received him with loud hurrahs, and his leadership of them turned the tide of battle to complete victory. Burgoyne retreated to

The French Alliance.

France had for some time encouraged the Americans in their hostility against her old enemy, England. The victory of Saratoga so far increased her confidence in the success of the Americans that she decided to form an alliance with them. Silas Deane, Arthur Lee, and Benjamin Franklin, commissioners appointed by Congress (1776), had been trying for some time to bring about this result. They were now successful. Count d'Estaing and a fleet were sent to America, and the Patriot cause was thus greatly strengthened.

Peace Overtures of England.

About this time the king and ministry of England began to realize that America was not to be easily conquered. Overtures were made to the Patriots to bring about peace. Bills conceding everything claimed by the colonists were passed by Parliament. Commissioners were sent to treat with Congress. It was, however, too late. The war now was not for rights claimed, but for American independence, and nothing short of acknowledgment by Great Britain of this independence could end hostilities.

Clark's Conquest of the Northwest Territory.

About the latter part of the year 1778 some very important operations were being conducted in the region north of the Ohio. That portion of land belonging to Virginia, known as the Northwest Territory, contained several forts and posts that had been taken from the French and were now held by the English. The British governor, Hamilton, had in every way encouraged the Indians of that region to annoy the colonists, and Patrick Henry, governor of Virginia, sent Colonel George Rogers Clark to drive the British from the territory. Kaskaskia and Cahokia, in what is now Illinois, and Vincennes, Indiana, fell into the hands of the Virginians, and Hamilton himself was taken prisoner. The achievement was a notable one, and was accomplished in the face of almost insurmountable difficulties. The vast territory was wrested from British rule and restored to the control of Virginia, where it rightfully belonged (1779). The Indians were also impressed by the strength of the Americans, and were not so easily influenced by the British from that time on.

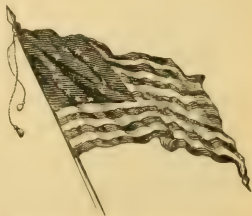
Saratoga, where he was surrounded. His supplies were cut off, and he was at last compelled to surrender (October 17, 1777). More than five thousand men laid down their arms and became prisoners of war.

British Abandon Philadelphia.—The Americans now formed an alliance (February 6, 1778) with France, much to the alarm of the British at Philadelphia, who feared that a French fleet would soon arrive and help the Americans to surround them. The British vessels hastily left for New York, while the army marched overland across New Jersey (June 18).

Battle of Monmouth.—Washington, having received reinforcements from the North, now, after the surrender of Bur-

goyne, followed the British, and attacked them at Monmouth, N. J. (June 28, 1778). The result might have proved very disastrous to the Americans, owing to the fact that one of Washington's commands was disregarded or mistaken by General Charles Lee. Washington rode up in time to prevent that general from retreating, and after administering a passionate rebuke, put himself at the head of the troops and led them to victory.

Rhode Island Expedition.—Upon the arrival of the French fleet an expedition was planned against Newport, R. I., and land



FLAG ADOPTED BY CONGRESS, 1777.

forces under command of General Sullivan were sent to coöperate. The English Admiral Howe sailed from New York to give the French battle, but the combatants were separated by a storm, which did much damage to the vessels of both. Sullivan, unassisted by the French fleet, failed in his design ; but being attacked as he was withdrawing, he succeeded in winning a victory from his pursuing foes.

Questions.—What expedition was formed in 1777? Under whom? Who made preparations to meet the invaders? How many men did Burgoyne have? What forts did he take? What generals assisted Schuyler in this? Where were fortifications erected to receive Burgoyne? By whom was Schuyler superseded? Tell something of the battle of Bemis Heights, near Saratoga. Of what was Arnold convinced? Why did Gates become jealous of Arnold? What was the consequence of this jealousy? When was a second battle fought? Who led the British? Tell something of this battle. How many men laid down their arms? Why did the British leave Philadelphia? Where did Washington overtake them? Tell something of the battle of Monmouth. What did Washington himself do in this battle? What expedition was planned when the French fleet arrived? Tell something of Sullivan's expedition to Rhode Island.

FOR ADVANCED CLASSES.

Topics for Discussion.

- I. Burgoyne's Invasion. II. Fort Schuyler, Oriskany, and Bennington. III. The Battles of Saratoga, or Stillwater. IV. The French Alliance. V. British Retreat from Philadelphia. VI. General George Rogers Clark and Virginia's Conquest of the Northwest Territory.

References and Authorities.

Hildreth's *History of the United States*, vol. iii.

Burgoyne's invasion, 196-214. British evacuate Philadelphia, 249. Clark's conquest of the Northwest, 260.

Bancroft's *History of the United States*, vol. v.

Burgoyne's invasion begins, 157. Burgoyne's defeat, 188. French alliance, 244-246. British retreat from Philadelphia, 272-277. Clark's conquest of the Northwest, 310-314.

Fiske's *American Revolution*.

Vol. i.: Burgoyne's advance, 268. Oriskany, 289. Vol. ii.: French alliance, 9. George Rogers Clark, 103-106.

Lossing's *Field Book of the American Revolution*.

Vol. i.: Bennington, 398. Stillwater, 47-81. Vol. ii.: Monmouth, 147.

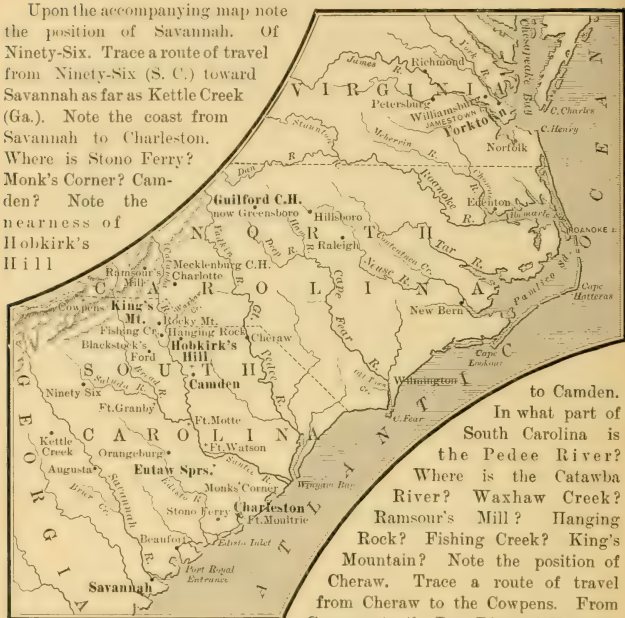
Parallel Readings.

INDEX GUIDE for comparative examination of other works and authorities.—*Burgoyne, General. Gates, General. Schuyler, General. Bennington, Battle of. Saratoga, Battle of. Bemis Heights, Battle of. Arnold at Saratoga. French Alliance. The. Monmouth, Battle of. Clark, General George Rogers. Northwest Territory, Conquest of.*

SPECIAL.—Hinsdale's *Old Northwest*, chap. ix.: The Northwest in the Revolution. English: *Conquest of the Country Northwest of the River Ohio*. Winsor: *Narrative and Critical History*, vol. vi., chaps. iv. and v. Cooke's *Virginia*, Part III., chap. xvi.: The Hannibal of the West.

PREPARATORY GEOGRAPHY LESSON.

Upon the accompanying map note the position of Savannah. Of Ninety-Six. Trace a route of travel from Ninety-Six (S. C.) toward Savannah as far as Kettle Creek (Ga.). Note the coast from Savannah to Charleston. Where is Stono Ferry? Monk's Corner? Camden? Note the nearness of Hobkirk's Hill



and note what three rivers are crossed. Note the position of Guilford Court House. Trace a route of travel from Guilford Court House to Yorktown, Va., by way of Petersburg. From Guilford Court House to Hobkirk's Hill. Then to Ninety-Six. Note the nearness of Eutaw Springs to Orangeburg.

to Camden.
In what part of South Carolina is the Pedee River? Where is the Catawba River? Waxhaw Creek? Ramsour's Mill? Hanging Rock? Fishing Creek? King's Mountain? Note the position of Cheraw. Trace a route of travel from Cheraw to the Cowpens. From Cowpens to the Dan River of Virginia,

CHAPTER VIII.

THE WAR IN THE SOUTH.

Invasion of the South; Savannah Captured.—After three years of warfare the British found that they were accomplishing little toward subduing the Northern colonies. They

now turned their attention to the South, and Colonel Campbell and Admiral Hyde Parker, with 10,000 men, appeared before Savannah, Ga. Only 900 men, under General Robert Howe, defended it. Howe made all possible resistance, but was



ANTHONY WAYNE.

compelled to surrender the city (December 29, 1778).

Battle of Kettle Creek.

—Following up this success, the British soon overran all the southeastern portion of Georgia. Officers were sent into the interior to rally the Tories. Colonel Boyd collected a body of these Tories at Ninety-Six, S. C., and was leading them to Savannah when he was intercepted and defeated (February 14, 1779) by some South Carolina and Georgia militia, under Colonels Pickens and Clarke, at Kettle Creek, Wilkes County, Ga. In the battle Boyd was killed.

Operations in the North.

The British in the North were doing but little, except to send out various expeditions for the sake of destroying and plundering. One of these expeditions was commanded by Tryon, who ravaged the coast of Connecticut, and inflicted much damage upon the towns of New Haven, Fairfield, and Norwalk. To offset this movement, a brilliant exploit was performed by the Americans. The British were in possession of the strong fort of Stony Point, in New York, on the Hudson. General Anthony Wayne undertook to capture it. Softly approaching the fort at night, he arranged his men in two columns. For fear that an accidental discharge might give the enemy warning, Wayne ordered his men to unload their guns and use only bayonets in the assault. The British sentinel was taken completely by surprise and was overpowered; but as the Americans steadily advanced up the rocky path to the summit upon which the fort was built they were discovered and fired upon. The charge, however, was irresistible, and though Wayne was wounded in the assault, the fort, with its stores and 600 prisoners, fell into the hands of the Americans (July 15, 1779).

In July, 1779, a body of Tories and Indians, under Major John Butler, had descended upon the village of Wyoming, Pa., captured the fort, and put to death most of the inhabitants, with all the cruelty of savage warfare. Cherry Valley, N. Y., suffered the same fate the November following. These atrocities were avenged by General Sullivan, who led an expedition to the Susquehanna country, and subsequently to the Mohawk country. A fierce battle was fought near Elmira, N. Y., August 29, 1779, in which the Tories and Indians were routed, their fields laid waste, and much of their property destroyed.



PICKENS.

demanding its surrender (May 11). This city was defended by Colonel Moultrie, who declined to comply with Prevost's demand.

Battle of Stono Ferry.—Meanwhile Lincoln, advancing upon Savannah with a large force, learned of Prevost's victory and subsequent advance upon Charleston; so he turned and hastened to the aid of that city. Prevost abandoned the siege, and retreated as Lincoln approached. Lincoln intercepted him about thirty miles from Charleston, but for nearly a month neither side made a movement toward battle. At length Lincoln attacked a portion of the enemy's forces under Colonel Maitland, and the battle of Stono Ferry took place (June 20, 1779). The Americans were repulsed with terrible loss.

Americans Fail to Retake Savannah.

—The French fleet, under D'Estaing, now arrived off the coast, and a combined attack on Savannah by the French and Americans was planned. The city was besieged for a month. An attempt was made to carry the enemy's works by storm (October 9), but it was unsuccessful. Pulaski fell in the engagement, and the gallant Sergeant Jasper, of Fort Moultrie



COUNT PULASKI.



DE KALE.

fame, was mortally wounded. After the repulse D'Estaing refused to coöperate further, and sailed away. Lincoln returned to Charleston.

British Capture Charleston.—Sir Henry Clinton, with a large force from New York, now arrived in the South, and, landing thirty miles below Charleston (February 11, 1780), surrounded the city, which was held by Lincoln (March 20). A British fleet, under Admiral Arbuthnot, took up a position in the harbor (April 9).

A Patriot force, under Huger [hū-jē'], hastening to the relief of Charleston, was intercepted and repulsed at Monk's Corner by the British Colonel Tarleton. Cut off from all assistance, Lincoln found it necessary to surrender after enduring a siege of two months (May 12, 1780).

British Overrun South Carolina.—After capturing Charleston the British overran South Carolina, just as they had done Georgia after the capture of Savannah. Clinton sent out an expedition to Ninety-Six, under Colonel Cruger; another to Augusta, under Colonel Brown; and a third to Camden, under Lord Cornwallis. The Tories of these sections were

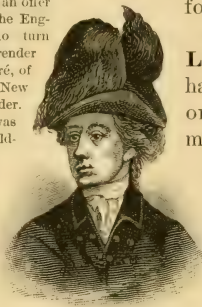


Paul Jones.

In the war of the Revolution the Americans had no regular navy. Congress however, granted letters of marque and reprisal that authorized shipowners to fit up private vessels of war to prey upon the commerce of the enemy. These were known as privateers. By great exertion, however, there had been fitted up in France a small squadron for the Americans, and it was placed under the command of Captain Paul Jones. Jones boldly sailed up and down the Irish, Scottish, and English coasts, seizing and destroying many vessels. His greatest victory was over the *Serapis*, off Flamborough Head, on the east coast of England (September 23, 1779). No more desperate naval battle was ever fought. Jones lashed his vessel to the *Serapis*, and the battle was fought hand to hand. Three times the ships took fire, but each time the flames were extinguished. It is said that at one time during the latter part of the engagement, when there were barely men enough to continue the battle, the captain of the *Serapis* called out to Jones, "Have you surrendered yet?" "I have not begun to fight yet," shouted Jones in reply. Jones's vessel, the *Bonhomme Richard*, was made worthless in the action, and when the *Serapis* surrendered, Jones transferred his crew to the surrendered vessel and sailed for Holland.

Arnold's Treason.

About this time news came from the North of a sad blow dealt to the American cause. Arnold, the brave, the gallant, the impetuous, the hero of Quebec, the genius of Saratoga, the trusted friend of Washington, had gone over to the enemy and sold his honor for English gold. In all confidence, Washington had given him command of the important post of West Point, N. Y. Whatever may have been his other motives, an offer of £6,315 and a position in the English army induced him to turn traitor. He agreed to surrender West Point, and Major André, of the British, was sent from New York to arrange the surrender. On his way back André was stopped by three Patriots, Paulding, Van Wert, and Williams, who learned the nature of his business. In vain he offered them large bribes to let him go, but he was taken prisoner. Arnold, however, was warned in time and escaped. But never again was he to be contented. He lost the respect of his admirers, the affection of his friends, and died in obscurity in London, unhonored and unmourned. The unfortunate André was sentenced to be hanged as a spy, and went to his death pleading to be shot as a soldier should be. His death was greatly lamented. Captain Nathan Hale had been hanged by the British in New York under as cruel circumstances, and later in the war Colonel Isaac Hayne, of Charleston, was similarly executed by Lord Rawdon.



TARLETON.

very much encouraged by having British forces near at hand; so they began to take an active part in the war.

So cruel did Tories and British become that the Patriots in many parts organized into partisan bands, and in avenging themselves struck many a blow for freedom.

Gates Supersedes Lincoln. — Lincoln having been taken prisoner, another commander was sent South.

At first the brave and experienced German, De Kalb, was selected, but he was soon superseded by Gates, as it was thought that the fame of the

conqueror of Burgoyne would encourage many to join the Patriot ranks. The advance of Gates was looked upon with some uneasiness by the British, and Cornwallis hastened to Camden, where Lord Rawdon, his second in command, had concentrated the British forces.

Battle of Sander's Creek ; Gates Defeated.—Gates collected his army at Clermont, some ten miles distant. Each general formed the same plan, which was to surprise the other, and each chose the same time to carry his plan into effect. They came unexpectedly upon each other at Sander's Creek,

near Camden, and a battle followed. There was much hard fighting on both sides, but the American militia could not withstand the steady bayonet charges of the British regulars. Baron De Kalb, who was the hero of this battle, called to the Americans to hold their ground. He afterwards fell pierced with eleven wounds. The day was lost, and Gates, utterly routed, found his "northern laurels turned to southern willows."

Questions.—After the British had tried for three years to overcome the Northern colonies, where did they turn their attention? Who were sent to take Savannah? When did the city surrender? What did the British now do? Tell something of the battle of Kettle Creek. What American general was now sent South? Whom did Lincoln send to Brier Creek? What happened to Ashe? Where did General Prevost go after the battle of Brier Creek? Upon what city was Lincoln advancing? Why did he turn aside to Charleston instead of going on to Savannah? Tell something of the battle of Stono Ferry. What attack was planned after the arrival of the French fleet? Tell something of the attack upon Savannah. To what place did Lincoln return? Who surrounded Lincoln in Charleston? Who hastened to the relief of Charleston? Where did Tarleton intercept Huger? What did Lincoln now do? How long a siege had he endured? What three expeditions did Clinton now send out? What did the Patriots of the Carolinas now have to do? Why was Gates given command in the South instead of De Kalb? Where did Gates collect his army? Tell something of the battle of Sander's Creek.

FOR ADVANCED CLASSES.

Topics for Discussion.

I. The British Capture of Savannah. II. Campaigns of General Lincoln. III. General Anthony Wayne and Stony Point. IV. Paul Jones and the *Bonhomme Richard*. V. Arnold's Treason. VI. Southern Campaign of General Gates.

References and Authorities.

Hildreth's *History of the United States*, vol. iii.

Capture of Savannah, 275. Lincoln's campaigns, 276-280. Stony Point, 282. Paul Jones, 300. Treachery of Arnold, 319. Gates in the South, 313.

Bancroft's *History of the United States*, vol. v.

Capture of Savannah, 367. Lincoln's campaigns, 367, 373, 376. Arnold's treason, 428, 431. Gates's Camden campaign, 384-389.

Fiske's *American Revolution*, vol. ii.

John Paul Jones, 127-129. Stony Point, 113. Lincoln's campaigns, 167-178. Gates in the South, 186-194. Arnold's treason, 216-222.

Lossing's *Field Book of the American Revolution*.

Vol. ii.: Savannah, 530. Brier Creek, 507. Stono Ferry, 555. Sander's Creek, 466. Vol. i.: Stony Point, 744.

Parallel Readings.

INDEX GUIDE for comparative examination of other works and authorities.—*Savannah, Capture of, by British. Kettle Creek, Battle of. Brier Creek, Battle of. Prevost, General. Stono Ferry, Battle of. Lincoln, General. Stony Point, Capture of. Wyoming Massacre. Pulaski, Death of. Jones, Paul. Charleston, British Capture of. Monk's Corner, Battle of. Cornwallis, General. Arnold's Treason. Camden, Battle of. De Kalb, Baron.*

SPECIAL.—Winsor's *Narrative and Critical History*, vol. vi., chap. vi.: The war in the Southern Department. Longfellow: *Pulaski's Banner* (poem). Abbott: *Blue Jackets of '76*. Cooper: *The Pilot* (fiction).

CHAPTER IX.**THE PARTISANS OF THE CAROLINAS.**

Men who Rescued the Carolinas.—The disastrous defeat of Gates at Sander's Creek, or Camden, gave the British for a while full control of the Carolinas. The American cause in the South would have perished altogether had it not been for a few brave men who, under leaders the most cour-

Partisan Warfare.

The Tories of the Carolinas were as courageous as the Patriots. In the North the Tories did little more than encourage and provide for the British. In the South they were always ready to fight for them. The achievements of the Southern Patriot leaders are all the more remarkable, when it is understood that they were contending not only with the victorious troops of a mighty nation, but with many Americans of the same courage as themselves.

ageous a country ever knew, gathered in small bands and engaged in most persistent warfare. These patriots were called Partisans, because they were opposed by other bands of Americans who were Tories.

No suffering could discourage these men, no hardship turn them aside from their determination to serve their country as faithfully and as well as

their strength and opportunities would permit. They fought no great battles, but every one of their engagements was important, as it served to harass and waste British energies and prevent the return of the British troops to the North, where they might have repeated their Carolina successes.

Partisan Leaders; Marion.—Chief among the Partisan leaders were Generals Marion, Sumter, and Pickens, and Colonel Henry Lee. Marion operated in the swamps about the Pedee, where he struck blow after blow for the Patriot cause.

Wary and vigilant, he many times eluded capture at the hands of large forces sent to surround him. Often he attacked his pursuers when they were least expecting it. When a battle was in prospect he joined the regular army, and when the Americans were defeated, as at Camden, he would hurry back to one of his hiding places, from which he would make sudden and secret expeditions to annoy the victors. He often rescued prisoners from the British. An event of this kind occurred at Nelson's Ferry (August 20, 1780), when with a handful of men he routed a powerful guard, and released more than one hundred and fifty Patriots who had been captured at the battle of Camden. Truly was he the "Swamp Fox of the Carolinas."



MARION.

Sumter, Lee, and Pickens.—The scenes of Sumter's operations lay chiefly along the Catawba; those of Pickens, near the Saluda. Lee, or "Light-horse Harry," as he was called, had already won a name for bravery in the Northern armies, and throughout the war he was continually engaged in brilliant and active service. When not with the regular army he was engaged in daring enterprises, coöperating with Pickens, Sumter, or Marion.

Against these Partisan leaders the British had only one who could meet them with any degree of success. This was Colonel Tarleton, known as "Bloody" Tarleton from his many cruel deeds and fierce method of warfare.

Tarleton was one of the ablest of the English leaders. In May, 1780, he intercepted Colonel



COLONEL HENRY LEE.

Buford, who was coming south from Virginia, and surprising him at Waxhaw, N. C., put almost his whole command to death. This victory was in part balanced by the defeat of a large body of Tories under Colonel Moore. They were attacked



BATTLE OF KING'S MOUNTAIN.

by Colonel Francis Locke, the battle taking place (June 20, 1780) at Ramsour's Mill, N. C.

At Hanging Rock, S. C., occurred (August 7) one of the best fought battles between American militia and British

regulars. The English, under Brown, were defeated by Sumter, the Americans taking a number of prisoners. Good fortune, however, did not dwell long with Sumter, for shortly afterwards he was surprised and routed by Tarleton at Fishing Creek (August 17). Later on, Tarleton was in turn defeated by Sumter at the battle of Blackstock's Ford (November 20, 1780).



SUMTER.

The Battle of King's Mountain, October 7, 1780.—Shortly after the

The Rear Guard of the American Revolution.

The mountain men of eastern Tennessee and western North Carolina performed a very important part in the war. For years they guarded the passes of the mountains and barred the way against the Indians of the Northwest, who were only too eager to enter the Carolinas and aid their English allies. These men therefore, who prevented the colonists from being attacked in the rear, are famous in our country's annals as being the staunch "rear guard of the American Revolution."

defeat of Gates at Camden, Cornwallis sent the British Major Ferguson with a well-supplied force of regulars beyond the Catawba River, for the purpose of enlisting the Tories of western North Carolina. Ferguson's force soon numbered 1,100 men. News then went out over the western country of Ferguson's presence and intentions. Bands of Patriots began at once to assemble at sev-

eral points. Many of these were "mountain men," who had gone beyond the Alleghanies as pioneers into what is now Tennessee.

Colonels Isaac Shelby, John Sevier, William Campbell, McDowell, Cleveland, and Williams, and Major Winston were among those who collected bodies of men to oppose Ferguson. The several detachments joined forces, and 900 of the strongest and ablest pushed on after the



COLONEL ISAAC SHELBY.

enemy. Ferguson had taken up a position on the summit of King's Mountain, just over the boundary line into South Carolina, where he thought himself safe. The Patriots attacked him from several directions. Their ardor and determination prevailed, and Ferguson was slain. The whole force was taken prisoners. This battle marked the turning point of the war. From that time on the Americans made a steady advance in the direction of success and independence.

Questions.—What did the defeat of Gates give the British? The defeat of Gates at Sander's Creek gave the British control of what? Who prevented the American cause from perishing altogether in the South? What can you say of these Southern Patriots? What were they called, and why? Name some of the Partisan leaders. Who was the only British leader who opposed these Partisans with any success? Tell something of Marion. Sumter. Tell something of the battle of Waxhaw. What American victory balanced this defeat? Tell something of the battle of Hanging Rock. Where did Tarleton defeat Sumter? Where did Sumter in turn defeat Tarleton? Who had been sent by Cornwallis to western North Carolina? For what purpose? Who were among those to collect bodies of men to oppose Ferguson? Tell something of the battle of King's Mountain. What did this battle mark?

FOR ADVANCED CLASSES.

Topics for Discussion.

- I. Partisan Warfare in the Carolinas. II. The Battle of King's Mountain. III. The Deeds of Marion, Lee, Sumter, Pickens, and Tarleton.

References and Authorities.

- Hildreth's *History of the United States*, vol. iii.
 Partisan warfare, 307, 313, 315, 317. Battle of King's Mountain, 326.
 Bancroft's *History of the United States*, vol. v.
 Partisans rally, 394. King's Mountain, 398-400. Marion, 394, 401. Sumter, 394, 403.
 Fiske's *American Revolution*, vol. ii.
 Partisan operations, 195. Marion and Sumter, 183-184. King's Mountain, 245-248.
 Lossing's *Field Book of the American Revolution*, vol. ii.
 Ramsour's Mill, 391. Fishing Creek, 454. Hanging Rock, 456. King's Mountain, 426.
 Waxhaw, 458.

Parallel Readings.

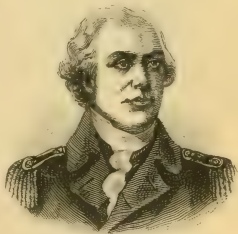
- INDEX GUIDE for comparative examination of other works and authorities.—*Partisan Warfare*. Marion, *General*. Sumter, *General*. Pickens, *General*. Lee, Colonel Henry. Tarleton, Colonel. Waxhaw, N. C., *Battle of*. Ramsour's Mill, *Battle of*. Hanging Rock, *Battle of*. Fishing Creek, *Battle of*. King's Mountain, *Battle of*.
 SPECIAL.—Moore's and Clark's histories of North Carolina. Gilmore: *Rear Guard of the American Revolution*. Simms: *The Partisan* (fiction). Roosevelt's *Winning of the West*: King's Mountain, 241-294. Bryant: *Song of Marion's Men* (poem).

CHAPTER X.

AMERICA TRIUMPHANT.

General Greene.—Upon the defeat of Gates at Camden, General Greene was sent South by Congress. In the campaigns which followed, Greene proved himself so able that he stands next to Washington as a general.

Battle of Cowpens.—Greene began operations with barely two thousand men, whom he assembled at Cheraw, S. C. His first move was to send General Morgan westward with half of the number. Cornwallis was about to march northward into North Carolina, and knowing that it would not do to leave Morgan behind, sent Tarleton against him. Tarleton and Morgan, with forces about equal, met at a place where cattle were herded, called Cowpens. The battle that followed was one of the best fought during the war. Morgan's men had unbounded confidence in their leader. They received charge after charge of the British without giving way. Tarleton had met his match at last. He was defeated (January 17, 1781) with a loss of two-thirds of his men, he himself barely escaping capture at the hands of the American colonel, William Washington, who pursued him for some distance.



GREENE.

Greene's Famous Retreat.—Angered by Tarleton's defeat, Cornwallis hastened to the scene to punish the victor. Morgan now began a famous retreat, with Cornwallis in hot pursuit. Crossing the Catawba, he was joined by Greene, and the combined forces continued on to the Yadkin, and finally to the Dan River in Virginia, the retreat being conducted so skillfully as to baffle the pursuers all along the route.

Battle of Guilford Court House.—Cornwallis gave up the chase when the Dan was reached, and turned south

to Hillsboro, N. C. Greene now received reënforcements, and turning about, followed Cornwallis to Guilford Court House, near Greensboro, where a great battle was fought (March 15). Greene posted his inexperienced militia in front, with instructions to discharge two volleys before falling back. This they did, and as the British pressed forward, thinking the victory won, they were met by the more experienced divisions of Greene's army and were held in check sufficiently long to receive terrible punishment at the hands of the Americans. As Greene withdrew from the field at the close of the battle, the British claimed the victory ; but they were undoubtedly

worsted in the encounter, for Cornwallis declared : " Another victory like this, and I am undone." Cornwallis's army was so badly crippled that he felt it necessary to hasten to Petersburg, Va., and join forces with Arnold and Philips, who had been ravaging and destroying in eastern Virginia.

Battle of Hobkirk's Hill.—

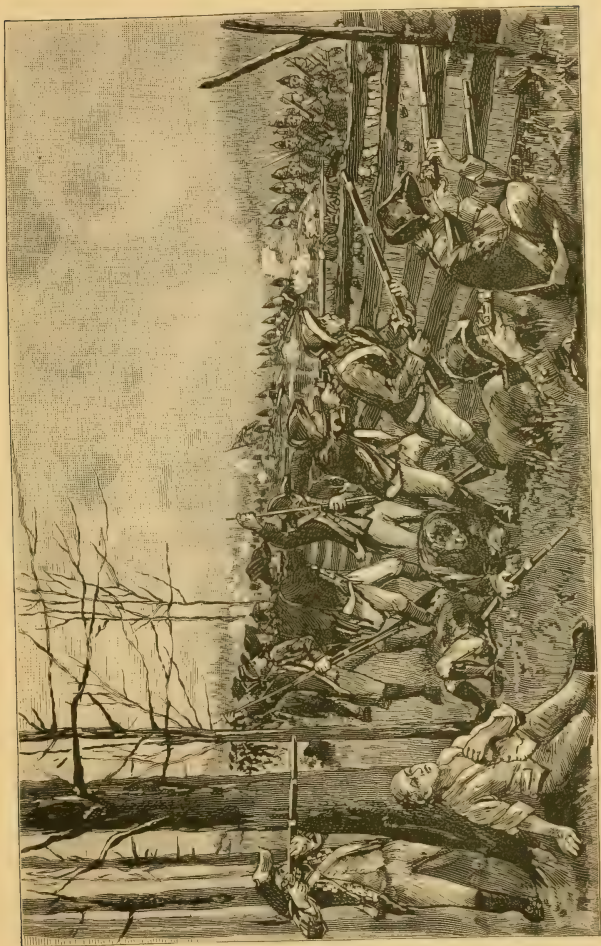
Instead of following Cornwallis, Greene turned southward, determined to wrest South Carolina and

Georgia from the British. At Hobkirk's Hill, near Camden, he fought a battle (April 25) with Lord Rawdon. The result was similar to that at Guilford Court House. The Americans were unable to withstand the charge of the British, but Rawdon's army was so crippled that he, too, had to escape from Greene, so he retired to the region below the Santee.

Battle of Ninety-Six.—Here Rawdon was harassed by Sumter and Marion, while Greene turned his attention to Ninety-Six, a strongly fortified post commanded by Colonel Cruger. Fortifications were erected by Kosciusko, and a siege began that would have resulted in the surrender of the fort had not the arrival of fresh troops from the coast enabled Lord Rawdon to advance to its rescue. Learning of this



MORGAN.



BATTLE OF GUILFORD COURT HOUSE.

advance, the Americans hastened to storm the fort (June 18); but the attack was unsuccessful, and Greene was compelled to withdraw.

Battle of Eutaw Springs.—Gallant work was being done by the Partisan leaders all this time. Post after post, in different parts of South Carolina, fell into their hands. Rawdon at last retired to Charleston and left Stewart in command, near Orangeburg. The hardest fought battle of the war occurred at Eutaw Springs, near by, between Greene and Stewart (September 8). The Americans won the victory, and the enemy retreated to Charleston. Of all the territory the

British had overrun there remained to them by the close of the the year 1780 only the two cities of Savannah and Charleston.



LAFAYETTE.

The Siege of Yorktown.—Lafayette had been sent to Virginia to check the ravages of Arnold and Philips, but with his small force he could accomplish little. Cornwallis, arriving from North Carolina, continued the work of destruction. His cavalry force destroyed property worth more than ten

million dollars. He finally took up a position on the peninsula of Yorktown. Information of this movement was sent to Washington, who was still near New York, occupied with the British under Clinton. Leaving a force to threaten Clinton, he hastened to Virginia, where, assisted by Virginia militia under Governor Nelson, and by a large force of French that had arrived in America, he surrounded the works of Cornwallis. The French fleet cut off all retreat by sea.

Clinton at New York could not decide whether or not to go to Cornwallis's assistance. If he went, New York might be

attacked. Meanwhile he sent out ravaging expeditions, in the vain hope of drawing Washington back.

Cornwallis Surrenders.—The Americans established batteries and opened fire on Cornwallis. Two redoubts of the enemy were carried by storm. There was no hope for the British, and Cornwallis, the ablest general opposed to the Americans in the whole war, was compelled to surrender (October 19, 1781). Seven thousand men laid down their arms.

End of the War.—This second great victory was a decisive one for the American cause. Again had an entire army of one of the strongest nations on earth been captured. The glad news went throughout America, awakening all to demonstrations of joy. It was felt that the war was virtually ended. When news of Cornwallis's surrender reached Lord North, Prime Minister of England, he exclaimed, "O God, it is all over!"

It had at last dawned upon the British mind that America could not be subdued. Hostilities ceased. Charleston and Savannah were evacuated. Commissioners met at Paris and signed a treaty of peace (September 3, 1783). The evacuation of New York followed, and the last of the hostile English forces left American shores.

Treaty of Peace.—By the terms of the treaty, England acknowledged American independence. The colonies were now States. All that portion of territory south of the great lakes and east of the Mississippi, with the exception of Florida, which England ceded to Spain, was their domain. Thenceforth they were to work out their own destiny among the nations of the earth.

Questions.—Who succeeded Gates in the South? Tell something of General Greene. Where did he assemble his forces? Whom did he send westward? Tell something of the battle of Cowpens. Who almost captured Tarleton at Cowpens? What did Cornwallis now do? Tell something of the retreat of Morgan and Greene. Where did Cornwallis give up the chase? Why did Greene turn about and follow Cornwallis? Tell something of the battle of Guilford Court House. Where did Cornwallis go after this battle? Where did Greene go? Tell something of the battle of Hobkirk's Hill. To where did

Rawdon retire? Who harassed him here? What post did Greene now attempt to take? Who erected fortifications here? Who advanced to the rescue of Ninety-Six? What was Greene compelled to do? Who was left in command of the British at Orangeburg? Tell something of the battle of Eutaw Springs. What two cities alone remained to the British in the South at the close of the year 1780? Who had been sent to Virginia against Arnold and Philips? What value of property did the British destroy? Upon what peninsula did Cornwallis finally take up his position? By whom was he here surrounded? Tell something of Cornwallis's surrender. How many men laid down their arms? What effect had this victory upon the American cause? Why did not Clinton go to Cornwallis's assistance? How was news of Cornwallis's surrender received throughout America? What did Lord North exclaim when he heard the news? When was the treaty of peace signed acknowledging American independence? What portion of territory was to be the domain of the United States according to this treaty?

FOR ADVANCED CLASSES.

Topics for Discussion.

- I. Greene's Campaign in North Carolina. II. Greene's Campaign in South Carolina. III. Cornwallis's Surrender. IV. The Treaty of Peace and Results of the War.

References and Authorities.

Hildreth's *History of the United States*, vol. iii.

Battle of Cowpens, 342. Greene's North Carolina campaign, 341-346. South Carolina campaign, 348-351. Cornwallis in Virginia, 355. Cornwallis surrenders, 369. Peace treaty, 418, 433.

Bancroft's *History of the United States*, vol. v.

Greene assumes command, 478. Cowpens, 480-482. Guilford Court House, 491-494. Greene pursues Cornwallis to Wilmington, 495. Greene in South Carolina, 497-504. Cornwallis's surrender, 522. Peace negotiations, 370, 373.

Fiske's *American Revolution*, vol. ii.

Greene in North Carolina, 250-260. Greene in South Carolina, 262-268. Cornwallis in Virginia, 269-283.

Lossing's *Field Book of the American Revolution*, vol. ii.

Cowpens, 431. Guilford Court House, 401. Hobkirk's Hill, 472. Eutaw Springs, 494. Yorktown, 307.

Parallel Readings.

INDEX GUIDE for comparative examination of other works and authorities.—*Greene, General Nathaniel. Morgan, General Daniel. Cowpens, Battle of. Guilford Court House. Battle of. Hobkirk's Hill. Ninety-Six, Battle of. Eutaw Springs. Battle of. Lafayette, Marquis de. Yorktown, Siege of. Cornwallis, Surrender of. Paris, Second Peace Treaty of.*

SPECIAL.—Whison's *Narrative and Critical History*, vol. vi., chap. vi.: The War in the Southern Department; vol. vii., chap. ii.: Peace Negotiations of 1782-1783. Hart's *Formation of the Union*, p. 99: Political Effects of the War. Cooke's *Virginia*, Part III., chap. xviii.: Yorktown. Simms: *The Scout and The Forayers* (fiction). The student is advised to read, if possible, the account of the battle of Guilford Court House in Schenck's *History of North Carolina*.

Reference Outline for Review.

War of the American Revolution.

1775	April 19	Lexington, Mass.	Pitcairn.	Parker.
	May 10	Ticonderoga, N. Y.	Ethan Allen.	
	" 10	Crown Point, N. Y.	Seth Warner.	
	June 17	Bunker Hill, Mass.	Howe.	Prescott.
1776	Dec. 31	Quebec Expedition.	Sir Guy Carleton.	Montgomery.
	Feb. 27	Moore's Creek Bridge, N. C.	Caswell.	Macdonald.
	June 28	Charleston, S. C.	Moultrie.	Clinton.
	Aug. 22	Long Island, N. Y.	Howe.	Washington.
1777	Sept. 28	White Plains, N. Y.	Howe.	Washington.
	Dec. 26	Trenton, N. J.	Washington.	Rahl.
	Jan. 3	Princeton, N. J.	Washington.	Mawhood.
	Aug. 15	Bennington, Vt.	Stark.	Baum.
1778	Sept. 11	Brandywine, Pa.	Howe.	Washington.
	" 19	Bemis Heights, N. Y.	Gates.	Burgoyne.
	Oct. 4	Germantown, Pa.	Howe.	Washington.
	" 7	Saratoga, N. Y.	Gates.	Burgoyne.
1779	June 28	Monmouth, N. J.	Washington.	Clinton.
	Dec. 29	Savannah, Ga.	Campbell.	Howe (Robt.).
	Feb. 14	Kettle Creek, Ga.	Pickens.	Boyd.
	Mar. 3	Brier Creek, Ga.	Prevost.	Ashe.
1780	June 20	Stono Ferry, S. C.	Prevost.	Lincoln.
	Oct. 9	Savannah, Ga.	Prevost.	Lincoln.
	April 14	Monk's Corner, S. C.	Tarleton.	Huger.
	May 12	Charleston, S. C.	Clinton.	Lincoln.
1781	" 29	Waxhaw, N. C.	Tarleton.	Buford.
	June 20	Ramsour's Mill, N. C.	Locke.	Moore.
	Aug. 7	Hanging Rock, S. C.	Sumter.	Brown.
	" 16	Sander's Creek, S. C.	Cornwallis.	Gates.
1781	" 17	Fishing Creek, S. C.	Tarleton.	Sumter.
	Oct. 7	King's Mountain, S. C.	Campbell.	Ferguson.
	Nov. 20	Blackstock's Ford, S. C.	Sumter.	Tarleton.
	Jan. 17	Cowpens, N. C.	Morgan.	Tarleton.
1781	Mar. 15	Guilford Court House, N. C.	Greene.	Cornwallis.
	April 26	Hobkirk's Hill, S. C.	Greene.	Rawdon.
	June 18	Ninety-Six, S. C.	Cruger.	Greene.
	Sept. 8	Eutaw Springs, S. C.	Greene.	Stewart.
1781	Oct. 19	Yorktown, Va.	Washington.	Cornwallis.

English victories and officers in red ; American, in blue ; indecisive battles in black.

The Institution of Self-government.

CHAPTER XI.

THE TRANSFER OF SOVEREIGNTY.

Two Elements of Government.—Man is of a social nature. He does not live by himself, but in society. For the regulation and welfare of society, government in some form is necessary. In every form of government there are two elements: one is the sovereign, the other is subject.

Personal Freedom.

In some countries complete personal freedom is enjoyed by the monarch only. Such a government is a despotism. In the history of modern enlightened nations, the power of the despot has diminished and the power of the people has increased. Where this has taken place, we say that the power of the monarch has been limited and the government is a limited monarchy. The highest form of government is to have no monarch at all, and to have all citizens free and equal. The republic of the United States of America marks this advance, and to-day presents to the world the best example of a people governing themselves.

Sovereign and Subject.

—The sovereign element is the one to whom belongs the power of regulating the affairs of the society and of giving the officers of government their authority to govern. The subject element is the one controlled by the sovereign and governed by the sovereign's appointed officers. No higher authority than the sovereign's exists in a society.

Monarchy and Democracy.—The power to govern, which a sovereign possesses, is called sovereignty. When in a society one person has this power to govern, the government is a monarchy. When the power to govern belongs to all the members of the society, the government is called a democracy. In a monarchy the king, emperor, czar, or sultan is sovereign; in a democracy the people are sovereign. In a monarchy the sovereign frequently exercises his authority according to his own will and pleasure; in a democracy the sovereignty of the people is exercised according to the will and desires of the majority.

Delegation of Governmental Authority.—A monarch may himself do the governing, or he may appoint others to do it. In appointing these officers he delegates to them his authority to govern, and they govern in his name. When the members of a democracy are numerous, they also may delegate their authority to govern, and they do so by choosing or electing officers of government, who govern in the name of the people. Such a democracy is a republic.

Compact and Constitution.—People living near one another, and forming a society, understand that they should not interfere with another's rights, or do anything to injure the society of which they are members. They must also obey the rules and regulations of the society, known as laws, or be punished for any violation of these laws. This understanding or agreement is called a social compact. A social compact establishes a constitution, which is the foundation upon which every government is based.

Written and Unwritten Constitutions.—A social compact or constitution may be either written or unwritten. In olden times it was never written, and the sovereign often abused his power and oppressed his subjects. To guard against this abuse of power, compacts and constitutions in more modern times have been written out in full.

Sovereignty and Government.

Sovereignty, or the power to govern, and government do not mean the same thing. In an absolute monarchy the sovereign has the power to make laws, to execute those laws, and to sit as judge at the trial of those accused of violating them. So in a republic the people possessing sovereign power may hold mass meetings and make their own laws; may execute those laws, and may again, in mass meeting, sit as judges at the trial of those accused of violating them. While this is true in theory, as a matter of fact neither in a monarchy nor in a republic does the sovereign do the governing in person. In all civilized countries, whether monarchies or republics, the power to make laws is delegated by the sovereign to one set of officers. The power to execute those laws is delegated to another set of officers; the power to try persons accused of violating those laws, to a third set of officers. But the theory is never lost sight of, and all officers who do the actual governing do it in the name of the sovereign. In the Province of Virginia, before the Revolution, the governor acted in the name and by the authority of King George III. In Virginia to-day, the governor acts in the name and by the authority of the people of Virginia.

Province and State.—A society of individuals, living together under a social compact, is either a province or a state. It is a province if power to govern it rests in the sovereign of

Political Results of Written Constitutions.

In a monarchy a written constitution limits the power of the monarch. In a republic a written constitution limits the authority which a majority of the people delegate to the officers of government. In this way the minority of the people are protected from being oppressed by the majority so long as the terms of the constitution are strictly complied with. Let the student remember this when he comes to consider the several controversies and dissensions characterizing the political history of the United States, caused by a minority of the people insisting upon strict compliance, in some instances only to be overruled by the majority.

some other country; it is a state if the power to govern it rests somewhere within the society. Many have an idea that "state" or "province" means a certain extent of land with fixed boundaries. This is not correct. The people who live on the land constitute the state or the province.

Beginning of State Sovereignty.—The American colonies were provinces before the Revolution, for the King of England was their sovereign.

By declaring independence the people of each colony, or province, assumed full authority to govern themselves. After they had waged successful war against England, this authority was confirmed to them. Thus sovereignty was transferred from the king to the people of each colony, which thereby constituted itself an independent state, with sovereignty residing in its people.

Development of the Idea of American Self-government.—The idea of self-government did not spring up suddenly in America. Throughout the whole history

of the English colonies it went hand in hand with their gradual development of the idea of American independence. The first popular election in America, making Captain John

Self-government West of the Alleghanies.

Pioneers who crossed the Alleghanies, and placed themselves beyond the limits of societies already organized, carried with them ideas of self-government and put them into practical operation in the communities which they established. The first instance of this and of the establishment of free government west of the Alleghanies was at Watauga, Tenn., in 1772, by pioneers from South Carolina.

Smith president of Virginia (1609); the first representative assembly, by which an American people gained a voice in the making of their own laws, instituted in Virginia the year before the Mayflower Compact (1619); the transfer from England of the Massachusetts Bay Company and Charter, with its governmental privileges, instituting a high form of self-government for that time in America (1630)—all these marked the first stages of growth in the idea of independence. By the time of the Revolution, liberal ideas upon the subject had become clearly established in the American mind. Under the systematic oppression of England these ideas developed into powerful principles of action.

Questions.—Why is government necessary? What two elements in every form of government? What form of government is that in which one person does the governing? In which all do the governing? What kind of government when the members of a democracy give their authority to govern to representatives whom they choose? To whom does a sovereign delegate his authority? How do the people of republics delegate their authority? What is a social compact? What is a constitution? What is the difference between a state and a province? What incorrect idea have many as to the meaning of "state" and "province"? What three events mark the earlier stages of the growth of self-government in America?

FOR ADVANCED CLASSES.

Topics for Discussion.

- I. Sovereignty. II. Forms of Government. III. Compacts, Charters, and Constitutions. IV. Development of Self-government in America. V. The Watauga Settlement.

References and Authorities.

Bancroft's *History of the United States*, vol. iv.

Congress orders colonies to make governments of their own, 344. Watauga settlement, 402.

Fiske's *Civil Government*, chap. vii.: Written constitutions.

Wilson's *The State*: Development of constitutional liberty in the colonies, 464.

Lalor's *Cyclopedia of Political Science*: Articles upon Sovereignty, Constitution.

Parallel Readings.

INDEX GUIDE for comparative examination of other works and authorities.—*Sovereignty. Government, Forms of. Charter. Compact. Constitution. Watauga Settlement. The.*

SPECIAL.—Gilmore's *Rear Guard of the American Revolution* and *John Sevier as a Commonwealth Builder*. If possible, compare Webster's Dictionary as published in 1841 with Webster's Dictionary as published to-day, and note critically the changes in the definition of *compact, constitution, federal, confederation, and state*.

CHAPTER XII.

THE DELEGATION OF GOVERNMENTAL POWER.

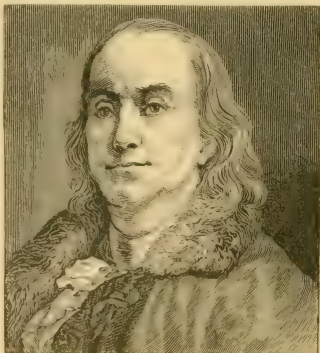
1.

Continental Congress.—The Continental Congress, which met at Philadelphia in 1775, exercised certain governmental powers in the name of the thirteen colonies. It raised an army to defend the colonies against the king; appointed a commander-in-chief for the

Sufferings and Relief of the Army.

All through the war, Washington was worried for want of supplies and ammunition for his men. The pay of the soldiers in currency of so little value was not sufficient to keep them in the necessities of life.

Army after army had to be created, since the men returned to their homes as soon as their terms of enlistment had expired, in order to gain subsistence for themselves and families. With the mistaken idea that Congress was to blame for this condition of affairs, the whole "Pennsylvania line" of Washington's army at one time revolted and proceeded to Philadelphia, bent upon securing satisfaction; but patriotism finally prevailed. In this darkest period of the war there came to the front Robert Morris, a rich banker of Philadelphia. He pledged his fortune to establish the credit of Congress. The army was sustained by him. He brought to the service of his country all his financial ability; and no one who took part in the American cause better deserves the grateful remembrance of his countrymen.



BENJAMIN FRANKLIN.

army; issued bills of credit, as they were called, which were used as continental money; and organized a postal system, with Benjamin Franklin as the first postmaster-general.

The power of this Congress was so limited that the American cause suffered greatly. Congress could only ask a colony to furnish its share of men and money, but could not compel it to do so. Hence continental money became almost worthless. Owing to this, the suffer-

ings of the patriot soldiers for want of food and clothing were intense.

State Governments.—Long before July, 1776, each colony had expelled the royal governors and other officers of the king, and had assumed control of its own affairs. At first, temporary governments were organized; but after the Declaration of Independence, State constitutions were drawn up and permanent State governments were organized. South Carolina and Virginia, however, adopted their State constitutions before Independence was declared, the former in March, 1776, the latter in June following.

Articles of Confederation.—When the Declaration of Independence was signed, the States were already united in resisting the armies of the king; but the Congress felt the necessity of a written bond of union which would clothe that body with power to act for all the States in matters of common interest, and ratify the acts which Congress had already been forced to perform. Articles of Confederation were therefore proposed in Congress (July 12, 1776), and submitted for acceptance. But it was found that the people were somewhat suspicious of being governed from outside of their State. They were engaged in a conflict for independence and self-government, and they could see no difference between a Parliament in England and a Congress in America, if the latter were given too much power.

Moreover, the States, though united in their opposition to England, were distrustful of one another. The smaller States, fearing the power of the larger, did not want to go into a government in which the larger States would naturally have the most influence. Many objections had to be overcome before

Virginia Bill of Rights.

In the organization of the Virginia State government a very remarkable paper, known as the Virginia Bill of Rights, was drawn up by George Mason. This paper contained many of the principles which were afterwards laid down in the Declaration of Independence. This Bill of Rights and a State constitution drawn up by the same writer were adopted (June, 1776) by the Virginia Convention. This same convention instructed delegates to Congress to propose American independence. Both these documents served as models for many of the other colonies.

The Ordinance of 1787.

One of the objections on the part of the smaller States was generously met by Virginia, then the largest and most populous of all the States. Her vast territory gave her much room for expansion, and with this expansion would come increase of her power and influence. Nevertheless, to aid in bringing about a harmonious confederation, she proposed to donate to the general government all her territory north of the Ohio. This territory was hers by original grant, and twice she had conquered it. Its inhabitants had taken an oath of allegiance to her after Clark's conquest. The offer was made in 1781, accepted by Congress in 1783, and in 1787 an ordinance for the government of this Northwest Territory was passed. This ordinance is remarkable because it excluded slavery, which then prevailed, more or less, in all the States, and because of its liberal donations of land for public school purposes.

the Articles of Confederation were finally adopted. Twelve States signed them by July, 1779. But the Articles did not take effect until ratified, March 1, 1781. The first Continental Congress acting by authority of the Articles met March 2, 1781, five years after the Declaration of Independence. By this time the war was nearly over.

Weakness of the Union under the "Articles."—Under the Articles of Confederation there was no President, and Congress exercised all governing power. Each State was allowed to send to Congress not more than seven delegates,

and not less than two. The delegates were to be elected every year. But each State, whether large or small, had only one vote in deciding upon measures presented for adoption. The powers which Congress was to exercise were carefully specified, such as the power to declare war, to make treaties and to coin money, to issue bills of credit, to fix the proportion of money to be raised by each State for the purpose of carrying on the war, to regulate the number of land and naval forces, etc. These powers, however, could not be exercised except by the assenting votes of nine States.

With all this authority to declare laws and to make treaties, Congress had no power to enforce its acts. The Articles contained the express agreement that each State should retain its sovereignty and independence, and all powers not delegated. So jealously had all authority to enforce its measures been withheld from this government, that its weakness was soon seen.

2.

Deplorable Condition of the Country at the Close of the War.—At the close of

the war, and during the year following, the United States were in a deplorable condition. Congress, under the Articles of Confederation, commanded neither respect abroad nor confidence at home. A large debt had been contracted in the name of the United States, and grave questions arose about its payment. Congress was powerless to levy taxes to redeem its bills of credit; and, indeed, the people in their condition of

Shays's Rebellion.

In western Massachusetts a remarkable rebellion, headed by Daniel Shays, a captain in the Revolutionary War, was raised against the courts and officers employed in the forcible collection of taxes. It seemed to Shays and his sympathizers a great act of tyranny to have these courts and tax collectors seize their homes. So the infuriated people arose, and to the number of 2,000 marched upon Springfield and Worcester, and were subdued only by superior forces under Generals Lincoln and Shepard.

poverty were not disposed to pay them, even if levied by their own State governments.

The State of Franklin.

In 1785 the pioneer people of what is now eastern Tennessee, but then a part of North Carolina, resolved to form a State government of their own. A constitution was adopted, a legislature chosen, judges appointed, courts organized, and treaties with the Indians entered into. John Sevier was elected governor. The State was called Franklin, or Frankland, and its seat of government was Jonesborough; but the State of Franklin did not exist long, for North Carolina claimed its land, and ceded it in 1789 to the United States as a part of what was to be the Territory and State of Tennessee. The early settlers of eastern Tennessee rendered valuable service in the Revolutionary War; for not only did they cross the mountains into Carolina and take part in battles against the British, but they barred the way and prevented hordes of savages who were instigated by English emissaries from sweeping down upon the western Carolina settlements.

Discord Among the States.—Disputes of more than a local nature were arising on every hand. Commerce was not regulated, and competition between the States was causing jealousy and strife. The States were as far apart in feeling as they were in geographical position. Discord among them seemed to be the result of throwing off the power of England. The Articles of Confederation were a failure, and the meetings of Congress became less frequent from difficulty in obtaining a quorum.

Need of Domestic Tranquillity.—This unsettled state of affairs was producing a great restlessness. Many



JOHN SEVIER.

were making their way beyond the Alleghanies, where already John Sevier, James Robertson, Isaac Shelby, and Daniel Boone, with their hardy followers, had established themselves, after wresting from the savage the fair lands of Kentucky and Tennessee. Many who had the good of their country at heart became sorely perplexed over its condition. Independence had been

won, but it was being gradually realized that the freedom of a people could be destroyed not only by a tyrannical government, but by the other extreme of anarchy and misrule.

The Great Problem.—A stronger government than the Confederation was, then, the need of the American people—one with power sufficient not only to make laws but to enforce them for the general welfare; and yet a government not strong enough to oppress or be tyrannical. This was the problem now to be solved by the people of the American States.



JAMES ROBERTSON.

Questions.—In whose name did the Continental Congress first exercise authority? What did Congress do in exercising this authority? What only could Congress do? What was the result of this lack of power upon the part of Congress? What had become of the royal governors and officers? How were most of the colonies governed? What States had already adopted State constitutions? What Articles were proposed by Congress? Why? When? To whom were they submitted? Of what were the people suspicious? Why? When were the Articles finally adopted? Tell something of the government under the Articles of Confederation. What powers of Congress were carefully specified in the Articles? What was expressly agreed?

In what condition were the States at the close of the Revolutionary War? What had been contracted? What were the people not disposed to do? What were arising? What showed that the government under the Articles of Confederation was a failure? What was the unsettled state of affairs producing? Who had made their way beyond the Alleghanies? What besides tyranny can destroy the freedom of a people? What, then, was the need?

FOR ADVANCED CLASSES.

Topics for Discussion.

- I. The Continental Congress and its Assumption of Governmental Authority. II. Government under the Articles of Confederation. III. The Ordinance of 1787. IV. The State of Franklin.

References and Authorities.

Hildreth's *History of the United States*, vol. iii.

Articles of Confederation, 266, 295. The Continental Congress, 401. Robert Morris, 361. State of Frankland, 468. Shays's Rebellion, 474.

Bancroft's *History of the United States*.

Vol. v.: Powers of Congress under the Confederation, 451-455. Robert Morris and the finance department, 508; vi.: Ordinance of 1787, pp. 277, 287.

Fiske's *Critical Period of American History*.

Anomalous character of the Continental Congress, 92. Articles of Confederation and their failure to create a stable government, 93, 106, 112, 131. Robert Morris and his immense services, 167. Shays's Rebellion, 177-182. Ordinance of 1787, 204. State of Franklin, 200.

Schouler's *History of the United States*, vol. i.

Continental Congress, 12. Defects in Articles of Confederation, 16.

Parallel Readings.

INDEX GUIDE for comparative examination of other works and authorities.—*Continental Congress, Limited Powers of*. Morris, Robert. *South Carolina, First Constitution of*. *Bill of Rights, Virginia. Articles of Confederation, The. Ordinance of 1787, The. Shays's Rebellion, Franklin, State of*.

SPECIAL.—Winsor's *Narrative and Critical History*, vol. vii., chap. iii.: The Confederation. Hart's *Formation of the Union*: Continental Congress's exercise of authority, 76; Weakness of Congress, 92. Fiske's *Civil Government*, chap. viii., sec. i.: Origin of the Federal Union. Wilson's *The State*: The Confederation, 469-472.

CHAPTER XIII.

THE FEDERAL CONSTITUTION.

1.

The Annapolis Convention.—A commercial agreement was entered into by the States of Virginia and Maryland, in the spring of 1785, and was working well. For the purpose of including other States in this agreement the legislature of Virginia issued a call (January, 1786) for a convention of

States to consider the establishment of a uniform commercial system. In answer to this call, New Jersey, New York, Pennsylvania, and Delaware sent delegates to Annapolis, Md. (September, 1786).

Alexander Hamilton.—Many, dissatisfied with the weakness of the existing confederation, saw in the Annapolis meeting an opportunity to unite the States in an agreement, not only for purposes of commerce but for purposes of gov-

ernment. There was present as a delegate from New York, Alexander Hamilton, who afterwards became famous as a financier and statesman. He proposed an address to the States, recommending a general convention to meet in Philadelphia in May of the next year.

The Philadelphia Convention.—Following this suggestion, the Annapolis meeting passed a resolution recommending the calling of a second convention to take into consideration the situation, and to propose what might appear necessary to make the Articles of Confederation equal to the needs of the Union. This reso-

The Work of the Federal Convention.

The Philadelphia Convention had a work before it of the greatest importance. It had to plan a new government which would be satisfactory to a free people who had already organized themselves into sovereign States, and who had shown unwillingness to enter into a close political union, or to give up any part of their sovereignty. The Convention was in session about four months, and the delegates applied themselves very diligently to what they were there to do. Debates were frequent. Delegates were all jealously watchful of the interests of their respective States and sections; but, realizing the need of the country, they made concessions and compromises. Prominent among those who led in the work of the Convention were "Light-Horse Harry" Lee, Madison, Hamilton, Franklin, Randolph, the two Pinckneys, and Rutledge.

lution, with an address prepared by Hamilton, was sent to the governors of all the States and to the Continental Congress. The idea of holding such a convention met with favor, and on February 21, 1787, the Continental Congress, acting for the States, issued a formal call for a convention of delegates to meet in Philadelphia on the second Monday in May; but the call restricted the power of the convention to the "sole and express purpose of revising the Articles of Confederation." In answer to the call of the Continental Congress, delegates from

twelve States assembled (May, 1787) at Philadelphia. Among them were the most distinguished men of the time, and over the convention thus brought together George Washington was chosen to preside.

The First Step.—Some of the delegates thought it necessary only to amend and strengthen the Articles of Confederation, but others favored the drawing up of an entirely new constitution. The first step in this direction was taken when Randolph of Virginia moved

“that a national government ought to be established, consisting of a supreme legislature, judiciary, and executive.”

This resolution was adopted, and Randolph’s plan was perfected in the committee. But

on the 20th of June, when it came before the convention, the words “national government” were stricken out, and “government of the United States” was substituted. This action

showed that a majority of the States now favored a new constitution, but were opposed to the national idea, and to a centralized form of government. The

question now arose as to how the Congress, or the supreme legislature, should be constituted.

The Virginia plan was that Congress should consist of two houses, and that the representation in both houses should be proportioned to population. As this arrangement would give the larger States the greater representation in Congress, and consequently greater influence in the new government, it was opposed by the smaller States.

The New Jersey plan favored a federal union of the States and opposed the establishment of a national government.

The Three Great Compromises.

The Convention was divided upon three questions: (1) The control and regulation of commerce by the new government; (2) the slave trade; (3) the manner in which each State should be represented in the new government. New Hampshire, Massachusetts, and Connecticut desired Congress to have authority to regulate commerce. South Carolina and Georgia wished to continue the importing of slave labor. By combining their votes these States were able to carry through both measures. Thus the regulation of commerce was intrusted to Congress, and Federal interference with the importation of slaves prohibited until 1808. The three great compromises were: That establishing State equality in the Senate; that establishing the Federal ratio; and that prohibiting Federal interference in the slave trade until 1808.

It therefore proposed to give the States equal representation in both houses. To this the larger States objected, as they believed the more people a State had the more it was interested in the government and the more influence it ought to have.

The Connecticut Compromise.—After a period of earnest debate, in which it seemed no agreement could be reached, a compromise was suggested by Connecticut, that in the lower house of Congress the people should be represented, each State sending representatives according to population ; in the upper house, or senate, each State, large and small alike, should be represented by two senators. This compromise was adopted.

The Federal Ratio.—The next great point of disagreement was whether slaves should be considered a part of the population. Slavery once existed throughout the thirteen States, but was beginning to die out in the North. It had become firmly established in the South. If the slaves were to be considered as a part of the population instead of mere property, the Southern States would have a larger representation. A compromise was reached upon this question also, and it was provided that five slaves should count as three free inhabitants, thus establishing what is known as the Federal Ratio.

2.

Debate over the Executive.—The Convention was divided as to whether the executive should consist of one person or more than one. The former, however, was decided upon. There was division, also, as to the manner of choosing for this office. Some wanted the choice to devolve upon Congress ; others insisted that it be made by the people. Many held that an election by Congress would be open to the danger of intrigue and combination powerful enough to control the acts of the president. Others saw in an election by the people the danger of their being led by unprincipled demagogues. At length that feature of the Constitution which provided for an electoral college was agreed upon. The number of the elec-

tors composing the college corresponds with the number of senators and representatives in Congress, and the electors of each State are selected "in such a manner as the legislature thereof may direct."

Completion of the Convention's Labors.—The question of what powers should be given to Congress also caused discussion, but the end was finally reached, and the Federal Constitution stood completed. Although instituting a form of government greatly in advance of any yet established, it was by no means thoroughly satisfactory to those who drew it up. Some of these even refused to sign it. Its compromises were not entirely acceptable to all. There were points in it which left the way dangerously open to different interpretations. Yet, all in all, it was a wonderful achievement, and it stands today the greatest written instrument ever executed by man.

The Constitution Submitted to the States.—The proposed Constitution was submitted to a convention of the people in each State, to be discussed and to be accepted or rejected. The leaders were divided. Some opposed the Constitution, others favored it. Many clear-thinking, honest-minded men, such as Patrick Henry, Samuel Adams, Richard Henry Lee, George Mason, and Benjamin Harrison, saw in the Constitution possible danger to liberty and self-government so dearly purchased. Others, equally honest-minded, considered that the provisions of the Constitution were sufficient to prevent any interference by the government with the rights of the people. As safeguards against such interference, certain amendments were proposed by Massachusetts and by other States. These amendments were designed to limit the power of

Beginning of Popular Suffrage.

The idea of universal suffrage was in its infancy in the days when the Federal Convention met. It is interesting to note the development of this idea in connection with the election of President. At first the people themselves were not permitted to vote for presidential electors. The electors were chosen by the State legislature. New Jersey pursued this plan up to 1816; Connecticut to 1820; New York, Delaware, and Vermont to 1824; and South Carolina to 1868. At the present day the electors are chosen by the people and are pledged to vote for a certain candidate. Thus indirectly a President of the United States is elected by the people.

Differences of Constitutional Interpretation.

In the light of modern development we have come to know that a constituted government cannot bear harmoniously upon a people unless this people is a unit in interests, characteristics, and modes of life. This the American people were not, nor were they to be for years to come. Colonial life had developed sectional characteristics; conditions of climate had caused diversity of industrial interests. The people were not the same in every section, and therefore a government bearing directly upon all of them could not please them alike. On the other hand, the States, as organized wholes, had many interests in common. Continued existence, uniform regulation of commerce and currency, domestic tranquillity and defensive organization against possible foreign foes, were the needs of all. A State, therefore, as a sovereign, could with reason compact and agree with other States upon the establishment of a central regulative power to be exercised for the good of all. Thus thought many who favored the Constitution, and its successive and separate ratifications by the different States caused them to regard it as a compact between sovereign States. In time there arose a difference of opinion as to which government, State or Federal, the people had clothed with the greater power. The theory of compact gave rise to the doctrine of State Rights, which in time was to maintain the supreme authority of a State and its right to withdraw from the compact—a principle that was destined to be contended for unsuccessfully, yet heroically, in one of the bitterest struggles ever chronicled in the world's history.

the government and to prevent the taking to itself of any authority that had not been given it by the States. It was understood by all the States that the amendments would be adopted at the meeting of the first Congress.

The Campaign for Constitutional Ratification.—

Delaware was the first State to ratify (December 7, 1787), followed in succession by Pennsylvania, New Jersey, Georgia, Connecticut, Massachusetts, Maryland, South Carolina, New Hampshire, Virginia, and New York. Notwithstanding the assurance that the proposed amendments would be adopted, in many of the States the vote was very close. In Massachusetts it stood 187 for, and 168 against adoption; in Virginia the Constitution was ratified by the small majority of ten. Thus reluctant were the people to clothe with power any government outside the limits of their States. The Virginia Convention declared by resolution that the people had a right to resume the power whenever they

pleased; and New York and Rhode Island made the recognition of this right the condition of their ratification.

As soon as the Constitution should be ratified by nine States it was to go into effect by the States so ratifying. Eleven did

so by a certain date, and then proceeded to organize the government according to its provisions.

Unanimous Election of the First President.—How ever divided the American people were upon the question of the Constitution, there was but one choice for President, and that choice was George Washington. In January, 1789, the legislatures of the eleven States appointed electors, who met on the first Wednesday of February and elected George Washington President of the United States and John Adams

Vice-President. The legislatures elected twenty-two senators, and members of the House of Representatives were chosen by the people of each State. The dates for these events had been fixed by the Continental Congress, which also designated New York as the capital city. Here Congress was to meet on the first Wednesday of March, which happened to fall on the 4th day of the month. As there was no quorum present on that date, the electoral vote was not counted until the 6th of April,

and Washington's inauguration did not occur until the last of the month.

The Federal Union Completed.—North Carolina and Rhode Island took no part in the election of the first President or in the first Congress. Both continued as independent republics until the ten amendments were adopted, when North Carolina came into the Union in November, 1789, and Rhode Island in May, 1790.

The Federalists.

The contest between Federalists and Anti-Federalists was a heated one. Among the friends of the Constitution who worked earnestly for its ratification were Washington, Madison, Harry Lee, and Marshall, of Virginia; the Pinckneys (Charles and Cotesworth), Gadsden, and Rutledge, of South Carolina; Livingston, Jay, and Hamilton, of New York; Franklin, Clymer, and Wilson, of Pennsylvania; and others. The labors of Madison and Hamilton were particularly valuable, and were second only to those of Washington. These two great political thinkers wrote a series of letters, that appeared in public print and did much to instruct and educate the people so that they appreciated the excellences of the Constitution. These letters were afterwards collected and printed in book form and called "The Federalist."



JOHN ADAMS.

Questions.—What call was issued by Virginia ? Why ? When ? What States responded ? Where were delegates sent ? What opportunity did many see in the Annapolis Convention ? Tell something about Alexander Hamilton. What was done upon his recommendation ? Where did this second convention assemble ? When ? How many States sent delegates ? Who was chosen to preside ? What did some of the delegates think it only necessary to do ? What was the first step taken ? What was Randolph's plan ? What did the action on Randolph's plan show ? What question arose for debate ? What was Virginia's plan ? What was the objection to it ? What plan did New Jersey propose ? Who objected to this ? Why ? What compromise did Connecticut suggest ? What was the next great point of disagreement ? Tell something of the Federal Ratio.

Tell something of the way the Convention came to decide upon an electoral college. With what does the number of Presidential electors of a State correspond ? What also caused much discussion ? Tell something of the Federal Constitution as it stood completed. How does it stand to-day ? What was next done with the proposed Constitution ? Into what two classes were the leaders divided ? Name some who opposed the Constitution. What did those who favored it believe ? What did some propose in accepting ? What were these amendments to prevent ? What State first ratified the Constitution ? What States followed ? How close was the vote in Massachusetts ? Virginia ? When was the Constitution to go into effect ? How many States accepted it ? Who was elected the first President of the United States ? Vice-President ? When did Congress organize ? When did North Carolina adopt the Constitution ? Rhode Island ?

REFERENCE OUTLINE.

THE FEDERAL CONSTITUTION.

- 1786. Annapolis Convention (September).
 - Philadelphia Convention assembles (May).
 - Connecticut compromise adopted.
 - Federal Ratio adopted.
- 1787.
 - Slave-trade compromise adopted.
 - Method of electing President adopted.
 - Work of Convention completed (September 17).
 - Delaware, Pennsylvania, and New Jersey ratify.
- 1788.
 - Georgia, Connecticut, Massachusetts, Maryland, South Carolina,
 - New Hampshire, Virginia, and New York ratify.
- 1789.
 - First Presidential election.
 - North Carolina ratifies.
- 1790.
 - Rhode Island ratifies.
 - Federal Union completed (May 29).

FOR ADVANCED CLASSES.

Topics for Discussion.

- I. Alexander Hamilton. II. The Federal Convention and its Principal Members. III. The Virginia and New Jersey Plans and the Connecticut Compromise. IV. The Federal Ratio. V. The Constitution and the Slave Trade. VI. The Adoption of the Constitution. VII. Differences of Constitutional Interpretation. VIII. The Federalist.

References and Authorities.

Hildreth's *History of the United States*, vol. iii.

Federal Convention, 482. Principal members, 483. Virginia plan, 484. The three compromises, 519-520. The Constitution and the slave trade, 509, 514. Campaign for Constitutional adoption, 533-539. The Federalist, 534. Ordinance of 1787, 527.

Bancroft's *History of the United States*, vol. vi.

Annapolis Convention, 185, 192. Plan for Federal Convention, 189. Virginia plan, 214. New Jersey plan, 233. Connecticut compromise, 239, 253. Federal Ratio, 266.

Fiske's *Critical Period of American History*.

Convention at Annapolis, 216. Hamilton suggests Philadelphia Convention, 217. Leading members of the Federal Convention, 222-229. Virginia plan, 236. New Jersey plan, 245. Connecticut compromise, 250. Federal Ratio, 256-261. Constitution and the slave trade, 263. First American political parties, 308.

Schouler's *History of the United States*, vol. i.

Influence of Hamilton and Madison, 24. Constitutional Convention, 36-46.

Parallel Readings.

INDEX GUIDE for comparative examination of other works and authorities.—*Hamilton, Alexander. Annapolis, Commercial Convention of. Federal Convention, The. Virginia Plan, The. New Jersey Plan, The. Connecticut Compromise, The. Federal Ratio, The. Constitution, Adoption of the. Federalist, The. President, Election of First.*

SPECIAL.—Winsor's *Narrative and Critical History*, vol. vii., chap. iv.: The Constitution of the United States and its History. Hart's *Formation of the Union*, chap. vi.: The Federal Constitution. Fiske's *Civil Government*, chap. vii.: The Federal Union. Wilson: *The State*, 472-476. Lodge: *Alexander Hamilton*. Schouler: *Thomas Jefferson*. If possible, read Woodrow Wilson's article, *First in Peace*, in *Harper's Magazine* for September, 1896. Read carefully the Constitution of the United States.

Review Work.

What colony first established personal freedom in religious matters? What colony exiled Roger Williams and Anne Hutchinson? What colonies were settled wholly or in part by refugees from religious persecution? What explorers or colonizers are connected with the following geographical names: Kennebec River; Cape Cod; Hudson River; Ocracoke Inlet; Roanoke Island; two Port Royals; James River; Chickahominy River; St. John's River; Matagorda Bay; Narragansett Bay; Chesapeake Bay; Savannah River. What colonies were royal provinces at the beginning of the Revolution? When was the Massachusetts charter brought to America? In what winter-quarters did the American Revolutionary army suffer greatly? When and where was the first independent State government organized? When was slavery introduced into the United States? What was the mistake, and who committed it, by which the French were prevented from exploring or settling the territory embraced in the State of New York? What reasons can you give why the Indians of New England allowed the colonists to settle on the seacoast undisturbed, but rose in the wars of the Pequots and of King Philip as soon as the colonists began to make settlements in the interior of Connecticut? What two native plants greatly helped and added to the thrift of colonists?

BIOGRAPHICAL REVIEW EXERCISE.

Answer these questions in regard to each : Who was he ? What did he do ?
 Answer as fully as possible when the name is printed in bolder type.

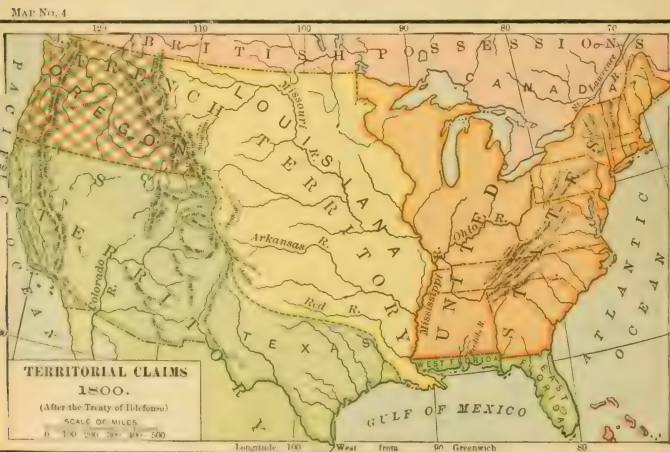
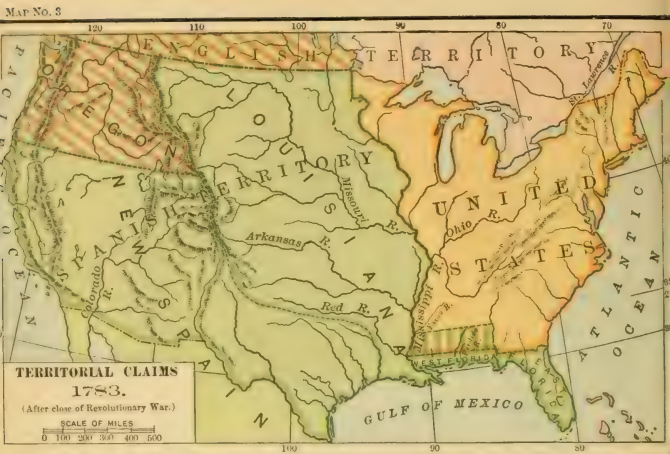
Washington.	Ferguson.	Jones.	Schuyler.	André.
Randolph.	Cleveland.	Tarleton.	Riedesel.	Moultrie.
Gadsden.	Nelson.	Rawdon.	Lee (A.).	Stirling.
Greene.	Boone.	Van Wert.	Clarke.	Steuben.
Putnam.	Henry.	Shelby.	Wayne.	Pitcairn.
Harrison.	Adams (S.).	Campbell.	Buford.	Phillips.
Burgoyne.	Lee (R. H.).	Mason.	Hayne.	Lee (C.).
Jasper.	Revere.	Madison.	Marion.	Pickens.
Rutledge.	Allen.	Hancock.	Williams.	D'Estaing.
Cornwallis.	Ward.	Jefferson.	McDowell.	Cruger.
Lafayette.	Gates.	Carr.	Morris.	Paulding.
Kosciusko.	Morgan.	Stark.	Carleton.	Moore.
Franklin.	Laurens.	Arnold.	Otis.	Sevier.
Lee (H.).	Pulaski.	Howe.	Adams (J.).	Stewart.
Ashe.	DeKalb.	Prescott.	Gage.	Robertson.
Prevost.	Fraser.	Caswell.	Parker.	Montgomery.
Brown.	Deane.	Sullivan.	Warner.	St. Leger.
Locke.	Hamilton.	Knyphausen.	Clinton.	Baum.

PREPARATORY GEOGRAPHY LESSON.

Upon a map of the United States note the location of Washington City. District of Columbia. Note the Mississippi River. In what State does its mouth lie ? Note the rivers running into it from the east. Note how much territory is drained by the Ohio and its branches. Name the principal of these branches. In what part of Virginia is Norfolk ?

Refer to the tinted maps facing page 196. By the ground tints and colors of the cross stripes note the different national possessions and claims : English, red ; French, yellow ; Spanish, green. On map No. 1, Louisiana is shown as French territory. What is it on map No. 2 ? Now refer to the maps facing this lesson. Under what national territory is Louisiana shown on map No. 3 ? On map No. 4 ? Note the dates of these maps. On map No. 4, Kentucky, Tennessee, and Virginia are marked off as States. What new State appears on map No. 5 ? What new States on map No. 6 ? By the different tints of the cross stripes name the different national counter-claims on the maps referred to. On map No. 1 note that the ground color of Oregon and a part of what is now Texas is green. What do the red stripes across Oregon and the yellow across Texas show ?

Upon a map of North Africa note the countries bordering upon the Mediterranean. Where is Tripoli ?





ENGRAVED FOR HANSELL'S HIGHER HISTORY OF THE U.



ENGRAVED FOR HANSELL'S HIGHER HISTORY OF THE U.

V. PERIOD OF INDEPENDENCE.

Union.

CHAPTER I.

THE BEGINNING OF THE FEDERAL GOVERNMENT.

1.

Washington was inaugurated President of the United States, April 30, 1789. The inauguration ceremonies took place in New York City, where Congress had already assembled.

Presidential Cabinet.—

Four departments were constituted: the Departments of State, of War, of the Treasury, and of Justice. A Secretary presided over each of the first three. Thomas Jefferson was the first Secretary of State; General Henry Knox, Secretary of War; Alexander Hamilton, Secretary of the Treasury. The Department of Justice was in charge of an Attorney-General, who was the legal adviser of the Government. Edmund Randolph was appointed to this office.

The Judiciary.—Next followed the organization of the Supreme Court, of which John Jay, of New York, was appointed Chief Justice.

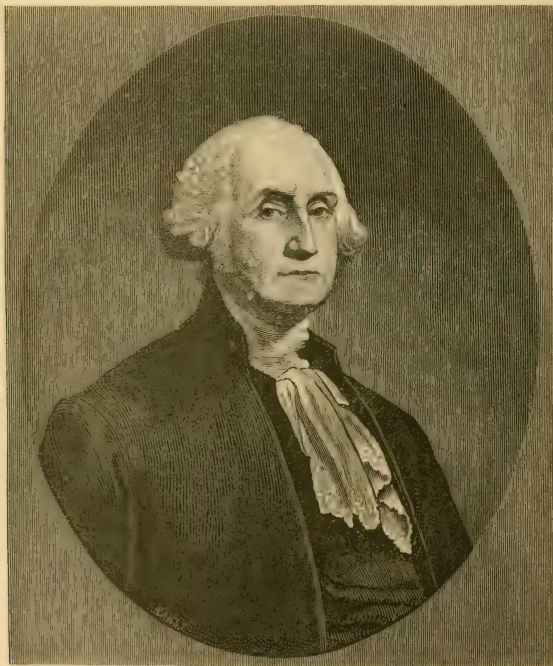
The Work of the New Government.—There was a very difficult task before the new government. It had to estab-

The First President.

The call to the Presidency found Washington at his home, Mount Vernon, Virginia. He gave up the peace and retirement of his surroundings with great reluctance. In going overland to New York, where the new government was to be organized, he was met by crowds of people. Everybody was eager to behold and greet one who had done so much for his country, and who was yet to do more. No one better deserved the public confidence, and in no one could the hopes of the American people, at that critical time, be more safely placed.

lish its authority over the people, quiet all jealousies and antagonisms, and inspire respect for itself both at home and abroad.

Hamilton's Reports to Congress.—Hamilton and Jefferson in the President's Cabinet, and Madison in Congress,



GEORGE WASHINGTON.

were of great assistance in making the newly established government successful. Hamilton presented to Congress reports upon the condition and needs of the country, the desirability of encouraging American manufactures, and the necessity of establishing national credit.

The First National Debt.

—He advocated the payment in full of the debt contracted in carrying on the war against England. This debt he divided into three parts : (1) That due by Congress, under the Articles of Confederation, to foreigners. (2) That due to Americans. (3) That due by each colony. This debt amounted, in all, to about seventy-five million dollars.

Opposition to Hamilton's Measures.—

The proposition that the United States Government pay debts contracted by the colonies separately was opposed in Congress. Some of the wealthier States, such as Virginia, had already paid their debts without assistance, and their representatives in Congress thought the other States should do the same.

The Capital Bargain.—The Northern States were very much in favor of Hamilton's plan, but there was another mat-

ter under discussion at this time, and that was the location of a permanent seat of government. The North and the South each wanted the capital. Hamilton won over to his plan the Southern representatives by getting the Northern representatives to favor the locating of the national capital in the South. His measures were finally adopted, and the seat of government was established where it now is, on the banks of the Potomac, in

Jefferson and Hamilton.

Jefferson and Hamilton rank among America's greatest statesmen. Jefferson is noted as the author of many state papers, among them the Declaration of Independence. Hamilton is remarkable for the ability with which he managed the finances of the young republic. They differed from each other, however, when it came to the question of what the new government should be. Hamilton believed in a strong central government, and directed all his plans accordingly. Jefferson was opposed to any increase of power that would strengthen the Federal Government at the expense of the State. Between the two stood Washington, conservative, guiding the energies and abilities of both with great tact and wisdom, following the counselings of each so far as they conformed in his judgment to what was best for the country, and shaping by the assistance of each the early destinies of the new government, with a success that added the glories of the statesman to those he had already won as a soldier and patriot.



ALEXANDER HAMILTON.

the District of Columbia. Until a suitable city could be laid out, Philadelphia became the capital (1791-1800).

First Tariff and Internal Revenue Tax.—How was this debt to be paid? In nothing does a government better show its strength and efficiency than in its ability to collect taxes and raise revenue. Upon Hamilton's advice a tariff was levied upon imports, and an internal revenue tax upon distilled liquors.

2.

The Whisky Rebellion.—The collection of the revenue tax was resisted by the farmers of western Pennsylvania, who had found it more profitable to convert their corn into whisky than to ship it to market. Many "moonshiners" to-day do not understand why the Government requires a special tax to be paid upon their home-made whisky, hence they evade this tax. So it was with these Pennsylvania farmers. They questioned the right of the Government to interfere with their occupation, and resisted its

First United States Bank.

Through Hamilton's efforts a bank with a capital of ten million dollars was chartered to attend to the money transactions of the Government. The stock of this bank was owned partly by private persons and partly by the United States. It served a useful purpose, but it was opposed by many who thought that the Government should neither go into the banking business nor lend its influence to help private business interests. The charter of the bank expired in 1811 and Congress refused to renew it.

revenue officers. A sufficient military force was sent against them, and the rebellion was suppressed without bloodshed.

Grievance against England.—The attitude of England toward this country after the close of the Revolution had been far from satisfactory. She failed to give up the posts and forts in the Northwest Territory as she had agreed. She was showing disrespect for the United States Government by declining to send to the national capital such representatives as were sent by her to the capitals of other recognized nations. She was holding in contempt the rights of the United States upon the ocean, by interfering with American commerce and by forcibly making prisoners of American seamen and claiming them as her own.

Washington's Policy of Neutrality.—As England and France were now about to begin war with each other, the outrages committed by England influenced the greater part of the American people to sympathize with France. But Washington, believing the United States to be too young a nation to enter into any entangling alliances with foreign powers, issued a proclamation of neutrality.

"Citizen" Genet.—This position of neutrality did not please the American friends of France, and their displeasure was taken advantage of by the French minister Genet, who, encouraged by the friendly feeling existing toward his country, proceeded to disregard Washington's proclamation, and fitted out vessels of war in American ports to prey upon English commerce (1793). Upon the demand of our Government, he was recalled to France.

Jay's Treaty.—By Genet's actions in opposing Washington, France lost many friends. Many now sided with England. Chief Justice Jay was sent to

London to draw up a treaty. This he did, and the treaty was ratified by the Senate (1795). But it was not satisfactory to the people, for it did not dispose of England's claim to the right of searching American vessels; and it restricted American commerce in the West Indies. It did, however, secure the Western posts against occupation by England and prevented a war between the two countries.

Treaty with Spain.—It was of great importance to the settlers of the Ohio Valley that they have full use of the Missis-

War with Little Turtle.

The Indians were encouraged in many acts of hostility by the English garrisons who occupied the western forts. Immigration, seeking the fertile lands of Ohio and Indiana, was checked for a time. In seven years of Indian depredation more than fifteen hundred settlers fell victims to savage butchery, while many others were carried off into captivity. General Harmar, General St. Clair, and General Wayne were one after another sent to punish the Indians. Harmar (1790) and St. Clair (1791) were badly defeated by Little Turtle, chief of Miamis. Wayne met with better success. Advancing into the Indian country (1793), he built several forts, and finally won a complete victory over the savages on the banks of the Maumee, in northern Ohio (1794). The defeated savages long remembered Wayne, and called him the "chief who never sleeps." The year after their defeat the Indians gave up by treaty all claim to a large extent of territory (1795).

issippi River to its mouth, for that was the only practicable route by which they could ship their produce to market. The lower portion of this river flowed through territory belonging to Spain. Accordingly, a treaty was entered into with that country (1795) by which the free navigation of the Mississippi was conceded. This treaty also established the 31st parallel of latitude as the boundary line between the Spanish province of West Florida and the United States.

Three new States were added to the original thirteen; namely, Vermont, Kentucky, and Tennessee. The Constitution provides for the admission of new States, but says that no

new State may be formed within another State without consent of its legislature. Vermont was claimed by both New York and New Hampshire. The people desired a State government of their own, and in 1790 New York gave her consent. Congress passed the act of admission, February 18, and the act went into effect March 4, 1791.

Franklin's Anti-slavery Petition.

African slavery, as an institution, had become firmly established in this country. The question of its abolition, however, had already arisen. Scarcely was the Federal Government organized before a petition for emancipation, headed by the signature of Franklin, was presented to Congress (February 19, 1790). After some deliberation, Congress decided that it had no authority to interfere in the slavery regulations of any State, and the question which afterwards caused fierce agitation was for a time set at rest.

Surrenders of Land Claims.—

Six of the original thirteen States had made cessions to the United States of their claims to Western territory. These were New York (1780), Virginia (1784), Massachusetts (1785), Connecticut (1786), South Carolina (1787), and North Carolina (1790). The land so ceded was organized into two territories, the Northwest Territory and the Territory South of the Ohio.

The State of Kentucky.—The Northwest Territory included the land extending west from Pennsylvania to the Mississippi and north from the Ohio River to the great lakes. The Territory south of the Ohio was that now occupied by the State of Tennessee, together with a narrow strip south of it, ceded by South Carolina. Between the two Territories was

the District of Kentucky, a part of the domain of Virginia not included in her cession of 1784. The legislature of Virginia consented (December 18, 1789) to the forming of a new State from this district. The act of admission was approved by Congress, February 4, 1791, and Kentucky was admitted as a State, June 1, 1792.

Tennessee.—Under the governorship of William Blount the land south of the Ohio remained a Territory until 1796. North Carolina had specified in her deed of cession that when this land should have a population of 60,000 it should be admitted into the Union as a State. A census was taken in 1795, under the direction of the territorial legislature, and showed the required number. The portion ceded by North Carolina was therefore organized as a State. It was named Tennessee, and was admitted into the Union, June 1, 1796. The portion ceded by South Carolina afterwards became the northern part of Alabama, Georgia, and Mississippi.

Questions.—When and where was Washington inaugurated? What four executive departments were created? Who was the first Secretary of State? War? Treasury? Who was the Attorney-General? Who the Chief Justice of the Supreme Court? What difficult task had the new government before it? What three men were of great assistance in making the new government a success? What did Hamilton present to Congress? What did he advocate? Into what three parts did he propose to divide the Revolutionary War debt? Who were opposed to Hamilton's plan? Who favored it? How did Hamilton win over Southern representatives? Where was the permanent seat of government located? What city was the capital of the United States from 1791 to 1800? In what is the efficiency of a government shown? What did Hamilton advise in the matter of raising revenue?

Tell something of the Whisky Rebellion. In what way did England show disrespect for this country? How did England treat American commerce and seamen? With whom did most of the people sympathize when France and England made war upon each other? Why did Washington proclaim neutrality? Tell what you know of "Citizen" Genet. What did the French minister disregard? In what respects was Jay's treaty unsatisfactory? Why was the treaty with Spain important? What were the terms of this treaty? What new States were admitted while Washington was President? What six States ceded their claims to Western lands to the Federal Government? Into what two Territories was the land ceded organized? How did Kentucky become a State? Tennessee?

REFERENCE OUTLINE.

ADMINISTRATIONS OF GEORGE WASHINGTON, OF VIRGINIA.

First President.

First and Second Administrations.

First, Second, Third, and Fourth Congresses.

Principal Events.

- 1789. Inauguration.
- 1790. { Franklin's anti-slavery petition.
- { Harmar's defeat.
- { Philadelphia made capital.
- 1791. { Vermont admitted.
- { National bank established.
- { St. Clair's defeat.
- 1792. { Kentucky admitted.
- { Washington reelected.
- 1793. { Troubles with France (Genet).
- { Cotton gin invented. (See chap. ix.)
- 1794. { Wayne's victory over Little Turtle.
- { Whisky Rebellion.
- 1795. { Jay's treaty.
- { Florida boundary treaty.
- { Tennessee admitted.
- 1796. { Presidential election—
- { Candidates : John Adams and Thomas Jefferson.

FOR ADVANCED CLASSES.

Topics for Discussion.

I. Inauguration of Washington. II. Organization of the Federal Government. III. Alexander Hamilton as First Secretary of the Treasury. IV. The Capital Bargain. V. Jay's Treaty. VI. Miami War. VII. Territorial Cessions to the General Government.

References and Authorities.

Schouler's *History of the United States*, vol. i.

Inaugural ceremonies, 76. Organization of the First Congress, 80. Executive Departments, 93. Judiciary, 96. Hamilton's report on the public debt, 130. Capital bargain, 140. Miami War, 152, 191, 280. Jay's treaty, 289-294.

Hildreth's *History of the United States*, vol. iv.

Inauguration, 56. Executive departments, 102. Hamilton's reports, 152, 253, 256. Miami War, 248, 281, 283, 443, 520. Jay's treaty, 539.

McMaster's *History of the People of the United States*.

Vol. i.: Inauguration, 540. Hamilton's plan, 569-571. Indian troubles, 533, 597-603. Vol. ii.: Jay's treaty, 212-220.

Parallel Readings.

INDEX GUIDE for comparative examination of other works and authorities. — *Washington, Inauguration of.* *Hamilton, Alexander. Whisky Rebellion, The. Capital Bargain, The. Genet. Jay's Treaty.* *Little Turtle, Chief. Kentucky, Admission of. Tennessee, Admission of.*

SPECIAL. — Winsor: *Narrative and Critical History of America*, vol. ii., 528-536. Hart: *Formation of the Union*, chap. vii. Lodge: *Alexander Hamilton*, chap. v. Andrews: *History of the United States*, vol. i., 243, 254, 258, 263, 269.

CHAPTER II.**THE RISE OF POLITICAL PARTIES.**

First Division into Political Parties.—The question of accepting or rejecting the Federal Constitution caused, as we have seen, two political parties to arise. One favored the adoption of the Constitution and was called the Federalist party; the other opposed adoption and was called the Anti-federalist party.

After this question was settled and the Federal Government came into existence the people continued to be divided. They were now Federalists and Democratic-Republicans. The Federalists believed in giving the Federal Government a great deal of power. The Democratic-Republicans believed that the power of the Federal Government should be limited to what is necessary to sustain itself and to promote the general welfare.

Election of John Adams.—A candidate to succeed Washington was nominated by each party: John Adams by the Federalists and Thomas Jefferson by the Democratic-Republicans. No candidate for Vice-President was put forward in those days. The presidential candidate receiving the second highest number of votes became the Vice-President. The con-

Political Parties and Platforms.

Strong belief in what a government should do or be leads a man to belong to a political party the members of which think as he does. When representatives of a party meet in convention and write out what the party believes, and promises to do if put in control of the government, they are said to adopt a party platform. It is the duty of every voter to study platforms carefully so that he may vote intelligently.

test resulted in the election of Adams as President and Jefferson as Vice-President.

French Hostility to America.—Jay's treaty averted

war with England, but it greatly displeased the French, who at that time were bitter enemies of England. In vain did Adet, the French minister to this country, urge the Americans to form an alliance with his country. A feeling of resentment against the Americans arose in France. The American minister was ordered to leave, and French men-of-war began to seize American vessels without any formal notice of war having been given.

More than one thousand were lost before American shipowners learned of France's actions.

French Naval War.—The indignities committed by France soon aroused America to action. An army was organized and Washington called to the command, with Alexander Hamilton as second in rank. An executive department for naval affairs was created, and Benjamin Stoddert of Maryland appointed Secretary of the Navy. All past treaties with France were considered at an end, and American men-of-war were made ready for sea. American and French vessels met in combat.

Commodore Truxton in the American frigate *Constellation* won an important victory near the West Indies over the French forty-gun ship *Insurgente*, and shortly after successfully encountered the *Vengeance*. This naval war continued

"Millions for Defense."

The United States, in its desire to avoid war with France, sent Charles Cotesworth Pinckney, Elbridge Gerry, and John Marshall as commissioners to negotiate a treaty, and secure if possible a friendly settlement. The French Directory refused to receive them officially, but sent word to them that a present of \$250,000 to the Directory, besides a tribute of money to France, would insure peace. These overtures were indignantly rejected, Pinckney uttering the memorable words, "Millions for defense, but not one cent for tribute."



CHARLES COTESWORTH PINCKNEY.

until Napoleon came to be the head of the French Government. It was necessary for him to give his whole attention to European affairs, and he was therefore willing to make peace with America. Murray, Ellsworth, and Davie were sent as ambassadors to Paris (1800), and a treaty was concluded.

Death of Washington.—About this time the sad intelligence was received that Washington was dead (December 14, 1799). The news everywhere occasioned manifestations of sorrow. He stands the central figure in American history, numbered among the greatest of all time. Soldiers and statesmen of every clime have pronounced eulogies upon him, and eloquent tributes to his memory have been again and again repeated.

Alien and Sedition Laws.—Adams's administration was unsatisfactory to the people. The most unpopular of its acts was the passage of the Alien and Sedition laws. The alien laws gave the President power to order out of the country any foreigner whom he deemed dangerous to public peace, and lengthened a foreigner's term of residence in this country before he could be naturalized. The sedition laws made it unlawful unduly to criticise the Government, or to publish anything that would bring either Congress or the President into contempt or disrepute.

Kentucky and Virginia Resolutions.

Many thought that by passing the Alien and Sedition laws the Government was taking upon itself a right which the Constitution had not specified. The legislature of Kentucky passed a formal set of resolutions in protest. These resolutions declared that the Alien and Sedition laws violated the Constitution, and asserted the right of the States to nullify all acts of the Federal Government which were unauthorized by the Constitution. Virginia followed with resolutions declaring the powers of the Federal Government limited by the instrument of compact (the Constitution), and that the States are in duty bound, and have the right to interfere when the dangerous exercise of powers not granted by the Constitution is sought.

Decline of the Federalist Party.—Dissatisfaction over the passage of the Alien and Sedition laws lost to the Federalist party many votes; and in the following election (1800) the Democratic-Republican party, founded by Thomas Jefferson, was successful.

Election of 1800.—In two respects this election was very remarkable. First, each party, through a caucus of its leaders, nominated two candidates, so that if successful it would elect both President and Vice-President. Adams and C. C. Pinckney were the Federalist candidates; Jefferson and Burr the Democratic-Republican nominees. Second, a controversy arose between the friends of the successful candidates as to which of the two should be President.

Jefferson-Burr Contest.—The result of the election showed that Jefferson and Burr had received an equal number of votes. According to the Constitution it was the duty of Congress in case of a tie to choose between the candidates. The Federalist members worked hard to defeat Jefferson, but he was elected, after thirty-six ballots had been taken. To prevent a case of this kind happening again, the 12th Amendment was added to the Constitution, by which a candidate for Vice-President is named as well as one for President.

Washington City Becomes the Capital.—With the close of the eighteenth century the capital of the United States was removed to its permanent location. A tract of land ten miles square, on the Potomac River, had been donated by Virginia and Maryland and named District of Columbia. On the north bank of the river, within this district, a city had been laid out and named Washington in honor of the first President.

Questions.—What question first divided the people into two political parties? What difference of belief existed between the Federalists and the Democratic-Republicans? Who were the presidential candidates of each party? Which was successful? How was the Vice-President elected in those days? What effect had Jay's English treaty upon France? What hostile acts did France commit against the United States? What warlike measures did the United States adopt? What two naval battles took place in the French Naval War? What treaty was concluded? By whom? What can you say of the death of Washington? What unpopular laws were passed while Adams was President? What do you know of the Alien law? Sedition law? What effect had the passage of the Alien and Sedition laws upon the Federalist party? In what two respects was the election of 1800 remarkable? What do you know of the election of Jefferson? What amendment changed the method of electing the Vice-President? What do you know of the permanent location of the Federal capital?

REFERENCE OUTLINE.

ADMINISTRATION OF JOHN ADAMS OF MASSACHUSETTS.

Second President.

Third Administration.

Fifth and Sixth Congresses.

Principal Events.

- | | | |
|-------|---|--|
| 1797. | { | Inauguration. |
| | { | Troubles with France. Commissioners sent. |
| 1798. | { | Naval War with France begins. |
| | { | Navy Department created. |
| | { | Alien and Sedition laws passed. |
| | { | Kentucky and Virginia resolutions. |
| 1799. | { | Death of Washington. |
| | { | Constellation captures the Insurgente. |
| | { | Capital removed to Washington. |
| | { | Presidential election— |
| 1800. | { | Democratic candidates : Thomas Jefferson and Aaron Burr. |
| | { | Federalist candidates : John Adams and C. C. Pinckney. |
| | { | Treaty with France. |

FOR ADVANCED CLASSES.

Topics for Discussion.

- I. John Adams's Administration. II. The French Naval War. III. Alien and Sedition Laws. IV. Kentucky and Virginia Resolutions. V. Election of Thomas Jefferson and Adoption of the 12th Amendment to the Constitution. VI. Political Parties in the Early Days of the Republic.

References and Authorities.

Schouler's *History of the United States*, vol. i.

Adams's administration reviewed, 493-500. French Naval War, 386, 403, 429, 439, 477. Kentucky and Virginia resolutions, 423. Election of Jefferson, 481-487. Early political parties, 47-53.

Hildreth's *History of the United States*, vol. v.

Character and views of John Adams, 33-36. Troubles with France, 50, 55, 125-159, 217-223, 358. Alien acts, 216. Sedition laws, 344-346. Kentucky resolutions, 272. Virginia resolutions, 276. Election of Jefferson, 402-407.

McMaster's *History of the People of the United States*, vol. ii.

Troubles with France, 367-374, 387, 388, 404-409. Sedition bill, 389. Alien bill, 393. Kentucky and Virginia resolutions, 419-422.

Parallel Readings.

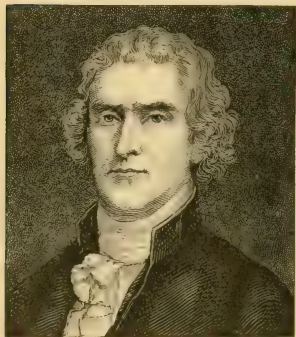
INDEX GUIDE for comparative examination of other works and authorities.—*Federalist Party*, *The*. *Democratic-Republican Party*, *The*. *Pinckney*, *Charles C.* *French War*, *The*. *Washington*, *Death of*. *Alien and Sedition Laws*, *The*. *Kentucky Resolutions*, *The*. *Virginia Resolution*, *The*. *Twelfth Amendment*, *The*.

SPECIAL.—Winsor : *Narrative and Critical History*, vol. vii., chap. v. Hart : *Formation of the Union*, chap. viii. Morse : *Thomas Jefferson*, 197-208. Goldwin Smith : *Political History of the United States*, 131. Andrews : *History of the United States*, vol. i., 275.

CHAPTER III.

EXPANSION OF TERRITORY.

Jefferson's Inauguration.—Thomas Jefferson believed that our government should be “a government of the people, by the people, and for the people.” He maintained that as sovereignty resided with the people the President was but the servant, not the ruler of the people, and so should set an example of Republican simplicity. For that reason very little show and ceremony attended his inauguration (March 4, 1801).

General Features of Jefferson's Administration.

THOMAS JEFFERSON.

—The Federalists feared his coming into power—his ideas of what the Government should be and do were so different from theirs. But the popularity of his administration steadily increased from the first, and he was triumphantly elected to a second term. The progress of the country while Jefferson was President was marked. One new State, Ohio, was admitted into the Union (February 19, 1803), and one of the greatest events in the history of our country oc-

curred during his administration. This was the purchase of Louisiana.

Spanish Control of Mississippi Navigation.—We have seen that Spain acquired Louisiana and the Island of New Orleans by the treaty which ended the French and Indian War (1763); and that she gained possession of East and West Florida by making war against England during the American Revolution. For some distance above its mouth, therefore, the Mississippi River ran through Spanish territory.

Importance of the Mississippi to Western Settlers.—The free use of this river to the Gulf was of great importance to the people rapidly settling the Ohio Valley; for in those days there were no railroads and it was easier to ship farm produce by flatboat to New Orleans, where it could be reshipped on sea-going vessels, than to haul it in wagons over the Alleghany Mountains to some port on the Atlantic coast.

Louisiana Given Back.—By the treaty of 1795 Spain had conceded to the Americans the free navigation of the Mississippi. But in 1800 Napoleon by the secret treaty of Ildefonso compelled Spain to give Louisiana back to France. The continued use of the Mississippi was now in doubt. If the United States could buy a tract of land on one side of the river near its mouth, a depot could be established where Western freight could be received and reshipped without requiring the permission of any foreign nation.

Louisiana Purchased.—Livingston, minister to France, was authorized to purchase either West Florida, whose western boundary was the Mississippi, or the Island of New Orleans. For a long time he negotiated without success. Finally James Monroe was sent.

Monroe arrived in Paris at a time when France was about to again engage England in war. Needing money, Napoleon offered to sell the whole of Louisiana. The price asked seemed enormous in those days, but Jefferson, Monroe, and Livingston



DECATUR BURNING THE PHILADELPHIA.

saw how important the full possession of the Mississippi and its tributaries would be to the welfare of this country ; so the purchase was made (1803), notwithstanding the violent opposition of the New England Federalists.

War with Tripoli.

American commerce in the Mediterranean suffered very much from the pirates of the Barbary States of Africa, who often captured American vessels and either held the crews for ransom or sold them into slavery. By paying so much a year to these Barbary pirates a country could purchase freedom from interference for its vessels. Several European nations were doing this, but the United States declined to submit to such extortion. The Bashaw of Tripoli haughtily declared war (1801). The United States sent a fleet under Commodore Preble (1803), who, after bringing the Emperor of Morocco to terms, blockaded and bombarded Tripoli, until its piratical ruler was glad to submit (1804). An event connected with this blockade was a daring exploit performed by Lieutenant Decatur. The frigate Philadelphia, running aground, had fallen into the hands of the Tripolitans. To prevent her being used by them, the Americans determined to destroy her. Decatur, with a chosen band in a small vessel, succeeded in reaching the frigate without exciting suspicion, and before resistance could be made leaped aboard, cleared the deck of the enemy, set the vessel on fire, and returned without the loss of a single man, though a fierce cannonade was directed upon him from the shore.

Terms of Purchase. —

The terms agreed upon were that the United States should pay \$11,250,000 to France, and \$3,750,000 to citizens who had claims—called Spoliation Claims—against the French Government on account of the illegal seizing of their vessels during the quarrel with France in 1799.

Lewis and Clark Explore the West. — Louisiana contained more than one million square miles and more than ninety thousand inhabitants. Immediately after its purchase, Meriwether Lewis and William Clark were sent to explore its western portion (1804). They crossed the Rocky Mountains, reached the Pacific coast, and returned, after having been engaged three years in the undertaking.

Orders in Council and Decrees. —

In the war which Napoleon waged against England, American commerce suffered greatly. To injure France, England issued several Orders in Council, prohibiting any vessel from entering a French port. In retaliation, Napoleon issued several Decrees forbidding any vessel to carry English goods to any port of Europe or to submit to being searched by any English ship of war. These

Decrees were issued while Napoleon was in Berlin and Milan ; hence they are given the names of those cities.

Interference with American Commerce.—The Decrees and Orders in Council interfered very much with American commerce. English ships of war sailed up and down the Atlantic seaboard, intercepting and searching American vessels, and seizing American seamen. Even in the harbors the ships of the United States were not safe from British guns. Outrages upon the high seas became more and more numerous, and the patience of the American people was tested to its utmost.

Fulton's First Steamboat.

The application of steam to navigation was successfully made by Robert Fulton during Jefferson's second term. His first boat was called the Clermont. It was clumsily built, and its progress was much slower than the steam vessels of the present day. Nevertheless, it was a great improvement upon the methods of traveling employed in those days. The first trip was made on the Hudson River from New York to Albany (September 2, 1807).

The Chesapeake Affair.

—One of the most flagrant of these outrages was that committed upon the American frigate Chesapeake. The Chesapeake, sailing under Captain Barron from Norfolk for the Mediterranean, was stopped by the British ship of war Leopard (June 22, 1807). The British commander claimed several of the Chesapeake's crew as deserters from the English navy, and demanded that they be given up. On being refused, the Leopard opened fire. The attack was a surprise, and the Chesapeake in her unprepared state soon lowered her flag.



ROBERT FULTON.

Embargo Act.—News of this outrage caused the greatest indignation throughout the United States. Jefferson issued a proclamation ordering all British vessels to leave American ports. He wished, however, to avoid war with England, and pursued a policy which he thought would bring England to terms. Trade with America was an important consideration with English merchants and manufacturers ; England could

be punished by stopping this trade. An embargo act was passed (December 22, 1807), forbidding American vessels to leave for foreign ports and British vessels to enter the ports of the United States.

New England Supports Nullification.—But it was

Aaron Burr.

Aaron Burr, who was Vice-President during Jefferson's first term, was replaced by George Clinton during the second. Burr was a very ambitious and selfish man. When associated with Jefferson on the Democratic-Republican ticket, and the selection had to be made by Congress, he showed himself very willing to let the Federalist members make him President over Jefferson, who had been rightly elected. While Vice-President, he became a candidate for Governor of New York (1804), and would have been successful had it not been for Hamilton's influence. As it was, he was defeated, and, stung by disappointment, he seized upon some expressions used by Hamilton in the heat of political debate as a pretext for a duel. His challenge was accepted. The duel took place July 11, 1804, at Weehawken, N. J., and Hamilton was killed. The news was received with profound regret. Burr was afterwards engaged in a treasonable scheme to invade Mexico, and, with as much of the southwestern territory of the United States as he could win to his cause, to establish such an empire as would realize his dreams and desires for power. He was arrested in Alabama and taken to Richmond for trial, but was acquitted for want of sufficient proof.

soon found that this act was punishing a section of our country which depended upon commerce for its prosperity. This was New England. As in later years the people of the Southern States objected to their principal industrial interests being interfered with by the United States Government, so in those earlier days did the people of the New England States oppose Federal interference with their commerce. It was now the turn of Massachusetts to protest against the powers assumed by the Government, as Kentucky and Virginia had previously done. Her legislature condemned the embargo measures as unconstitutional. The Governor of Connecticut refused to comply with the provisions of the act. Thus the idea of nullification—the right of a State to set aside or disobey a law considered unconstitutional—was strengthened.

Non-intercourse Act.—The Federalist party was the leading party in New England. Their opposition to the President's course passed beyond mere words and almost resulted in the secession of New England from the Union. During the last year of Jefferson's administration he was informed by John

Quincy Adams that New England had already taken steps to join herself to Canada. Such was the state of feeling in February, 1809. To harmonize matters, the Embargo Act was modified and the Non-intercourse Act passed, which permitted commerce with all nations except England and France.

Jefferson's Successor. — To succeed Jefferson, who had declined to be a candidate for a third term, the Democratic-Republican party



FULTON'S FIRST STEAMBOAT.

nominated James Madison of Virginia for President and George Clinton of New York for Vice-President. The Federalists nominated Charles C. Pinckney of South Carolina and Rufus King of New York. The Democratic candidates were elected.

Questions.—What did Jefferson believe about our Government? What do you know of his inauguration? How did the Federalists look upon his coming into power? Why? What State was admitted while he was President? What is the greatest event connected with his administration? How had Louisiana been acquired by Spain? Why was the free navigation of the Mississippi important to the Americans? By what means did France regain Louisiana? What was Livingston authorized to do? Who was sent to aid him? What was the price paid for Louisiana? Who explored the newly purchased territory of Louisiana? What were the British Orders in Council? Why were they issued? What did Napoleon issue in retaliation? What did the Berlin and Milan Decrees forbid? With what did these decrees and orders interfere? How did England show her enmity against the United States? What outrages were committed by her upon American commerce? What do you know of the Chesapeake affair? What proclamation did Jefferson issue? Tell something of the Embargo Act? What effect had it upon New England? What inconsistent action did New England advocate in opposition to the Embargo Act? What was done to harmonize matters? What was the Non-intercourse Act? Who were the candidates to succeed Jefferson? Who were elected?

REFERENCE OUTLINE.

ADMINISTRATION OF THOMAS JEFFERSON OF VIRGINIA

Third President.

Fourth and Fifth Administrations.

Seventh, Eighth, Ninth, and Tenth Congresses.

Principal Events.

- | | | |
|-------|---|---|
| 1801. | { | Inauguration. |
| | { | War with Tripoli begun. |
| 1803. | { | Ohio admitted. |
| | { | Louisiana purchased by the United States. |
| | { | Tripoli bombarded. The Philadelphia burned. |
| | { | Louisiana explored by Lewis and Clark. |
| 1804. | { | Presidential election— |
| | | Democratic candidates : Jefferson and George Clinton. |
| | | Federalist candidates : C. C. Pinckney and Rufus King. |
| 1805. | { | Tripolitan War ended. Treaty of peace. |
| | { | First steamboat. |
| | { | Troubles with England— |
| | | Orders in Council. |
| 1807. | { | Chesapeake affair. |
| | { | Embargo Act. |
| | { | Troubles with France— |
| | | Berlin Decree. |
| | | Milan Decree. |
| | { | Presidential election— |
| 1808. | { | Democratic candidates : James Madison and George Clinton. |
| | { | Federalist candidates : C. C. Pinckney and Rufus King. |
| 1809. | { | Non-intercourse Act. |

FOR ADVANCED CLASSES.

Topics for Discussion.

- I. Thomas Jefferson's Administration. II. The Louisiana Purchase. III. War with Tripoli. IV. Embargo and Non-intercourse Acts. V. The First Steamboat. VI. Aaron Burr.

References and Authorities.

Schouler's *History of the United States*, vol. ii.

Louisiana purchase, 36, 41, 44-47. Tripoli War, 67, 92. Embargo, 158-160. Non-intercourse Act, 196. Aaron Burr, 33, 61, 118-124.

Henry Adams's *History of the United States*.

Vol. ii.: The Louisiana treaty, chap ii. Vol. iii.: Burr's schemes, chaps. x.-xiv. Vol. iv.: The Embargo, chap. vii.

Hildreth's *History of the United States*.

Vol. v.: Tripoli War, 434, 482, 529, 562. Louisiana, 468-471, 478-480. First steamboat, 551. Burr, 518, 594. Vol. vi.: Character of Jefferson, 139. Embargo, 108-110. Non-intercourse Act, 136.

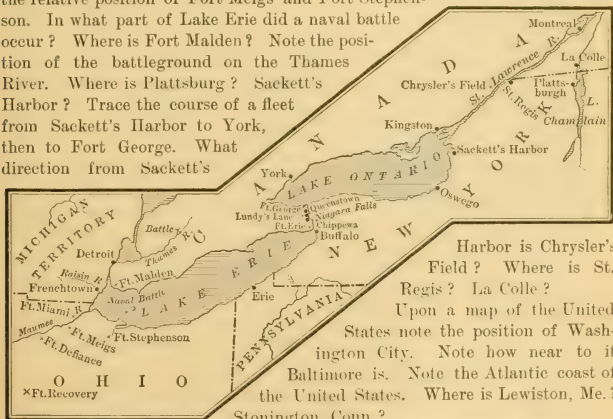
Parallel Readings.

INDEX GUIDE for comparative examination of other works and authorities.—*Louisiana Purchase, The. Spoliation Claims, The. Lewis and Clark, Expedition of. Tripoli, War with. Dec dur, Lieutenant. Orders in Council. Milan Decree, The. Berlin Decree, The. Chesapeake Affair, The. Embargo Act, The. Non-intercourse Act, The. Fulton, Robert. Burr, Aaron.*

SPECIAL.—Hart: *Formation of the Union*, chap. ix. Morse: *Thomas Jefferson*, 193-224. Smith: *Political History of the United States*, chap. iii. Andrews: *History of the United States*, vol. i., 303.

PREPARATORY GEOGRAPHY LESSON.

Upon the accompanying map note the location of Detroit. Where is Frenchtown? Niagara River? On which side of the Niagara is Queenstown? Chippewa? Lundy's Lane? Fort Erie? Where is Buffalo? Raisin River? Note the relative position of Fort Meigs and Fort Stephenson. In what part of Lake Erie did a naval battle occur? Where is Fort Malden? Note the position of the battleground on the Thames River. Where is Plattsburg? Sackett's Harbor? Trace the course of a fleet from Sackett's Harbor to York, then to Fort George. What direction from Sackett's



Harbor is Chrysler's Field? Where is St. Regis? La Colle?

Upon a map of the United States note the position of Washington City. Note how near to it Baltimore is. Note the Atlantic coast of the United States. Where is Lewiston, Me.? Stonington, Conn.?

Upon a map of Louisiana note the position of New Orleans. What large lake north of it? Note that Lake Pontchartrain opens into another lake through what are called the Rigolets. What lake is this? Note that a western arm of Lake Borgne approaches quite near New Orleans, so that vessels sailing into this lake may land troops not far from the city.

CHAPTER IV.

THE SPIRIT OF YOUNG AMERICA.

America's Endeavors to Avoid War.—The efforts of the United States to avoid war only brought upon it the contempt of foreign nations. England and France both continued

their outrages. Nine hundred American vessels had been taken by England since difficulties began, and more than six thousand American seamen had been pressed into English service. Five hundred and fifty vessels had fallen prey to France. Neither nation gave any heed to the protests of our Government. Our position was indeed humiliating.

The Americans were slow in showing to the world they could defend their rights. They had won their political independence by the War of the Revolution, and with this achievement they seemed for a long while disposed to rest content.

War Demanded by the People.—But a new generation was coming to the front

and making itself felt in American affairs. These younger citizens saw their country insulted and humiliated upon every side. They grew restive as outrage after outrage was reported. The honor of America was at stake, and the spirit of young America was eager to defend it. War was demanded. Both England and France had been aggressors ; but the conduct of England had been the more offensive. In addition to her many vindic-

The Shawnee War.

The population of the United States, now rapidly spreading westward, numbered 8,000,000. The Indians of the Northwest again resisted the approach of the whites. In this they were encouraged by the British upon the Canadian frontier. Tecumseh, chief of the Shawnees, assisted by his brother, the Prophet, determined to make a final stand. Both were leaders of great influence. They were joined by many of the Western and Southwestern tribes, Tecumseh even visiting the Indians of Tennessee and Alabama (1810), and winning them to his purpose. William Henry Harrison, governor of that portion of the Northwest organized as the Indiana Territory, marched upon the large Indian village of which the Prophet was chief, at the mouth of the Tippecanoe River. When near the village he was attacked at night by overwhelming numbers (November 7, 1811), but being on the alert was not surprised. He administered a crushing defeat to the savages, and on the next day advanced to their town and reduced it to ashes.

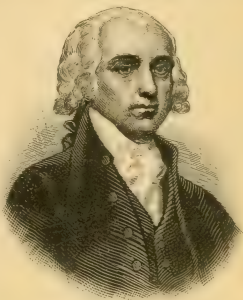
tive acts upon the sea, she had again incited the Indians of the Northwest to hostilities.

Leaders of the War Party in Congress.—Congress was not unanimous in its desire for war. The elder members counseled peace; the younger would accept no peace at the expense of national honor. The war party was led by Henry Clay of Kentucky; John C. Calhoun, William Lowndes, and Langdon Cheves of South Carolina; and Felix Grundy of Tennessee—all young men, just beginning to appear in American politics. Their eloquence inspired the country and aroused the national spirit, as the eloquence of Henry and Otis had done just before the Revolution.

President and Little Belt.

—The war feeling steadily grew in strength. Strange to say, the West and South, the sections least affected by the commercial interferences of England, were the most eager to begin hostilities, while New England, the section whose interests had suffered the most, and in whose behalf war was advocated, was opposed.

An event occurred toward the close of Madison's administration which did much to hasten the approaching conflict. The United States frigate *President*, commanded by Commodore Rodgers, sailing out of Norfolk, bound for the Mediterranean, hailed a vessel near the coast, and in reply received a shot. The vessel proved to be the British sloop-of-war *Little Belt*. Instead of lying to and tamely submitting to search, Rodgers cleared his decks for action, and gave the *Little Belt* a number of broadsides which soon disabled her (May 11, 1811). The news of this punishment of British insolence upon the high seas was received with exultation in America. "Free trade and seamen's rights" became the cry, just as "Liberty, or death," had been the watchword of the Revolution.



JAMES MADISON.

War Declared.—The impulse to avenge injury and insult soon prevailed. By the time Madison was renominated (May, 1812) it was pretty well understood that war was to be entered into with England. As a first step, all vessels were warned not to leave port for ninety days (April 4). Then, as England showed no intention to revoke her Orders in Council, the President sent a war message to Congress (June 1), and that body passed a bill, on June 19, 1812, formally declaring war.

Cause of the War of 1812.—Five days before this declaration of war was made England had revoked her Orders in Council, but the news had not yet reached the United States. The Orders were revoked not to satisfy the United States, but to relieve the English merchants and manufacturers. Their trade with America was suffering greatly from the embargo and from the non-intercourse policy of the United States. Had the news reached America earlier it is doubtful whether the war could have been averted, for England proposed to continue the arrest and search of American vessels. The war, then, was fought to assert the right of American vessels to sail undisturbed to any part of the world.

Questions.—What did the efforts of the United States to avoid hostilities bring? How many American vessels were taken by England? Seamen? How many by France? In what were the Americans slow? What had the Americans won by the Revolution? What was now coming to the front and making itself felt? What did these younger citizens see? What was demanded? Which of the two, England and France, had been the more offensive? What difference of opinion existed between the younger and older members of Congress? Who led the party in favor of war? What sections were in favor of the war? What section was opposed? What do you know of the President and Little Belt affair? How was news of it received in America? What became the cry? As a first step to war, what warning was given? When was war declared? Why did the British revoke their Orders in Council? To win what was the War of 1812 fought?

FOR ADVANCED CLASSES.

Topics for Discussion.

- I. Administration of James Madison. II. English Outrages upon American Commerce. III. The Shawnee War. IV. The President and the Little Belt.

References and Authorities.

Schouler's *History of the United States*, vol. ii.

British naval outrages, 101, 144. Shawnee War, 331, 332. Little Belt affair, 329.

Henry Adams's *History of the United States*, vol. vi.

The Little Belt, chap. ii. Shawnee War, 256-258.

Hildreth's *History of the United States*, vol. vi.

Orders in Council, 33, 84. Shawnee War, 256-258.

Parallel Readings.

INDEX GUIDE for comparative examination of other works and authorities.—*Impressment of American Seamen. War of 1812, Causes of. President and Little Belt. Shawnee War, The. Tecumseh.*

SPECIAL.—Goldwin Smith: *Political History of the United States*, chap. iii. Andrews: *History of the United States*, vol. i., 315. Hart: *Formation of the Union*, 200-207.

CHAPTER V.**THE WAR FOR MARITIME INDEPENDENCE.****1.**

War Measures.—The United States was unprepared to go to war with so powerful a nation as England. There were but twenty or thirty vessels in the American navy, while England had a thousand. But preparations were hastily pressed forward. Measures were passed for the enlistment of 25,000 regular and 50,000 volunteer troops. The States were recommended to levy 100,000 militia for local defense. A loan of \$11,000,000 was authorized to pay the expense of carrying on the war, and provision was made to increase the navy.

Commander-in-chief Appointed.—General Henry Dearborn of Massachusetts, an old officer of the Revolution, was appointed commander-in-chief of the army. An invasion of the British province of Canada from the Michigan and Niagara frontiers was decided upon.

Michigan Frontier Operations.—General William Hull, Governor of Michigan Territory, with 1,300 men, advanced into Canada, but hearing that the fort at Mackinaw had been taken by the British, fell back to Detroit. A detachment of his army, under Major Van Horne, was ambushed and defeated near Brownstown, Michigan, by the Indian allies of the British under Tecumseh (August 5), but the savages

were routed by another detachment under Colonel Miller, near a place called Maguaga, Michigan (August 9).

Surrender of Detroit.—General Brock, Governor of Canada, advanced from Malden to lay siege to Detroit. His forces were inferior to those of Hull. The Americans were eager for the battle, but General Hull hoisted the white flag of surrender before a shot was fired, and his disgusted army were delivered up as prisoners of war (August 16).

Niagara Frontier Operations.—Shortly after Hull's surrender, the brave General Stephen Van Rensselaer crossed the Niagara River, and with 1,000 men gallantly assaulted and carried Queenstown Heights (October 13). In the engagement General Brock, who had arrived from Detroit, was mortally wounded. Van Rensselaer returned to the American side of the river for reënforcements, but the rest of his army refused to cross the river, and their comrades at Queenstown, unaided, were overpowered and captured. Van Rensselaer resigned his command and was succeeded by General Alexander Smyth, who proved incompetent and was soon removed.

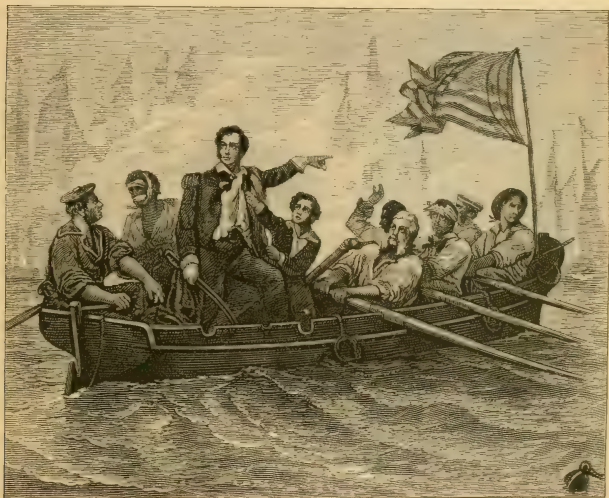
2.

Second Year's Plan of Campaign.—The military operations for the next year (1813) were more systematically planned. Three armies were organized: the first to operate in the West, about the shore of Lake Erie; the second to operate upon the Niagara frontier; and the third to operate in northern New York. General Harrison was placed in command of the Army of the West, General Wade Hampton of the Army of the North, and the commander-in-chief, General Dearborn, directed the operations of the Army of the Center.

Army of the West.—Harrison pushed forward to recover the ground Hull had lost. An advance division of his army under General Winchester, after gaining an advantage over the enemy at Frenchtown on the River Raisin, was attacked and defeated by the British and Indians under Proctor and Tecumseh (January 22, 1813).

Croghan's Defense of Fort Stephenson.—After de-

feating Winchester, Proctor advanced and besieged Harrison at Fort Meigs (May 5). Failing to capture this defense, he proceeded to Fort Stephenson, upon the Sandusky. This fort was defended by 160 men under Major Croghan, a young man of twenty-one, who employed the limited means of defense at his disposal with such skill that the enemy was successfully repulsed (August 2). Shortly afterwards a glorious victory



BATTLE OF LAKE ERIE.

was won over the enemy's fleet on Lake Erie by Commodore Perry (September 10).

Perry's Victory.—The British had been in full possession of Lake Erie, and nothing could be done towards the successful invasion of Canada until this lake was cleared of their fleet. Captain Perry was sent to take charge of operations upon the water and to coöperate with General Harrison. With great energy and perseverance he succeeded in building nine small vessels. Sailors were sent overland from the seacoast to man

the little fleet ; and though poorly equipped, Perry sailed out into the lake to meet the British squadron under the veteran Commodore Barclay.

A pennant with the immortal words of Lawrence,* “Don’t give up the ship,” was flying at the masthead of his flagship. The battle was desperate. Perry’s vessel engaged two of the enemy’s and was soon badly disabled. Only eight of his men remained, but with these he crossed in an open boat to another of his ships, and continued the engagement so successfully that

the whole English fleet surrendered (September 10, 1813). “We have met the enemy, and they are ours,” was the brief message Perry sent to Harrison to announce the victory.

Massacre at the River Raisin.

During the engagement General Winchester was captured. Seeing the superior forces of the enemy, he secured a solemn pledge from Proctor to protect and spare the Americans if they surrendered. He then advised his men to lay down their arms, which they did. With a baseness that has poured upon his memory never-ceasing contempt, Proctor ignored all pledges, and abandoned the unarmed Americans to the mercy of the savages. The sick and wounded were butchered in cold blood. The able-bodied were either tortured or taken into captivity. The memory of this event spurred the Americans in many an encounter that afterwards took place, and they often went into battle with the cry of “Remember the River Raisin.”

Battle of the Thames.—

The British land forces were now compelled to fall back to Canada. Harrison followed and landed his troops near Malden. A battle was fought near the River Thames, and the gallant conduct of some Kentucky riflemen, under Colonel Richard M. Johnson, turned the tide of

✓ victory in favor of the Americans. The British were com-

pletely defeated, and their Indian ally, Tecumseh, was slain in the battle.

Army of the Center.—Meanwhile General Dearborn had sent a force (April 27, 1813), under General Zebulon Pike, from Sackett’s Harbor, New York, to York (Toronto), Canada. Pike drove the British from their batteries and captured the town with many valuable stores. During the engagement the powder magazine of the enemy blew up, causing much loss in the American ranks. General Pike himself was mortally wounded.

* See chap. vi.

Sackett's Harbor.—From York the victorious troops, now led by Generals Winder and Chandler, crossed over to the mouth of the Niagara River, and drove the British from Fort George (May 27). Thinking Sackett's Harbor defenseless after the departure of these troops, the British, under General Prevost, descended upon it, but were repulsed by militia under General Brown (May 29).

Wilkinson's Campaign.—General Dearborn was succeeded as commander-in-chief by General James Wilkinson. An attack on Montreal was planned. An army of 7,000 men embarked near Sackett's Harbor, and proceeded down the St. Lawrence. They found their progress impeded by the enemy, and a force under General Brown was landed.

The battle was fought at Chrysler's Field (November 11), and the army advanced to a place called St. Regis. Here Hampton was expected to join them with the Army of the North, from Plattsburg on Lake Champlain. Hampton, however, did not appear, and the Montreal expedition was abandoned, Wilkinson's army going into winter quarters at Fort Covington. In the spring the Americans proceeded to the Sorel River, and

were defeated at La Colle (March 30, 1814), after which they turned south and joined the troops at Plattsburg.

"I'll Try, Sir."

American success in the battle of Lundy's Lane depended upon the capture of a British battery upon a neighboring height. General Brown, arriving upon the scene as the engagement was drawing to a close, called to Colonel Miller and asked him if he could take it. "I'll try, sir," was Miller's answer. Leading his men steadily up the ascent, Miller secured the battery and held it against the repeated assaults of the enemy.



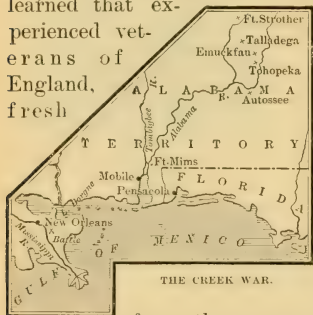
COMMODORE PERRY.

3.

Third Year's Plan of Campaign.—New York was now formed into one military district of two divisions. That of the right was placed under

the command of General Ralph Izard, with Generals Windsor, Macomb, Smith, and Bissel as subordinates. That of the left was commanded by General Brown, with Generals Scott, Ripley, and Gaines as subordinates.

Izard's Preparations.—Izard was a thoroughly trained soldier, and proceeded to put the American army at Plattsburg in a condition of perfect discipline, as Steuben had done in the War of the Revolution at Valley Forge. He felt it necessary to do this because he had learned that experienced veterans of England, fresh



THE CREEK WAR.

from the successful battlefields of Europe, were about to be sent to America.

Chippewa and Lundy's Lane.—While Izard was training his army the Americans upon the Niagara frontier were

actively engaged with the enemy. Generals Scott and Ripley crossed the river, and defeated the British under Riall in a battle near the Chippewa River (July 5). At Lundy's Lane, near the Falls of Niagara, Scott and Riall again met (July 25). This was one of the hottest engagements of the war. The British far outnumbered the Americans, but Scott not only held his ground, but captured General Riall, wounded his suc-

The Creek War.

The result of Tecumseh's visit to the Indians of Alabama was soon seen. While the attention of the Americans was engaged with England, Weatherford, chief of the Creeks, thought it a favorable opportunity to make war against the United States; and taking up arms surprised Fort Mims, near Mobile, and massacred more than four hundred of its inhabitants. Forces from the neighboring States soon reached the scene. General Coffee arrived from Tennessee and destroyed the town of Tallahatche, slaying more than a thousand Creeks. General Floyd of Georgia burned the Indian town of Autossee (November 24, 1813), while General Claiborne of Mississippi, and Pushmataha, a friendly Choctaw chief, won a victory over Weatherford at Echanachaca (December 23, 1813). General Andrew Jackson of Tennessee, who commanded in this district, defeated the Indians at Talladega (November 9, 1813), Emuckfau (January 23, 1814), and Tohopeka or Horseshoe Bend (March 27). With this last battle the power of the Creeks was utterly crushed.

cessor, General Drummond, and drove the British from the field.

Fort Erie Attacked.—The Americans took up a position at Fort Erie, near the head of the Niagara River. Drummond, having received reënforcements, advanced and laid siege (August 4). The Americans under General Gaines made a brilliant attack, carried the enemy's works, and compelled Drummond to retreat (September 17). After destroying Fort Erie the Americans crossed to their own side, where they went into winter quarters.

Plattsburg and Macdonough's Victory.—These active operations upon the Niagara frontier rendered it advisable that General Izard with troops from Plattsburg reënforce General Brown. Leaving Macomb in command, General Izard set out upon a long journey overland, and, after overcoming many difficulties, he arrived shortly after the successful sortie of the Fort Erie garrison. After the departure of Izard, a large force under General Prevost descended from Canada upon Plattsburg, but with greatly inferior numbers Macomb won a brilliant victory, and Prevost was compelled to retreat. While Macomb was driving the enemy before him on the shore of Lake Champlain, Macdonough, on the Plattsburg Bay, was fighting the British squadron under Commodore George Downie. With a fleet inferior to that of the British, in the number of vessels, guns, and men, Macdonough captured or destroyed the enemy's ships, and gained the most brilliant victory of the war. For this service he was promoted to the rank of captain, and was awarded a gold medal by Congress.

Questions.—How did the navies of England and the United States compare? What measures were passed? What recommendation was made to the States? What loan was authorized? Provision for what was made? Who was appointed commander-in-chief? What invasion was decided upon? Who was governor of Michigan Territory? What advance did Hull make? Why did he fall back to Detroit? What happened to Major Van Horne's detachment? Where and by whom were the savages routed? Who was governor of Canada? Tell something of Hull's surrender. Who assaulted Queenstown Heights? Who commanded the British in this engagement? What happened to Brock? What did Van Rensselaer do?

Into how many armies were the American forces organized in 1813? What were the three divisions called? Who commanded each? Where did Winchester gain an advantage? Where and by whom was Harrison besieged? Tell something of the defense of Fort Stephenson. What glorious victory did the Americans win September 10? Why was it necessary to clear Lake Erie of the British fleet? Who was the British commander upon Lake Erie? Tell something of Perry's victory. What do you know of the battle of the Thames? Who captured York? What happened to Pike? Who prevented the British from capturing Sackett's Harbor? Where did the Americans go from York? Who succeeded General Dearborn? What do you know of the unsuccessful Montreal expedition? The battle of La Colle?

Into what two divisions was the military district of New York divided in 1814? Who was placed in command of each division? What generals were under Izard? Brown? Why did Izard think it necessary to put his army in perfect condition? What was the first battle fought by the Americans on the Niagara frontier? Where did Scott and Riall next meet? What did General Gaines do? Why did Izard leave Plattsburg? Who commanded in his absence? Tell something of Macomb's victory over Prevost. What naval victory did Commodore Macdonough win on Lake Champlain?

FOR ADVANCED CLASSES.

Topics for Discussion.

- I. Beginning of the War of 1812. II. Harrison's Campaign and the Battle of the Thames. III. Perry's Victory. IV. Lundy's Lane and Chippewa. V. The Victories of Plattsburg and Lake Champlain. VI. The Creek War.

References and Authorities.

Schouler's *History of the United States*, vol. ii.

War debates and preparations, 328-351. Harrison's Army of the West, 358, 382. Perry's victory, 382. Lundy's Lane and Chippewa, 404. Plattsburg and Lake Champlain, 406. Creek War, 390.

Henry Adams's *History of the United States*.

Vol. vi.: War of 1812, chap. xi. Vol. vii.: Battle of the Thames, chap. vi. Campaign among the Creeks, chap. x.

Hildreth's *History of the United States*, vol. vi.

Beginning of War of 1812, 303-305. Western Canadian campaigns, 336-342, 359, 392, 433, 437. Perry, 411, 434, 435. Plattsburg, 518-521. Creek War, 446-451, 477-479.

Parallel Readings.

INDEX GUIDE for comparative examination of other works and authorities.—*Detroit, Hull's Surrender of. Queenstown, Battle of. Thames, Battle of. River Raisin, Massacre of. Fort Stephenson, Croghan's Defense of. Lake Erie, Battle of. York, Pike's Capture of. Wilkinson, General James, in War of 1812. Chippewa, Battle of. Lundy's Lane, Battle of. Plattsburg, Battle of. Lake Champlain, Battle of. Creek War, The.*

SPECIAL. Winsor: *Narrative and Critical History*, vol. vii., chap. vi. Hart: *Formation of the Union*, chap. x. Andrews: *History of the United States*, Part II., Period I., chap. x.

CHAPTER VI.

SEA TRIUMPHS OF THE YOUNG REPUBLIC.

American Naval Success.—When the United States took up the cause of the American sailor and declared war against England, few expected the Americans to win many naval victories. The English navy was at the time the most powerful in the world, and the boastful song of British seamen had long been, “*Britannia Rules the Waves.*”

But as the war progressed the world was filled with astonish-



THE FRIGATE CONSTITUTION.

ment and admiration over the heroic deeds of American naval commanders. In almost all the encounters on sea the Americans were successful. Out of sixteen principal engagements upon the ocean the British were victorious in but three.

First Sea Battles; Porter and Hull.—The first sea battle of importance occurred near Newfoundland, between the American frigate *Essex*, under Captain Porter, and the British

sloop Alert, Captain Langhorne commanding (August 13, 1812). The Essex was victorious. A few days after (August 19), off the coast of Massachusetts, the Constitution, under Captain Hull, vanquished the *Guerrière*, one of the best equipped frigates of the English navy. Hull was a nephew of the general who so basely surrendered Detroit, and his gallant conduct did much to remove the stain from the family name.

Decatur, Bainbridge, and Stewart.—Before the close

of the year 1812 important American victories had been won by the Wasp over the Frolic (October 13), off the coast of North Carolina; by the ship United States, commanded by Decatur, over the Macedonian, near the Canary Islands (October 25); and by the Constitution, this time commanded by Bainbridge, over the Java, near Brazil (December 29). The Constitution, because of her many voyages and victories, was one of the most historic vessels ever connected with the American navy. Her last victory was in 1815, when, commanded by Stewart, she captured the British ships Cyane and Levant (February 20), near the Madeira Islands.

The Hartford Convention.

The Federalists of New England continued throughout the war to show their dissatisfaction with the national Government. They considered it unconstitutional to require the militia of a State to serve outside of the State. To carry on the war successfully the Government found it necessary to compel the militia to serve, and the Federalists took steps to resist. The legislature of Massachusetts issued a call for a convention, and delegates from Connecticut, Rhode Island, New Hampshire, and Vermont, with those of Massachusetts, met at Hartford (December 14, 1814). The sessions of this convention were held in secret, and the records of its proceedings have been carefully suppressed. Suspicion has always existed, however, that this convention met to take steps to have the New England States withdraw from the Union. The event gave a political death-blow to the Federalist party, the spirit of national unity having been greatly strengthened by the war.

Lawrence.—Among the many gallant naval commanders of the war, Captain Lawrence will always be remembered. As commander of the Hornet he captured, off Demerara, the British brig Peacock (February 24, 1813). In command of the Chesapeake he was making ready for sea in the port of Boston, when the British frigate Shannon, all ready for battle, approached the harbor and challenged his vessel.

The impetuous Lawrence answered the challenge at once, although his vessel was not yet ready for sea. The Shannon was much the stronger of the two vessels, and the heroism of the Americans could not save them from defeat. Lawrence was mortally wounded. His dying command, given as he was carried below, was, "Don't give up the ship."

Other Naval Engagements of 1813.—

The victory of the Shannon was followed by that of the British sloop Pelican over the American brig



CAPTAIN JAMES LAWRENCE.

British Coast Operations.

During the progress of the war the whole coast from Maine to Delaware was blockaded. The fisheries and commerce of New England were utterly destroyed for a time. Lewiston, Me. (1813), and Stonington, Conn. (1814), suffered bombardment. Admiral Cochrane with a powerful fleet entered the Chesapeake (1814), and 4,000 veterans under General Ross landed, and marched to Washington after overcoming some opposition (August 24, 1814) at Bladensburg, Md. All the public buildings except the Patent Office were burned by the enemy, and Ross proceeded to ravage Baltimore in a similar manner. Militia were gathered in defense of the city. In a skirmish Ross was killed. The fleet of the British advanced up the Patapsco to cooperate with the army, and began a bombardment of Fort M'Henry (September 13). The fort gallantly responded, and for eighteen hours maintained a spirited contest. The enemy's fleet was compelled to abandon the fight; the army, unsupported, withdrew, and Baltimore was saved.

Argus (August 14), in the English channel. American victories, however, soon made good the losses sustained by these British successes. The Enterprise captured the Boxer (September 5), near the coast of Maine, and Perry's victory on Lake Erie, the greatest naval achievement of the war, occurred shortly after (September 10).

Naval Engagements of 1814.—The ship Essex, commanded by Captain Porter, which had made the first capture in the war, after a brilliant career came to grief in the harbor of Valparaiso. Here the Essex was overpowered by the British vessels Phœbe and Cherub, and

Battle of New Orleans.

General Andrew Jackson, in command at the South, was indefatigable in his exertions to defend that portion of the country from invasion. Marching upon Pensacola, where the British had been permitted by the Spaniards to establish quarters, he took possession of their forts. The coast operations of the British extending as far as Louisiana, Jackson hastened to the defense of New Orleans. Here he was joined by some riflemen from Tennessee and Kentucky, and by many citizens of Louisiana. In the southern part of Louisiana is a bay called Barataria. Along the shores of this bay dwelt a people engaged in smuggling or other questionable enterprises. Their leader was a man of great daring named Lafitte. Although offered tempting bribes by the British to join them in their attack upon the city, he could not turn against his country, but offered the services of his men to Jackson, who accepted them. After the battle the United States Government recognized the bravery of these outlaws by offering all who would settle down as law-abiding citizens a full pardon.

Forts were erected to oppose the advance of the enemy by river. The advance was made, however, by way of the lakes back of the city; so Jackson threw up fortifications on the plains of Chalmette, just beyond the suburbs, and awaited their approach. The English army was composed of veteran troops. It was led by Sir Edward Pakenham. The British passed through the swamp, and reaching the field, charged upon the fortifications of the Americans. The battle raged all day, but the riflemen, citizen soldiery, and Baratarians stood their ground, and drove the enemy back with terrible slaughter (January 8, 1815). More than two thousand of their number were lost. Pakenham himself was killed. The loss of the Americans was but eight. The battle was a needless one, for, unknown to the combatants, peace had already been declared.

Porter was compelled to surrender (March 28). This was the third and last important British naval victory of the war.

Last Sea Battles.—The American sloop Peacock, commanded by Warrington, won a victory over the Epervier off the coast of Florida (April 29, 1814); and the engagements between the Wasp and Reindeer (June 28, 1814), and between the Hornet and Penguin (March 23, 1815), resulted in American victories.

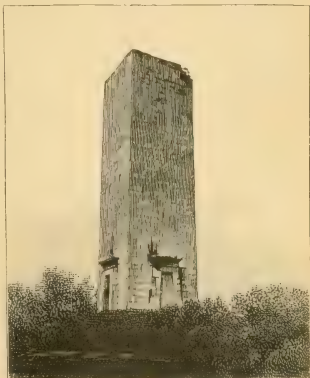
Peace Negotiations.—The War of 1812 had come at a very inconvenient time for England. The French leader, Napoleon, had almost succeeded in conquering Europe. England had combined with several other nations against him. The American war was taking up a great deal of the energy that the British nation needed in its war against France. So Russia, one of the allied powers, sought to mediate between England and the United States. Her first attempt was unsuccessful (March, 1813); but renewing her efforts, she succeeded in bringing together commissioners from the two countries to treat for peace.

Treaty of Ghent.—The commissioners appointed by the United States were Henry Clay, Albert Gallatin, James Bayard, Jonathan Russell, and John Quincy Adams. The commission met at Ghent, Belgium (July 6, 1814). The attitude of the English commissioners was haughty and exacting, and for a long time it seemed impossible to reach a satisfactory conclusion; but after five months of negotiation the treaty was signed (December 24, 1814). The news of peace took some time to cross the ocean, as there were no ocean cables in those days. Before it reached America the greatest land battle of the war had been fought (January 8, 1815), near New Orleans.

The results of the War of 1812 seemed at first of little consequence. In reality they were of much importance. Respect for the United States greatly increased abroad, for a nation that could vanquish the powerful ships and experienced veterans of England was no longer to be despised. National spirit and the idea of

union were greatly strengthened at home, for men do not fight and suffer for a government without becoming very much interested in its welfare. The States, which were at first but loosely held together, were now bound more closely by common sympathies and by the memory of gallant deeds and of the glories they had jointly achieved.

Remaining Events of Madison's Administration.—Two States had been admitted while Madison was President. These were Louisiana (April 8, 1812) and Indiana (December 11, 1816). The Algerines were again punished by Commodore Decatur for renewing their depredations in the Mediterranean



BATTLE MONUMENT OF CHALMETTE.

(1815). The candidates to succeed Madison were James Monroe of Virginia and Rufus King of New York.

Questions.—At the beginning of the War of 1812 what was not expected? Tell something of the English navy. What success had the United States on sea? What was the first sea battle of importance? Where, when, and by whom fought? What do you know of Hull's victory? Over what vessel did the Wasp win a victory? The ship United States? What two victories of the Constitution are mentioned? What do you know of Captain Lawrence? What were his last words? What British victory did the Pelican win in 1813? Was the capture of the Boxer a British or American victory? What do you know of Captain Porter and the Essex? What American naval victories were won in 1814? What victory in 1815? Why did the European powers wish to make peace between Great Britain and the United States? Who were appointed commissioners by the United States? What do you know of the Treaty of Ghent? What greatly increased abroad as a result of the War of 1812? What were greatly strengthened at home? What two States were admitted while Madison was President? What people were again punished? Why? Who were the candidates to succeed Madison?

REFERENCE OUTLINE.

ADMINISTRATION OF JAMES MADISON OF VIRGINIA.

Fourth President.

Sixth and Seventh Administrations.

Eleventh, Twelfth, Thirteenth, and Fourteenth Congresses.

Principal Events.

1809. Inauguration.

1811. { Little Belt affair.
Shawnee War.

1812. { Louisiana admitted (April 8).
War with England declared (June 4).

1812. Presidential election—
Democratic candidates : Madison and Elbridge Gerry.
Federalist candidates : De Witt Clinton and Jared Ingersoll.

1813. Creek War.

1814. { Washington burned (August 24).
Hartford Convention (December 15).
Treaty of Ghent (December 24).

1815. { Battle of New Orleans (January 8).
War with Algiers.

1816. { Indiana admitted (December 11).

1816. Presidential election—
Democratic candidates : Monroe and Daniel F. Tompkins.
Federalist candidates : King and John Howard.

REFERENCE OUTLINE.

BATTLES OF THE WAR OF 1812.

(British victories and commanders in italics.)

Campaigns on Land.

1812	Michigan Frontier.	Aug. 5.	<i>Brownstown</i>	Van Horne.....	<i>Tecumseh.</i>
		Aug. 9.	<i>Maguaga</i>	Miller.....	<i>Tecumseh.</i>
		Aug. 16.	<i>Detroit</i>	Hull.....	<i>Brock.</i>
	Niagara Frontier.	Oct. 13.	<i>Queenstown</i>	Van Rensselaer..	<i>Brock.</i>
1813	Army of the West.	Jan. 22.	<i>Frenchtown, Mich.</i>	Winchester.....	<i>Proctor.</i>
		May 5.	<i>Fort Meigs, Ohio.</i>	Harrison.....	<i>Proctor.</i>
		Aug. 2.	<i>Fort Stephenson</i>	Croghan.....	<i>Proctor.</i>
		Oct. 5.	<i>Thames, Canada.</i>	Harrison.....	<i>Proctor.</i>
	Army of the Center.	April 27.	<i>York, Canada.</i>	Pike.....	<i>Sheaffe.</i>
		May 27.	<i>Fort George</i>	Winder.....	<i>Prevost.</i>
		May 29.	<i>Sackett's Harbor</i>	Brown.....	<i>Prevost.</i>
		Nov. 11.	<i>Chrysler's Field</i>	Brown.....	<i>Prevost.</i>
1814	Division of the Left.	July 5.	<i>Chippewa</i>	Scott.....	<i>Riell.</i>
		July 25.	<i>Lundy's Lane</i>	Scott.....	<i>Drummond.</i>
		Sept. 17.	<i>Fort Erie</i>	Gaines.....	<i>Drummond.</i>
	Division of the Right.	Mar. 30.	<i>La Colle</i>	Wilkinson.....	<i>Hancock.</i>
		Sept. 11.	<i>Plattsburg</i>	Macomb.....	<i>Prevost.</i>

Coast Operations.

1814	Aug. 24.	<i>Bladensburg, Md.</i>	Winder.....	<i>Ross.</i>
		<i>Capture of Washington.</i>		
	Sept. 13.	<i>Bombardment of Fort McHenry, Md.</i>		
1815	Jan. 8.	<i>New Orleans</i>	Jackson.....	<i>Pakenham.</i>

Naval Battles.

1812	Aug. 12.	Essex	Porter	over	Alert	Langhorne.	
	Aug. 19.	Constitution	Hull	over	Guerrière	Lacres.	
	Oct. 18.	Wasp	Jones	over	Frolic	Myates.	
	Oct. 25.	United States	Decatur	over	Macedonia	Carden.	
	Dec. 20.	Constitution	Bainbridge	over	Java	Lambert.	
1813	Feb. 24.	Hornet	Lawrence	over	Peacock	Peake.	
	June 1.	Shannon	Broke	over	Chesapeake	Lawrence.	
	Aug. 14.	Pelican	Maples	over	Argus	Allen.	
	Sept. 5.	Enterprise	Burroughs	over	Boxer	Blythe.	
	Sept. 10.	American Fleet	Perry	over	British Fleet	Barclay.	
1814	Mar. 28.	{ Phoebe	{ Hillyar	{	over	Essex	Porter.
	{ Cherub	{ Tucker					
	April 29.	Peacock	Warrington	over	Epervier	Wales.	
	June 28.	Wasp	Blakeley	over	Reindeer	Manners.	
	Sept. 11.	American Fleet	Macdonough	over	British Fleet	Downie.	
1815	Feb. 20.	Constitution	Stewart	over	{ Cyane	{ Falcon.	
					{ Levant	{ Douglas.	
	Mar. 23.	Hornet	Biddle	over	Penguin	Dickinson.	

FOR ADVANCED CLASSES.

Topics for Discussion.

- I. Principal Naval Battles of the War of 1812. II. The Hartford Convention. III. British Coast Operations in the War of 1812. IV. The Treaty of Ghent. V. The Battle of New Orleans.

References and Authorities.

Schouler's *History of the United States*, vol. ii.

Naval battles, 362, 392, 393. Hartford Convention, 425. British coast operations, 394, 407-411. Ghent Treaty, 431. Battle of New Orleans, 438.

Henry Adams's *History of the United States*.

Vol. vi.: Naval battles, chap. xvii. Vol. viii.: Hartford Convention, chap. ii. Battle of New Orleans, chap. xiv. Vol. ix.: Treaty of Ghent, chap. ii.

Hildreth's *History of the United States*, vol. vi.

Naval battles, 365-370, 397-399, 420, 430, 486. British Chesapeake operations, 503-512. Battle of New Orleans, 557-565. Ghent Treaty, 567.

Parallel Readings.

INDEX GUIDE for comparative examination of other works and authorities.—*War of 1812, Naval Battles of. Constitution and Guerrière. Chesapeake and Shannon. Washington, Burning of. Fort M'Henry, Bombardment of. Hartford Convention, The. Treaty of Ghent. Battle of New Orleans. War with the Algerines.*

SPECIAL.—Smith: *Political History of the United States*, 171-176. Hart: *Formation of the Union*, 209-222. Andrews: *History of the United States*, Part II., Period I., chap. x.

PREPARATORY GEOGRAPHY LESSON.

Upon a map of the United States note where Wisconsin is. What State next to Georgia and Alabama on the south? Where are the Everglades of Florida? Where is Lake Okeechobee? Note the boundary line between Canada and Maine. Between New Brunswick and Maine.

Upon a map of Louisiana note that portion lying between the Pearl River and the Mississippi. What three lakes south of this portion? Note how near the Mississippi flows to Lake Pontchartrain. Where is Baton Rouge? Upon the accompanying map note the boundary lines of West and of East Florida.

CHAPTER VII.

THE ERA OF GOOD FEELING.

Election of Monroe.—The opposition of the Federalists to the War of 1812 had made that party very unpopular. The Democratic-Republican candidate, James Monroe, was with little opposition elected President to succeed Madison. So free

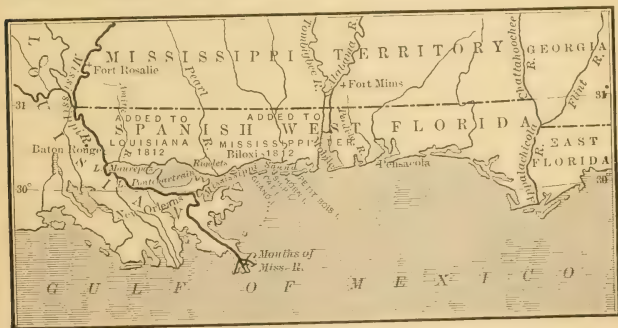
was his administration from political rivalry and excitement that it is often referred to as the "era of good feeling."

First Seminole War.—Monroe served two terms. During his first term troubles arose with the Seminole Indians of the South. These Indians were joined by some Creeks and runaway slaves, and were probably encouraged in their uprising by the Spaniards of Florida.

General Andrew Jackson was sent against them. He was a man of great decision and firmness of character, and did thoroughly whatever he undertook. Determined to inflict severe punishment upon the Indians, he drove them into the Spanish territory of Florida. He not only broke their power, but forced their Spanish sympathizers to take refuge in Havana, Cuba. Advancing into West Florida, he took possession of Pensacola and St. Marks.



JAMES MONROE.



MAP OF WEST FLORIDA.

Effect of Jackson's Invasion.—When two nations are at peace it is unlawful for one to invade territory belonging to the other. Many considered that Jackson did wrong to invade

Florida, as his doing so furnished to Spain a just cause of complaint. Others, however, saw much to admire in his prompt and determined course in dealing with affairs intrusted to him, and both Congress and the President sustained him in what he had done.

The State of West Florida.

The Florida that passed into the possession of the English by act of Spanish cession (1763) extended to the Mississippi River, and was divided into East and West Florida, the line of division being the Appalachicola River. During the Revolution, while England was wholly occupied with her revolting American colonies, the Spaniards of the neighboring province of Louisiana seized the opportunity to pass into West Florida some troops, who took forcible possession (1779), capturing Mobile and Pensacola. In 1783 both of the Floridas were ceded back to Spain, and in the treaty with the United States (1795) their northern boundary was fixed as the 31st degree of latitude. The larger portion of what was then West Florida forms a part of what is now the State of Louisiana, but was not obtained by the Louisiana purchase, the limits of which have already been described (see page 285). Spain maintained her authority in West Florida until the year 1810, but Spanish rule was unsatisfactory to the many Americans who had settled in the province. A revolt was planned and skillfully executed. A force was collected at St. Francisville under General Philemon Thomas, who marched to Baton Rouge, the most important post in the province, and captured the Spanish garrison (September 23, 1810). A convention was held, independence declared, and the State of West Florida was organized, with Fulwar Skipwith as Governor. Application was then made to the United States for protection, upon which President Madison issued a proclamation ordering Governor W. C. C. Claiborne of the Louisiana Territory to take possession; and thus the jurisdiction of the United States was extended over the province that had been wrested by American valor from the dominion of Spain.

The Florida Purchase Treaty. — The controversy which might have arisen with Spain was settled by the United States purchasing Florida. The price paid was \$5,000,000. The treaty of cession was signed at Washington, February 22, 1819, ratified by the King of Spain, October 24, 1820, and the formal transfer of Florida to the United States took place July 17, 1821. By the terms of this treaty Spain relinquished her claim to Oregon, and agreed to the Sabine River as the boundary between the United States and the Spanish possessions in the Southwest.

The Monroe Doctrine. — Mexico and a number of South American provinces were endeavoring about this time to throw off the yoke of Spain and establish their independence. The people of the United States were in warm sympathy with the movement. The Presi-

dent sent to Congress a remarkable message, in which his

opinions upon the subject were pointedly expressed (1823). He declared "that the American continents, by the free and independent position which they have assumed and maintained, are henceforth not to be considered as subjects for future colonization by any European power." This is known as the Monroe Doctrine.

The principal events of Monroe's administration, besides those which have been given, were : (1) The admission of five new States into the Union ; (2) the successful application of steam to seagoing vessels ; and (3) the memorable visit of Lafayette to this country. The States admitted were Mississippi (December 10, 1817) ; Illinois (December 3, 1818) ; Alabama (December 14, 1819) ; Maine (March 15, 1820) ; and Missouri (August 10, 1821). The first steamship to cross the Atlantic was the Savannah, originated and owned in the city of that name (1819).

The coming of Lafayette (1824) reminded everyone of the gallant services he rendered when a young man fighting by the side of Washington. He was now seventy years of age. Great was his pride when he saw the rapid advance made by the young republic he had helped to establish. His visit to the tomb of his old commander, Washington, at Mount Vernon, was very pathetic. He was everywhere treated with the respect due him as the nation's guest, and before his return to France he extended his tour into many of the States.

Internal Improvement.

The West was rapidly filling up with settlers, and it was seen that the prosperity of the country depended upon the establishment of means of communication between the various sections. The South and West were connected by the magnificent Mississippi system of waterways, but the Alleghenies made travel and commerce difficult between the West and East. Several States engaged in the construction of public works. New York, at an expense of \$8,000,000, built the Erie Canal, which opened the way for boats from Buffalo to New York City. Many thought that the United States Government should appropriate money for internal improvement. The Constitution does not exactly authorize this, but it does say that the Government is to promote the general welfare. Those who believed that this authorized the United States to build roads and canals were called "loose constructionists," because they construed or explained the Constitution very broadly. Among these was Henry Clay. An appropriation was made to construct a road from Cumberland, Md., to Wheeling, W. Va., and as there were no railroads in those days, the Cumberland road proved of great service.

The Beginning of Sectional Antagonism.

Slavery was gradually dying out in the North, and with its decay there was growing up a sentiment of opposition to it. At first, this opposition was directed against the extension of the system to the Territories. When Missouri was ready to become a State, a bitter controversy arose as to whether or not slavery should be permitted within its borders. The States already admitted to the Union had not brought up the question of slavery. Ohio, Indiana, and Illinois were formed from the Northwest Territory, in which slavery was prohibited from the beginning under the Ordinance of 1787. Kentucky, Tennessee, Mississippi, and Alabama were formed from territory originally belonging to States in which slavery was legally recognized. They were, therefore, admitted without restriction. With the exception of Louisiana, in which slavery had long existed before its passing into possession of the United States, Missouri was the first State formed from the Louisiana purchase. The territory of which it constituted a part previous to its admission was the joint possession of all the States. Its population had been drawn from both slave and free States. In many cases the settlers from the former had brought their slaves with them. When it was ready for admission to the Union the opponents of slavery were numerous enough to influence Congress. The restriction of slavery by the Federal Government was regarded by many as unconstitutional. Several efforts were made in Congress to pass a bill admitting Missouri without slavery (1819). An amendment, proposed by Senator Thomas of Illinois (January 18, 1820), compromised matters by admitting Missouri as a slave State, but prohibiting the extension of slavery to any other State formed out of the Louisiana purchase north of the line that forms the southern boundary of Missouri ($36^{\circ} 30'$). This was the celebrated Missouri Compromise of 1820.

Presidential Election of 1824. — In the presidential election that occurred toward the end of Monroe's second administration (1824), there was but one political party to place candidates in the field. Four candidates were voted for. These were John Quincy Adams of Massachusetts, Henry Clay of Kentucky, Andrew Jackson



JOHN QUINCY ADAMS.

of Tennessee, and William H. Crawford of Georgia. The gallantry of Jackson in the War of 1812 made him a great favorite with the people, and he received a greater number of electoral votes than any other of the candidates, but not a sufficient number to elect him. Congress therefore had to decide the matter.

The So-called Clay Bargain.—Through the influence

of Clay, Adams was selected. The result of this election caused much dissatisfaction, and friends of the defeated candidates accused Clay of having made a corrupt bargain with Adams. When the new President appointed Clay to the office of Secretary of State, it seemed to many that the accusation was true; but ample testimony has since proved that Clay was thoroughly conscientious and disinterested in his support of Adams.

The principal events of John Quincy Adams's administration were: (1) The deaths of John Adams and Thomas Jefferson, both occurring on the 4th of July (1826); (2) the treaty with the Creeks, by which much valuable land in West Georgia was relinquished by its Indian occupants, who were removed beyond the Mississippi (1826); (3) the building of the first commercial railways at Quincy, Mass., and at Mauch Chunk, Pa. (1826-1827), on which cars drawn by horses were used; and (4) the passage of the high-tariff measures of 1828.

Election of Andrew Jackson.—The popularity of Jackson had steadily increased since his defeat in the election of 1824. The selection of Adams and the manner of his election had caused general dissatisfaction. The party to which both belonged soon became divided. Those who supported Jackson retained the name of Democratic-Republicans. Those who supported Adams for reëlection were known as National Republicans. Jackson was elected, and with him was chosen as Vice-President John C. Calhoun of South Carolina.

Questions.—What made the Federalist party unpopular? By whom was Madison succeeded? Why is this time referred to as the "era of good feeling"? What Indian troubles arose during Monroe's first term? Who was sent against the Seminoles? Tell something of Jackson's invasion of Florida. Why did many consider that Jackson did wrong to invade Florida? How was the matter settled with Spain? What price did the United States pay for Florida? What claim did Spain relinquish by the treaty of 1819? What boundary did she agree to? What declaration is known as the "Monroe Doctrine"? Out of sympathy for what provinces did Monroe make this declaration? What States were admitted while Monroe was President? What was the first steamship to cross the Atlantic? What do you

know of Lafayette's visit to this country? What four candidates were voted for in the election of 1824? What do you know of the result of this election? Of what was Clay accused? What were the principal events of John Quincy Adams's administration? What do you know of the Creek treaty? First railroad? Into what two parties did the Democratic-Republicans divide? What candidates did each support? What candidate was elected? Who was elected Vice-President? How many terms did Adams serve?

REFERENCE OUTLINE.

ADMINISTRATION OF JAMES MONROE OF VIRGINIA.

Fifth President.

Eighth and Ninth Administrations.

15th, 16th, 17th, and 18th Congresses.

Principal Events.

- 1817. { Inauguration.
- 1817. { Mississippi admitted (December 10).
- 1818. { Jackson's invasion of Florida.
- 1818. { Illinois admitted (December 3).
- 1819. { Florida purchased (February 22).
- 1819. { First steamship.
- 1819. { Alabama admitted (December 14).
- 1820. { Maine admitted (March 15).
- 1820. { Presidential election—
 - Democratic candidates : Monroe and Tompkins ~~X~~
 - No Federalist candidates.
- 1821. Missouri admitted (August 10).
- 1823. Monroe Doctrine formulated.
- 1824. { Presidential election—
 - Candidates for President : Andrew Jackson, John Q. Adams,
 - William H. Crawford, Henry Clay.

ADMINISTRATION OF JOHN QUINCY ADAMS OF MASSACHUSETTS.

Sixth President.

Tenth Administration.

Nineteenth and Twentieth Congresses.

Principal Events.

- 1825. Inauguration.
- 1826. { Creek Treaty.
- 1826. { Death of John Adams and Thomas Jefferson (July 4).
- 1827. First railways in operation.
- 1828. { High-tariff Act.
- 1828. { Presidential election—
 - Democratic candidates : Andrew Jackson and John C. Calhoun.
 - National-Republican candidates : John Q. Adams and Richard Rush.

FOR ADVANCED CLASSES.

Topics for Discussion.

- I. Administration of James Monroe. II. Jackson's Invasion of Florida. III. The Spanish Treaty of 1819. IV. The State of West Florida. V. The Monroe Doctrine. VI. The Missouri Compromise. VII. Internal Improvements and Loose Constructionists. VIII. Election of John Quincy Adams.

References and Authorities.

Schouler's *History of the United States*, vol. iii.

Monroe as President, 1-12. Florida invasion, 57-72. Monroe Doctrine, 287. Missouri Compromise, 147, 155-171. Internal improvements, 247-257. Election of J. Q. Adams, 234-237, 267, 304, 324-328.

Hildreth's *History of the United States*, vol. vi.

Monroe's election, 620. Jackson's Seminole campaign, 641. Missouri Compromise, 661-676, 687-690, 711. Internal improvement, 660.

McMaster's *History of the People of the United States*.

Vol. iii.: West Florida revolution, 369-373. Vol. vi.: Missouri Compromise, 584-593.

Parallel Readings.

INDEX GUIDE for comparative examination of other works and authorities. *Era of Good Feeling*. *Florida*, *Jackson's Invasion of Florida*. *Purchase*. *Monroe Doctrine*. *The Erie Canal*. *The Loose Constructionists*. *Lafayette*. *Visit of Adams, J. Q.*. *Election of Missouri Compromise*. *The*.

SPECIAL.—Hart : *Formation of the Union*, chap. ii. Smith : *Political History of the United States*, 177-195. Andrews : *History of the United States*, vol. i., 336, 341. Chambers : *West Florida and its Relation to the Historical Cartography of the United States* (Johns Hopkins University Studies for May, 1898). D. C. Gilman : *James Monroe*.

CHAPTER VIII.

THE RISE OF MODERN POLITICAL METHODS.

A New Political Era.—The election of Andrew Jackson to the Presidency marks a new era in the political history of our country. He was the first President to come from the States west of the Alleghanies. The eight years during which he served were years of unusual business activity and prosperity. The Union gained two new States : Arkansas, admitted June 15, 1836 ; and Michigan, admitted January 26, 1837. The population of the country reached the number of 13,000,000. By 1835 the public debt incurred by the War of 1812 was paid in full.

Progress of Invention.—The development of the West was rapidly progressing. Inventions and improvements were

contributing to the general advancement. The locomotive took the place of horses upon railroads (1831), and the gigantic railway system of the present day began to develop. The screw propeller was invented by Captain John Ericsson (1836), and by means of this invention ocean commerce has been revolutionized. McCormick's reaping machine, one of the



EARLY AMERICAN RAILROAD TRAIN.

greatest labor-saving agricultural implements ever invented, was patented in

1834, and brought into use about seven years later. It rendered possible the cultivation of larger fields of grain and breadstuffs, and thereby did great service in building up the agricultural interests of the Northwest.

Black Hawk War.—The tide of population flowing towards the Northwest had reached what is now Wisconsin. Here it again encountered a check from the red men, this time at the hands of the Sac and Fox Indians. These Indians, after ceding their territory, had declined to remove from it, and under a celebrated chieftain, named Black Hawk, resisted the advance of the white settlers.

The war resulted in the defeat of Black Hawk by Generals Atkinson and Scott, and in the removal of the Indians to west of the Mississippi.



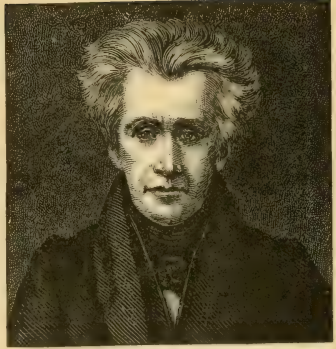
BLACK HAWK.

Cherokee Land Controversy.—Other Indian tribes gave trouble, among them the Cherokees of Georgia and the Seminoles of Florida. The Cherokees had by this time become partially civilized; but complications arose between them and the State government, and it became necessary for the United States Government to adjust the difficulty. This was done by paying the Cherokees \$5,000,000 to relinquish their lands and move

(1837-1838) to a region beyond the Mississippi, which had already been organized (1834) as the Indian Territory.

Political Controversies.

— Although Jackson's administration was marked by the increased prosperity of the country, it was remarkable for the many heated contests in which the President was engaged. Among these were the Nullification controversy with South Carolina *



ANDREW JACKSON.

and the National Bank controversy.

The Second Seminole War.

It was attempted to remove the Seminoles also to this region; but these Indians resisted so violently that war ensued and lasted for four years. The hostiles were led by Micanopy and Osceola. The Indians surprised and massacred Major Dade with one hundred and seventeen men, and murdered General Thompson. During the course of the war the Indians were defeated by General Clinch, near the Withlacoochie (December 31, 1835); by General Gaines, near the same spot (February 29, 1836); by Governor Call, in the Wahoo Swamp, not far from Tampa Bay (October, 1836); and by Colonel Zachary Taylor, near Okeechobee Lake in the Everglades. In this last battle the defeat was so crushing that the Indians never again rallied. The various bands scattered throughout the swamps were hunted down. Osceola died a prisoner at Fort Moultrie, and many of the Seminoles were finally removed.

Administrative Responsibility.—The President of the United States and the party to which he belongs are held responsible by the American people for the proper administration of affairs. In order that the policy of an administration be carried out, it is necessary that the leading officials of the government be of the same party as the President. Jackson was the first President to recognize this principle. Every President who preceded him had retained in office all competent employees of the Government, whether they were of his party or not. The controversies in

* See chap. ix.

The Bank of the United States.

A second National Bank, similar to the one designed by Hamilton, had been established at Philadelphia under a charter of twenty years (1816). Its capital stock was \$35,000,000, of which amount the United States held \$7,000,000. It had branch institutions at different points, and its purpose was to regulate the currency and serve as the fiscal agent of the Government. At first its affairs were badly managed, but Langdon Cheves of South Carolina becoming president of the board of directors (1819), it attained in the three years of his incumbency a condition of stability and usefulness.

In 1832 the question of renewing the bank charter came up in Congress. Jackson opposed it. He did not think it right for the Government to go into the banking business, or that any one bank should have the advantage of doing business upon money supplied by the Government. A bill to renew the bank charter was passed, but the President vetoed it. The veto was sustained by Congress. In 1836 the charter expired, and the funds belonging to the United States were distributed among several State banks.

which Jackson was engaged during his administration, however, made it absolutely necessary that he surround himself with advisers and subordinates in whom he had perfect confidence.

Beginning of the Spoils System.—Moreover, he had many friends who had stood faithfully by him in defeat and victory, and these it gave him much pleasure to reward. Consequently he deposed from office many government employees who had been appointed by his predecessor, and put in men of his own party. Since the time of Jackson, every President has followed this plan, until the practice has been abused by the appointment of men to office, not because they are honest and competent, but because they

helped to elect the candidates of their party. William J. Marcy, Jackson's Secretary of War, expressed this principle when he said, "To the victors belong the spoils."

Civil Service Reform.—In opposition to the spoils system, civil service reform measures of the present day have been instituted, whereby appointments to minor offices are made on merit and fitness as ascertained by civil service examinations, held at intervals in various parts of the country.

Questions.—What does the election of Jackson mark? What can you say of the eight years he was President? What new States were admitted? By what year was the war debt of the United States paid in full? To what had the population increased? What took the place of horses on railroads? When and by whom was the screw propeller invented? The invention of McCormick's reaper made what possible? What Indians obstructed the tide of

Northwest emigration? What do you know of Black Hawk's War? What Southern Indians also gave trouble? How were the difficulties with the Cherokees adjusted? For what is Jackson's administration remarkable? Why is it necessary that the principal officers of government be of the same party with the President? Why did Jackson put his friends into office? Why have civil service reform measures been instituted?

FOR ADVANCED CLASSES.

Topics for Discussion.

- I. Administration of Andrew Jackson. II. Black Hawk War. III. Seminole War. IV. Spoils System. V. United States Bank Controversy.

References and Authorities.

Schouler's *History of the United States*.

Vol. iii.: Spoils System, 453-459. Vol. iv.: Seminole War, 319. United States Bank Controversy, 44-52, 68-70, 132-146.

Woodrow Wilson's *Division and Reunion*.

Party spirit and policy under Jackson, 23. The bank question, 69.

Winsor's *Narrative and Critical History*, vol. vii.

Political parties during Jackson's administration, 282.

Parallel Readings.

INDEX GUIDE for comparative examination of other works and authorities.—*Black Hawk War. Seminole War. Spoils System. The United States Bank. The Jackson Administration of*.

SPECIAL.—Smith: *Political History of the United States*, 195-206. Andrews: *History of the United States*, vol. i., 355. Sumner: *Andrew Jackson*, 114-119, 233-251. James Parton: *Andrew Jackson*, vol. iii., chap. 20.

CHAPTER IX.

THE AMERICAN SYSTEM.

1.

Tariff Controversy of 1832.—The most important political controversy of Jackson's administration was that which arose between the Government of the United States and the State of South Carolina. It was caused by the attempt of this State to nullify what to her was an oppressive and extortionate tariff act passed by Congress in 1832. Before we consider this controversy, let us understand something of the nature of a tariff.

Taxes.—Every good citizen desires to live under an efficient

government—one that will protect him in his rights and property. To maintain such a government, he pays taxes. These taxes, according to the manner in which they are paid, may be direct or indirect.

Direct and Indirect Taxation.—Direct taxes are those paid to a government officer called a tax-collector. City, county, and State taxes are of this kind. Indirect taxes are those which make certain articles or goods higher in price than they would be if the tax were not levied. All tariffs upon imported goods are indirect taxes.

How Indirect Taxes are Paid.—If the government levies a tariff of twenty cents upon a yard of imported cloth worth one dollar, the importing merchant pays the twenty cents to the United States customs officer at the port of entry or place where the cloth has been landed. Although he pays this amount, the tariff is in reality no tax upon him, for he adds an extra twenty cents to the selling price of the cloth. Whoever purchases of this merchant pays one dollar and twenty cents for cloth worth one dollar. In this indirect way the purchaser

Tariff Classification.

The tariff system of the United States was first instituted to obtain revenue. It now has for its object either revenue or protection. Strictly speaking, a tariff for revenue can be levied only upon such goods and materials as are not produced in this country; otherwise American manufacturers will be unintentionally or incidentally protected. A tariff whose sole object is protection must be high enough to make it unprofitable to import such goods as compete with those made here; otherwise there will be incidental revenue. Until recently sheet-tin was not manufactured in this country, therefore the tariff upon it was purely a revenue one; but the duty on stamped or manufactured tinware is so high that none is imported. The Government then gets no revenue from this kind of goods, and the tariff on such is, therefore, a strictly protective tariff. Sugar is imported in large quantities. It is also manufactured in this country to a limited extent. A tariff on sugar is one for revenue with incidental protection. The import tax on manufactured iron is comparatively high, but not too high to prevent importation whenever the demand for it is greater than can be supplied by home production. The tariff on iron is, therefore, a tariff for protection with incidental revenue. So we find that there are four kinds of tariff: Tariff for revenue, tariff for revenue with incidental protection, tariff for protection, and tariff for protection with incidental revenue.

The largest revenue which the Government receives from tariff comes from the duty on goods not manufactured in this country, embracing luxuries and articles not producible here. On the other hand, the principal articles of necessity are made here and they are generally protected. This causes few to be imported and gives but little revenue to the Government. The practical application of these two principles is one of the dif-

ferences existing between the two great political parties of the present day—one claiming that high tariff on articles of necessity is a tax and burden on the people individually and that the whole people should not be taxed for the benefit of manufacturers; the other insisting that it is good for the country at large, as it makes us keep our wealth at home, makes our manufacturers prosperous and able to pay good wages, and therefore benefits the people as a whole.

of the cloth contributes twenty cents to the support of the government.

Protective Tariffs.—But suppose the same kind of cloth is made in this country, and that it could here be sold for one dollar a yard. The manufacturer, knowing that people are paying a dollar and twenty cents for the imported cloth, may

charge the same price for his. He himself, and not the government, gets the extra twenty cents, and thus he has an advantage over foreign manufacturers; or, in other words, he is said to be protected, for the tariff makes foreign goods so dear that no foreign manufacturer is able to undersell and stop the business of the home manufacturer. When a tariff is levied solely for the benefit of American manufacturers, it is called a protective tariff.

Industrial Dependence upon England.—England has always been one of the greatest manufacturing nations of the world. Her goods are sent to every country. We have seen how she tried to discourage the American colonies from manufacturing and trading. Long after the Revolution the United States felt the effects of this early discouragement, and up to the year 1807 the country was wholly dependent upon England for many of those products of industry which go to make up the necessities, comforts, and conveniences of life.

Rise of American Manufactures.—The non-intercourse policy of the United States Government prior to and during the War of 1812 demonstrated how inconvenient was this industrial dependence. We commenced making goods for ourselves and found it profitable to do so. The



ELI WHITNEY.

Development of Cotton Manufactures.

The invention of cotton spinning by machinery was to a great extent perfected in England by Arkwright and Hargreaves. Several attempts to introduce improved machinery into the United States, and to establish the cotton manufacturing industry, failed. One of these was made as early as 1787 at Beverly, Mass. Samuel Slater, a skilled machinist, succeeded, however, in establishing at Pawtucket, R. I., the first successful cotton mill. In 1803 there were four mills in operation.

Eleven million dollars of English-made cotton goods were being imported annually into this country when commercial intercourse with Great Britain was cut off (1808). The year following, the number of American mills in operation suddenly sprang to sixty-two. The mills first established only spun the cotton. The weaving of it was done by hand. In 1814 Lowell devised an improved power loom, so that weaving could be done by machinery. This made cotton manufactures very profitable. Manufacturing towns rapidly arose, and became centers of population. One of the most important of these was built on the Merrimac River, and named after the inventor of the power loom.

Eli Whitney had given to the world his great invention of the cotton gin (1793), by which the seeds were rapidly separated from the cotton, and the fleecy staple was rapidly becoming the most valuable agricultural product of the country. The growth of New England cotton manufactures depended upon the supply of raw cotton furnished by the South. Thus one section depended upon the other for its industrial prosperity. Both advanced steadily, and all was harmony until the governmental policy was instituted to encourage the interest of the manufacturing section at the expense of the agricultural. Ill feeling and strife then were the natural result.

interferences of France and England with our shipping caused many shipowners to invest their money in manufacturing enterprises. That is the reason why those States that were once interested in shipbuilding and commerce have now become great manufacturing States.

2.

Infant Industries Unable to Compete.—At the close of the War of 1812 commercial relations with England were resumed. Years of manufacturing experience had given to the English the ability to produce cheaper and finer goods than the American factories could at that time make. English goods flooded the American markets, and domestic manufactures, then in the first stages of growth, found it difficult to withstand foreign competition. The industrial development of New England was arrested. Mills stopped work, labor became idle, and capital was unemployed.

Growth of the Protective Idea.—It is good that a country should be industrially independent. Many realized this, and the idea took shape to place American manufactures

upon a firm basis, so that the United States might attain this independence. The desire to protect infant American industries steadily gained ground. The protective principle was slightly recognized in the tariff act of 1816—a revenue measure to raise funds to pay the public debt incurred in the War of 1812. In 1824 a tariff act was passed that was strongly protective in its features. Similar acts were passed in 1828 and 1832.

The American System of Protection.

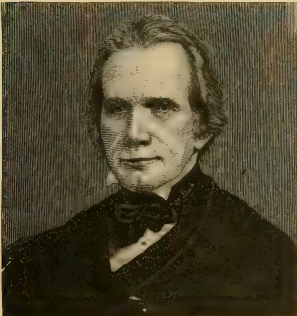
Henry Clay was the leading advocate of protective legislation. The idea of this great statesman seemed to be that the Federal Government should promote the general welfare. He held that the Government should make internal improvements and encourage domestic manufactures. Protective-tariff measures were passed by Congress chiefly through his eloquent advocacy of them, and his protective policy has come to be known as the American System.

Protection a Sectional Benefit.—These protective-tariff measures were not popular in those sections of the country which were devoted to agriculture. People there desired to buy goods as cheaply as possible, and the increase of prices caused by the high tariff seemed to them unjust. The tariff was benefiting the manufacturing section only, and the people of the South could not see any justice in the Government promoting the interests of one section at the expense of another.

The Position Taken by South Carolina.—The South was already industrially independent, for Southern cotton was

everywhere in demand. It needed no help nor protection from the Government. This section was therefore violently opposed to protective tariff, but its protests were all ignored. When the tariff act of 1832 was passed, the State of South Carolina determined to prevent its enforcement within her borders.

South Carolina was one of the original thirteen States. Her statesmen believed firmly



HENRY CLAY.

that sovereignty resided in the State, not in the Federal Government. But they were very much attached to the Union. They had no thought of seceding or breaking up the Union, as had the Federalists of New England during Jefferson's and

Madison's administrations. Led by the great South Carolinian, John C. Calhoun, they simply hoped to devise a plan whereby the Union would be preserved and yet no State be made to suffer for any undelegated power which the Federal Government might exercise. This plan was based upon the political principle or doctrine of nullification.

The Nullification Doctrine.—Certain powers delegated to the Federal Government had been specified in the Constitution. The nullification doctrine held that whenever the Federal Government passed a law which the Constitution does not authorize, a State could nullify it or prevent its being enforced, so far as her citizens were concerned. Therefore, when the tariff act of 1832 was passed, with protective features favorable to manufacturing New England and injuring agricul-

Secession and Nullification.

The idea generally prevailed that the Union was a compact between sovereign States, and that each had a right to withdraw from the compact for good and sufficient cause. The utterances of the great men whose labors and eloquence secured the adoption of the Constitution; the Kentucky and Virginia resolutions; the acts and deeds of the New England Federalists, particularly those legislative enactments of Massachusetts and Connecticut leading up to the Hartford Convention—all testify how generally this opinion prevailed. But national pride and love of the Union had been growing in strength, and a school of patriotic statesmen arose, led by John C. Calhoun of South Carolina, who sought a remedy other than secession when the compact was broken in regard to any one State. These statesmen held that a State could nullify any law passed by Congress if, in its opinion, the Federal Government under cover of this law assumed powers not delegated to it by the Constitution. The Constitution specifies the right of Congress to levy a tariff for revenue, but makes no mention of a tariff for protection. Therefore South Carolina, perceiving how oppressively a high protective tariff was bearing upon her interests, chose what to her appeared to be the best remedy for her grievance—that of nullification.

tural South Carolina, a convention was held (November, 1832) which adopted a nullification ordinance declaring the tariff law null and void, and forbidding the collection of tariff duties at any port within the State.

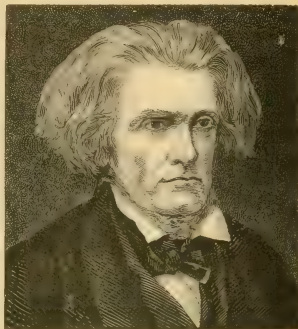
Conflict Imminent.—In taking his office, President

Jackson had sworn to execute the laws of the United States. The attitude of South Carolina was a determined one, and Jackson, with his characteristic firmness, though personally opposed to a high tariff, proceeded to overcome the opposition to the authority of the Federal Government. Preparations were made to resist force with force.

Clay's Compromise of

1833.—For a time it appeared as if a bloody conflict would ensue; but before such a catastrophe came about, Henry Clay introduced a compromise measure in Congress. It was accepted by Calhoun, and became a law (1833).

New England strongly opposed a repeal of the tariff; South Carolina was opposed to its enforcement. The compromise provided for a gradual reduction of duties, which satisfied both. South Carolina then repealed the ordinance of nullification, and tranquillity was restored without sacrifice of principle on the part of either.



JOHN C. CALHOUN.

Questions.—What was the most important political controversy of Jackson's administration? By what was it caused? What does every good citizen desire? What does he do to maintain the government? In what two ways are taxes paid? What taxes are direct? What is the principal method of indirect taxation? Show how indirect taxes are paid? Explain how a tariff upon imported goods gives the American manufacturer an advantage over the foreign. When is a tariff said to be protective? Why did not the American colonies do much manufacturing? What did the non-intercourse policy of the United States demonstrate? Why did many shipowners put their money into manufactories instead of more ships?

When were commercial relations with England resumed? What resulted? What idea soon took shape? What feeling steadily gained ground? When was the protective principle slightly recognized? When were other tariff acts passed? Where were protective tariff measures unpopular? Why? What State opposed the tariff laws? Why? What did South Carolina statesmen

hope to devise? Upon what doctrine was their plan based? What did the nullification doctrine hold? When was the nullification ordinance adopted? Why did Jackson determine to enforce the laws of the United States? How was a conflict averted? What do you know of Clay's compromise of 1833?

REFERENCE OUTLINE.

ADMINISTRATION OF ANDREW JACKSON OF TENNESSEE.

Seventh President.

Eleventh and Twelfth Administrations.

21st, 22d, 23d, and 24th Congresses.

Principal Events.

1829. Inauguration.

1831. First American locomotive.

Black Hawk War.

Bank charter vetoed.

Tariff act.

1832. Nullification controversy.

Presidential election—

Democratic candidates: Andrew Jackson and Martin Van Buren.

National Republican candidates: Henry Clay and John Sergeant.

1833. Clay's tariff compromise.

1834. McCormick's reaper.

1835. Seminole War.

Screw propeller invented.

Arkansas admitted (June 15).

Presidential election—

1836. Democratic candidates: Martin Van Buren and R. M. Johnson.

National Republican candidates (Whig): W. H. Harrison and

Francis Granger.

1837. Michigan admitted (January 26).

FOR ADVANCED CLASSES.

Topics for Discussion.

- I. Direct and Indirect Taxation. II. Protective and Revenue Tariff. III. The Tariff Act of 1832. IV. The American System. V. Development of American Cotton Manufacturing Industries. VI. The Compromise of 1833. VII. The Nullification Controversy.

References and Authorities.

Schouler's *History of the United States*, vol. iv.

Nullification controversy, 85-106. Protection and free trade: condition of American manufactures, 55. Clay's compromise of 1833, 102.

Woodrow Wilson's *Division and Reunion*.

Effect of the tariff upon the South, 49. South Carolina's protests, 55. Nullification, 59.

Laughlin's *Elements of Political Economy*.

Direct and indirect taxation, 249. Free trade and protection, 290.

Parallel Readings.

INDEX GUIDE for comparative examination of other works and authorities.—*Tariff Question*, *The American Protective System*, *The Cotton Manufactures*, *Beginnings of American Nullification Controversy*, *The Calhoun*, John C.

SPECIAL.—Smith : *Political History of the United States*, chap. iv. Andrews : *History of the United States*, vol. i., 348, 382. Taussig : *Tariff History of the United States*, 108-111. Schurz : *Life of Henry Clay*, vol. ii., chap. xiv.

CHAPTER X.

THE PANIC OF 1837.

The Whig Party.—The political organization opposed to Jackson was known as the Whig party. Henry Clay was the acknowledged leader of this party, and would have been its candidate for President had not his efforts in behalf of the Compromise of 1833 caused him to lose the confidence of many of his followers, who favored protection. It was therefore deemed best to nominate William Henry Harrison of Ohio, the hero of Tippecanoe, as the Whig candidate for President to succeed Jackson.

Election of Van Buren.—The Jacksonian or Democratic party nominated Martin Van Buren of New York. Van Buren had been Vice-President during Jackson's second term, and had enjoyed the full confidence and friendship of his superior. By Jackson's influence he was nominated and elected (1836). But, unlike his predecessor, he served only one term. The cause of this was the unsatisfactory condition of affairs at the time he became President. In the first year of his administration occurred a great business panic (1837).

Causes of the Panic.—Van Buren was not to blame for this panic. It was caused by two acts of Jackson's administration, the



MARTIN VAN BUREN.

results of which were felt when Van Buren became President. The first of these was the withdrawal of the Government's money from the United States Bank, and the distribution of it among various State banks. The second was Jackson's Specie Circular.

Effect of the Distribution of the Government's Funds.—Banks are institutions which lend money at interest. The more money they have to lend, the easier it is to borrow from them. When the State banks received these large sums of money to take care of for the Government, they had just so much more money to lend. Borrowing became very easy. Many men went into business upon borrowed money, and more speculated.

Bank-note Currency.—Instead of lending or paying out coin, a bank sometimes uses printed bills, or bank notes, which are promises to pay coin, or specie, in exchange for the notes, whenever the holder of the note so desires. These bank notes pass from hand to hand during the course of business, just as coin does, so long as everybody has confidence that the bank will make good its promise when called upon to do so.

“Wild Cat” Banks.—The privilege of issuing notes made banking very profitable. Many banks were started with little or no money. These banks did business on their notes for a while, but when the notes of a bank were presented and there was no money to exchange for them, the bank would fail, and all who held any of its paper promises to pay lost just that amount of money. Such banks were called “wild cat” banks.

Land Speculation.—One way in which many speculated in those days was to buy up tracts of public land in the West, and sell these tracts when they increased in value. Government land agents had been accepting bank bills in payment for land sold, but Jackson issued a circular instructing them to accept nothing but specie or coined money.

General Bankruptcy.—In consequence of this, so many bank bills had to be redeemed, and there was so little gold and silver to do it with, that one bank after another found it impossible to make good its promises, or meet its obligations. Notes and

bills became as worthless as so much paper. Thousands who held these notes were ruined. Business men everywhere went into bankruptcy. In New York City alone the loss in the first two months amounted to \$100,000,000. Even whole States were affected—a number of them could not pay their just debts; and the banks in which the funds of the United States had been placed on deposit were unable to return them to the Government.

The Subtreasury System Established.—Van Buren convened Congress in special session to consider measures of relief. The Whig members advocated the establishment of another United States Bank to regulate the future financial affairs of the country. The Democrats proposed instead a subtreasury system, by which the collections of the Government were to be made by special officers, bonded by responsible men, and the amounts collected were to be deposited, not in banks, but in subtreasuries. Three years elapsed before this idea was accepted by Congress (1840), and although the law establishing this system was repealed by the Whigs next year (1841), it was reenacted in 1846 and endures to this day.

The Patriot War.

A rebellion against the British Government occurred in Canada (1837) while Van Buren was President. Many in the United States desired to assist the Canada patriots; but the President, not wishing to involve the United States in difficulties through any act of its citizens, opposed it. General Scott was despatched to the Niagara frontier, where preparations were being made to transport a number of Canadian sympathizers to the opposite shore. His arrival was effective, putting a stop to further proceedings.

The Treasury Department.—The establishment of the United States Subtreasury system was perhaps the greatest event of Van Buren's administration, for before this the business of the United States Government was associated with the business of the country, both being conducted through banks of some kind. It is now conducted through its own Treasury Department.

Election of William Henry Harrison.—The business troubles of the country made Van Buren's administration unpopular. When Van Buren and Harrison were again presented



WILLIAM HENRY HARRISON.

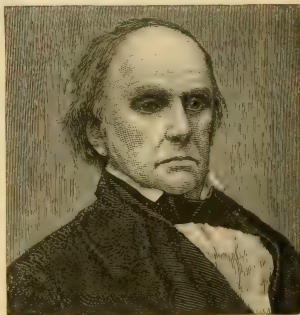
to the people as presidential candidates (1840), the choice fell on the latter. Thus, after forty years of uninterrupted control of public affairs, the Democratic party for the first time was compelled to give place to a successful opponent.

Death of Harrison.—Harrison served but little more than a month, when he suddenly died (April 6, 1841), and the duties of his office fell to the Vice-President, John Tyler of Virginia. Although

elected by the Whigs, Tyler did not believe in all the principles of that party, and when he became President he vetoed a number of their measures. One of these measures was to reestablish the United States Bank; and since Tyler's veto no attempt has ever been made to do this.

Webster-Ashburton Treaty.—On account of the disagreement between the President and the leaders of his party, Tyler's administration was full of minor controversies. At one time all the members of his cabinet resigned, with the exception of Daniel Webster, the Secretary of State. He remained to conclude the Northeast Boundary Treaty, which was being negotiated at that time. The treaty was successfully concluded (1842), Lord Ashburton acting for the British Government. By it the boundaries between Maine and the Canadian possessions of England were satisfactorily established.

Dorr's Rebellion.—A number of local disturbances occurred while Tyler was



DANIEL WEBSTER.

President. Rhode Island had an old law which gave the right to vote to property owners only. An effort was made to set aside this law, and an uprising resulted, which is known as Dorr's Rebellion (1842). The rebellion was suppressed without bloodshed. Its leader, Dorr, was imprisoned. The principle contended for, however, was peaceably established a few years after.

Anti-rent Difficulties.—In New York the descendants of the old Patroons living along the Hudson still held the title to great estates, inherited from their ancestors. Tenants for generations had occupied these lands and paid rent. The desire to own their homes gained strength among the tenants. Willing to purchase, they refused to pay rent any longer, and disturbances became so frequent that the militia of the State was called upon to put down these anti-rent difficulties (1844). The Patroon estates were subsequently divided and sold.

The Campaign of 1848.—To succeed Tyler, Henry Clay was nominated by the Whigs, and James K. Polk of Tennessee by the Democrats. The principal question of the campaign was

The Mormons.

A peculiar religious sect, called the Mormons, had been founded by Joseph Smith, of Manchester, N. Y. (1830). Smith organized his first congregation at Kirtland, Ohio (1831), and at the end of seven years journeyed westward and established himself near Independence, Mo., a region of country to which many of his believers had migrated. Here the practices of the Mormons became so offensive to their neighbors that they were compelled to leave. They next established themselves in Illinois,

where they founded the city Nauvoo. After living here for some time in peace, troubles again arose and the arrest of Smith was

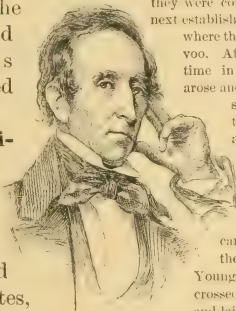
sought. The Mormons threatened armed resistance. At length Smith

surrendered, and was taken to Carthage, where he was shot by an excited mob (1844).

Another migration became necessary, and under the leadership of Brigham

Young about sixteen thousand crossed the Western plains and laid the foundation of Salt Lake City in Utah. Here they

have increased in wealth and numbers. Mormon missionaries visited remote rural districts of different States, as well as different countries of Europe. Such converts as they could win to their faith were obtained more through promises of prosperity than through conviction that the Mormon belief is true. Mormonism has been repeatedly denounced. Many of its practices are vicious, and the United States Government has made several efforts to suppress its worse features. These efforts have been unsuccessful until recently.



JOHN TYLER.

whether or not Texas should be annexed. The Whigs opposed it ; the Democrats favored it. This question will be considered in the next chapter.

Questions.—By what name was the party opposed to Jackson known ? Who was its acknowledged leader ? Who was the Whig candidate to succeed Jackson ? Why was not Clay nominated ? Whom did the Democrats nominate ? What do you know of Van Buren ? Why did he serve but one term ? What caused the business panic of 1837 ? What are banks ? What effect had the distribution of the Government funds among the State banks ? What became easy ? What are bank notes or bills ? How long are these bills used as money ? What were “ wild cat ” banks ? What was one of the ways in which speculation was entered into ? What was Jackson’s Specie Circular ? What was the effect of this circular ? What was the result when bank notes became worthless ? What did Van Buren do ? What did the Whig members of Congress advocate ? What did the Democrats propose ? What do you know of the Subtreasury system ? Who succeeded Van Buren ? How long did Harrison serve ? What do you know of John Tyler ? What did he do when he became President ? What was one of the measures which Tyler vetoed ? What did the members of his Cabinet at one time do ? Why did not Webster resign ? What do you know of the Webster-Ashburton Treaty ? Dorr’s rebellion ? Anti-rent difficulties ? Who were the candidates to succeed Tyler ? What was the principal question of the campaign ?

REVIEW OUTLINE.

ADMINISTRATION OF MARTIN VAN BUREN.

Eighth President.

Thirteenth Administration.

Twenty-fifth and Twenty-sixth Congresses.

Principal Events.

1836. Inauguration.

1837. { Business panic.
 { Patriot War (Canada).

1840. { Presidential election—
 { Democratic candidates : Martin Van Buren and R. M. Johnson.
 { Whig candidates : William Henry Harrison and John Tyler.

ADMINISTRATION OF HARRISON AND TYLER.

Ninth and Tenth Presidents.

Fourteenth Administration.

Twenty-seventh and Twenty-eighth Congresses.

Principal Events.

1840. First United States Subtreasury.

1841. Death of Harrison. -

1842. { Dorr's rebellion (Rhode Island).
 { Webster-Ashburton Treaty.
1844. { Anti-rent troubles (New York).
 { Mormon difficulties (Illinois).
 { First telegraph (see page 340).
 { Presidential election—
 Democratic candidates : Polk and George M. Dallas.
 Whig candidates : Clay and Theodore Frelinghuysen.
1845. { Texas annexed (March 1).
 { Florida admitted (March 3).

FOR ADVANCED CLASSES.

Topics for Discussion.

- I. Henry Clay in Public Life. II. The Whig Party. III. The Business Panic of 1837. IV. The Subtreasury System. V. Election and Death of William Henry Harrison. VI. The Webster-Ashburton Treaty. VII. The Dorr Rebellion. VIII. The Mormons.

References and Authorities.

Schouler's *History of the United States*, vol. iv.

Henry Clay, 45, 51, 72, 102, 152. Causes of the panic of 1837, 140, 160, 170, 173, 257-259. Subtreasury system, 283, 379. Harrison, 364. Tyler, 367-373. Boundary treaty, 396-400. Dorr's rebellion, 462. Mormons, 546-549.

Woodrow Wilson's *Division and Reunion*.

Financial crisis, 93. The independent treasury system, 97. Election of Harrison, 98. Dorr's rebellion, 161.

Schurz's *Life of Henry Clay*, vol. ii.

The removal of the deposits, 23. The crisis of 1837, 113.

Parallel Readings.

INDEX GUIDE for comparative examination of other works and authorities.—*Whig Party, The. Business Panic of 1837. Specie Circular, Jackson's. Wild Cat Banks. Subtreasury System, The. Patriot War, The. Van Buren, Administration of. Harrison, Election and Death of. Tyler, Administration of. Webster-Ashburton Boundary Treaty, The. Anti-rent Difficulties. Mormons, The.*

SPECIAL.—Smith : *Political History of the United States*, chap. iv. Andrews : *History of the United States*, vol. i., 363. Sumner : *Jackson*, 224-275.

PREPARATORY GEOGRAPHY LESSON.

Upon a map of Texas and New Mexico note the Rio Grande River. Note how much of this river forms part of the boundary of Texas and how much does not. Where is San Antonio ? Gonzales ? Goliad ? Note the region between the Rio Grande and Nueces Rivers.

Upon a map of Mexico note the position of Saltillo. In what direction is Saltillo from San Antonio, Texas ? Where is Matamoras ?

Upon a map of the United States find Leavenworth, Kansas. Note the distance and direction of Santa Fé, New Mexico, from Leavenworth. Now note the distance and direction of the Californian coast and of Saltillo, Mexico, from Santa Fé.

Upon the map, page 344, note the location of the following in order: Port Isabel, Palo Alto, Resaca de la Palma, Matamoras, Monterey, Saltillo, Buena Vista.

Upon the map, page 346, note the line that runs from Vera Cruz through Cerro Gordo, Jalapa, and Puebla to the neighborhood of Mexico City. Locate Contreras, Chapultepec, Molino del Rey. Where is Guadalupe Hidalgo?

CHAPTER XI.

THE ANNEXATION OF TEXAS.

1.

Territorial Extension.—After the Louisiana purchase (1803) the region west of the Mississippi was rapidly settled by people from the older States. It was the “manifest destiny” of the United States to have her territory reach from one ocean to the other.

The treaty of 1819 had de-



THE ALAMO.

fined the boundaries between the territorial possessions of the United States and those of Spain. By this treaty the United States gave up all claim to Texas, and Spain all claim to Oregon. The United States had

The Texas Revolution.

The first battle of the Texas Revolution was the fight at Gonzales (October 2, 1835), between General Castenado and Colonel Moore. Its Yorktown was San Jacinto. It had its minute men, its committees of safety, and its declaration of independence. Its heroes were Houston, Fannin, Bowie, Crockett, Austin, Milam, Travis, Bonham, and hundreds of others. Its principal engagements, besides those given, were at Concepcion, near San Antonio (October 23, 1835); the capture of San Antonio (December 5, 1835) and Colito (March 19, 1836)—all Texan victories. Its progress was marked by two of the most cruel deeds that have ever been mentioned in the history of any war. The first of these was the fall of the Alamo (March 6, 1836), and the other was the massacre of brave Colonel Fannin and his men, near Goliad (March 26, 1836).

After the capture of San Antonio, Colonel W. B. Travis and 140 men were left in charge of the city. With him were Bowie, Crockett, and Bonham. The approach of a large army under Santa Anna caused this historic band to repair to a peculiar fortress near by,

called the Alamo. Here they were besieged by a force of 4,000. Day by day the Texans sustained the siege, resisting every attack, and anxiously awaiting reinforcements. At one time they were joined by 32 brave fellows from Goliad, who cut their way to the assistance of the besieged ones. The Mexican lines were drawn closer and closer, and the cannonading was unceasing. The number of Texans slowly dwindled, as one by one the heroes fell. At last there was but a handful to resist the final attack (March 6). Only three persons survived, and these were non-combatants. Crockett was one of the last to fall, but before he died twenty of his enemies lay in death around him. The dead bodies of the Texans were mutilated and burned.

Fannin and his men, after having repulsed the Mexican General Urrea at the battle of Colito, were surrounded by an overwhelming force. With no chance of escape, they accepted honorable terms that were offered them, and surrendered. They were taken to Goliad, where they were ordered by Santa Anna to be executed. All unsuspectingly they were marched out upon a neighboring prairie, and while the bright sun of a Palm Sunday morn shone kindly upon them, they were shot down in cold blood and their bodies consigned to flames. Small wonder was it that these cruelties nerved the men of Houston's army to deeds of prowess. At San Jacinto the battle cry was, "Remember the Alamo!" "Remember Goliad!" and when the Texan onslaught scattered the Mexican forces, and pursuit of the retreating foe was begun, many a Mexican, realizing how little was his claim to mercy, fell on his knees when overtaken, and tremblingly repeated, "Me no Alamo!" "Me no Goliad!"

claimed Texas as a part of the Louisiana purchase; Spain had claimed Oregon by right of early discovery and exploration.

Effect upon Texas of Mexican Independence.—

In 1821 the Spanish province of Mexico obtained its independence, after eleven years of revolution. In 1824 it adopted a constitution similar to that of the United States, and became the United States of Mexico. Under this constitution Texas was united with the Mexican State of Coahuila, south of the Rio Grande. It had been a separate province, with San Antonio as capital, and should have been considered a separate Mexican State.

American Colonization of Texas.—The rich soil and delightful climate of Texas had early attracted the attention of settlers. The Mexican authorities at first encouraged immigration. They made liberal grants of land to men called "empresarios," who contracted to locate a certain number of families upon the grant, somewhat after the manner of the

Patroons in the early days of New York.

The Austins.—One of the first of these empresarios was Moses Austin of Missouri; but he died before his colonization plans were matured. His son, Stephen F. Austin, carried them

out. Austin located three hundred families in the region about the Brazos River (1821–1825), and afterwards carried out three other colonizing enterprises successfully (1825–1828). This was the beginning of an immigration from the States, and by 1830 the English-speaking residents of Texas numbered 30,000.

Texan Grievances.—The union of Texas and Coahuila into one State was very unsatisfactory to the Texans, for it changed the capital from San Antonio to the distant city of Saltillo, and gave the Mexican authorities of Coahuila control of Texas affairs. This deprived the Texans of many of those privileges of self-government to which they had been accustomed.



GENERAL SAM HOUSTON.

Mexican Oppressions.—A number of oppressions, begun in 1830, made the Texans still more discontented. Laws were passed that in every way discriminated against the Americans. No more immigration from the United States was permitted, while immigrants from other countries were welcomed (1830). This kept back many relatives and friends of those who had already

come. Exorbitant taxes were levied, ports blockaded, and when anyone expressed dissatisfaction he was punished.

Texan Protests.—A convention of Texans at last assembled at San Felipe (1833), and drew up a strong memorial to the Mexican Government, praying for a separation from Coahuila. Stephen F. Austin bore this memorial to the City of Mexico, but his mission proved fruitless; and returning by way of Saltillo, he was there seized and, without trial, was put into prison, where he remained nineteen months.

Texan Independence.—When the Texans found that the Mexican Government would not grant their wish to be separated from Coahuila, they determined upon independence. A provisional government was organized (November 12, 1835),

with Henry Smith as governor and J. W. Robertson as lieutenant-governor. Shortly afterwards a convention assembled at Washington (Texas) and formally declared Texas to be a "free, independent and sovereign Republic" (March 2, 1836). A constitution was prepared, and David G. Burnet and Lorenzo de Zavalla assumed the duties of President and Vice-President. They served until the close of the year, when a popular election was held, which resulted in the choice of General Sam Houston and Mirabeau B. Lamar.

Battle of San Jacinto.—Meanwhile armed hostilities had been in progress between Texas and Mexico, for Texan independence was won, as American independence had been won, by revolution and force of arms. During the war for local independence a number of battles were fought, in which Texan valor gained the admiration of the civilized world. The last and most important of these battles was that of San Jacinto (April 21, 1836), in which the Texans under General Houston, in the face of overwhelming numbers, won a brilliant victory, capturing Santa Anna, the Mexican commander-in-chief. A treaty with Santa Anna was signed at Velasco (May 14, 1836).

2.

Annexation and Admission of Texas.—With the establishment of its independence, the desire of Texas to enter the Union soon manifested itself. A treaty of annexation between the Republic of Texas and the United States was presented to the United States Sen-

Beginning of Sectional Inequality.

The division of the country upon the subject of slavery was becoming every year more and more marked. Slave and free States were rapidly growing suspicious of one another. In numbers they were about equal, for the policy had been followed of admitting a free State whenever a new slave State joined the Union. Arkansas and Michigan (1836) were the last States admitted under this policy.

With the admission of Arkansas there remained but the Territory of Florida from which to make a slave State, as the Missouri Compromise had restricted slavery to the country south of the parallel of $36^{\circ} 30'$, and the region west of Arkansas had been reserved to the Indians. There still remained much territory north of the line from which to form free States. So the free States of the North confidently expected to have more power in the Government than the slave States. The annexation of Texas disappointed this expectation and restored for a time the balance between the two sections.

The Progress of Invention.

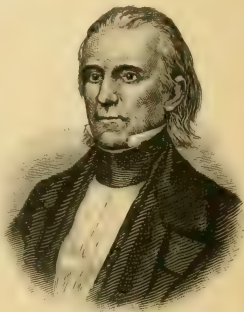
Three important inventions by Americans were given to the world within a few years of one another. The first of these was the electric telegraph. It was invented by Professor S. F. B. Morse, who, after having obtained a patent for it (1837), built a line between Baltimore and Washington (1844). In 1846 Elias Howe, of Massachusetts, invented the sewing machine, and in 1847 R. M. Hoe, of New York, the cylinder printing press. The value of these inventions cannot be estimated. They are among the greatest of time and labor-saving devices ever designed by man. More than two hundred thousand miles of telegraph lines are now in operation. The improvements that have been made to Hoe's press render it now possible to print, cut, paste, and fold fifty thousand sheets an hour.

ate toward the close of Tyler's administration, but was rejected (June 8, 1844).

The idea of Texas annexation was differently received by the American people. The anti-slavery sentiment of the North bitterly opposed it. The South was earnestly in favor of it. The question was introduced into the politics of the country, the Whigs opposing, the Democrats favoring. "Polk and Texas!" and "Clay and no Texas!" became the campaign cries of the presidential election of 1844. The result showed that there were many in the

North whose pride in the growth of our common country was as strong as was the desire of the South to have more southern territory in the Union. Polk was elected and Texas annexed; one of the last acts of President Tyler was his approval of the measure (March 1, 1845). Later in the year Texas became a State and was admitted to the Union (December 29, 1845).

Principal Events of Polk's Administration.—The annexation of Texas caused a war between the United States and Mexico, which will be considered in another chapter. The events connected with this war occupied the greater part of the attention of the country while Polk was President. During his administration Iowa (1846) and Wisconsin (1848) were admitted into the Union, making, with



JAMES K. POLK.

Texas, three States in all. James Smithson, an Englishman, had left a legacy to the United States for the purpose of establishing an institution to aid in increasing and disseminating knowledge. It was founded while Polk was President (1846), and is known as the Smithsonian Institution. The Northwestern, or Oregon, Boundary Treaty with Great Britain was concluded during the same year, the parallel of forty-nine degrees being decided upon.

Questions.—What was the “manifest destiny” of the United States? What boundaries had the treaty of 1819 defined? What claim did Spain give up by this treaty? The United States? Why had the United States claimed Texas? Why had Spain claimed Oregon? When did Mexico obtain its independence? When did it adopt its constitution? With what was Texas united under this constitution? What had it been? Who were the empresarios? What do you know of Stephen F. Austin? How many did the English-speaking population of Texas number in 1830? Why was the uniting of Texas and Coahuila unsatisfactory to the Texans? What made the Texans still more discontented? What resulted from this discontent? What did the convention of San Felipe do? Tell something of Austin’s mission. Who was the provisional governor of Texas? When did Texas declare her independence? Who were elected President and Vice-President of the Texas Republic? What do you know of the convention of Washington (Texas)? How was Texan independence won? What was the last and most important battle for Texan independence?

What desire did Texas manifest after gaining her independence? How was this desire received by the people of the United States? Who favored it? Opposed? What did the election of Polk show? When did the President approve the measure of annexation? When did Texas become a State? What were the principal events of Polk's administration? What important institution was founded at this time?

REVIEW OUTLINE.

Texas.

- | | | |
|-------|---|----------------------------------|
| 1819. | Sabine boundary established. | |
| 1821. | American colonization begins. | |
| 1824. | Union with Coahuila ; Saltillo capital. | |
| 1833. | San Felipe convention of protest. | |
| 1835. | { Battles of } | { Gonzales (Oct. 2). |
| | | { Concepcion (Oct. 28). |
| 1835. | { Provisional government formed } | { Smith, governor. |
| | | { Robinson, lieutenant-governor. |

Disputed Territory.—Moreover, the boundary between Texas and Mexico was in dispute. The former claimed the Rio Grande, and the latter the Nueces, as the line of separation. The admission of Texas into the Union made it necessary for the United States to protect thoroughly acquired territory from any threatened invasion. General Zachary Taylor was sent to the Rio Grande, where he erected Fort Brown, opposite the Mexican city of Matamoros (March 24, 1846).

Mexican Aggressions Begin.—The Mexicans soon renewed Taylor's occupation of the disputed territory. A force crossed to the east side of the river and surprised a detachment of sixty Americans under Captain Thibault, killing or capturing almost the whole number (April 25). Expecting to be attacked, Taylor fell back to Fort Isabel, to make preparations. As he was again advancing to Fort Brown he found opposing his progress an army of 1,200 Mexicans under General Arista, near Palo Alto. An engagement followed, and the Mexicans were driven from the field (May 5). The next day another battle was fought at Resaca de la Palma, and Taylor was again victorious, the Mexicans retreating beyond the Rio Grande.



GENERAL ZACHARY TAYLOR

War Declared.—When the news that Taylor had been attacked reached Washington, war was declared to be in existence "by act of Mexico" (May 11, 1846). Congress raised money and authorized the President to issue a call for volunteers. The position of General Taylor was regarded as critical, and volunteers hastened forward to his assistance from all parts of the Southwestern States.

Three Campaigns Planned.—With the opening of the war three distinct campaigns were planned. These were entrusted to Generals Kearney, Wool, and Taylor. The first was

Conquest of California.

As emigration to Oregon had already begun, Colonel John C. Frémont of the United States army had been engaged for some time in exploring the Rocky Mountains in search for a pass through which emigrant wagon trains could make their way. Frémont turned south, and hearing that war had been declared against Mexico, he determined to seize California, which then belonged to Mexico. He was aided by American residents and by Commodores Stockton and Sloat. San Francisco, Monterey (Cal.), and Los Angeles were captured without much opposition, and by the time Kearney arrived from New Mexico the conquest had been accomplished. Early in 1847 the Mexicans rose in revolt, but were defeated in the battle at San Gabriel, near Los Angeles.

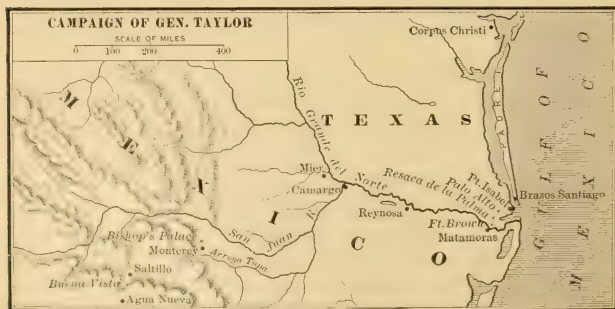
directed against Santa Fé, New Mexico; the second against Chihuahua; and the third against the Mexican States south of the Rio Grande.

Kearney's Campaign.—

Kearney's expedition, numbering about sixteen hundred men, started from Fort Leavenworth, Kansas (June, 1846), and after journeying 900 miles over the old Santa Fé Trail, reached and took possession of the New Mexican capital with little opposition (August 18). Leaving Colonel Doniphan in command, Kearney, after organizing a

Territorial government for New Mexico, proceeded to California (September 25).

Doniphan's March.—Doniphan, receiving reënforcements from Missouri, after Kearney's departure determined to push southward. Leaving Colonel Sterling Price in command, he set out (December 14, 1846) upon a memorable march, his object being to join Wool at Chihuahua. Two battles were



fought upon the march—Bracito (December 25, 1846) and Sacramento Creek (February 28, 1847)—in both of which Doniphan was successful in the face of superior numbers.

Wool's Campaign.—General Wool, finding too many obstructions in his path, gave up the idea of capturing Chihuahua, and turned south to Saltillo. Doniphan, however, arriving from Santa Fé, took possession of Chihuahua (March 2, 1847) the day after the battle of Sacramento Creek. From this point the little army made its way to Saltillo, where it arrived in safety (May 22), after making one of the most remarkable marches mentioned in history.

2.

Taylor's Campaign.—General Taylor's operations began with the capture of Matamoras (May 18, 1846). From this

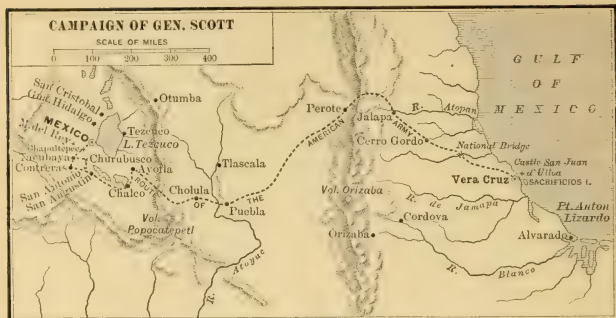
point he moved westward upon Monterey, and with his small force compelled the Mexican General Ampudia with 10,000 men to surrender that city (September 24). General Worth, of Taylor's command,



BATTLE OF BUENA VISTA.

shortly after took possession of Saltillo, before the arrival of General Wool.

Santa Anna Opposes Taylor.—Taylor soon found himself confronted by the experienced Santa Anna, who, having collected an army of 20,000 men, confidently counted upon



victory, as the Americans numbered little more than five thousand. In view of his greatly superior force, the Mexican commander thought a battle unnecessary. He suggested that the Americans surrender. The American commander spent no time in considering the suggestion. "General Taylor never surrenders," was the prompt answer he returned.

Battle of Buena Vista.—The opposing forces met at Buena Vista (February 23, 1847). No field was ever more hotly contested. Several times during the battle victory was almost within the grasp of the Mexicans. On one of these occasions the day was saved for the Americans by the bravery and good judgment of Colonel Jefferson Davis and his regiment of Mississippi riflemen; at another time, by Captain Braxton

Bragg and his artillery. Gallant service was also rendered by the Arkansas and Kentucky cavalry under Colonels Yell and Marshall. After ten hours' fighting the Mexicans withdrew from the field, and by daylight the next morning were in full retreat.

Operations of General Winfield Scott.—As the war

Success of Scott's Army.

The defenses of the City of Mexico were many in number, and Santa Anna was a skilled and sagacious commander, with more than thirty thousand men under his direction. The successes of the American army were therefore remarkable, and were no doubt due to the great ability of the subordinate officers of Scott's command, many of whom were to come to the front as leading generals in the next war which we shall record.

progressed, it was seen that military operations must be directed against the Mexican capital. These operations were intrusted to General Winfield Scott. Landing near Vera Cruz, Scott attacked that city with a force of 12,000 soldiers, and compelled its surrender (March 29, 1847). Marching inland in a northwesterly direction, he encountered and utterly defeated (April 18) a large Mexican army, under Santa Anna, at Cerro Gordo. The next day he took possession of the city of Jalapa, from which he pushed on to the city of Puebla. Scott here waited for reinforcements. These soon arrived, and he again took up his line of march for the City of Mexico (August 7).



GENERAL WINFIELD SCOTT.

Texas Cession and Gadsden Purchase.

The fixing of the Rio Grande as the boundary between Texas and Mexico gave Texas a claim to much of what is now New Mexico. In 1848 Texas sent officers to take possession of the territory claimed. They found the territory already organized, for Kearney had established a government immediately after taking possession of Santa Fé (1846). A conflict of authority between the officers appointed by Texas and those appointed by Kearney thus arose, but the controversy was settled by the payment of \$10,000,000 by the United States (1850). Half of this amount went to pay off the debt of the old Republic of Texas. The boundary line established by the treaty of Guadalupe Hidalgo was so indefinite that a dispute soon arose between the United States and Mexico over the territory south of the Gila River. A settlement was effected by the United States paying an additional \$10,000,000 for the territory in dispute, General Gadsden effecting the purchase (1853).

Contreras and Churubusco.—On the 20th of August he made a series of attacks upon the positions of the enemy in the vicinity of the Mexican capital. Generals Pillow and Twiggs stormed Contreras, driving the Mexican general, Valencia, from his fortifications, and they followed up the victory the same day by carrying the heights of Churubusco, near by, defeating Santa Anna.

Mexico City Captured.—The next advance was upon Chapultepec. Molino del Rey, one of its outer defenses, was gallantly carried by General Worth (September 7), and the

strongly fortified citadel of Chapultepec was successfully stormed shortly after (September 13). The next day Scott entered the City of Mexico in triumph.

Treaty of Peace.—The Mexican Government now gladly consented to terms of peace. The treaty was signed at Guadalupe Hidalgo (February 2, 1848). By the terms of this treaty Mexico relinquished all claims to upper California and New Mexico, and accepted the Rio Grande as her northeast boundary. In consideration of this relinquishment the United States paid \$15,000,000 to the Mexican Government, and assumed all debts due by it to citizens of the United States.

Gold Discovered.—California had scarcely come into the possession of the United States when a discovery was made that caused a rush of settlers to its territory. A laborer cutting a mill-race for Captain Sutter's mill, in one of the small branches of the Sacramento River, found particles of gold in the sand. The news spread throughout the country, and the rush of gold-seekers and fortune-hunters began. Those who first arrived alluded to themselves with pride for many years after as "forty-niners." By 1850 San Francisco was a city of 15,000 inhabitants, and in the same year the State of California was admitted into the Union.

Questions.—How did Mexico regard the annexation of Texas? What boundary was in dispute? What did Mexico claim as the line of separation? Texas? What did the admission of Texas make it necessary for the United States to do? Who was sent to the Rio Grande? What fort did he erect? What do you know of Thornton's massacre? What two battles did Taylor fight before the war was declared? When was war declared? What campaigns were planned? What do you know of Kearney's expedition? Tell something of Doniphan's march. Tell something of General Wool's campaign.

With what did Taylor's operations begin? What city did he capture? Tell something of the battle of Buena Vista. Who particularly distinguished themselves in this battle? Who led the expedition against the City of Mexico? Where did it land? What was its first battle? Who stormed Contreras? What other victory was won on the same day? What two battles caused the surrender of Mexico? Where was the treaty between the United States and Mexico signed? What did Mexico relinquish? Accept? What did the United States pay? What discovery was made in California? How was the discovery made? Who were the "forty-niners"?



REFERENCE OUTLINE.

WAR WITH MEXICO.	CAUSES.	{	ANNEXATION OF TEXAS.	
			DISPUTED TERRITORY.	
			MEXICAN AGGRESSIONS.	{ Thornton's Massacre (April 26, 1846).
	{ Battle of Palo Alto (May 8, 1846).			
	{ Battle of Resaca de la Palma (May 9, 1846).			
	CAMPAIGNS.	KEARNEY'S.	{	Leaves Leavenworth (June, 1846).
				Arrives at Santa Fé (August 18, 1846).
				Departs for California (September 25, 1846).
		DONIPHAN'S MARCH.	{	March begins December 14, 1846.
				Battle of Bracito (December 25, 1846).
				Battle of Sacramento (February 28, 1847).
		TAYLOR'S.	{	Capture of Chihuahua (March 2, 1847).
				Arrives at Saltillo (May 22, 1847).
				Capture of Matamoras (May 18, 1846).
Battle of Monterey (September 24, 1846).				
Capture of Saltillo (November 15, 1846).				
Battle of Buena Vista (February 23, 1847).				
SCOTT'S.	{			Capture of Vera Cruz (March 29, 1847).
				Battle of Cerro Gordo (April 18, 1847).
		Battle of Contreras (August 20, 1847).		
		Battle of Churubusco (August 20, 1847).		
		Battle of Molino del Rey (September 7, 1847).		
BATTLE OF CHAPULTEPEC (September 13, 1847).				
	Capture of Mexico (September 14, 1847).			
RESULT.	ACQUISITION OF TERRITORY.			

FOR ADVANCED CLASSES.

Topics for Discussion.

I. Beginning of the War with Mexico. II. Campaigns of General Zachary Taylor. III. Campaign of General Winfield Scott. IV. Conquest of California. V. Treaty of Guadalupe Hidalgo. VI. Gadsden Purchase and the Texas Cession. VII. California Gold Discovery.

References and Authorities.

Schouler's *History of the United States*.

Vol. iv. : Taylor's military movements, 521, 525. Kearney's conquest of New Mexico, 528. California conquest, 532. Vol. v. : Scott's campaigns, 33-61. Treaty of Guadalupe, 81. Gold discovery, 133. Texas cession of claimed territory to the United States, 183, 198, 202. Gadsden Purchase, 296.

Woodrow Wilson's *Division and Reunion*.

Texas boundary dispute, 149. Taylor's advance, 150. War with Mexico, 150-152. Gadsden Purchase, 189.

Winsor's *Narrative and Critical History*, vol. vii.

War with Mexico, 408-412.

Parallel Readings.

INDEX GUIDE for comparative examination of other works and authorities.—*Mexico, War with. Taylor, General Zachary, in Mexican War. Buena Vista, Battle of. Monterey, Storming of. Doniphan's March. California, Conquest of, by Stockton and Frémont. Scott, General Winfield, in Mexican War. Cerro Gordo, Battle of. Churubusco, Battle of. Chapultepec, Storming of. Mexico City, Capture of. Guadalupe, Treaty of. Mexican Cession. Gold, Discovery of, in California. Gadsden Purchase, The.*

SPECIAL.—Andrews: *History of the United States*, vol. ii., 21. Frost: *History of Mexico and the Mexican War*.

CHAPTER XIII.**THE DEVELOPMENT OF SECTIONAL ANTAGONISM.****1.**

Sectional Differences in Colonial Times.—In a previous lesson * we learned that during colonial times the people of the North and the people of the South were unlike in their manner of life and their business interests. When such differences exist there can be little sympathy, and where there is little sympathy it is easy for misunderstandings to arise.

After the formation of the Union there sprang up from time to time political questions which forced the people still further apart in their opinions and sympathies. The most important of these questions, upon which North and South could not fully agree, was that of slavery.

Slavery in the Northern and Southern Colonies.—There had not always been this disagreement. In colonial times slavery existed in the Northern as well as the Southern colonies. New England ships manned by New England crews engaged in the slave trade, and made great profit by buying slaves in Africa and selling them in Southern seaports. Even then there was a sentiment against slavery, but this sentiment was not confined to the North. At an early date many of the best and wisest men of the South, including Thomas Jefferson, were opposed to the system, and slaves were often set at liberty.

Slavery Dies Out in the North.—But circumstances

* See chap. xiv., pp. 189-193.

changed, and when circumstances change opinions also change. Slave labor in the North was found unprofitable. The farm of that section was, as a rule, small, and the owner could cultivate it with the help of his boys. Then, as commerce and manufactures developed, slave labor became less desirable, for greater skill and experience are necessary in these industries. Thus slavery gradually died out in the North. Moreover, the slave trade with foreign countries came to an end in 1808, according to the terms of the Constitution, so there was no longer profit for New England vessels in this branch of commerce.

Slavery Continued in the South. — The soil on Southern plantations was so rich that even unskilled labor, when intelligently directed, was found very profitable. The invention of the cotton-gin made cotton-planting the chief industry in the South. The slavery system, introduced in colonial times and recognized by the Constitution, seemed to be particularly adapted to this branch of industry. The system was therefore continued in the South. Millions of bales of cotton were produced annually. Cotton became the principal export of the United States and was the basis of the commercial prosperity of the whole country.

Labor Systems.

In the year 1860 there prevailed in the United States two labor systems. One was the wage system, under which the laborer is paid a certain amount agreed upon for his services and must attend to his own wants. The other was the slavery system, under which the laborer, in return for his services, was cared for by the one for whom he labored. The laborer under the wage system had the advantage of being free to come and go as he pleased. But fear of starvation and desire to satisfy his wants compelled him to work for employers; to accept the wages that they were willing to pay, however small; and unless he rose in the world by his own intelligence his condition was worse than was the condition of a majority of the slaves in the South. The slave, on the other hand, had no personal liberty save that which his owner allowed him, but his wants were, as a rule, well provided for, and his health and happiness greatly concerned his master, for cheerful toil from an able-bodied workman is more valuable than reluctant services rendered by poorly fed and discouraged employees. Under humane conditions many regarded slavery as an admirable system.

The abolition of slavery introduced into the South a third system, known as the share system. By this system farm laborers are furnished with land, implements, and supplies of food, and they pay for these such part of the products of their labor as may have been agreed upon.

The Spread of Population Westward.—As the population of the Atlantic States increased, many people had moved westward beyond the Alleghanies. Those who moved from Virginia, the Carolinas, and Georgia into Alabama, Mississippi, Kentucky, and Tennessee took their slaves with them, established new plantations, and continued to live as they always had lived. Northern men who settled in that section acquired slaves. Those who moved from New England and the Middle States into Ohio, Indiana, and Illinois established themselves on small farms, built up towns, and depended as before upon their own labor. For slavery was prohibited in all the Northwest Territory by the Ordinance of 1787, which, it was claimed, was drawn up by Thomas Jefferson for the government of this region. Southern men who came into this region left their slaves behind them.

Line of Division clearly Defined.—So long as the United States extended only as far as the Mississippi River, there was a clearly marked line of division between the free and slave States. This was the southern boundary line of Pennsylvania, originally laid out by Mason and Dixon, and the Ohio River. Thus divided, the sections could each follow its own course in its domestic affairs, maintain its own labor system, and adopt its own methods of living.

Change Wrought by the Louisiana Purchase.—But the Louisiana purchase changed this condition of peace between the sections. The territory purchased belonged to the whole people, and men of the North and men of the South had an equal right to move into it and take part in the building up of new States. But there were many men in the Northern States who, for political reasons or from conscientious convictions, objected to the extension of slavery into new States. Therefore they demanded that slavery be excluded from this new territory.

The South Insists upon Constitutional Rights.—But slaves were property, and were so recognized by the Constitution. A man has a right to his own property, and to protect this right is one of the principal reasons why governments exist.

The Southern settler felt that he had a right to take his property with him when he moved beyond the Mississippi. Therefore the South insisted that slavery should not be prohibited in the acquired territory.

2.

The first contest arose when it was proposed to admit Missouri as a State. This, as we have seen,* was settled by the Missouri Compromise (1820), which established a line running due west from the Mississippi River, a portion of which line was the southern boundary of Missouri. North of this line, according to this compromise measure, no slave States should be formed except Missouri. South of this line slavery was to be permitted. Slavery had existed in what is now Louisiana before the Louisiana purchase. There was, however, very little other territory of the Louisiana purchase south of the line out of which to form slave States. Those who were opposed to slavery were anxious that the slave States should not increase in number and influence, and that new territory south of the compromise line

Anti-slavery Movement.

The Fugitive Slave Laws of the United States Government provided for the arrest and return of slaves who escaped from their owners into free States. Many in the North declined to obey these laws. Personal Liberty laws were passed by several States, in direct opposition to the laws of the United States, and these laws placed every obstruction possible in the way of the United States officers who undertook to execute the Fugitive law.

Many of the Northern people were opposed to slavery, but did not believe that the Federal Government had a right to abolish it. Others believed in the total abolition of slavery. These were termed Abolitionists. At first the Abolitionists were few in number. Their most prominent leader was William Lloyd Garrison, who instituted an anti-slavery society as early as 1831.

For a long time the Abolitionists were regarded in the North with disfavor, as a band of agitators, endangering the peace and tranquillity of the country. Their meetings were often broken up, their halls burned to the ground, their public speakers mobbed. But in later years, sectional animosity and the passage of the Fugitive Slave Law and other laws caused many to join their ranks. In 1840 the Abolitionists went into politics as the Liberty party, and nominated for President James G. Birney, who received 7,509 votes. Birney was again a candidate in 1844, and received 62,300 votes, a marked increase.

In 1848 the Abolitionists, with certain anti-slavery elements of the Democratic and Whig parties, formed themselves into the Free Soil party, whose motto was "Free soil, free speech, free labor, and free men," and nominated ex-President Van Buren, who received 291,263 votes. In the presidential election of 1852 this party lost ground, but in 1856, under the name of the Republican party, it polled 1,340,264 votes for John C. Frémont. In 1860 it elected Lincoln.

* See page 314.

should not be added. The annexation of Texas, the war with Mexico, and the acquisition from Mexico of the vast region now forming the southwestern portion of the United States were all unsuccessfully opposed by those who were against slavery.

The Wilmot Proviso.—Shortly after the beginning of the war with Mexico a bill was before Congress appropriating money to pay Mexico for New Mexico and California, which United States troops were then occupying. It was hoped in this way to end the war. David Wilmot, a Democrat from Pennsylvania, supported the bill, but offered an amendment known as the Wilmot Proviso, because it “provided” that slavery should not be permitted in any territory acquired by the purchase. The measure failed to pass. At the close of the war, Mexico was paid for the territory which she was compelled to surrender as a result of the war.*

The Struggle over Slavery in California.—The discovery of gold caused a rush of miners and settlers to California, and that Territory was soon ready to be admitted as a State. But what kind of a State? About one half of it lay south of the Missouri Compromise line, so the people of the Southern States held that slavery could not with justice be excluded. The people of the Northern States opposed making California a slave State.

Fugitive Slave Laws.—Meanwhile strong opposition to slavery itself, wherever found, had grown up in the North. Slaves frequently ran away from their owners and made their way into free States. The Constitution provides for the return of runaway slaves to their owners, but there was a growing disposition in the North to ignore this provision. More stringent laws compelling obedience to this feature of the Constitution were necessary to prevent serious trouble between the sections.

The Union in Danger.—The Southern States felt justified in withdrawing from the Union, if the Missouri Compromise was set aside by admitting California as a free State, and if Congress did not pass a strict fugitive slave law. Con-

* See page 318.

ventions were called in the Southern States to consider what steps were necessary to enforce their rights under the Constitution, and it was seen that enmity between the sections was increasing very rapidly. In this crisis Henry Clay, the great peace-maker, proposed a compromise which he embodied in a bill known as the Omnibus Bill.



MILLARD FILLMORE.

The Omnibus Bill (1) provided for the admission of California as a free State ; (2) divided the rest of the Mexican cession into two territories, Utah (including the greater part of Nevada) and New Mexico (including Arizona), without prohibiting slavery therein, although Utah was north of the Missouri Compromise line ; (3) prevented the buying and selling of slaves in the District of Columbia ; (4) enacted a more stringent law for the return of runaway slaves to their owner than the one passed in 1793 ; and (5) settled the claims of Texas to New Mexico territory. The first and third features of the bill were to satisfy the North ; the second and fourth were to satisfy the South. The Omnibus Bill did not pass, but three separate bills embracing the same provisions were passed, and are known as the Compromise Measures of 1850. These measures

prevented secession at the time, but failed to bring that lasting peace for which all so earnestly hoped.

The Kansas - Nebraska Bill ; Squatter Sovereignty.—The next controversy upon the question of slavery in the Territories arose when it became necessary to organize the Territories of Kansas and Nebraska.

"Uncle Tom's Cabin."

The appearance in 1852 of a novel entitled "Uncle Tom's Cabin," by Harriet Beecher Stowe, had done much to increase anti-slavery sentiment in the North and embitter the feelings of the South, thus widening the breach between the two sections. This book contains a false and exaggerated picture of slave life in the South, but it was accepted as true by those people of the North who were ignorant of life in the South as it really was.



FRANKLIN PIERCE.

For this purpose a bill was introduced into Congress by Stephen A. Douglas of Illinois, recognizing the principle of what had been called "squatter sovereignty." The Kansas-Nebraska Bill authorized the people of each of those Territories to decide for themselves, before its admission as a State, whether slavery should exist within its limits or not. The bill was bitterly denounced by anti-slavery people in the North, as a violation of the Missouri Compromise of 1820, which prohibited slavery north of the Missouri line; and they objected. The Compromise Measures of 1850, however, had really repealed the Missouri Compromise, for in admitting California as a free State, Congress had prohibited slavery in territory south of the Missouri line. The Kansas-Nebraska Bill was passed (1854). From that time there was no peace for many years.

Dred Scott Decision.—

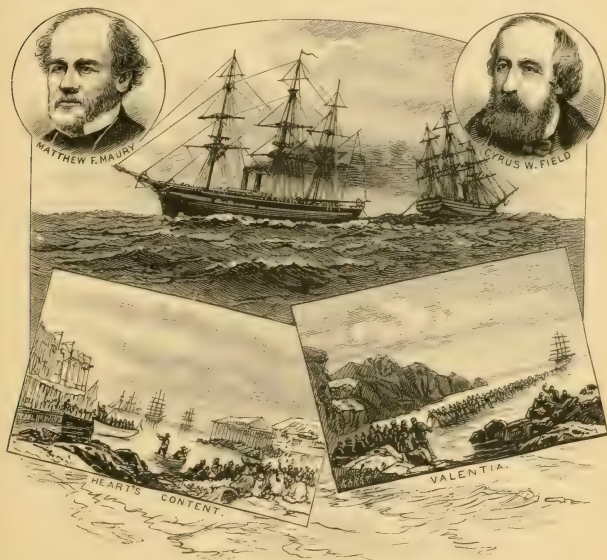
A celebrated case, known as the Dred Scott Case; that had been pending in the Supreme Court of the United States, was decided in 1857, and increased the slavery excitement. Dred Scott was a slave who, having been brought by his owner into free territory, sued for his freedom. The courts decided that slaves were property, that under the Constitution all property must be protected; that the taking of a slave into a free State or Territory did not forfeit ownership, and that Congress had no

Matthew F. Maury.

The laying of the first Atlantic cable was successfully accomplished by Cyrus W. Field; but the enterprise would never have been undertaken had it not been for Matthew F. Maury, a Virginian in the U. S. Navy and superintendent of the Naval Observatory at Washington. This eminent navigator and learned scientist, by his original explorations and discoveries in regard to the physical features of the ocean, is without exception the greatest contributor to man's geographical knowledge that ever lived. From him Field obtained the information which enabled him to select the place where a cable could be successfully laid across the Atlantic. Two vessels, the *Niagara* and *Agamemnon*, were engaged in the work. One end of the cable was landed at Valentia Bay, Ireland, the other at Heart's Content, Newfoundland.

power to forbid slavery in the Territories. Under this decision the Missouri Compromise was unconstitutional.

The beginning of sectional conflict took place upon Kansas soil. With the passage of the Kansas-Nebraska Bill it became an object with each of the sections to send as many emigrants to the territory as possible, so that one could out-



LAYING THE ATLANTIC CABLE.

vote the other when the question of slavery was to be decided. Two distinct State Constitutions were adopted, one framed by a convention at Topeka in 1855, the other at Leocompton in 1857. Both factions resorted to arms. Settlements were broken up, houses were burned, and blood was shed. General lawlessness prevailed until 1858, when the opponents of slavery were successful, although Kansas was not admitted until 1861.

Polk's Successors.—The four Presidents who followed Polk were Zachary Taylor, Millard Fillmore, Franklin Pierce, and James Buchanan. Taylor was elected by the Whigs (1848), and, dying the next year after his inauguration, was succeeded by Vice-President Fillmore. Pierce and Buchanan were Democrats.

Important Events.—The events that characterized the administration of these Presidents were for the most part those given in connection with the slavery agitation. During Pierce's term a treaty was successfully established between Japan and the United States (1854). During the administration of Buchanan, Minnesota (1858), Oregon (1859), Kansas (1861), were admitted; and the secession of seven Southern States from the Union occurred (1861). The first successful ocean cable was laid across the Atlantic (1858), though a series of accidents prevented it from being generally used until eight years later (1866).

Questions.—How did the people of the North and the people of the South grow to be unlike? What was the greatest question upon which the sections could not agree? Tell something of slavery in the North during Colonial times. In the South. Why did not slavery continue in the North? When did the foreign slave trade cease? What invention influenced the South to continue the slavery system of labor? Tell something of the spread of the people westward beyond the Alleghanies. Why was not slavery introduced in the territory north of the Ohio River? What line divided slave from free States? What purchase caused discord over slavery to arise? Why did the North object to the introduction of slavery into this territory? Why did the South insist that slavery should not be prohibited?

What was the first contest to arise? Why did the North object to the acquirement of new territory from Mexico? Tell something of the Wilmot Proviso. Why did the South think that California should be a slave State? What had become necessary by this time to prevent serious trouble between the North and the South? What action was taken by the Southern States? What compromise did Clay propose? Tell something of the Omnibus Bill; of the Compromise Measures of 1850. When did the next controversy arise? What did the Kansas-Nebraska Bill authorize? What principle is this called? How did the anti-slavery people of the North look upon this bill? What was the effect of its passage? What was the Dred Scott decision? Tell something of the beginning of sectional conflict. What four Presidents followed Polk? Tell some of the important events connected with the administrations of Polk's successors.

REFERENCE OUTLINE.

ADMINISTRATION OF JAMES K. POLK OF TENNESSEE.

Eleventh President.

Fifteenth Administration.

Twenty-ninth and Thirtieth Congresses.

Principal Events.

- | | | |
|-------|---|--|
| 1845. | { | Inauguration. |
| | { | Texas admitted. |
| 1846. | { | Mexican War begins. |
| | { | Iowa admitted. |
| | { | Smithsonian Institution founded. |
| | { | Oregon Boundary Treaty. |
| 1848. | { | Wisconsin admitted. |
| | { | Mexican War ends (treaty signed February 2). |
| | { | Gold discovered. |
| | { | Presidential election— |
| | | Democratic candidates : Lewis Cass and William O. Butler. |
| | | Free-soil candidates : Martin Van Buren and Charles Francis Adams. |
| | | Whig candidates : Zachary Taylor and Millard Fillmore. |

ADMINISTRATION OF ZACHARY TAYLOR OF LOUISIANA AND MILLARD FILLMORE OF NEW YORK.

Twelfth and Thirteenth Presidents.

Sixteenth Administration.

Thirty-first and Thirty-second Congresses.

Principal Events.

- | | | |
|-------|---|--|
| 1849. | | Inauguration. |
| 1850. | { | Compromise Measures of 1850. |
| | { | Death of Taylor (July 9). Fillmore President. |
| | { | California admitted. |
| 1852. | { | Presidential election— |
| | | Democratic candidates: Franklin Pierce and William R. King. |
| | | Anti-slavery candidates : John P. Hale and George W. Julian. |
| | | Whig candidates : Winfield Scott and William A. Graham. |

ADMINISTRATION OF FRANKLIN PIERCE OF NEW HAMPSHIRE.

Fourteenth President.

Seventeenth Administration.

Thirty-third and Thirty-fourth Congresses.

Principal Events.

1853. { Inauguration.
 { Gadsden Purchase.
1854. { Japan Treaty.
 { Kansas-Nebraska Bill.
1856. { Presidential election—
 { Democratic candidates: James Buchanan and J. C. Breckinridge.
 { Republican candidates: John C. Frémont and Wm. L. Dayton.

ADMINISTRATION OF JAMES BUCHANAN OF PENNSYLVANIA.

Fifteenth President.

Eighteenth Administration.

Thirty-fifth and Thirty-sixth Congresses.

Principal Events.

1857. { Inauguration.
 { Dred Scott decision.
1858. { Minnesota admitted.
 { Atlantic cable.
1859. Oregon admitted.
1860. { Presidential election—
 { Democratic candidates: { Northern wing. { Stephen A. Douglas,
 { { H. V. Johnson.
 { Southern wing. { J. C. Breckinridge,
 { { Joseph Lane.
 { Constitutional Union candidates: John Bell and Edward Everett.
 { Republican candidates: Abraham Lincoln and Hannibal Hamlin.
 { Secession of South Carolina (December 20)
1861. { Secession of Mississippi, Florida, Alabama, Georgia, Louisiana,
 { and Texas.
 { Organization of Southern Confederacy.
 { Kansas admitted to the Union.

FOR ADVANCED CLASSES.**Topics for Discussion.**

I. Political and Social Differences between the Northern and the Southern people. II. The Anti-slavery Movement. III. The Wilmot Proviso. IV. Clay's Omnibus Bill and the Compromises of 1850. V. Squatter Sovereignty and the Kansas-Nebraska Bill. VI. The Dred Scott Decision. VII. Lieutenant Maury and the Atlantic Cable.

References and Authorities.

Schouler's *History of the United States*, vol. v.

Fugitive slave excitement, 204. Anti-slavery statesmen, 214. Compromise of 1850, 178, 212. Kansas-Nebraska Bill, 280, 285. Dred Scott, 376.

Woodrow Wilson's *Division and Reunion*.

Wilmot Proviso, 153. Compromise of 1850, 169. Kansas-Nebraska Bill, 182. Dred Scott, 197. The slavery system, 117-132. The Territories and slavery, 161-193.

Percy Greg's *History of the United States*, vol. ii.

Economical, social, and moral aspects of Southern slavery, 1. Wilmot Proviso, 41. Compromise of 1850, 52. Kansas-Nebraska Bill, 74. Dred Scott, 103. The situation of 1860, 112. Northern and Southern characteristics, 134.

Parallel Readings.

INDEX GUIDE for comparative examination of other works and authorities.—*Slavery. Anti-slavery Movement, The. Omnibus Bill, The. Squatter Sovereignty. Kansas-Nebraska Bill, The. Dred Scott Decision, The. Douglas, Stephen A. Fugitive Slave Laws. Personal Liberty Bills. Underground Railroad, The. Abolitionists, The. Garrison, William Lloyd. Wilmot Proviso. Taylor and Fillmore, Administration of. Pierce, Franklin, Administration of. Buchanan's Administration. Japan Treaty, The. Atlantic Cable, First Laying of.*

SPECIAL.—Smith : *Political History of the United States*, 221-243. Andrews : *History of the United States*, vol. ii., 3, 12, 30, 38, 48, 57. Schurz : *Life of Henry Clay*, vol. ii., chaps. xvii., xxi., xxv., and xxvi. If possible the student should read Jefferson Davis's account of the Compromise of 1850, to be found in his *Rise and Fall of the Confederate Government*, vol. i., 14-21.

PREPARATORY GEOGRAPHY LESSON.

Upon a relief map of the United States note the physical features of the southeastern part of the United States : the mountain ranges of West Virginia, East Tennessee, North Georgia, Northwest Arkansas ; the rivers that drain the Mississippi Valley, and the Atlantic slope. The Atlantic and Gulf coasts. What mountains would be crossed in going from Wheeling to Richmond ? Between what chains of mountains does the Shenandoah River run ? Note that down the Shenandoah Valley means northeast toward the Potomac.

Upon a political map of the United States note the relative positions of the following cities : Washington, Montgomery, Charleston, Richmond, and Atlanta ; St. Louis, Carthage, Springfield, and Lexington, Mo. ; Cairo, and Paducah. Trace a line from Columbus, Ky., through Bowling Green to Cumberland Gap. Beginning at the mouths, trace the Tennessee and Cumberland Rivers to where they cross the Kentucky and Tennessee line ; then continue on up the Tennessee until you reach the northeast corner of Mississippi. In what part of Kentucky is Perryville ? In what part of Tennessee is Murfreesboro ? Chattanooga ? Nashville ? Knoxville ?

Note the location of Ship Island, southeast of Louisiana. Trace the Mississippi from its mouth to Vicksburg, noting the location of New Orleans, Baton Rouge, Port Hudson. Trace the Mississippi down from St. Louis, noting Cairo ; Belmont, Mo. ; New Madrid, Mo. ; Memphis, Helena, Arkansas Post.

Upon a map of Mississippi locate Iuka, Corinth, Holly Springs, Jackson, Port Gibson. Note carefully the location and surroundings of Vicksburg.

Beginning at Norfolk, Va., trace the coast line of the United States, noting the location of the following : Hatteras Inlet ; Roanoke Island ; Wilmington ; mouth of Cape Fear River ; Charleston ; Port Royal ; Savannah ; Jacksonville ; Pensacola ; Mobile ; Sabine Pass ; Galveston.

Where is Harper's Ferry ? Williamsburg ? Petersburg ? Fredricksburg ? Note the following rivers of Virginia : Rappahannock, Rapidan, Chickahominy, James. Locate Winchester, and New Market.

Disunion.

CHAPTER XIV.

THE SECESSION OF THE SOUTHERN STATES.

1.

The coming of 1860 found the whole country aroused. It was the year for the election of a President, and all the people by their votes would take sides in the political conflict that

had been going on between the party leaders for the past four years. A majority of the Southern leaders were determined to accept no further compromises, but to demand all their rights under the Constitution. The Supreme Court of the United States, in the Dred Scott Case, had decided that under the Constitution a Southern man had a right to carry his slaves into the Territories; to have them protected by Congress while there, and to recover fugitive slaves who had escaped to Northern States. The Abolition leaders in the North had denounced not only the Supreme Court, for making this decision, but the Constitu-

John Brown's Raid.

The Abolitionists were the most violent opposers of slavery. They abused and condemned the Constitution for permitting that which they so bitterly opposed. They created dissatisfaction among the negroes of the South, and for many years helped the dissatisfied ones to escape into free States. The system by which this was accomplished was called the "underground railroad."

One of the most fanatical of the Abolitionists was John Brown. He won notoriety in the Kansas troubles through many deeds of violence. In 1859, Brown, with twenty friends, invaded Virginia and captured the arsenal at Harper's Ferry (Oct. 16). He intended to arm the slaves of Virginia and incite them to insurrection. After a stubborn fight the State militia and United States marines captured Brown, who was convicted of "treason, advising and conspiring with slaves and others to rebel, and murder in the first degree." He was hanged (Dec. 2, 1859).

tion itself; and had nullified the laws of Congress for the recovery of the fugitive slaves by Personal Liberty bills, which were passed in fourteen Northern States. From these acts the people of the South had come to believe that the people of the North did not respect either the Constitution or the law; and

this conviction was strengthened by the act of John Brown, who with a small band of followers had invaded Virginia, had captured Harper's Ferry, and had attempted to arm the slaves and incite them to insurrection.

The Charleston Convention.—The Democratic party was a representative party, for its membership was drawn from every State in the Union. Its convention assembled in Charleston, S. C. (April 23, 1860), to nominate a candidate for President to succeed Buchanan. It was soon found that members from the North and members from the South would not agree upon a platform to be adopted. The Southern Democrats, holding to the constitutional right of property in slaves, insisted that the platform should state clearly the equal right of all citizens to settle with their property in territory belonging to the United States, and should affirm the duty of Congress to protect this right. The majority of Northern delegates favored the principle of "squatter sovereignty," according to which the settlers in a Territory should decide the question of slavery for themselves. Several compromises were proposed, but were voted down. Finally the squatter sovereignty platform was adopted by a vote of 165 to 138. By this vote the convention had refused to recognize the right of slave-owners to have their property protected in territory under the control of Congress; and the delegations from Alabama, Mississippi, Louisiana, South Carolina, Florida, Texas, Delaware, Arkansas, and Georgia withdrew. The remaining delegates tried to nominate a candidate, but failed, after which the convention adjourned.

The Republican Party.—In the North there were many who were determined to prevent the extension of slavery into the Territories and to prevent the return of fugitive slaves.

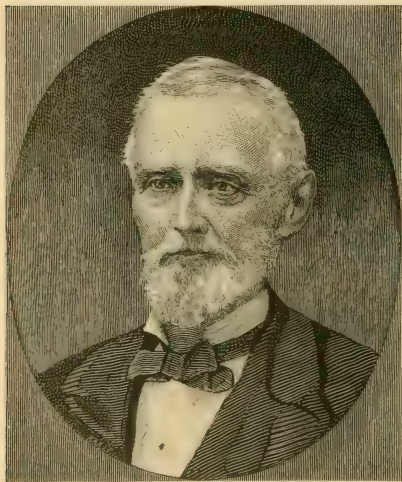


JAMES BUCHANAN.

They first called themselves the Free Soil party, and among the leaders were many Abolitionists, although the party denied that it intended to abolish slavery. In 1856 the Free Soil party had taken the name of Republican party, and had grown in strength since that time. The membership was confined entirely to the Northern States.

The Nomination of Abraham Lincoln.—The Repub-

lican party held its nominating convention in Chicago (May 16, 1860), and selected Abraham Lincoln of Illinois as its candidate. Its platform declared that the natural condition of territory belonging to the United States was that of freedom, and that the Constitution could not be made to show that slavery in a Territory was a right to be protected by Congress. It also declared that the party



From a photograph taken in 1887.

JEFFERSON DAVIS.

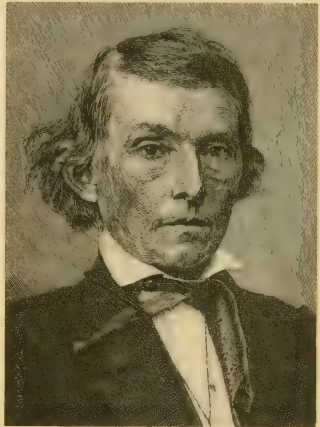
did not want to interfere with slavery in the States, and it denounced John Brown's raid.

Two Democratic Candidates.—According to adjournment, the Democratic Convention reassembled in Baltimore (June 18, 1860). The majority refused to readmit the delegations from Alabama and Louisiana; and a number of delegates from Northern States, with Caleb Cushing of Massachusetts, president of the convention, withdrew and joined the Southern faction. The remaining delegates nominated Stephen A.

Douglas of Illinois, on the squatter sovereignty platform. The delegates who had withdrawn, representing twenty States, having organized a separate convention, nominated John C. Breckinridge of Kentucky and Joseph Lane of Oregon, on the platform which had been rejected at Charleston, and which affirmed it to be the duty of Congress to protect all property, including slaves, in the Territories under its control.

Constitutional Union Party.—Meanwhile a third party was organized, believing that peace between the sections could be maintained and differences healed if all, for the sake of patriotism and duty, would recognize no principle other than “the Constitution of the country, the union of the States, and the enforcement of laws.” This party nominated John Bell of Tennessee. Thus in the election of 1860 there were four candidates in the field.

Lincoln Elected.—Of the votes cast by the people, Lincoln received a number higher than that cast for any one of his three opponents. Douglas stood second, Breckinridge third, and Bell fourth. Had the votes cast against Lincoln been concentrated upon one candidate, the majority over Lincoln would have been almost a million. Presidential elections, however, are not decided by popular vote, but by electoral vote, each State as a whole casting as many electoral votes as it has Senators and Congressmen. A candidate who carries a State by a small majority gets the same electoral vote from that State as if he carried it by a large majority. In the Electoral College



From a photograph.

ALEXANDER H. STEPHENS.

Lincoln received 180 votes ; Breckinridge, 72 ; Bell, 39 ; and Douglas, 12.

2.

The effect of Lincoln's election was to fill the South with alarm. The votes making him President had been cast wholly by Northern States. The party electing him contained many whom the South could regard only as enemies and constitution breakers. The Government, under the Constitution, had been formed to insure domestic tranquillity, but for many years this condition had not been enjoyed, and there



From a photograph in 1868.

HOWELL COBB.

seemed now no prospect for a more peaceful condition of affairs. So, notwithstanding the affection for the Union which the South had shown from the beginning, the idea had been slowly coming into the minds of the Southern people that they had better leave the Union and form a government of their own rather than stay in the Union and live continually in a condition of political disturbance.

The Southern States Secede.—

South Carolina took the first step. A convention of her sovereign people assembled and passed an Ordinance of Secession (December 20, 1860), by which act South Carolina repealed the ordinance by which she had ratified the Constitution of the United States, resumed the power which she had surrendered to the Federal Government, and declared herself to be once more a sovereign and independent State. Mississippi, Florida, Alabama, Georgia, and Louisiana, in the order named, followed the example of South Carolina.

Seceded States Form a Confederacy.—Delegates from the seceded States met at Montgomery, Ala., and formed a confederation under the name of the Confederate States of America. The Convention was presided over by Howell Cobb of Georgia. A provisional government was organized. Jefferson Davis of Mississippi was elected President, and Alex-

ander H. Stephens of Georgia Vice-President (February 9). The inauguration of Davis and Stephens took place amid scenes of the wildest enthusiasm (February 18), and loyal support was pledged to the new government by everyone concerned in its organization. The first State admitted after the Confederacy was formed was Texas (March 2, 1861).

Precautionary Measures.—Meanwhile the governor of each seceded State had taken possession of forts, arsenals, and other United States property within the State limits.

This they had a right to do, if the States had a right to secede; because there is a recognized principle of law under which a State has supreme control over all land within its



From a photograph in 1895.

GEN. P. G. T. BEAUREGARD.

borders, and can take any part of it, without consulting the owner, when such property is needed for the protection of the State. This principle is known as the law of Eminent Domain. Major Anderson, commanding Fort Sumter in Charleston Harbor, and Lieutenant Slemmer, commanding Fort Pickens near Pensacola, refused to surrender these forts to the State authorities when the demand was made. The Southern States had hoped to withdraw peaceably from the Union. A nation, however, is surest of peace when best prepared for war.

The presence of Federal troops in Fort Sumter threatened the safety of South Carolina's principal city, so it was determined to insist upon their withdrawal.

Bombardment of Fort Sumter.—Batteries were erected at various points under the direction of General P. G. T.

The First Confederate Cabinet.

The first Cabinet selected by President Davis consisted of Robert Toombs of Georgia, Secretary of State; Leroy P. Walker of Alabama, Secretary of War; Stephen B. Mallory of Florida, Secretary of the Navy; Charles G. Memminger of South Carolina, Secretary of the Treasury; Judah P. Benjamin of Louisiana, Attorney General; and J. H. Reagan of Texas, Postmaster General.

Beauregard, a famous military engineer. The steamer *Star* of the West, approaching with supplies for the Fort Sumter garrison, was fired upon and compelled to return. After the inauguration of President Lincoln, his Secretary of State, Mr. Seward, gave a verbal promise that Anderson and his men

War Preparations.

Regarding the secession of the Southern States there were different opinions in the North. Some preferred to let the Southern States go in peace rather than have an armed conflict. There were others who denied the right of a State to secede, but held that the United States Government could not legally coerce a State back into the Union. Of this number was Buchanan. But by far the greater number believed that the Union should be preserved at any cost, and as the time to inaugurate Lincoln drew near it soon became evident that a determination of this kind was forming. In anticipation of the use of force, the Confederate States began to prepare for resistance. Several efforts were made by commissions and peace congresses to bring about an amicable adjustment of affairs between the two governments; but the authorities at Washington held the people of the Southern States to be in rebellion, and so would extend no official recognition to the Confederate Government. Events therefore hastened an armed conflict.

would soon be withdrawn and that no reinforcements would be sent them. This promise was confirmed by Mr. Seward's historical answer: "Faith as to Sumter fully kept; wait and see." Beauregard quietly waited. But early in April the Washington authorities sent troops by sea to Anderson's assistance, and notified the Governor of South Carolina that they had done so. It became necessary for Beauregard to act at once. At 4.30 in the morning of April 12th the bombardment of Fort Sumter began, the first gun being fired from a Confederate battery on James Island. The North claimed that by firing this gun the South began the war; the South

claimed that by sending troops to reinforce Sumter the North began the war.

Fort Sumter Surrenders.—For thirty-four hours the bombardment continued. The garrison made a gallant resistance, winning the respect and admiration of their assailants. At length Anderson was compelled to surrender (April 14th). In the engagement not a man was lost upon either side. The garrison were permitted to give a parting salute to their flag before retiring from the fort, and in doing so one of their number was killed by accident.

Questions.—In what condition did the year 1860 find the country? For what reasons did the Southern people determine to accept no compromise? What party had come into existence by 1860? What policy did this party advocate? Where did the Democratic Convention of 1860 first assemble? Upon what could the members not agree? What did the Southern Democrats insist upon? What did the Northern Democrats favor and insist upon? What was the result of this difference of view? Where was the Republican Convention held? Whom did it select? What did the Republican platform declare? Where did the Democratic Convention reassemble? What two candidates were nominated for President? What new party was formed? What did it believe? Whom did it nominate? According to the popular votes, how did the four candidates stand? According to the electoral vote? What candidate was therefore elected in the election of 1860?

What effect had Lincoln's election upon the South? Why had the Federal Government been formed? What idea had been coming into the Southern mind? What State took the first step in drawing out of the Union? When was South Carolina's Ordinance of Secession passed? What States followed South Carolina's example? What did delegates from the seceded States do at Montgomery? Who presided over the meeting? Who were elected President and Vice-President of the Confederate States of America? What was the first State admitted to the Southern Confederacy? What did the governors of the seceded States do? On what principle of law did they do this? What forts refused to surrender? Under whose direction were batteries erected in the vicinity of Charleston? Tell what you know of the bombardment of Fort Sumter. How long did it continue? When did it surrender?

FOR ADVANCED CLASSES.

Topics for Discussion.

- I. Political Issues of 1860. II. "Uncle Tom's Cabin" and John Brown's Raid. III. The Charleston Convention. IV. Election of Abraham Lincoln. V. Secession of the Southern States. VI. Organization of the Southern Confederacy. VII. Fall of Fort Sumter.

References and Authorities.

Battles and Leaders of the Civil War (Century War Book), vol. i.

Political issues of 1860, 1. Organization of the Confederate Government, 6, 90. Fort Sumter, 74.

Schouler's *History of the United States*, vol. v.

Brown's raid, 437-447. Charleston Convention, 454. Election of 1860, 468. Secession, 474. Confederacy organized, 490.

Davis's *Rise and Fall of the Confederate Government*, vol. i.

Political issues, 51. Organization of the Confederacy, 229.

Wilson's *Division and Reunion*.

"Uncle Tom's Cabin," 181. Election of 1860, 204-210. Secession, 210-215, 239-242. Fort Sumter, 218. Constitution and government of the Confederate States, chap. x.

Parallel Readings.

INDEX GUIDE for comparative examination of other works and authorities.—Historical : *Charleston Convention, The. Southern States, Secession of. Fort Sumter, Bombardment of. Confederate States Government.*

Biographical : *Breckinridge, J. C. Brown, John. Douglas, Stephen A. Lincoln, Abraham. Davis, Jefferson. Stephens, Alexander. Beauregard, General P. G. T.*

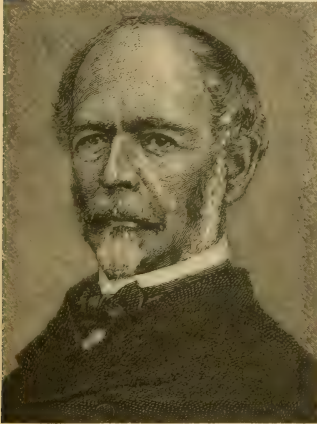
SPECIAL.—For biographical data relating to this and succeeding chapters consult the *Century Dictionary of Names* and other biographical dictionaries ; or apply the above index guide to any of the general or special works mentioned to which the student may have access. For information upon political topics see Lalor's *Cyclopedia*, Johnston's *History of American Politics*, Davis's *Rise and Fall of the Confederate Government*, Stephens's *War between the States*, Shaffner's *Secession War in America*, Curry's *Southern States of the American Union*, and Wilson's *Division and Reunion*. Upon military matters consult the *Century Company's Battles and Leaders of the Civil War* for accounts by participants on each side ; Draper's *History of the American Civil War* and Dodge's *Bird's-eye View of Our Civil War* for a Northern view, and Pollard's *Lost Cause* and Greg's *History of the United States* for a Southern view, of the many engagements. Both views should be carefully noted, so that the student may be exercised in drawing correct conclusions. The student is also advised to read *Uncle Tom's Cabin*, and compare its scenes of Southern life with those in *Marse Chan*, *Meh Lady*, and other stories by Thomas Nelson Page. Read also Jefferson Davis's farewell address to the Senate of the United States.

CHAPTER XV.**THE ADVANCE ON RICHMOND.**

President Lincoln's Call for Troops.—The fall of Fort Sumter caused great excitement throughout the country. It was seen that only by force could the South be brought back into the Union. Force meant war, and Congress alone has the right to declare war. But Congress was not in session at the time. Impelled by the rapidly rising war feeling in the North, President Lincoln issued a call for 75,000 troops. This was thought by many to be sufficient to conquer the South. General Sherman, who in time rose to the highest rank in the United States army, declared that three hundred thousand would not be sufficient. For this he was ridiculed, and some even charged him with not being in his right mind. But he knew the temper and spirit of the Southern people much better than many other Northern men, for he had been living in the South, and at the time of South Carolina's secession he was president of the Louisiana State University.

The Southern Confederacy Completed.—The governors of the Northern States responded promptly to the Pres-

ident's call for troops. The governors of the Southern States that still remained in the Union refused to do so, as they held that any State had a right to draw out of the Union and could not rightfully be compelled to come back. As soon as it was seen that force was to



From a photograph.

GENERAL JOSEPH E. JOHNSTON.

be employed, four more States seceded. These were : Virginia (April 17, 1861), Arkansas (May 6), North Carolina (May 20), and Tennessee (June 8). These States subsequently joined the Confederacy. The secession of Virginia inspired the Southern people with hope and enthu-

The Question of Loyalty.

When the passions and the prejudices awakened by the war between the States were yet fresh in the minds of the people, much that was bitter and untrue found its way into the printed histories of our country. It is now seen, however, that one section was as true to its convictions as the other ; and that neither excelled in fidelity and loyalty to ideas and principles, although the South was the more sorely tried, and suffered the more for its faithfulness.

The term "rebel," once applied to the men of the Southern armies, is now no longer current. The use of this term causes the question of loyalty to government to arise, and on this point the North and the South honestly differed in their opinions. The North had received a great many immigrants from Europe since the Revolution. These people came to the "United States," and in their minds were citizens of the United States more than they were citizens of any particular State. To them and their descendants, loyalty meant allegiance and fidelity to the Government of the United States, or "The Union."

The Southern States had received very few of these immigrants. The white people of the South were the same in blood, thought, and feeling as they were at the time of the Revolution. They held to the ideas that at one time all Americans believed in, which were, that the State, and not the Federal Government, was the sovereign authority, and that a State had the right to secede from the Union. The people of the South were therefore loyal to their State governments.

The Southern people loved the Union, but when the time came for them to choose between Union and State, their idea of duty compelled them to side with their States. The choice was often made with sorrow, particularly by those who had entered the service of the United States Government. Men like Robert E. Lee of Virginia, who in the United States

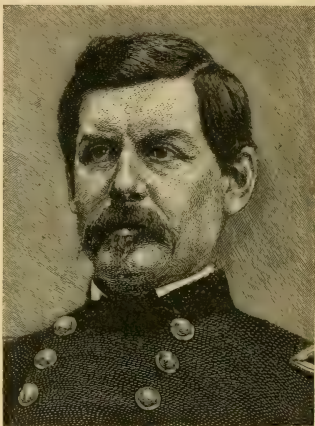
Army was regarded as an officer leading all others in military capacity, weighed the matter thoughtfully, and in deciding listened to the voice of duty, feeling that their hands could not be raised against their native State. On the other hand, duty impelled other Southern men, such as General George H. Thomas, the "general who never lost a battle," to side with the Union.

The senators and congressmen from the South resigned their positions when their States seceded, and severed their connection with the United States Government in sadness and with solemnity. The farewell address of Jefferson Davis of Mississippi to his colleagues in the United States Senate will ever stand as a noble and sincere expression of the feeling prevailing in the South at the time, that secession was legal and that the step in withdrawing from the Union was taken with reluctance and for no other purpose than to end the turmoil into which the country had been plunged for a long time.

Only the purest and most intense patriotism could have sustained the men of the Southern armies through the weary years of suffering and conflict which they were called upon to face. Should the restored Union ever be imperiled, or the American people be called upon to maintain before the world the dignity becoming to a mighty nation, the first to take up arms—be it to defend or to maintain—will be the sons and grandsons of those who submitted the courage of their convictions to the trying ordeals of the great sectional conflict.

The "Border States."—The people of Kentucky, Missouri, and Maryland were divided. A majority favored the South, but preferred remaining in the Union as neutrals. Federal troops soon occupied these States, and made secession impossible after the war began. Their citizens entered the armies of both North and South, according to their convictions as to which side was in the right.

siasm. For the State that had done so much to secure independence and to establish the Union had declared, in ratifying the Constitution, that her



From a photograph.

MAJOR-GENERAL GEORGE B. McCLELLAN.

people reserved the right to resume the powers which by that act she granted to the Government of the United States. Richmond was made the Confederate capital (May 21).

The Inevitable Conflict at Hand.

—The Confederate Government at Richmond was soon as busy preparing for war as the Federal Government at Washington. If the American people could have known what horrors, strife, and bloodshed would follow these preparations, what ruin and devastation would be inflicted upon some of the fairest portions of our land, what sorrows and miseries would be felt in a million American homes, they might well have paused before meeting one another upon the first battlefield. But the seeds of conflict had long been sown, and the harvest was now at hand. The old American spirit of determined resistance was once more aroused. North and South, divided in their opinions, were ready to fight and die for what they thought was right, as their forefathers had done. No blame or reproach is to be cast upon either, for both conducted themselves with courage on many battlefields, and each came out of the war with a profound respect for the other.

Federal Troops Assemble.—

In response to Lincoln's call for troops, bodies of volunteers assembled and were located at three principal points: At Wheeling, western Virginia, under General McClellan; near Harper's Ferry, under General Patterson; and at Washington, under General McDowell. General Winfield Scott was commander-in-chief. A body of Massachusetts troops on their way to Washington passed through Baltimore without



From a photograph.

MAJOR-GENERAL J. B. MAGRUDER,
CONFEDERATE.



From a photo furnished by his son.

LIEUTENANT-GENERAL D. H. HILL,
CONFEDERATE.



MAJOR-GENERAL I. McDOWELL,
FEDERAL.

the permission of State or city authorities, and against the protest of the citizens. In changing from one depot to another they encountered some resistance on the part of the angered people. A number of the citizens and soldiers were killed in the encounter (April 19, 1861).

Confederates Establish a Line of Defense.—To meet the threatened invasion of Virginia, the Confederates hastened to establish a line of defense.

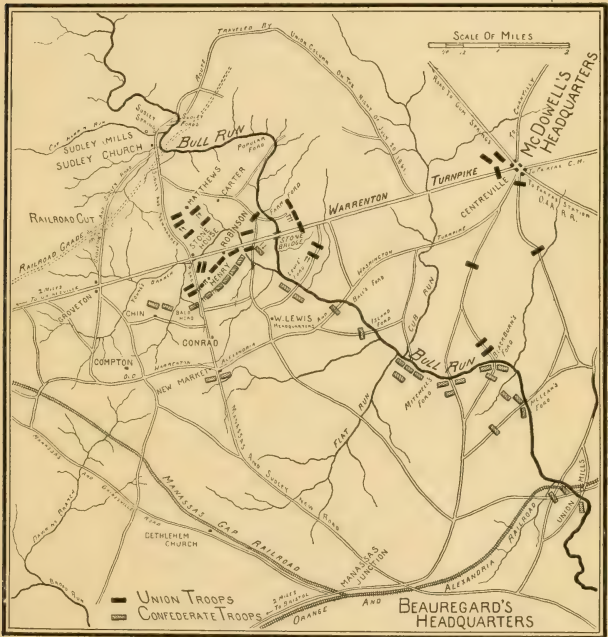
General Garnett was sent into northwestern Virginia; General J. E. Johnston was posted near Harper's Ferry to defend the Shenandoah Valley; General Beauregard assumed command of troops at Manassas Junction, near Washington; General Magruder was stationed on Yorktown peninsula; and General Huger was intrusted with the defense of Norfolk. Thus a line of defense was established extending from the mountains of western Virginia to the mouth of the Chesapeake Bay.

Military Operations Begin.—McClellan's advance into western Virginia was marked by two unimportant but successful engagements, at Rich Mountain (July 11) and at Carrick's Ford (July 14). A part of Johnston's forces under General Jackson blocked Patterson's advance at Falling Waters, near Martinsburg (July 2), after which they fell back and rejoined Johnston. The Federal advance into southeastern Virginia was checked by a part of General Magruder's forces under Colonel D. H. Hill, who won a victory at Big Bethel, halfway between Yorktown and Norfolk (June 10).



From a photograph.
GENERAL E. KIRBY SMITH,
CONFEDERATE.

“On to Richmond!”—The idea generally prevailed in the North that the capture of the Confederate capital would end hostilities. “On to Richmond!” became the cry. It soon became evident that the first important battle would take place when the advance was made from Washington. Here an army



PLAN OF THE BATTLEFIELD OF MANASSAS.

of 60,000 men assembled. General Scott, who had fought his first battles in the War of 1812, was now too old to take the field, so the command fell to General Irwin McDowell.

First Battle of Manassas, or Bull Run.—McDowell's army set out from Washington so confident of success that

they regarded their march as something like a holiday excursion. They encountered the Confederates at Bull Run Creek (July 18). On the 20th Johnston, with part of his Shenandoah forces, joined Beauregard. A battle was fought on the 21st. It seemed at first as if the Confederates would be defeated, for the Federals forced back the Confederate left under Evans and Bee. But a brigade of troops under General Thomas Jonathan Jackson was drawn up in the rear within supporting distance. Then Bee rode up to Jackson and exclaimed: "General, they are beating us back." "Sir," quietly answered Jackson, "we will give them the bayonet." The effect of his words was wonderful. Bee galloped back to his men, shouting: "Look, there is Jackson standing like a stone wall; let us determine to die here, and we will conquer." Bee's men rallied and formed on the right of Jackson. Here they were joined by Colonel Wade Hampton. The advance of the Federals was checked, additional troops on both sides were brought up, and long the battle raged. The arrival of the remainder of Johnston's troops, under General Kirby Smith, and a charge by Early's brigade decided the battle in favor of the Confederates. The Union forces, becoming panic-stricken, hastily abandoned all ammunition and accouterments, and hurried back to Washington. Thenceforth Jackson was known as "Stonewall" Jackson.

Questions.—What did the fall of Fort Sumter cause? What call did Lincoln issue? Who thought the President's call not sufficient? Why? Who responded to Lincoln's call for troops? Who refused? Why? What four States now joined the Confederacy? What effect had the secession of Virginia upon the South? With whom did the people of border States side? It might have averted war if the American people had known what? At what three points were Federal volunteers located? Under what three generals? What happened in Baltimore? What five Confederate generals established a line of defense? Where was each posted? What happened in western Virginia? At Falling Waters? Big Bethel? What in the opinion of the North would end the war? Who led the advance from Washington upon Richmond? Near what stream did the first encounter occur? Tell what you know of the first battle of Manassas. What Confederate generals were prominent in this action? What general turned the battle in favor of the Confederates? How did General Jackson obtain the name "Stonewall"?

FOR ADVANCED CLASSES.

Topics for Discussion.

- I. War Preparations, North and South. II. The Question of Loyalty. III. Beginning of the War in West Virginia. IV. First Campaign against Richmond—Manassas, or Bull Run.

References and Authorities.

- Battles and Leaders of the Civil War*, vol. i.
 War preparations, 84. McClellan in West Virginia, 126. Bull Run, 167.
Draper's History of the American Civil War, vol. ii.
 War in West Virginia, 241-247. Bull Run, 114-126.
Pollard's Lost Cause.
 West Virginia, 141, 169. Manassas, 143.

Parallel Readings.

- INDEX GUIDE for comparative examination of other works and authorities.—Historical:
Virginia, Secession of. Border States, The. Rich Mountain, Battle of. Carrick's Ford, Battle of. Big Bethel, Battle of. Bull Run, First Battle of.
 Biographical: *Johnston, Joseph E. Magruder, General J. B. McClellan, General George B. McDowell, General Irwin. Jackson, General T. J.*
 SPECIAL.—Rossiter Johnson: *Short History of the War of Secession*, chaps. iv. and v.
 Swinton: *Twelve Decisive Battles of the War*, chap. i., Bull Run. V. A. Lewis: *History of West Virginia*, chap. xxviii. Roman: *Life of Beauregard*. John Esten Cooke: *Life of Stonewall Jackson*. Hughes: *Life of Joseph E. Johnston*. Dodge: *Bird's-eye View of the Civil War*, chaps. iii. and iv. Henderson: *Stonewall Jackson*.

CHAPTER XVI.

EARLY BATTLES IN THE WEST.

The victory at Manassas filled the people of the South with exultation. They believed that their success was assured, and they did not continue war preparations as energetically as at first. Upon the North the effect of this battle was very different. It convinced the people of that section that the Union could be preserved only by a war carefully planned and seriously prosecuted. The energies and resources of the Federal Government were at once brought into activity. Congress appropriated \$500,000,000 and voted to raise 500,000 men to carry on the war.

Army of the Potomac Organized.—There was soon assembled, organized, and equipped in the vicinity of Washington one of the largest armies of modern times. It numbered more than 150,000 men, and was called the Army of the Potomac. Several months, however, elapsed before this army

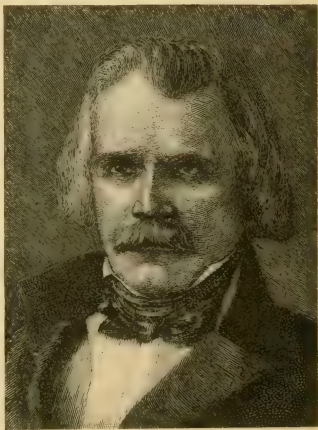
Sibley's Expedition.

Shortly after the battle of Manassas, or Bull Run, General H. H. Sibley was sent to Texas to raise a brigade to prevent a threatened invasion from New Mexico. With three regiments he set out from San Antonio, and by way of the Rio Grande Valley arrived at the scene of his operations after having performed a memorable march. Battles were fought with the Union forces already in possession of the Territory, at Valverde (February 21, 1862), Glorieta (March 27), and Peralta (April 23), in all of which the Texans displayed their proverbial valor. To hold the country, however, was found to be impracticable, and the men of Sibley's Brigade returned to take part in other and more important scenes and actions.

was ready to begin active operations. Meanwhile important events were happening in the West, where even larger armies were organized under Generals H. W. Halleck and Don Carlos Buell.

Early Operations in Missouri.—The Missouri Convention voted to remain in the Union, and neutral. The people sympathized with the South, and Governor Jackson declined to answer Mr. Lincoln's call for troops. Subsequently Captain Lyon of the Federal Army

broke up a camp of militia near St. Louis, and took forcible possession of that city (May 10, 1861). This caused great excitement, and the governor issued a call (June 13) for 50,000 militia, "to preserve order and enforce the law within the State." Lyon's activity compelled the governor, with the militia that had assembled, to retire to the southwestern part of the State. General Sigel, with 1,100 troops, tried to intercept him near Carthage, but he routed Sigel (July 5). General Sterling Price then took charge of the State troops. He joined with General McCulloch's Confederate brigade and an Arkansas brigade under General Pearce.



From a photograph, age 57.

ALBERT SIDNEY JOHNSTON,

CONFEDERATE.

These forces met Lyon at Oak Hill, or Wilson's Creek, near Springfield, where Lyon was defeated and killed (August 10, 1861). The Confederate brigades then returned to Arkansas, and Price marched northward to Lexington, which he captured (September 20), with 3,500 prisoners and a large amount of stores.

Confederates Establish a Western Line of Defense.—In its preparations to resist invasion, the Confederate Government intrusted its Western defenses to General Albert Sidney Johnston, an experienced officer and one of the ablest



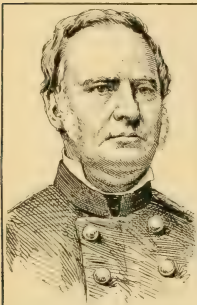
MAP OF THE WAR IN THE WEST.

soldiers of his time. Johnston established east of the Mississippi a line of defense whose principal points were Columbus, Ky., Forts Henry and Donelson upon the Tennessee and Cumberland rivers, Bowling Green and Cumberland Gap, Ky.; while General Earl Van Dorn was placed in command west of the Mississippi.

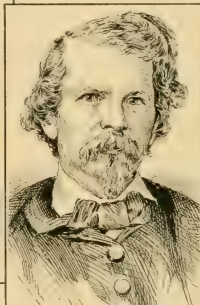
Disposition of Federal Forces in the West.—Halleck, from his headquarters at St. Louis, sent a part of his forces, under General Curtis, to southern Missouri to operate against Van Dorn. The remainder were collected at Cairo,

Ill., under General Ulysess S. Grant, and at Paducah, Ky., under General C. F. Smith. Buell's forces were assembled at various points in eastern Kentucky, and were to coöperate with Halleck in breaking through the Southern line of defense.

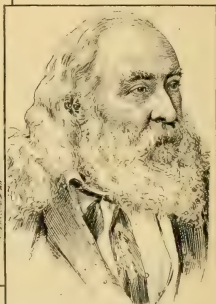
Battle of Pea Ridge.—To resist Curtis, Van Dorn gathered the forces of Price and McCulloch, and was joined by General Albert Pike with several regiments of Indians from the Indian Territory, whom he had succeeded in winning



MAJ.-GEN. STERLING PRICE.
FROM A PHOTO CONFEDERATE



MAJ.-GEN. EARL VAN DORN.
PHOTO IN '62 CONFEDERATE.



BRIG.-GEN. ALBERT PIKE.
PHOTO IN '88. CONFEDERATE.

to the cause of the Confederacy. The combined forces attacked Curtis at Elkhorn Tavern, near Bentonville, in north-western Arkansas, and the engagement that took place (March 5-8, 1862) is known as the Battle of Pea Ridge. A part of Van Dorn's army was routed, with the loss of two of the bravest officers on the Confederate side—McCulloch and McIntosh. The other part kept up the fight with energy; so neither side gained a complete victory. Curtis returned to Missouri, and the Confederates soon after were summoned east of the Mississippi to coöperate with Beauregard against Halleck.

Grant's Campaign in Western Kentucky and Tennessee.—General Leonidas Polk, in command of Johnston's forces at Columbus, Ky., established a camp across the river at

Belmont, Mo. General Grant, descending the river from Cairo, landed and attacked this camp, but reënforcements sent by Polk crossed the river and drove him back to his gunboats (November 7, 1861). Grant's next operations, however, were more successful. Uniting forces with General Smith, and with the aid of a powerful fleet of gunboats under Commodore Foote, he captured the Confederate strongholds of Fort Henry, on the Tennessee River (February 6, 1862), and Fort Donelson, on the Cumberland River (February 16).

Buell's Campaign in Eastern Kentucky.—The loss of Fort Donelson was a severe blow to the South, for with it



From a photograph.

MAJOR-GENERAL H. W. HALLECK,
FEDERAL.



From a photograph.

GENERAL ULYSSES S. GRANT.

more than 7,000 men were taken prisoners, and the rivers were opened to the Federal gunboats. In its capture General Grant first manifested those qualities of determination and perseverance which were to make him the greatest general on the Northern side. Meanwhile the Confederate forces in southeastern Kentucky, under Generals Crit-

tenden and Zollicoffer, had been defeated (January 19) by a part of Buell's forces under General George H. Thomas, near Mill Springs, General Zollicoffer losing his life in the action. The disasters of Fort Donelson and Mill Springs compelled Johnston to fall back from Bowling Green and establish a new line of defense, which extended from New Madrid, Mo., through Jackson, Tenn., to Murfreesboro. Nashville was occupied by Buell (February 25).

Grant's Advance Southward.—After the capture of Fort Donelson, Grant was relieved of his command for a short

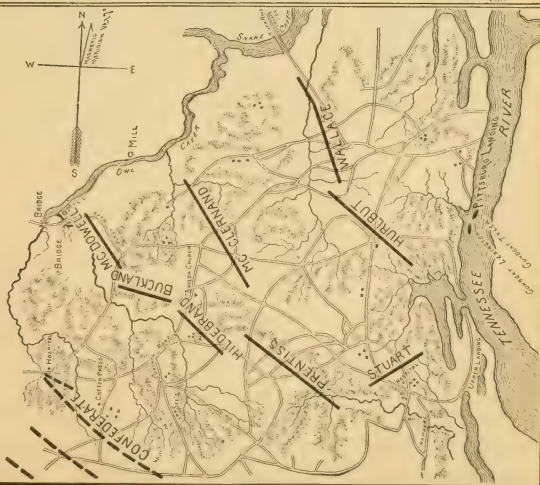


time. When he was reinstated he joined his army, which had been carried in steamboats up the Tennessee River to Pittsburg Landing, near the State line of Mississippi. Here Buell had been ordered to reinforce him. Johnston determined to attack Grant before the two armies could unite. By skillful generalship he concentrated the widely scattered divisions of his command and organized them into three corps under Generals Bragg, Polk, and Hardee at Corinth, Miss. General Beauregard was with Johnston as second in command.

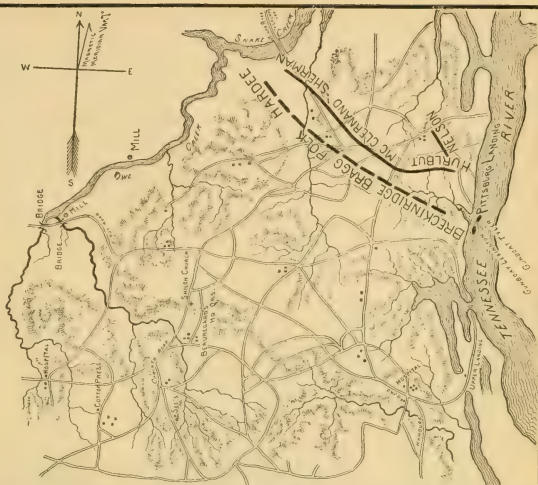
Battle of Shiloh.—Johnston's plan was to take Grant by surprise. In this he was completely successful. Advancing

POSITION—MORNING—APR. 6.—
FEDERAL ———
CONFEDERATE - - - -

PLAN OF BATTLEFIELD OF SHILOH.



POSITION—SUNSET—APR. 6.—
FEDERAL ———
CONFEDERATE - - - -



quietly, he attacked the Federal camps near Shiloh Church, about two miles from the Tennessee River (April 6), and although he was greatly outnumbered, he forced the Federals back to the river, capturing many prisoners and stores. But the victory was dearly won. In the heat of battle Johnston received a wound to which he gave little attention. The extent of his injury was not realized, and he died from loss of blood. The death of Johnston largely determined subsequent events in the West. Beauregard, who was ill and with the rear guard, assumed command, and late in the afternoon ordered the troops to withdraw, intending to renew the battle the next day.

The Second Day's Battle.—During the night Buell's army arrived. With this heavy reënforcement the Federals were enabled to renew the engagement the next day, and regain the ground they had lost. The Confederates then fell back to Corinth, where they were joined by reënforcements under Van Dorn and Price, who, having fought the battle of Pea Ridge, had crossed the Mississippi from Arkansas. Halleck arrived from St. Louis and assumed command of the Federal forces. He concentrated 100,000 men near Shiloh, on the Tennessee River. By the end of May he had intrenched his army before Corinth, ready to attack. Beauregard, having only 53,000 men, quietly withdrew from Corinth, and within a week reached Tupelo, Miss., fifty-five miles south, without serious loss. On account of ill-health he was relieved of his command, and General Bragg was appointed to succeed him.

Iuka and Corinth.—Halleck occupied Corinth, and immediately sent part of his army, under Buell, east along the Memphis & Charleston Railroad, to attack Chattanooga. He also sent a part of his army west, under Grant, to hold northern Mississippi and western Tennessee. About the middle of July, Halleck was made general-in-chief of the Army of the United States, and went to Washington, leaving Grant in command of the district, and Rosecrans at Corinth. Meanwhile Bragg had gone with the main body of his army to Chattanooga, to oppose Buell, leaving Price with about 15,000 men in

command at Tupelo, and Van Dorn with a smaller force in western Mississippi. Price captured Iuka, and five days later had started back to join Van Dorn, when he was unsuccessfully attacked by Rosecrans (September 19). Being informed during the night that Grant with reënforcements was near, Price moved off at early dawn and returned to Baldwin. Later, Van Dorn and Price united, and attacked Rosecrans, strongly intrenched, at Corinth (October 3-4, 1862). Many times their men gallantly charged the Federal forts, and cap-



tured a part of the town, but they were finally driven back with heavy loss. Grant sent reënforcements to Rosecrans, and the Confederates finally gave up the attack and retreated south.

Bragg's Kentucky Campaign.—For the purpose of drawing Buell from Alabama and Tennessee, Bragg ordered Kirby Smith, who was at Knoxville with 10,000 men, to move forward into Kentucky. The order was skillfully executed, and on the 30th of August he gained a decisive victory at Richmond, capturing 5,000 prisoners. He took possession of

Frankfort and Lexington, and advanced to within twelve miles of Louisville. At the same time that Smith started from Knoxville, Bragg left Chattanooga with 28,000 men. On the 16th of September he captured Munfordville, Ky., with 4,500 prisoners. He reached Frankfort, October 1st, and inaugurated Hon. Richard Hawes as provisional governor of the State. At Louisville was a force of 30,000 men, while 45,000 were collected at Cincinnati, to oppose Bragg. Buell hastened from Nashville with an army of 54,000 to reach Louisville and unite all the Federal forces before Bragg could capture the city. The advance of both armies took the form of a race. Buell arrived at Louisville first, and Bragg decided to fall back. He was overtaken at Perryville (October 8), where a severe engagement followed, but the Confederates gained a decided advantage, and being joined by General Smith on the 10th, returned unmolested to Tennessee, bringing their long wagon-trains.

Questions.—What was the effect of the battle of Manassas, or Bull Run, upon the South? Upon the North? What soon assembled at Washington? What action did the Missouri Convention take? With whom did the people sympathize? Tell something of Captain Lyon. To where were the Missouri governor and troops compelled to retire? What battle did they win on the way? Under whom did Arkansas troops join those of Missouri? What battle was fought by the combined forces? When? What was the result? When and by whom was Lexington taken? To whom had the Confederate Government intrusted its Western defenses? What were the five principal points in Johnston's line of defense? Who was placed in command west of the Mississippi? Under whom did Halleck send a part of his forces to operate against Van Dorn? Where did the remainder collect? Under whom? What forces did Van Dorn gather? What was the result of the battle of Pea Ridge? Who commanded Johnston's forces at Columbus? What was the result of the battle of Belmont? What forts did Grant capture after his defeat at Belmont? When? What victory did the Federal General Thomas win in Kentucky? What was Johnston now compelled to do? Who occupied Nashville? Tell what you know of the battle of Shiloh. How did the Federal and Confederate forces compare in strength? What happened to Johnston? Who took his place? How large an army gathered under General Halleck near Shiloh? To what point did Beauregard withdraw after leaving Corinth? Tell something of the battles of Iuka and Corinth. Who was made commander-in-chief of the Federal armies? Against whom did General Bragg operate? Price and Van Dorn? What battles occurred in Bragg's Kentucky campaign?

FOR ADVANCED CLASSES.

Topics for Discussion.

I. Sibley's Expedition to New Mexico. II. Beginning of the War in Missouri: Carthage, Wilson's Creek, and Lexington. III. Curtis's Advance into Arkansas: Pea Ridge. IV. Grant's Campaign in Western Kentucky and Tennessee: Belmont, Fort Donelson. V. Federal Campaign in Eastern Kentucky: Mill Springs. VI. Battles of Shiloh and Pittsburg Landing. VII. Grant and Rosecrans in North Mississippi: Iuka, Corinth. VIII. Bragg's Kentucky Campaign: Perryville.

References and Authorities.

The Century Company's *Battles and Leaders of the Civil War*.

Vol. ii.: Sibley's expedition, 103. First year of the war in Missouri, vol. i., 262. Pea Ridge, 314. Western Tennessee and Kentucky campaign, 338. Eastern Kentucky campaign, 373. Shiloh, 463. Vol. iii.: Perryville, 1. Vol. ii.: Iuka and Corinth, 717.

Draper's *History of the American Civil War*, vol. ii.

Civil and military actions in Missouri, chap. xlvii. West Kentucky campaign, 226, 260-271. East Kentucky campaign, 273. Shiloh, chap. 1. Iuka and Corinth, 312-317. Bragg's campaign, chap. liii.

Pollard's *Lost Cause*.

Missouri campaign, 154-169, 222. Belmont and Donelson, 182, 203. Shiloh, 237. Corinth, 320, 334. Bragg's Kentucky campaign, 327.

Parallel Readings.

INDEX GUIDE for comparative examination of other works and authorities.—Historical: *New Mexico, Confederate Invasion of. Carthage, Battle of. Wilson's Creek, Battle of. Pea Ridge, Battle of. Belmont, Battle of. Donelson, Fall of Fort. Mill Springs, Battle of. Shiloh, Battle of. Pittsburg, Battle of. Iuka, Battle of. Corinth, Battle of. Perryville, Battle of.*

Biographical: *Sibley, General H. H. Lyon, Captain Nathaniel. Sigel, General Franz. Price, General Sterling. Johnston, General Albert Sidney. Van Dorn, General Earl. Grant, General U. S. Buell, General D. C. Curtis, General S. R. Polk, General Leonidas. Thomas, General Geo. H. Bragg, General Braxton.*

SPECIAL.—Thomas L. Sneed: *The Fight for Missouri*. Grant: *Memoirs*. Johnston: *Life of Albert Sidney Johnston*. Swinton: *Twelve Decisive Battles*, chap. ii., Donelson and Shiloh. Roman: *Military Operations of Beauregard*. Johnson: *Short History of the War of Secession*. Dodge: *Bird's-eye View*. Duke: *History of Morgan's Cavalry*. Jordan and Pryor: *Campaigns of N. B. Forrest*.

CHAPTER XVII.

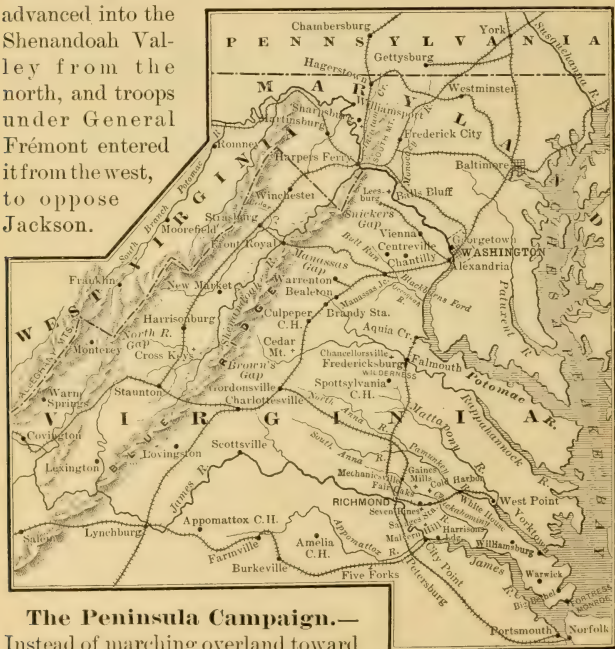
THE WAR IN VIRGINIA.

1.

Confederate Success in Virginia.—The Union successes by which the Confederacy's western line of defense was broken were more than offset by a number of remarkable Confederate victories in Virginia. After the battle of Manassas, General J. E. Johnston remained in command of the Confed-

erate forces in Virginia. Stonewall Jackson was sent to the valley through which the Shenandoah River runs.

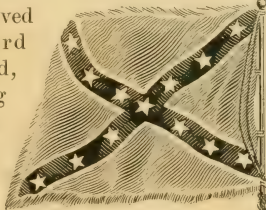
Second Federal Advance into Virginia.—McClellan was called from western Virginia and placed at the head of the Army of the Potomac, which was to move upon Richmond. General Banks advanced into the Shenandoah Valley from the north, and troops under General Frémont entered it from the west, to oppose Jackson.



The Peninsula Campaign.—Instead of marching overland toward Richmond and thereby encountering Johnston's army, McClellan transferred his army by boats to the historic peninsula between the York and James rivers, leaving McDowell with about 40,000 men between Washington and Johnston's army.

To oppose the advance of McClellan's army was a force of

10,000 under General Magruder at Yorktown. So skillfully were these few troops arranged, and so bold a front did they present, that McClellan was completely deceived. He lost a whole month in the siege of Yorktown and in calling for reënforcements. This gave Johnston time to move his army nearer Richmond and join Magruder with reënforcements. McDowell could not follow him, for Jackson in the Shenandoah Valley, near by, was threatening Washington. When McClellan at last decided to advance, Johnston evacuated Yorktown and retired up the Peninsula. At Williamsburg (May 5, 1862) he made a stand, to gain time for his wagon trains to pass on. McClellan attacked him, but was repulsed; and during the night Johnston moved on toward Richmond, leaving McClellan in possession of the field. Johnston's



THE CONFEDERATE FLAG.

army and wagon trains reached Richmond in safety.

Seven Pines and Fair Oaks.—One corps of McClellan's army had already gone by water to White House on the Pamunkey River, and by the middle of May his whole army was united in that vicinity, where McDowell, marching overland from Fredericksburg, was expected to join him.

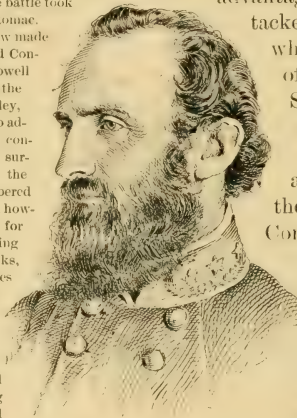
Jackson's Valley Campaign.

Before the spring of 1862 fairly opened in the Shenandoah Valley, Jackson hurled his little army of 3,500 against 7,000 of Banks's army under General Shields, at Kernstown (March 23). Though unsuccessful, the boldness of this movement awakened such consternation that reënforcements designed for McClellan's army on the Peninsula were retained for the defense of Washington. In moving from Manassas to confront McClellan in the Yorktown Peninsula, Johnston had left a few troops under General Ewell to oppose any advance made by McDowell, whom McClellan had left to defend Washington. A division of Frémont's forces under Colonels Milroy and Schenck, advancing from western Virginia, had taken post at a place called McDowell, situated without the Valley, about forty miles west of Staunton. Here they were opposed by a few Confederate troops under General Edward Johnson. The genius of Jackson for making rapid and skillful military combinations now shone forth. Summoning Ewell to confront Banks so as to conceal his own movements, he marched his men up the Valley, with incredible rapidity, a dis-

tance of 100 miles, joined forces with Johnson, drove Milroy and Schenck out of McDowell, chased them for two days, and before Banks knew that the Confederate commander had disappeared from his front he had performed another march of 120 miles and was back again. Joining forces with Ewell, he completely routed Banks at Front Royal (May 23), and pushed him northward to Winchester. Here Banks was again defeated (May 25), and after the battle took refuge beyond the Potomac.

Active effort was now made to capture the intrepid Confederate leader. McDowell was ordered to cross the mountains into the valley, Banks and Frémont to advance, and thus by a convergence of columns surround him. In all, the forces opposed numbered about 60,000. Jackson, however, was too quick for his adversaries. Falling rapidly back from Banks, and burning the bridges over the Shenandoah so that Frémont's and McDowell's forces—the latter under Shields—could not unite, he reached a point within striking distance of each, and fell upon them at Cross Keys (June 8) and Port Republic (June 9)

in rapid succession, gaining an additional victory in each instance. Before his bewildered antagonists realized what had happened, Jackson had slipped out of the Valley in safety, with all the spoils of his victories, and was on his way to join Lee in the Seven Days' Battles. He had, in three months, marched 400 miles, defeated four armies, captured 3,500 prisoners, and with forces at no time exceeding 17,000 had occupied the attention of 60,000 Federals. In the Army of Virginia his corps was known as "Jackson's foot cavalry."



"STONEWALL" JACKSON.

But Jackson's success in the Valley kept McDowell at Fredericksburg. McClellan advanced toward Richmond, and by the end of May was in sight of the church spires of that city. The Chickahominy River divided his army. Johnston took

advantage of this and at-

tacked the two corps which were south

of the river at

Seven Pines and

at Fair Oaks

Station (May 31

and June 1). On

the first day the Confederates won ;

but during the

night McClel-

lan sent reën-

forcements to

Fair Oaks, and

on the second

day the Confed-

erates retired to-

ward Richmond.

During the first day's battle

Johnston was wounded. Gen-

eral Robert E. Lee was then

appointed commander of the

Confederate Army in Virginia.

Stuart's Ride around

McClellan.—While McClel-

lan was waiting for McDowell,

the Confederate General J. E.

B. Stuart, with a body of cav-

alry, rode completely around McClellan's army. It required several days to do this. On the way the cavalry captured a number of prisoners, and obtained information concerning the Federal forces that was of great value to Lee.

Seven Days' Battles.—Meanwhile Jackson had executed his brilliant Valley campaign and had prevented McDowell from reinforcing McClellan. While the Federals were looking for Jackson in the Valley, he suddenly appeared with his corps north of Richmond, and joining Lee's left, led the attack upon McClellan. Seven days of battle now followed (June 25—July 1), during which McClellan was driven from point to point, and only upon the last day, at Malvern Hill, did he succeed in checking the victorious advance of Lee. That night he reached the shelter of the gunboats at Harrison's Landing, on the James River. The Peninsula campaign was a failure for the Federals.

Third Campaign against Richmond.—Ten days after the battle of Malvern Hill, Halleck was appointed general-in-chief of the Federal army. The troops of Banks, Frémont, and McDowell had already been organized into an army under the command of General John Pope. Part of McClellan's men were brought by water to strengthen Pope, whose advance division under Banks was at Culpeper Court House. To oppose Pope, Lee sent a force under



MAJOR-GENERAL N. P. BANKS,
FEDERAL.



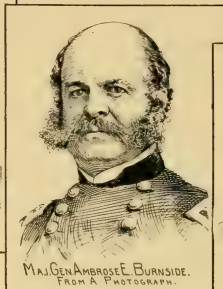
MAJ.-GEN. JOHN C. FRÉMONT,
FEDERAL.

Jackson, who defeated Banks at Cedar Mountain, not far from Culpeper Court House.

Jackson gained Pope's rear, destroyed his supplies at Manas-

sas, and moved toward Washington. Pope promptly followed, and McClellan's army was ordered up from the Peninsula to help Pope. Lee with the remainder of his command under Longstreet joined Jackson, who had taken a position on the old battlefield of Manassas. Here the

second battle of Manassas was



fought (August 29, 30). Lee's army numbered 49,000; Pope's combined forces, 70,000. Pope was defeated and retreated toward Washington. This ended the third campaign against Richmond.

2.

Lee's First Invasion of the North.—Lee now determined to transfer the war to the North. He crossed the Potomac into Maryland, sending Jackson to Harper's Ferry, where a Federal force of 13,000 was stationed. Jackson besieged, stormed, and captured the place, taking the whole garrison prisoners (September 15, 1862), after which he joined Lee. McClellan, who was again placed in command of the Federal army, hastily advanced to meet Lee. General D. H. Hill, at South Mountain (September 14), prevented McClellan from relieving Harper's Ferry and attacking Lee.

Sharpsburg, or Antietam.—The opposing forces of Lee and McClellan met at Antietam Creek, near Sharpsburg, Md. The main attack was made (September 17) by the Federals on

the Confederate left, which was several times broken. An attack on the Confederate right was repulsed. The Confederates held all of their positions, and the Federals retired from the field. The next day Lee awaited another attack, but none came. To remain longer would enable McClellan to gather fresh reënforcements ; so on the following day Lee recrossed the Potomac without being molested. McClellan sent a force across the river in pursuit, but it was driven back with severe loss. As a battle, Sharpsburg was indecisive ; as a result, Lee abandoned his Maryland campaign.

Fourth Campaign against Richmond.—McClellan was blamed for not following Lee, and was relieved of his command. The Army of the Potomac was reorganized under General Ambrose E. Burnside, and advanced for the fourth time to take Richmond. Burnside attacked Lee at Fredericksburg (December 13). The Federal army made a gallant fight, but again sustained a disastrous defeat. For the rest of the winter the two armies faced each other at Fredericksburg, separated only by the Rappahannock River.

A fifth campaign against Richmond was planned by General Joseph Hooker, who had superseded Burnside in January, 1863. With an army of 130,000, Hooker was confident of success, since the Confederate army numbered but 60,000. A part of his army, under General Sedgwick, crossed the Rappahannock (April 29) below Fredericksburg, to occupy the attention of Lee ; and on the same day the main body crossed the river some distance above, and took position at Chancellorsville, twelve miles west of Fredericksburg, on the rear of Lee's army. A splendid corps of cavalry, 10,000 strong, under General Stoneman, was sent around Lee's army, between him and Richmond, to destroy the railroads and cut off his retreat. Hooker's plan was to surround and destroy Lee's army.

Chancellorsville.—Lee left 10,000 men on the Heights of Fredericksburg to hold Sedgwick in check, and promptly moved the rest of his army toward Chancellorsville. A daring plan was conceived by Jackson, and executed with

Lee's permission. Jackson with his corps made a forced march of twenty miles from Fredericksburg across the entire front of the Federal army. His movements were concealed by the

Death of Stonewall Jackson.

Although the Confederate successes of the Chancellorsville campaign were brilliant in the extreme, they nevertheless proved dearly bought victories. Jackson's attack upon Hooker's right flank ended at twilight. Expecting to continue the attack the next day, he rode forward with several members of his staff to reconnoiter. Returning, the reconnoitering party were in the dusk mistaken for Federal cavalry, and a body of Confederate soldiers fired upon them. Jackson received a wound that directly afterward hastened his death. The illustrious soldier passed away (May 10) at Guinea Station.

His loss was irreparable to the Confederacy. A man of pure and spotless character, both North and South unite in honoring his memory. His life was given to the service of his State. As a teacher, he instructed her youth in her Military Institute at Lexington. As a patriot, he hastened to her defense at the first indication that she was to be attacked. As a devout Christian, he never failed to render to the Almighty the prayerful tribute of a strong and earnest nature before every battle. As a general, he inspired unlimited confidence in the hearts of his men, and they had come to believe that where he was, defeat could not be. As a military genius, he stands among the greatest military commanders the world has produced.

forests and shrubbery surrounding Chancellorsville. Coming late in the afternoon (May 2) upon the right flank of Hooker's army — the flank farthest from Fredericksburg — he fell unexpectedly upon General Howard, who commanded that part of the field. The surprise was complete. Nothing could stay the resistless energy with which the Confederate ranks emerged from the woods and advanced upon the Union works. Howard was driven back in confusion, and darkness ended the fight. During the night Stonewall Jackson was mortally wounded by his own men, who mistook him for an enemy.

The next morning (May 3) both wings of Lee's army attacked Hooker and drove him back toward the river. At the same time, Sedgwick, marching to Hooker's relief, carried the Heights of Fredericksburg, but in the afternoon was faced by

Lee with three divisions of his troops and defeated. Lee turned to renew the attack on Hooker, but that officer with his whole army had gained the river, which they recrossed (May 5). This ended the fifth Federal campaign against Richmond.



THE LAST MEETING OF LEE AND JACKSON ON THE NIGHT BEFORE CHANCELLORSVILLE.

Lee's Second Invasion of the North.—After the victory of Chancellorsville, Lee again determined to carry the war into the North. He left the main body of his cavalry in Virginia under Stuart, to watch Hooker. Moving his army

in three corps, under Generals Ewell, Longstreet, and A. P. Hill, to the Shenandoah Valley, he proceeded northward into Pennsylvania, took possession of Chambersburg and York, and threatened Philadelphia, Harrisburg, and Washington. Hearing of the advance of the Federals, he decided (July 29) to concentrate his army at Gettysburg.

Gettysburg.—Hooker was ordered to hurry his army from Virginia towards Pennsylvania to oppose Lee. After crossing the Potomac, Hooker was relieved, and General George G. Meade was appointed in his place (June 28). Meade pushed



on, and two days later his advance corps suddenly met part of Lee's army at Gettysburg (July 1). In the fight which followed, Meade's men were driven back with heavy loss, but retreated to Cemetery Ridge, south of the town.

The Second Day.—The rest of Meade's army was hurried forward, and during that night and the next day concentrated on Cemetery Ridge and the hills which flanked it on the east and south. During the second day (July 2) Lee made repeated attacks on the Ridge and the flanking hills with some success; but in the evening Meade still held a strong position, which every hour was made stronger. That night, Lee determined to storm Cemetery Ridge next day and carry it by assault, if





MAJ.-GEN. GEORGE G. MEADE,
FEDERAL.

possible. Orders were issued and preparations made. Pickett's division, 4,900 strong, and Heth's division, 5,000 strong, under General Pettigrew, were selected to make the charge. Scales's and Lane's brigades of Pender's division, under General Trimble, and Wilcox's division were to support this charge.

The Third Day; Pickett's Charge.

—At one o'clock (July 3) the Confederate artillery which stretched along the ridges opposite the Federal position opened a fire which was promptly returned. For two hours the roar of artillery lasted. At the end of that time the Federal fire slackened, and a long gray line with bristling bayonets came out into the open field and started across the intervening space. Moving firmly as if on dress parade, they crossed the open valley, unshaken by the storm of shot and shell that worked sad havoc to their ranks, and charged up to the Union intrenchments with a gallantry that thrilled both enemies and friends with admiration. Over the earthworks they poured, only to find overwhelming numbers concentrated at the point of attack, ready to receive them. A deadly fire was rained upon their rapidly thinning ranks. Generals Garnett and Armistead fell dead, and Generals Kemper, Fry, and Trimble were wounded. The charge was repulsed. Though victory was not won, yet fame will rest upon their memories forever, because they gave to the world an example of heroism that has seldom been equaled and never surpassed.

Return of Lee to Virginia.—The battle of Gettysburg ended with the third day. On the fourth, Lee waited in position for Meade to advance, but that general remained well



Lee at Gettysburg.

Never did Lee show the attributes of a great commander more unmistakably than when he rode out to meet the men returning from the memorable Gettysburg charge. "All this will come right in the end. . . . All good men must rally. We want all good and true men just now," said he in his kindly tone as he rallied them. Too often army commanders lay the blame for failure upon their subordinate officers. This Lee never did. To General Wilcox, who rode up and almost sobbed as he told of the loss of his men, Lee held out his hand and said: "Never mind, General, all this has been my fault. It is I who have lost this fight, and you must help me out of it the best way you can."

satisfied with having repelled the attack of his antagonist. The Confederates then proceeded to fall back to the Potomac, Meade following leisurely without venturing another battle, and the seat of war was again transferred to Virginia.

Questions.—Who remained in command of the Confederate forces at Manassas? In the Shenandoah Valley? What three Federal generals were preparing to advance? How did McClellan advance upon Richmond? What force interposed between him and Richmond? Why was resistance offered at Williamsburg? What battle was fought

after McClellan had crossed part of his army over the Chickahominy? What happened to Johnston? Who succeeded Johnston? What remarkable achievement did Stuart perform? What was the result of the Seven Days' Battles? After McClellan's failure to capture Richmond, who arrived and took charge of military operations? Under whom did another Federal army take the field? Between whom was the battle of Cedar Mountain fought? What do you know of the second battle of Manassas?

What did Lee now determine? Whom did Lee send to Harper's Ferry? What did Jackson succeed in doing? Who held back the Federals at South Mountain? Who was again placed in command of the Federals? What do you know of the battle of Sharpsburg? Who now succeeded McClellan? Where did the armies of Lee and Burnside meet? What was the result of the battle of Fredericksburg? Who succeeded Burnside? What do you know of the battle of Chancellorsville? What part did Jackson take in this battle? What three generals led the second Confederate advance northward? What large cities were threatened by the Confederate advance? How many days did the battle of Gettysburg last? What was the result of the first day? What do you know of the second day's battle? What do you know of Pickett's charge?

FOR ADVANCED CLASSES.

Topics for Discussion.

- I. Jackson's Valley Campaign. II. Second Campaign against Richmond: Williamsburg, Seven Pines, Seven Days' Battles. III. Third Campaign against Richmond: Cedar Mountain, Second Bull Run. IV. Lee's First Northern Invasion: Harper's Ferry, Sharpsburg or Antietam. V. Fourth Campaign against Richmond: Fredericksburg. VI. Fifth Campaign against Richmond: Chancellorsville. VII. Death of Stonewall Jackson. VIII. Lee's Second Northern Invasion: Gettysburg.

References and Authorities.

Battles and Leaders of the Civil War.

Vol. ii. : Valley campaign, 282. Williamsburg and Seven Pines, 160. Seven Days' Battles, 319. Cedar Mountain and Second Bull Run, 449. Harper's Ferry and Antietam, 545. Vol. iii. : Fredericksburg, 70. Chancellorsville, 152. Gettysburg, 244.

Draper's History of the American Civil War.

Vol. ii. : Valley campaign, 390-396. Second Richmond campaign, 367-389, 397-417. Third Richmond campaign, 433-447. Lee's first invasion, 449-466. Fourth Richmond campaign, 470-476. Vol. iii. : Fifth campaign, 106-123. Jackson's death, 115. Lee's second invasion, 133-152, 154-158.

Pollard's Lost Cause.

Valley campaign, 264, 274. Second campaign against Richmond, 267, 280, 283. Third campaign, 302, 305. First invasion, 310-318. Fredericksburg, 339. Chancellorsville, 372. Jackson's death, 379. Gettysburg, 406.

Parallel Readings.

INDEX GUIDE for comparative examination of other works and authorities.—Historical : *Peninsular Campaign, The. Williamsburg, Battle of. Fair Oaks, Battle of. Valley Campaign, Jackson's. Front Royal, Battle of. Cross Keys, Battle of. Port Republic, Battle of. Seven Days' Battles. Malvern Hill, Battle of. Cedar Mountain or Cedar Run, Battle of. Bull Run, Second Battle of. Sharpsburg, Battle of. Harper's Ferry, Capture of. Fredericksburg, Battle of. Chancellorsville, Battle of. Jackson, Death of. Gettysburg, Battle of. Pickett's Charge.*

Biographical (in addition to names already given) : *Stuart, General J. E. B. Banks, General N. P. Lee, General Robert E. Pope, General John. Longstreet, General James. Hill, General D. H. Ewell, General Richard. Burnside, General Ambrose. Hooker, General Joseph. Hill, General A. P. Meade, General George. Hancock, General W. S.*

SPECIAL.—Swinton : *Twelve Decisive Battles*, chap. iii., Antietam ; chap. iv., Gettysburg. Swinton : *Army of the Potomac*. Johnson : *Short History of the War of Secession*. Dodge : *Bird's-eye View*. Allan : *Army of Northern Virginia* (a most thorough and painstaking work). Taylor : *Four Years with General Lee*. Mrs. M. A. Jackson : *Life and Letters of Stonewall Jackson*. McClellan : *Own Story*. Johnston : *Narrative of Military Operations*. Doubleday : *Gettysburg Made Plain*. Long : *Memoirs of General R. E. Lee*.

CHAPTER XVIII.

COAST, RIVER, AND SEA.

1.

Two Modes of Warfare.—There are two ways in which a nation may be overcome. One is by defeating and disbanding its armies ; the other is by weakening its resources and destroying its sources of supply so that it cannot furnish its armies with necessary food, ammunition, and equipments. The first few battles of the war made it plain that Confederate armies could not be easily defeated ; therefore, to conquer the

Confederacy, the second method as well as the first would have to be employed.

Federal Military Plans.—Federal military operations were now more carefully systematized. As the war progressed five different ideas took shape in the conduct of these operations: First, Richmond, the Confederate capital, must be captured; second, the Confederate armies must be destroyed; third, Southern seaports must be blockaded; fourth, the Mississippi River to its mouth must be taken possession of, so as to cut the Confederacy in two, and prevent one portion from helping the other; fifth, the most fertile sections of the South must be laid waste, so that they could not furnish food for the Southern army.

The Blockade.—Cotton had long been the principal export of the whole country, and the principal source of wealth for the Southern States. To prevent this product from being sent to Europe, and supplies being received from Europe in return, the blockade of all Southern ports was proclaimed by President Lincoln (April 19, 1861), and was enforced by placing Federal ships of war

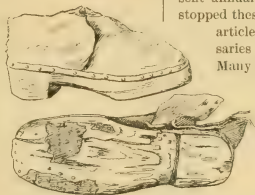
What the Blockade Teaches.

The blockade demonstrated very plainly that the strongest and most independent nations are those whose people are engaged in every variety of occupations, and who produce everything necessary to their needs at home. The South had for years purchased her necessities, conveniences, and luxuries with the millions of bales of cotton sent annually abroad. The blockade stopped these purchases, and, in time,

articles once regarded as necessities became great luxuries.

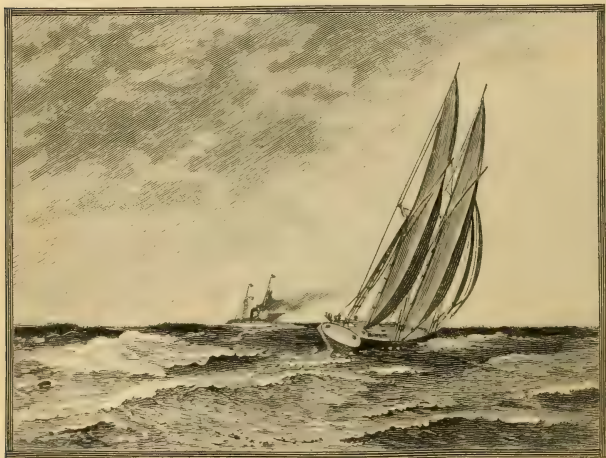
Many a Southern household sent all its men to the front, while the women and children remained at home and battled against want and starvation as nobly as did their husbands, sons, and brothers against the Federal army. No history has

ever done full justice to the women of the South in this war. From first to last they inspired the men. They learned to card and spin; to knit and weave; to make homespun cloth into clothing, and to braid straw into hats. They did not hesitate to plow and hoe when it was necessary. For what they needed and could not get, they invented all kinds of substitutes. All their hardships and the sufferings of the men in the Southern armies were due to the fact that the South had but one industry—cotton raising—and this industry was paralyzed by the Federal blockade.



WOODEN SHOES WORN BY A CONFEDERATE SOLDIER.

along the coast, so as to shut out all commerce with these ports. As supplies became more and more needed in the Confederacy, fleet little vessels were fitted and sent out upon the desperate undertaking of running the blockade. Many, by taking advantage of dark nights and by using skillful seamanship, succeeded in escaping the notice of the blockading vessels. Nassau, in the Bahama Islands, and Havana, in Cuba,



RUNNING THE BLOCKADE.

were the two principal points to which blockade runners resorted. Before the Federals occupied the Southwest, much cotton was sent to Mexico, and many needed supplies were there obtained by means of long wagon-trains plying from Shreveport, La., to the Rio Grande River.

Atlantic Coast Operations.—The success of the blockade-runners made it necessary for the Federals to obtain possession of the ports and harbors of the Confederacy. As many of these ports were defended by strong forts, combined military and naval operations were undertaken against them.

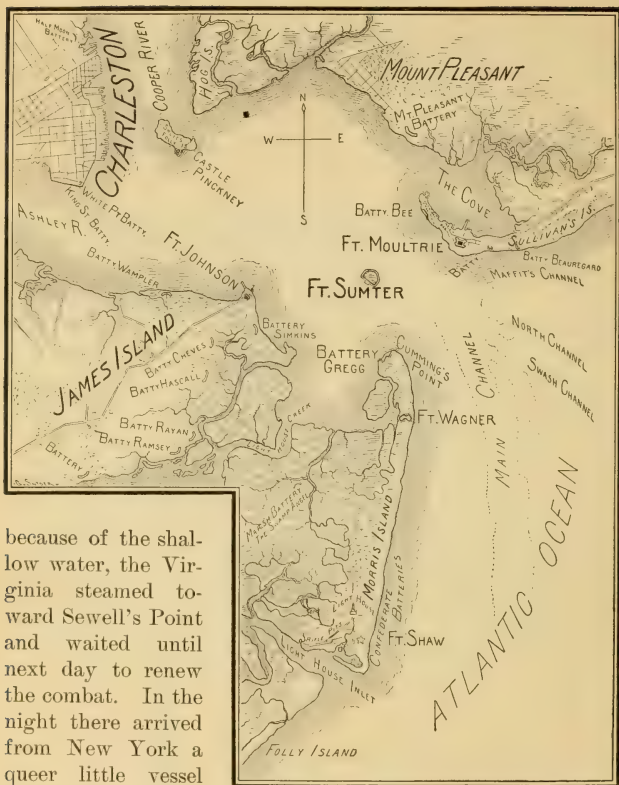
The forts at Hatteras Inlet were captured (August 29, 1861); and before the year was out, Commodore Dupont captured Port Royal, S. C., after a most gallant resistance (November 7). Roanoke Island, lying between North Carolina's two largest sounds, was taken early the next year (February 8, 1862); but the Confederate ram Albemarle, built on the Roanoke River, controlled Albemarle Sound during the latter part of the war. She was sunk by a torpedo in the fall of 1864. Fort Pulaski, defending Savannah, fell into the hands of the Federals (April 11, 1862). Repeated attacks upon Fort Sumter, defending Charleston, however, failed.

The Virginia and the Monitor.—The presence of Federal ships of war along the coast and the inability of the South to fit out formidable fleets incited Southern inventive talent to design a low, heavy, iron-clad, and sharp-prowed vessel called a "ram." A number of such vessels were built at several points in the South. The first and most celebrated of the Confederate rams was constructed out of the Federal frigate Merrimac, which had been sunk in the beginning of the war when the Federals abandoned Norfolk. The Confederates raised the Merrimac and converted her into the powerful ironclad Virginia, the first ironclad warship ever built.

Significance of the Virginia-Monitor Combat.

Up to this time all the great naval battles of history had been fought in wooden vessels. The success of the Virginia made wooden vessels worthless as ships of war. The ironclad principle embodied in the Virginia and successfully tested at Hampton Roads is now employed in all the great navies of the world, and is seen in every heavily armored battleship and protected cruiser of to-day. The principle of the revolving turret has also come into general use. Thus this one naval engagement revolutionized modern naval construction, destroyed the effectiveness of all wooden ships of war, and caused the maritime nations of the earth to begin anew the construction of their navies.

Under Captain Buchanan the Virginia steamed out into Hampton Roads one afternoon (March 8, 1862), and alone attacked the six Federal warships blockading that harbor. It struck and sank the Cumberland; riddled, captured, and destroyed the Congress; and made for the Minnesota, which had grounded near Newport News. Unable to get near enough to destroy the stranded vessel,



because of the shallow water, the Virginia steamed toward Sewell's Point and waited until next day to renew the combat. In the night there arrived from New York a queer little vessel that looked like a "cheese box on a

raft." It was the Monitor, designed by John Ericsson, a Swedish inventor. Its most novel feature was a circular revolving turret upon its deck, in which were located two of the most powerful guns constructed up to that time. The Monitor and the Virginia immediately engaged in battle, but with-

out result, for the shot and shell of one seemed to have not the slightest effect upon the other. After a contest of six hours the Monitor withdrew, and the Virginia remained in control of Hampton Roads until McClellan occupied the Peninsula, when the Confederates, having decided to abandon Norfolk, destroyed the vessel to keep it from falling into Federal hands.

Fort Fisher.—One of the last Confederate coast defenses to fall was Fort Fisher, at the mouth of the Cape Fear River, N. C. Wilmington, near by, was one of the most important blockade-running ports of the Confederacy, and the longest to resist capture. Not until near the close of the war was it taken, and then only after two most desperate assaults upon its works (December 24–25, 1864, and January 15, 1865). For the final attack the Federals collected under Admiral Porter the largest fleet engaged in any single operation of the war, while the attacking land forces numbered more than 8,500 men. The garrison of only 1,900 men made one of the most heroic defenses ever mentioned in history, and would have held the fort to the end had reinforcements been at hand.

2.

Federal Control of the Mississippi.—To secure full control of the Mississippi, Fed-

Defense of Charleston.

The defenses of Charleston had been planned by General Beauregard as early as April, 1861. They included eight principal forts and batteries. Like other ports, Charleston was subjected to the blockade. On January 31, 1861, the two Confederate rams—Palmetto State, commanded by Lieutenant John Rutledge, and Chicora, commanded by Captain John R. Tucker—steamed out of Charleston Harbor, and attacking the Federal blockading fleet, captured two vessels, disabled two, and dispersed the rest. This raised the blockade for the time.

After the battle of Shiloh, Beauregard was sent to Charleston. With the energetic assistance of the people of Charleston and of the State, he completed the work of defense.

Commodore Du Pont, with a formidable fleet including eight monitors, entered the harbor and opened a fierce fire upon Fort Sumter (April 7, 1863). After an engagement of two hours and twenty-five minutes the fleet retired badly crippled.

The next attempt against Charleston was undertaken by General Quincy A. Gillmore. The Federals made two desperate assaults upon Battery Wagner on Morris Island, south of the harbor entrance, but were repulsed (July 11, 1863). Charleston was never captured by attack during the war. Toward the close of the war, as Sherman's vast army marched northward from Savannah, the Confederates withdrew from Charleston (February 17, 1865). In after years, when Beauregard died, his sword was presented to the city he had so long and ably defended.



FEDERAL GUNBOAT DE KALB.

eral operations were carried forward both in the upper and lower portions of the river. While Grant was ascending the Tennessee River upon his Shiloh campaign, Commodore Foote with a fleet of gunboats was moving down the Mississippi. Slipping past the intrenchments on Island No. 10, near New Madrid, Mo., he joined Pope in cutting off the garrison, which surrendered (April 7, 1862). Foote then passed down to Fort Pillow, which stopped him until the fall of Corinth forced the

Confederates to abandon it (June 5). Pushing on, they reached Memphis, which to escape bombardment surrendered (June 6, 1862). The Federals soon controlled the river as far south as Vicksburg, the strongest point on the Mississippi.

The Capture of New Orleans.—Commodore David G. Farragut arrived at Ship Island on the coast of Mississippi, and landing there a force of 17,000 men under General



ADMIRAL DAVID G. FARRAGUT.

Butler, proceeded with his fleet to the mouth of the Mississippi and began the ascent. Thirty miles up he found Forts Jackson and St. Philip greatly strengthened and ready to receive him. The Confederates had stretched chains across

the river to impede his progress, and had prepared fire rafts to be set ablaze and sent drifting out into the stream to endanger his fleet. There were only a few ill-prepared Confederate gunboats to coöperate with the forts, but these fought most heroically.

Farragut bombarded the forts for a week, but made little or no impression upon them. He then decided upon the bold plan of forcing his vessels past the forts with the risk of being shot to pieces by them. He had the chains across the river cut at night during a heavy bombardment of the forts by Admiral Porter. Selecting a dark night and using every kind of device to conceal the movements of his vessels, he formed his fleet in line of battle and with as little noise as possible steamed up the river. His intentions were discovered, and a fiery rain of shot and shell was poured upon him from forts and gunboats. His courage and good fortune, however, enabled him to make the passage successfully. He continued on his way up the river, and was soon before the largest city of the South. The city itself had no means of defense, and most of its citizens were away taking

Vicksburg Campaign.

The campaign against Vicksburg was planned by Grant shortly after the battles of Iuka and Corinth. The forces under General Sherman, who was posted at Memphis, were ordered to descend the river and coöperate. Grant proceeded from Holly Springs, where he had established his base of supplies. Van Dorn, at the head of a small body of cavalry, captured Holly Springs, and destroyed the large quantity of supplies which Grant had there accumulated. This compelled Grant to postpone his advance upon Vicksburg.

Meanwhile Sherman arrived in that vicinity of Vicksburg which was defended by General Stephen D. Lee. Sherman attacked Lee at Chickasaw Bayou (December 29, 1862), but was severely repulsed.

When Grant next advanced, he crossed his troops to the west bank of the Mississippi and proceeded down to a point opposite Vicksburg. Here he found one of the sharp bends peculiar to the river, and across the narrow tongue of land he attempted without success to cut a canal. Passing farther down, while the Federal gunboats coöperating with him ran the fire of the Confederate batteries, he passed over to the east side and approached the city from the south.

The Confederates were forced back from Port Gibson (May 1) and were compelled to abandon their position at Grand Gulf (May 14). Another Confederate force was defeated at Raymond, and General J. E. Johnston, advancing to the assistance of Vicksburg, was turned back at Jackson (May 14), the city falling into Federal hands.

General Pemberton commanded the defenses of Vicksburg. Grant, after his capture of Jackson, immediately moved upon Pemberton and forced him back from Champion Hills (May 16), then from Black River Bridge, and compelled him to take refuge behind the fortifications of the city.

Grant made several assaults upon the Confederate works, but was re-

pulsed with great loss each time. He then settled down to a siege of the city. For forty-seven days the siege continued. The garrison and the people, cut off from all communication with the outside, suffered all the horrors of starvation and the terrors of bombardment. At length the city was forced to capitulate, and on the day after Pickett's gallant charge was made at Gettysburg, Vicksburg surrendered (July 4, 1863).

after, when Vicksburg surrendered to General Grant after a most heroic siege (July 4, 1863), and Port Hudson, La., the last important Confederate post upon the Mississippi, yielded shortly after (July 9).

Naval Operations on the Gulf.—The Texas coast had been blockaded for some time by the West Gulf Blockading Squadron, and through the efforts of Farragut the three important ports of Corpus Christi, Galveston, and Sabine Pass had fallen under Federal control. But J. B. Magruder, the Confederate general, was placed in charge of the Texas defenses and his energy soon made itself felt. He attacked the land

part in the battles in Virginia and Tennessee; so it surrendered (April 29, 1862). Forts Jackson and St. Philip, having the source of their supplies cut off, had already surrendered to Commodore Porter. The full control of the Mississippi, however, was not obtained by the Federals until more than a year



RUNNING THE FIRE OF THE FORTS.

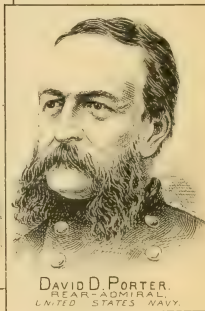
and naval forces at Galveston with such success that one of the Union vessels was destroyed, another—the Harriet Lane—was captured, and the garrison was forced to sur-



SAMUEL F. DU PONT
REAR-ADMIRAL
UNITED STATES NAVY



A. H. FOOTE.
REAR-ADMIRAL
UNITED STATES NAVY



DAVID D. PORTER.
REAR-ADMIRAL
UNITED STATES NAVY

render (January 1, 1863). Shortly after this came another Confederate success at Sabine Pass, where two cotton-clad steamers darted most daringly out from Sabine Lake and captured two Federal blockading vessels—the Velocity and the Morning Light (June 21).

In the eastern part of the Gulf the Federal naval operations were not so successful as elsewhere. Fort McRee, defending Pensacola, Fla., had been attacked in vain in the early part of the war (November 22–23, 1861); and Mobile, Ala., was so well defended by forts and iron-clads that it was retained by the Confederates until the very end of the war. Commodore Farragut at one time made a most heroic attempt to take the city (August 5, 1864). Although the bay had been well planted with torpedoes, he forced his way in.

General Banks in the Southwest.

New Orleans, after its capture by Farragut, was occupied by land forces under General B. F. Butler, who established a rigid military government for the city. He was superseded by General Banks (December 23, 1863).

Banks sent General Franklin with 5,000 men around by sea to effect a landing at Sabine Pass and march upon Beaumont and Houston. Sabine Pass at this time was defended by a rude fortification which was occupied by forty-two men. This handful of men disabled and captured two vessels of the attacking fleet, and took almost four times as many prisoners as they themselves numbered (September 8, 1863). Franklin made no

attempt to land, but returned to Berwick Bay.

Banks next endeavored to gain a foothold in southwest Texas. He occupied Brazos Island (November 2) and Point Isabel (November 8), and captured Fort Esperanza at the head of Matagorda Bay (December 30). At this point he was ordered by the authorities to return to New Orleans and continue his operations against Texas by way of the Red River.

The Confederate defenses of Louisiana were now intrusted to General Richard Taylor, son of Zachary Taylor, twelfth President of the United States. As Banks, with forces num-



LIEUT.-GEN. RICHARD TAYLOR,
CONFEDERATE.

bering 31,000 men, proceeded up Red River he was met and defeated at Sabine Cross Roads, near Mansfield, La. (April 8, 1864). The Federal army retreated to Pleasant Hill, where it was again attacked and made to fall back (April 9). Discouraged, Banks abandoned the campaign. The water in Red River was now very low, and near Alexandria, La., was a shallow place over which large boats could not pass. Banks would have had to abandon all his transports to the Confederates had not Colonel Joseph Bailey of the Federal army, with great ingenuity, constructed a dam that raised the level of the water sufficiently high to enable the Federal vessels to float safely over.

The Confederate ram Tennessee, under Admiral Buchanan, who had commanded the Virginia, assisted only by three small gunboats, attacked the entire Federal fleet. Buchanan's rudder chain being carried away by a cannon-ball, he was forced to surrender. A land force captured Forts Morgan and Gaines at the entrance to the bay, but Farragut made no further attempts to capture the city.

3.

Naval Battles upon the High Seas.—At the beginning of the war neither North nor South had a sufficient number of warships to undertake extensive naval operations. By pressing into service many merchant vessels, and by forcing the many shipyards of that section to turn out work as fast as possible, the North was soon enabled to place fleets of war upon the sea. The South had little experience in shipbuilding, but several very effective ironclad rams, modeled after the Virginia, were built in Southern rivers to defend the harbors. The number of mechanics was limited, machinery and engines difficult to get, and the South was compelled to secure vessels



THE ALABAMA SINKING THE HATTERAS.

abroad. The few thus obtained, instead of returning to the American coast to be overcome in battle by the overwhelming naval forces of the North, cruised in various parts of the world and destroyed or captured every Union merchant vessel to be found. The most important of the Confederate cruisers, or commerce destroyers, was the *Alabama*, commanded by Admiral Raphael Semmes.

The *Alabama*.—Although the *Alabama*'s object was to sweep Federal commerce from the seas, yet she engaged in two naval battles which are famous in history. The first of these was in the Gulf of Mexico, near Galveston. The *Alabama* had slipped into the Gulf very quietly, and finding five blockading vessels before Galveston, pretended to be a blockade-runner. The Federal ship-of-war *Hatteras* was sent in pursuit. Semmes permitted himself to be chased until the *Hatteras* was too far from the rest of the fleet to receive assistance; then he turned and gave battle. Both vessels were about equally matched, but it took the *Alabama* only thirteen minutes to sink the *Hatteras*.

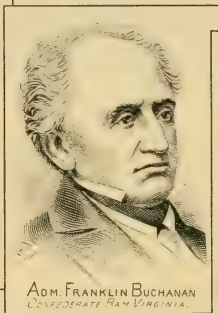
*From a photo.*ADMIRAL RAPHAEL SEMMES,
CONFEDERATE.

So destructive was the Alabama to Federal commerce that the Federal Government despatched the powerful ship-of-war Kearsarge to follow Semmes wherever he went, and to destroy his vessel. The Kearsarge, learning that the Alabama had put into the port of Cherbourg, France, to land prisoners and refit, took up a position outside the harbor to prevent Semmes from escaping. But Semmes had no intention of trying to escape.

Although his vessel was poorly prepared for battle,



CAPT. JAS. I. WADDELL
CONFEDERATE CRUISER SHENANDOAH.



ADM. FRANKLIN BUCHANAN
CONFEDERATE RAM VIRGINIA.



CAPT. J. N. MAFFITT.
CONFEDERATE CRUISER FLORIDA.

he came out to fight. He believed the Kearsarge to be a wooden vessel like his own, and he knew he could depend upon the skill and bravery of his men. But the Kearsarge had been completely encased in chains which served as armor to protect the wooden sides ; and Semmes's ammunition, after his long cruise, was of a very poor quality. A shell from the Alabama struck the rudder post of the Kearsarge and should have exploded. Had it done so, that would have been the end of the Federal vessel. The contest was unequal, for the Alabama's shot had very little effect. The Confederate vessel was finally sunk (June 19, 1864). Semmes and some of his crew were picked up by an English yacht and carried to England.

Other Confederate Cruisers.—There were a number of other Confederate cruisers which were very successful as commerce destroyers. The first to win fame was the Sumter,

commanded by Semmes. It was sold before the Alabama was built. The Florida, under Captain J. N. Maffitt, was especially successful and made a number of prizes. She was captured by a Federal sloop-of-war at Bahia, Brazil, in violation of international law. The Shenandoah, sailing in 1864 under Captain James I. Waddell, made several prizes, and in June, 1865, destroyed the American whaling fleet in Bering Strait. Learning, about the last of June, that the war was over, Captain Waddell carried his vessel into Liverpool and surrendered her to the British Government. The Tallahassee, fitted out at Wilmington, N. C., under Commander Wood, destroyed thirty small vessels off the New England coast.

Questions.—In what two ways may a nation be overcome in war? What did the first few battles of the war make plain? Federal military operations were planned with how many ideas in view? What was the first? Second? Third? Fourth? Fifth? Why was the Federal blockade of Southern ports proclaimed? How was the blockade sometimes evaded by the Confederates? To what two foreign ports did blockade-runners principally go? Where else were much cotton sent and supplies obtained? The success of the blockade-runners made it necessary for the Federals to do what? When was Hatteras Inlet captured? Port Royal? Roanoke Island? What kind of vessel was invented in the South? What was the most celebrated Confederate ram? Tell something of the Albemarle. What two Federal ships of war did the Virginia destroy? What was the Monitor? Give an account of the battle between the Virginia and the Monitor. What Confederate fort was one of the last to fall?

When and by whom was Island No. 10 captured? Where is this island? What other two captures did Federal gunboats descending the Mississippi make? What commodore undertook operations in the lower portion of the Mississippi River? What preparations of defense did the Confederates make near the mouth of the river? Give an account of Farragut's passage of the Mississippi River forts. When was New Orleans taken? Vicksburg? Port Hudson? What three Texas ports fell into the hands of the Federals? What Confederate general was intrusted with the defense of Texas? Give an account of Magruder's recapture of Galveston. What success had the Confederates at Sabine Pass? What important Gulf port was retained by the Confederates until near the end of the war? Give an account of Farragut's attack upon Mobile.

Why were the Confederates compelled to have their ships of war built abroad? What was the most celebrated of the Confederate cruisers? Who commanded the Alabama? Give an account of the Alabama and the Hatteras. Of the Alabama and the Kearsarge. Of other Confederate cruisers.

FOR ADVANCED CLASSES.

Topics for Discussion.

- I. The Federal Blockade. II. Atlantic Coast Operations : Hatteras Inlet ; Roanoke Island ; Port Royal ; Charleston ; Fort Fisher. III. The Virginia and the Monitor. IV. Grant's Vicksburg Campaign. V. Opening the Mississippi : Island No. 10 ; Memphis ; New Orleans ; Port Hudson. VI. Gulf Coast Operations : Galveston ; Sabine Pass ; Mobile. VII. The Cruiser Alabama. VIII. Banks's Red River Campaign.

References and Authorities.

Battles and Leaders of the Civil War.

Vol. i. : Coast operations in the Carolinas, 632. Virginia and Monitor, 692. Vol. ii. : Gulf coast, 13 ; and vol. iv., 379. Vol. ii. : New Orleans, 22. Vol. iii. : Vicksburg, 493. Vol. iv. : Red River campaign, 345. Confederate cruisers, 595. Fort Fisher, 642.

Draper's History of the American Civil War.

Vol. ii. : The blockade, 203 ; also vol. iii., 189. Vol. ii. : Atlantic coast, 480-495 ; also vol. iii., 521. Vol. ii. : Virginia and Monitor, 419-426. Vicksburg, 318-326 ; also vol. iii., 25-53. Vol. iii. : Capture of New Orleans, 327-340. The Alabama, 200-202. Gulf coast, 220-228. Red River, 229-239.

Parallel Readings.

INDEX GUIDE for comparative examination of other works and authorities.—Historical : *Blockade, The Federal. Hatteras Inlet, Capture of. Roanoke Island, Capture of. Port Royal, Capture of. Charleston, Federal Siege of. Fort Wagner, Attack upon. Fort Fisher, Capture of. Virginia and Monitor. Vicksburg, Siege of. New Orleans, Capture of. Galveston, Attack upon. Sabine Pass, Defense of. Mobile Bay, Farragut in. Alabama, The. Mansfield, Battle of. Pleasant Hill, Battle of.*

Biographical (in addition to names already given) : *Farragut, David G. Du Pont, Samuel F. Semmes, Raphael. Buchanan, Franklin. Foote, A. H. Lee, General Stephen D. Pemberton, General J. C. Taylor, General Richard.*

SPECIAL.—Machay : *History of the American Navy*, vol. ii. Soley : *Blockade and the Cruisers*. Ammen : *Atlantic Coast*. Mahan : *Gulf and the Inland Waters*. Swinton : *Twelve Decisive Battles* ; chap. vii., Vicksburg. Dodge : *Bird's-eye View*. Semmes : *Service Afloat in the War between the States*. Sinclair : *Two Years on the Alabama*. Roman : *Military Operations of General Beauregard*. Grant : *Memoirs*. Taylor : *Destruction and Reconstruction*.

CHAPTER XIX.

LIGHTS AND SHADOWS OF APPOMATTOX.

1.

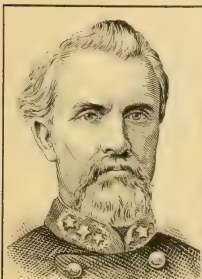
Events in the Middle West : Murfreesboro.—After the battle of Perryville, Bragg retired into Tennessee with his immense wagon-train of captured supplies. Buell was blamed for permitting Bragg to escape, and Rosecrans was appointed commander of the Federal army, which went into winter quarters at Nashville, Tenn. Bragg's army was on Stone River,

near Murfreesboro, Tenn., forty miles south of Nashville. Here he was attacked by Rosecrans (December 31, 1862). All day the battle raged, but the Confederates had the advantage. No fighting took place the next day, but on the second day Rosecrans made a most determined attempt to gain a decisive victory. The Confederates, however, held their

Military Operations in Arkansas.

After the battle of Pea Ridge, Ark., Van Dorn and his men fell back to Des Arc, on the White River. Here receiving orders to join General Albert Sidney Johnston, he crossed the Mississippi but arrived too late to take part in the battle of Shiloh. His departure left Arkansas almost defenseless, and the Federal General Curtis soon advanced as far as Batesville (May 3, 1862).

General T. C. Hindman, who had distinguished himself upon the battlefield of Shiloh, was now sent to rally what forces



LIEUT. GEN. N. B. FORREST.
FROM A PICTURE IN MEMPHIS TENN.



LIEUT. GEN. JOSEPH WHEELER.
FROM A PHOTOGRAPH IN 1896.

CONFEDERATE
CAVALRY COMMANDERS.
WESTERN ARMY.



BRIG. GEN. JOHN H. MORGAN
FROM A PHOTOGRAPH

ground. Hearing that heavy reënforcements were about to join the Federal army, Bragg fell back to Shelbyville, and Rosecrans occupied Murfreesboro. The two armies held these positions for nearly six months, during which they fought no great battle, but there were many skirmishes and cavalry engagements, in which the Confederate Generals Forrest,

he could for the defense of the State. So energeti-

cally did he carry out his mission that he soon had an efficient army of 20,000 organized, with which he compelled Curtis to retire through the swamps to Helena on the Mississippi River.

General T. H. Holmes was now appointed to the command of the Trans-Mississippi Department of the Confederacy, which included Arkansas. His headquarters were established at Little Rock. General Hindman was directed to concentrate his forces in the vicinity of Fort Smith, and then report in person at Little Rock to help organize the forces being gathered there. After his departure his men

encountered successfully the Federal General Salomon near Newtonia (September 30, 1862), but fell back upon the approach of heavy Federal reinforcements.

Hindman was now directed to send 10,000 of his men to the assistance of Vicksburg, which was then the objective point of Grant's operations. Before complying he determined to give battle to the Federal General Herron, who was invading northwestern Arkansas from Missouri, and was endeavoring to unite with a force under General Blunt, who was coming from Kansas. The junction was formed, however, and the opposing forces met at Prairie Grove (December 7, 1862). At the close of the battle the Confederates were in possession of the field; but their provisions being exhausted, they fell back the next day.

The Confederates next suffered a reverse in the capture of Arkansas Post by the Federal forces ordered from Memphis to coöperate with Grant against Vicksburg (January 11, 1863). Later in the year Holmes made an unsuccessful assault upon Helena (July 4, 1863). The capture of Vicksburg enabled the Federals to reinforce this point, so the Federal General Steele advanced by way of De Vall's Bluff upon Little Rock.

The Confederate forces had been greatly weakened by the departure of a large body of Arkansas troops, under General Thomas J. Churchill, for Louisiana, to join General Dick Taylor in his campaign against Banks. In consequence of this, the Confederate General Price was unable to hold Little Rock, and the city was given up to the Federals (September 10, 1863). From this time to the close of the war the Federals retained possession of a large portion of the State.

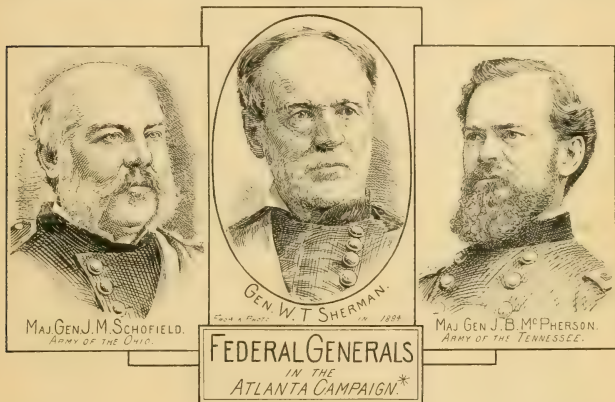
Wheeler, and Morgan distinguished themselves.

Chickamauga.—Late in June (1863), Rosecrans moved around Bragg's army and forced him to retreat to Chattanooga to protect his supplies. Rosecrans next attacked Chattanooga (August 21), and by sending a large force south compelled Bragg to retreat into Georgia (September 8). Here Longstreet joined him with reinforcements from the Army of Virginia. It was decided to make a stand at Chickamauga Creek. In the battle that followed (September 19–20), Longstreet pierced the center and right of the Union lines. Rosecrans was beaten, and hurrying from the field he gave the order to retreat. But on the Federal left General Thomas held his men together, and stubbornly resisted until nightfall every assault of the Confederates. But for this gallant stand, the Union army would have been completely destroyed. Thenceforth Thomas was known as the "Rock of Chickamauga."

Chattanooga.—Bragg followed up the retreating Union forces to Chattanooga, which he besieged. The principal Confederate fortifications were upon Missionary Ridge and Lookout Mountain, which commanded the Tennessee River and all approaches to Chattanooga. For

two months Rosecrans was locked in, and suffered for want of food. Meanwhile Longstreet was detached from Bragg's army to proceed against General Burnside in East Tennessee. Burnside was shut up in Knoxville, and the Confederates laid siege to that place also.

The victory of Vicksburg had inspired the Washington authorities with great confidence in General Grant. For this reason he was placed in command of all the Union forces operating in the middle West. Slipping into Chattanooga, he



took command. Heavy reinforcements under Generals Sherman and Hooker arrived near Chattanooga to coöperate with the garrison.

Lookout Mountain and Missionary Ridge.—Hooker, with a large force, was sent quietly up to the top of the ridge known as Lookout Mountain, some distance south of the Confederate force posted there. Having the advantage thus gained, he advanced toward Chattanooga and drove out the Confederates from the trenches around the point. During the night the Confederates retired from the mountain and joined Bragg.

* General Thomas commanded the Army of the Cumberland in the Atlanta campaign. His portrait is given on page 385.

The next day (November 25) Grant carried Missionary Ridge. The attacking forces charged gallantly up the ridge, broke the Confederate line, and defeated Bragg. Had Longstreet and his command not been sent off to Knoxville, the result might have been different. As it was, Bragg was compelled to retire to the vicinity of Dalton, Ga.

Grant made Commander-in-chief.—Grant was now

**Federal Invasion of
Florida.**

The capture of Port Royal, S. C., gave the Federals a base from which to operate in that part of the Confederacy. In the early part of 1864 General Truman Seymour embarked from there with 7,000 men and landed at Jacksonville, with the intention of overrunning Florida and reclaiming it for the Union in time to take part in the Presidential election of that year.

General Joseph Finnegan collected forces to oppose Seymour; and reinforcements under General A. H. Colquitt, from Georgia, increased the number of Finnegan's men to about 5,400. A battle was fought at Olustee, or Ocean Pond, in which the Confederates were thoroughly successful, winning deserved praise for the courage with which they held their lines after their ammunition had given out. They stood firm in the face of a galling fire until a fresh supply was brought up from a distance, after which they boldly advanced and won the victory (February 20, 1864).

raised to the command of all the armies of the United States (March, 1864). Leaving Sherman in command in Tennessee, he proceeded to Virginia to lead the army opposed to Lee. Sherman concentrated the Union forces in the West until he had assembled an army of more than 100,000 men. With these he entered Georgia. The Confederate army there numbered less than 50,000. General Bragg had been superseded by General J. E. Johnston. General Longstreet, after fiercely assaulting the defenses at Knoxville without success, had rejoined Lee in Virginia.

Sherman's Advance.—

Johnston with great skill opposed Sherman's progress. Both

he and Sherman were thoroughly trained soldiers and knew perfectly the art of war. The country was mountainous, and the maneuvers of the two armies were very intricate. The superior numbers of the Federal army enabled Sherman to place a heavy force in Johnston's front and with the remainder to pass around the side of the Confederate army, thus compelling Johnston to fall back and form a new front to avoid being surrounded. During the course of these movements several

heavy engagements occurred, the principal ones being Resaca, Dallas, and Kenesaw Mountain. In every battle the Confederates held their positions and repelled the attack, but were again and again forced to retreat to avoid being flanked. Lieutenant-General Leonidas Polk was killed near Marietta, Ga.

Capture of Atlanta.—Although Johnston acted throughout this campaign with great skill and prudence, yet the advance of Sherman so far into the heart of the Confederacy was causing much apprehension in the South. At Atlanta, Johnston was

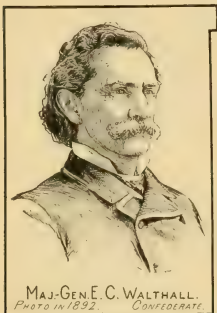


relieved of command, and John B. Hood, one of the greatest "fighting" generals of the war upon either side, took his place. In the vicinity of Atlanta, Hood made recklessly fierce attacks upon Sherman; but the overwhelming numbers opposed to him were too much for even his desperate courage, and he was repulsed with great loss (July 20, 22, 1864). On the last day each army lost a distinguished officer, Major-General McPherson, Union, and Major-General W. H. T. Walker, Confederate, being killed. For a month Sherman's army lay before Atlanta and shelled the city. There was more fighting as he

* Another infantry corps was commanded by General Hardee, and the cavalry corps was led by General Wheeler. Their portraits have already been given.

extended his line west and south. Finally, he occupied the railroad leading south. Hood was thus forced to abandon Atlanta. He destroyed all the military stores and marched out with his army (September 2, 1864). The Federals at once entered the city.

Hood Threatens Tennessee.—After leaving Atlanta, Hood captured Dalton, destroyed many miles of railroad over which Sherman received supplies, and then moved to Alabama so as to threaten Tennessee, and compel Sherman to return or to divide his army. It was also his idea, if Sherman sent part of his forces to Tennessee, to defeat that part,



and then possibly to unite with Lee in Virginia and crush Grant. Sherman sent part of his army, under Thomas, to Nashville to hold Tennessee, and after burning Atlanta he himself started south (November 15) with the remainder of his command.

Nashville.—Leaving a force in Georgia under the famous cavalry leader, General Joseph Wheeler, to harass Sherman as much as possible, Hood with 37,000 men crossed into Tennessee, the three divisions of his army led by Generals Stephen D. Lee, A. P. Stewart, and B. F. Cheatham. He was joined by cavalry under another very celebrated leader, General N. B. Forrest. At Franklin, Tenn., a large Federal force under General Schofield was intercepted and repulsed (November 30),

but the Confederates suffered a severe loss in the death of General Pat Cleburne, one of their most gallant and beloved officers.

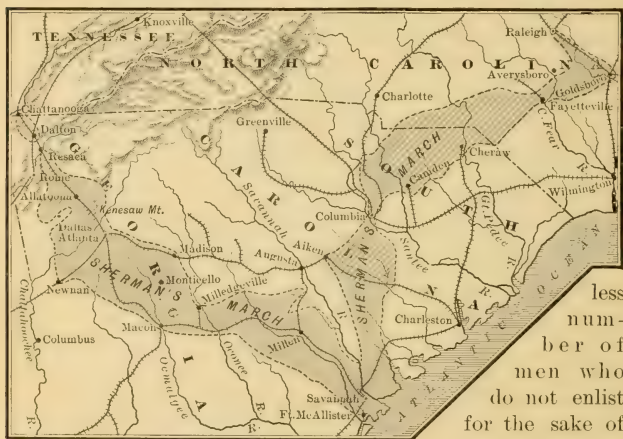
With a reduced force Hood laid siege to Nashville. Reënforcements from beyond the Mississippi having been promised him, he concluded to wait. All the North was clamoring for Thomas to show more activity, but the Federal commander perfected his plans with great deliberation, and when he was fully ready he came out from his Nashville defenses with 55,000 men and dealt the besieging army a most crushing blow (December 16). The rout was checked by the gallantry of Clayton's division. In the retreat that followed, Major-General E. C. Walthall commanded the rear guard, made up of eight picked brigades and Forrest's cavalry. The remnants of Hood's army reached Tupelo (January 10). Some regiments were furloughed, some were sent to Mobile, and some to Johnston in North Carolina.

Sherman's March.—The return of Hood to Tennessee caused Sherman no uneasiness about the cutting off of supplies for the Federal army. He was in a rich and productive country, a region which had been one of the main sources of supplies for the Confederate armies since the war began. He could obtain by foraging everything his army needed. With no foe to oppose him, Sherman set out upon his famous march to the sea. His idea was that war is terrible, and the more terrible

Cavalry Leaders.

The war between the North and the South was characterized by the number and brilliant exploits of the cavalry officers on both sides. The most famous on the Union side were Kilpatrick, Pleasanton, Sheridan, Stoneman, and Grierson. But in this branch of military service the Confederates were preëminent. General J. E. B. Stuart and General Fitzhugh Lee, commanding the cavalry of the Confederate army of Virginia, were like the knights of old, in bearing, personal courage, and chivalry. General Joseph Wheeler, who led the cavalry in the armies of Bragg, Johnston, and Hood, was aptly termed "Fighting Joe," and for his many gallant exploits was raised to the highest rank in the Confederate service before the end of the war. General N. B. Forrest was one of the most remarkable men produced upon either side. Without education and with only his own force of character and bravery, he rose step by step from the position of a soldier in the ranks to that of a commanding general. General John Morgan was particularly famous for his daring raids. One of these extended far into Indiana and Ohio, and threatened the safety of Cincinnati.

it can be made the sooner it comes to an end. In his march he certainly carried out this idea. His vast army advanced in four columns, covering a strip of country forty miles wide. Terror and consternation went before him ; desolation and destruction followed in his path. It is a rule of civilized warfare that the persons and property of the helpless, the aged, the infirm, women, children, and other non-combatants should not be needlessly interfered with. But this rule was not enforced or observed. In every large army there will be found a greater or



MAP SHOWING SHERMAN'S MARCH.

less
num-
ber of
men who
do not enlist
for the sake of
principle or of
country. Such men

in Sherman's army added robbery and plunder to the woes which the people suffered from the passing of so large an armed force. Sherman's march inflicted a loss upon one of the fairest portions of the South of more than one hundred million dollars (\$100,000,000).

Sherman reached Savannah, captured Fort McAllister, and took possession of the city (December 21, 1864), the Confederate forces having retreated to South Carolina. Then turning northward he marched across South Carolina, burning on the

way South Carolina's beautiful capital city, Columbia. Arriving in North Carolina he found Johnston, restored to command and again ready to oppose his progress. Engagements followed at Averysboro (March 16, 1865) and at Bentonville (March 19).

2.

Grant Takes Command in Virginia.—Meanwhile, in the spring of 1864, Grant was in command of the Federal forces in Virginia and had begun the sixth campaign against Richmond, on the same day that Sherman entered Georgia on his Atlanta campaign. Lee's army of about 62,000 men was stationed along the Rapidan River, near Fredericksburg. Grant himself was with the Army of the Potomac, which numbered 120,000 men, under General Meade, and was north



GENERAL ROBERT E. LEE.

of the Rapidan, ready to move against Lee. If Grant's men had been placed side by side in one line, this line would have been fifty-one miles long. Lee's men arranged in the same way would have extended twenty-eight miles. To prevent Lee

from being reënforced, a force under General Sigel entered the Shenandoah Valley, while 30,000 men under General Butler advanced upon Richmond by way of the James River. These two armies gave little help to Grant, however; for Butler was forced by General Beauregard into the little peninsula at Bermuda Hundred, formed by a bend in the James River, and there held "bottled up," as Grant expressed it. Sigel was defeated at New Market by General Breckinridge (May 15, 1864).

Battle of the Wilderness.—Grant crossed the Rapidan and attacked Lee in that portion of the country known as the "Wilderness," near where the battle of Chancellorsville had been fought. The fighting was terrible and lasted three days (May 5, 6, and 7, 1864). Grant lost very heavily, and accomplished nothing save the infliction of a smaller loss upon the Confederates.

Spottsylvania Court House.—Having failed to break the Confederate lines, Grant next tried to move around their right flank. But Lee was too quick for him. When he reached Spottsylvania Court House, he found the Confederate army again before him and ready for battle. Now followed the bloody struggle of Spottsylvania Court House (May 9–12,

1864), marked by most sublime heroism upon both sides. The gallant Federal General Winfield S. Hancock by a most daring charge captured an advanced position of the Confederate line, taking a number of prisoners. Unless this position were retaken, or the line formed anew, defeat to the Confederates was sure to follow. Lee in desperation boldly dashed into the ranks, to lead a charge in person; but when the Confederate soldiers beheld their beloved commander in such extreme peril, they rushed around him shouting, "General Lee to the rear! General Lee to the rear!" and promised



Portrait furnished by his wife.

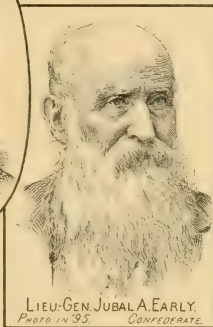
MAJOR-GENERAL W. S. HANCOCK,
FEDERAL.

him if he would only go back out of reach of danger they would hold their position. This they did. So hotly was this part of the field contested, and so fierce was the fire that swept over its surface, that a



tree eighteen inches in diameter standing back of the Confederate lines was cut to the ground by the bullets which poured from the Federal attacking forces.

Cold Harbor.—Failing at Spottsylvania, Grant again moved around Lee's right, and again did he find Lee confronting him, at the North Anna River, in a position so wisely chosen that he himself said it could not be taken or flanked. Crossing the Pamunkey River, Grant again found the Confederate army in front of him.



Federal Invasion of the Shenandoah Valley.

A remarkable fact connected with the battle of New Market, Va., was the presence upon the field and gallant participation in the engagement of a corps of cadets from the Virginia Military Institute. They were only mere boys, but under their commander, Colonel Shipp, they went through the trials of a long, toilsome march, took their place and held most unflinchingly a very important position in the Confederate line of battle, left their young dead upon the field to the



proud sorrow of many a

mother's heart, and after the battle was won marched back, and again took up their school work and studies.

The Federal Generals Hunter and Averill replaced Sigel in the conduct of Valley operations, and Generals Early and Gordon were sent by Lee to reënforce Breckinridge. The Federal forces were driven in confusion from Lynchburg, to which place they had advanced (June 18, 1864). Early, marching down the Valley, crossed the Potomac and defeated General Lew Wallace at Monocacy, Md. (July 9), after which, returning to the Valley, he defeated a Union force under General Wright at Winchester (July 21, 1864). Early then invaded Pennsyl-

vania, burned Chambersburg, and threatened to advance on Washington, compelling heavy forces under General Sheridan to be detached from Grant's army to drive the Confederates out of the Valley.

Sheridan and Early met at Winchester (September 19), and again at Fisher Hill (September 22), both battles resulting in favor of the Federals. But, at Cedar Creek, Early attacked and surprised Sheridan's army and forced it into a rapid retreat (October 19). The Confederates were so sorely tempted by the abundance of good things the Federals had abandoned in their camps that they stayed their victorious pursuit to take possession of and enjoy the much-needed stores captured. This gave Sheridan, who had been away from his command during the battle, time to return from Winchester. Rallying his retreating men, he in turn surprised the Confederates and deprived them of the fruits of their victory.

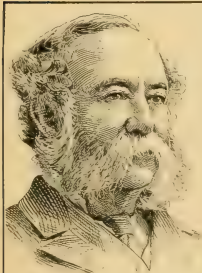
Lee, being in great need of men in his encounters with Grant, was compelled to withdraw the Confederate troops from the Valley. In order that this portion of the country should no further require the attention of the Federals, Sheridan followed the example of Sherman in Georgia. He laid waste and destroyed from one end of the Valley to the other, until, as he boasted, a crow would not be able to fly across without taking rations along.

There was sharp fighting the first day. The next day Grant prepared his men for a grand attack, and early on the morning of June 3d he attempted to carry the Confederate line by assault. Column after column charged the Confederate line, attempting to break it, but they were repulsed with terrible loss. Grant was forced to abandon the idea of crushing Lee. He had lost 54,000 men in thirty days in the attempt. A few days later he moved his army across the peninsula to the James River. Crossing the river, he released Butler's forces and laid siege to Petersburg.

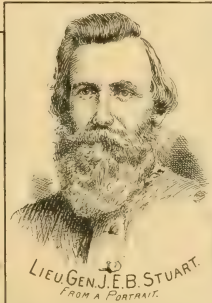
Yellow Tavern. — After the battle of the Wilderness, Grant sent a large cavalry force under General Sheridan south of Lee, to cut off the supplies of the Confederate army and to threaten Richmond. At Yellow Tavern, six miles from Rich-

mond, Sheridan encountered Lee's cavalry under General J. E. B. Stuart, and in the battle which followed (May 11) Stuart was killed. General Wade Hampton succeeded him in command. Sheridan passed east of Richmond, crossed the Chickahominy River, and joined Grant on the North Anna. After the battle of Cold Harbor, Sheridan made another raid and cut the railroad in the rear of Lee's army. A fight occurred at Trevilian Station with the Confederate cavalry under Hampton and Fitzhugh Lee. Sheridan was forced to retreat, and retraced his steps to the North Anna River.

Siege of Petersburg.—Grant's army was soon strongly intrenched east of Petersburg, facing the Confederate works around that city. To make an opening through these works, a mine was laid under them in July and was exploded. A Union column promptly entered the breach and advanced a short distance beyond, but the Confederates massed a column of attack and drove them out. All through the fall and winter the siege continued. Attacks were made day after day, and the Federal line was gradually extended around Petersburg, so that the line of attack and defense grew longer and longer. Grant could well afford to do this, for he had a sufficient number of



LIEUT. GEN. WADE HAMPTON.
FROM A PHOTOGRAPH IN 1896.



LIEUT. GEN. J. E. B. STUART.
FROM A PORTRAIT.

CONFEDERATE
CAVALRY COMMANDERS.
ARMY OF NORTHERN VA.



MAJ. GEN. FITZHUGH LEE.
FROM A PHOTOGRAPH IN 1896.

troops to maintain a long line of attack and still have enough left to mass for decisive action at any particular point. With Lee it was different. The Confederacy for four long years had been carrying on the struggle with limited resources. Death and disaster had been rapidly thinning the ranks of the Confederate army, and there were now very few recruits to replace the veterans who fell. The longer Lee's line of defense was drawn out, the weaker and thinner it became.

Hampton Roads Conference.—In February President Lincoln and Mr. Seward met Alexander H. Stephens and two other commissioners at Hampton Roads to discuss peace. No

authority was given to the commissioners to agree that the Southern States should come back into the Union, and Mr. Lincoln would not treat on any other basis. The war went on.

The Fall of Richmond.—Grant's lines below Petersburg

were gradually extended westward, and a large body of cavalry under Sheridan constantly threatened the railroads by which Lee's army received supplies. General John B. Gordon tried to break Grant's line, and stormed and captured Fort Stedman (March 25), but could not hold it against overwhelming numbers. On the 1st of April Sheridan defeated the Confederates at Five Forks, a fort protecting the railroad line twelve miles southwest of Petersburg.

The next day the Federals assaulted the works of Petersburg and carried the outer line after desperate resistance, in which General A. P. Hill was killed. That night Lee's army abandoned Petersburg and Richmond. Before leaving Richmond the Confederates set fire to the tobacco warehouses. The flames spread, and the whole business portion of the city was burned. The next morning (April 3), Grant occupied both cities.

Appomattox. — Lee, with the remnant of his army, moved toward Lynchburg, along the north side of the Appomattox River, intending to reach the mountains. He was followed by a large Federal force under Grant in person, while the entire Federal cavalry was sent west to cut off his retreat. Lee's provision trains were captured by Federal cavalry, and finally, on the 9th of April, he found himself with only 8,000



LIEUT.-GEN. R. H. ANDERSON.
ONE OF LEE'S CORPS COMMANDERS.



From photo about 1883.
GENERAL PHILIP H. SHERIDAN.

half-starved men in the ranks, with nothing for them to eat, and surrounded by the entire Federal army. He realized that the end had come. The leaders and the men of this little Spartan band had done their best, and they could with honor lay down their arms. Grant was very generous in the hour of his triumph. He offered honorable terms, which Lee accepted. The surrender was made April 9, 1865. The Confederate officers retained their swords, and the men their horses and other private property. There was no bitterness manifested between those who had lost and those who had won in this great conflict. Men in blue and men in gray gathered around the same camp fires, the well-fed Northern soldier sharing his rations with his half-starved Southern brother: in war enemies, in peace friends. Each had won the respect of the other, and this respect was generously yielded as became high-minded, honorable men. Defeat was thus robbed of its sting for the one; and in the other, triumph was deprived of exultation.

The South Accepts in Good Faith.—The issue as

decided by the surrender of

Lee's army was accepted in good faith, and the Confederate forces in other parts of the South laid down their arms. General Johnston in North Carolina surrendered to Sherman, near Durham, N. C. (April 26, 1865). Confederate generals in other departments also surrendered, General Kirby Smith, in Texas, being the last. The last battle of the war was at Brazos Santiago, Texas (May 13, 1865).

A Northern Estimate of Southern Valor.

A Northern historian, in eulogizing the Federal Army of the Potomac, has this to say of Lee's army against which it contended: "Nor can there fail to arise the image of that other army that was the adversary of the Army of the Potomac, and which—who can ever forget that once looked upon it?—that army of tattered uniforms and bright muskets—that body of incomparable infantry, the Army of Northern Virginia, which for four long years carried the revolt upon its bayonets—opposing a constant front to the mighty concentration of power brought against it; which, receiving terrible blows, did not fail to give the like, and which, vital in all its parts, died only with its annihilation."

Questions.—What did Bragg do after the battle of Perryville? Who succeeded Buell? Where did Rosecrans attack the Confederates? Tell something of the battle of Stone River, or Murfreesboro. Who joined Bragg in

Georgia? Tell something of the battle of Chickamauga. What Federal general distinguished himself in this battle? Where and how long did Bragg besiege the Federal forces? Where did Longstreet proceed? Who now took command of the Federal forces at Chattanooga? Tell something of the battle of Lookout Mountain. Missionary Ridge. Where did Grant go from Chattanooga? Why? Who succeeded Grant in Tennessee? Who superseded Bragg? Tell something of the struggle between Sherman and Johnston. Why was Hood placed in command of the Confederates? Tell something about Hood's attack upon Sherman. When did Atlanta fall? What did Hood do after leaving Atlanta? Tell something of the battle of Franklin. Nashville. Tell something of Sherman's march. What amount of loss was inflicted upon the country passed through? When did Sherman reach Savannah? What city did he burn? What battles did he fight upon his arrival in North Carolina?

What campaign against Richmond did Grant undertake? What two forces were to coöperate with him? What was their fate? Tell something of the battle of the Wilderness. Spottsylvania Court House. Tell something of the battle of Cold Harbor. How many men did Grant sacrifice in this campaign against Lee? What happened at Yellow Tavern? What city was next besieged? Tell something of the Petersburg mine. What took place at the Hampton Roads conference? What battle necessitated the evacuation of Richmond? When was Richmond evacuated? What number was now left in Lee's army? Why was it decided to surrender? What terms did Grant give? Tell something of the meeting of the men of both armies after the surrender. What other Confederate commanders now laid down their arms? What was the last engagement of the war?

FOR ADVANCED CLASSES.

Topics for Discussion.

- I. Rosecrans's Tennessee Campaign: Murfreesboro, Chickamauga. II. Battles of Chattanooga. III. Sherman's Advance into Georgia: Resaca, Dallas, Kenesaw Mountain, Atlanta. IV. Hood's Tennessee Campaign: Franklin, Nashville. V. Sherman's March to the Sea. VI. The War in Arkansas: Prairie Grove. VII. Federal Invasion of Florida: Olustee. VIII. Shenandoah Valley Operations: New Market, Winchester, Fisher Hill, Cedar Creek. IX. Sixth Campaign against Richmond: Wilderness, Spottsylvania, Cold Harbor, Five Forks, Petersburg, Richmond. X. Appomattox Surrender and Close of the War.

References and Authorities.

Battles and Leaders of the Civil War.

Vol. iii.: Murfreesboro, 600. Chickamauga, 635. Chattanooga, 676. Vol. iv.: Sherman's advance, 262. Hood's Tennessee campaign, 425. Vol. iii.: The war in Arkansas, 441. Vol. iv.: Olustee, 76. Shenandoah Valley, 480. Sixth campaign against Richmond, 97, 533. Sherman's march, 663. Richmond and Appomattox, 725.

Draper's History of the American Civil War.

Vol. ii.: Campaign of Rosecrans, 360-366. Vol. iii.: 60-74. Chattanooga, 74-105. Sherman's advance, 266-307. Hood's Tennessee campaign, 313-363. Sherman's march, 310-341. Shenandoah Valley, 392-393, 406-414. Sixth campaign, 364-387, 398-405, 560, 579. Appomattox, 580-594.

Parallel Readings.

INDEX GUIDE for comparative examination of other works and authorities.—Historical : *Murfreesboro, Battle of. Chickamauga, Battle of. Missionary Ridge, Battle of. Look-out Mountain, Battle of. Chattanooga, Siege of. Knoxville, Siege of. Atlanta, Battles near. Franklin, Battle of. Nashville, Battle of. Sherman's March. Columbia, Burning of. Bentonville, Battle of. Averysboro, Battle of. Prairie Grove Church, Battle of. Olustee, Battle of. New Market, Battle of. Winchester, Fisher Hill, Cedar Creek, Battles of. Wilderness, Spottsylvania, Cold Harbor, Battles of. Petersburg, Siege of. Richmond, Capture of. Appomattox Surrender.*

Biographical: *Thomas, General George H. Sherman, General W. T. Hood, General John B. Wheeler, General Joseph. Morgan, General John. Forrest, General N. B. Sheridan, General Phil. Early, General Jubal. Lee, General Fitzhugh. Gordon, General John B. Rosecrans, General W. S. Smith, General E. Kirby.*

SPECIAL.—Swinton : *Twelve Decisive Battles* : chap. v., Murfreesboro ; chap. x., Atlanta ; chap. xi., Nashville ; chap. xiii., Five Forks. Swinton : *History of the Army of the Potomac*. Sheridan : *Personal Memoirs*. Duke : *History of Morgan's Cavalry*. Hood : *Advance and Retreat*. Jordan and Pryor : *Campaigns of General N. B. Forrest*. Grant : *Memoirs*. Sherman : *Memoirs*. Cooke : *Lee and Jackson*. Dodge : *Bird's-eye View*. Rossiter Johnson : *Short History of the War of Secession*. For an interesting account of the Virginia Military Institute boys in the battle of New Market, see the *Century Magazine* for January, 1889, illustrated article by John S. Wise.

CHAPTER XX.**THE READMISSION OF THE SOUTHERN STATES.**

The Trent Affair.—At the beginning of the war the Confederate Government sent John Slidell and James M. Mason as commissioners to England. The British steamer Trent, upon which they took passage from Havana, was stopped on the high sea by the United States ship-of-war San Jacinto, whose captain took the commissioners from the British vessel by force (November 8). This act was a violation of international law, and only by the prompt release of the commissioners was war with England averted.

Emancipation Proclamation.—Mr. Lincoln, both before and after his election, declared that his party did not intend to interfere with slavery where it then existed. As late as August, 1862, he wrote : " If I could save the Union without freeing any slave, I would do it." A month later he notified the Confederate States that if they did not come back into the Union within one hundred days he would declare their slaves forever free. As these States did not return to the Union, Mr. Lincoln, " as a military necessity," on January 1,

1863, issued his Emancipation Proclamation, which declared all slaves in the Confederate States free. His proclamation did not interfere with slavery in the States which had not seceded, and it had no effect in the Confederate States until after the surrender, but it won for him the active support of many in the North. To abolish slavery, Congress proposed the Thirteenth Amendment to the Constitution.

West Virginia and Nevada.—While Lincoln was President, two States were admitted to the Union: West Virginia in 1863 and Nevada in 1864. After the Federal army

Maximilian in Mexico.

While the attention of the American people was occupied by the war, France seized the opportunity to gain a foothold in Mexico. A French army was landed, and coöperating with some Mexican revolutionists established a monarchical form of government with Maximilian, Grand Duke of Austria, as Emperor. After the war, the United States insisted upon French non-interference with Mexican affairs, so French troops were withdrawn. Maximilian himself did not leave, however. He was of a gentle and refined character, and was persuaded that the Mexican people desired him to continue as their ruler. But when no longer supported by French troops, he found that he had been ill advised. His subjects rose in revolt, took him prisoner, and executed him (June 19, 1867).

occupied the western counties of Virginia, the members of the Legislature from those counties which were opposed to secession met, and applied for their counties to be admitted to the Union as a State. This could not be done without Virginia's consent; but these same counties, although less than a third of the old State, gave consent for her, and Congress organized the State of West Virginia.

Lincoln's Assassination.

—Lincoln was elected to a second term, with Andrew Johnson of Tennessee as Vice-President.

The Democratic candidates unsuccessfully opposing Lincoln and Johnson were General George B. McClellan and George H. Pendleton. The close of the war, and the prospect of a speedy return of peace, caused great rejoicing. This rejoicing, however, was of short duration, for only five days after the surrender at Appomattox the whole country was stunned by the news that the President had been assassinated in Ford's Theatre, in Washington (April 14, 1865). The deed was committed by a misguided actor, John Wilkes Booth, who imagined himself performing the part of a patriot. The assassin sought

to escape, but was pursued, surrounded, and when he refused to surrender, was shot.

Lincoln's Plan of Restoring the Union.

—Mr. Lincoln's death proved very unfortunate for the South. He cherished no ill-feeling for that section, and his only desire was to preserve the Union and make a peace that would be lasting. He believed that a State had no power to secede, that the acts of secession were void, and that all the States were still in the Union.

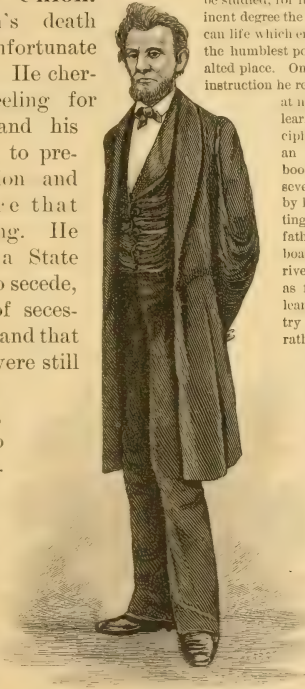
His idea was, if possible, to defeat the Confederate armies, and to put those States in the control of citizens who were Union men. During the war he organized a State government of Union men in that part of Tennessee under Federal control. He did the same thing in those parts of

Abraham Lincoln.

Abraham Lincoln will ever hold a foremost place among those whose names and lives have become a part of American history. His career may well be studied, for it exemplifies to an eminent degree the conditions of American life which enable one to rise from the humblest position to the most exalted place. One year covered all the instruction he received at school. But

at nine years of age he had learned to read, write, and cipher, and he became an industrious reader of books and a most persevering student. He rose by his own efforts. Splitting rails to fence his father's frontier farm; flat-boating down the Western rivers, going at one time as far south as New Orleans; clerking in a country store, which he did rather inefficiently, owing

to his constant devotion to his books; leading a company of volunteers in the Black Hawk War; serving as a member of the Illinois Legislature, where he soon attracted attention; representing his State in the Congress of the United States; canvassing the State in opposition to Stephen A. Douglas, one of the greatest orators and statesmen of this century, and vanquishing him in public debate; directing the destinies of the Union as President, at the most critical period of our country's history—these were the several significant steps of his career.



ABRAHAM LINCOLN.

directing the destinies of the Union as President, at the most critical period of our country's history—these were the several significant steps of his career.

Lincoln was called to administer the Government when all was uncertainty and confusion. As a politician he was ambitious, but his ambition gave place to the strong, earnest devotion of a patriot. His election had endangered the Union; and to save it from this danger he labored day and night faithfully, earnestly, and sorrowfully. Among all the vexations and trials with which he was surrounded while President, and facing many discouragements, he sought to "adhere to the right as God gives us to see the right." Viewed through the mists of passion and prejudice which overspread the country during the mighty conflict in which he was the central figure, he was often misjudged and misunderstood. As time passed on, however, the strength and singleness of purpose in his character made themselves felt. Now that these passions and prejudices have passed away, we see in all their simplicity the elements of greatness that make his life and character heroic. His death was a calamity to the South, for it was the prayer of his heart to restore the Union in such a way as to leave to both sides the fewest bitter memories. Had he lived, the evils of reconstruction would not have postponed so long the day when "a lasting peace would be achieved and cherished among ourselves."

Louisiana, Virginia, and Arkansas which came under Federal control; and after Lee's surrender the Union governments thus organized in those States were placed in power. He had refused to sign a bill passed by Congress (1864) putting the Confederate States under control of that body. Had he lived, his plan would have undoubtedly been carried out. Vice-President Andrew Johnson, who succeeded him, held the same views as to secession, but had a plan of his own for restoring each State to the control of its Union citizens.

Johnson's First Acts.—

The South was already occupied by the Federal army. Upon President Johnson's order, Jefferson Davis was followed, captured, and confined in Fortress Monroe; Stephens and others,

including several governors and State officers, were arrested at their homes and imprisoned. Civil government was abolished. In every city and town Federal troops were stationed, and the army officers were in charge. This condition continued for more than a month while the President was perfecting his plans.

Andrew Johnson's plan of reconstruction was as follows: He appointed provisional governors for these States, and instructed them to call conventions to amend the State constitutions. Only white citizens voted for delegates to the conventions, but every man who held office before the war, and afterward served the Confederacy, was disfranchised. When these conventions met, they were required to do

three things: First, to repeal the ordinances of secession; second, to abolish slavery in the State; third, to repudiate forever all debts incurred in carrying on the war. This was promptly done in every case; after which, State officers and legislatures were elected. The legislatures met promptly, ratified the Thirteenth Amendment, and this amendment became a part of the Constitution (December 18, 1865). Among the States counted to make the twenty-seven needed to adopt it were Virginia, North Carolina, South Carolina, Georgia, Louisiana, Arkansas, and Tennessee, and this led the Southern States to believe that they were once more in the Union.

Congressional Plan for Reconstruction. — Congress met in December, and refused to recognize the President's plan of reconstruction. It claimed that in treating with the Confederate States during the war it had recognized them as being out of the Union; that now they were not States, but territory conquered by the armies of the United States and subject to the control of Congress only. The State gov-

Freedmen's Bureau and Carpet-baggers.

When the Federal armies occupied any particular part of a Southern State, many who lived there abandoned their homes and moved within the Confederate lines. The negroes in these sections left the plantations and collected around the camps, where they had to be fed and taken care of. To look after these, Congress in 1865 created a "Bureau of Freedmen, Refugees, and Abandoned Lands," commonly called the Freedmen's Bureau. The commanding general in each State managed the bureau for that State, while in each county, bureau agents were appointed to look after the freedmen. These local agents were taken largely from the commissaries' and quartermasters' departments of the Federal army. Their influence over the negroes was great, and they were responsible for most of the political trouble that followed. They assumed and exercised extraordinary powers. Under the reconstruction act many of them were appointed to fill county offices. They organized the negro voters, and secured their own election to State and county offices. Many of these came South, their only property being the wearing apparel which they carried in their carpet bags, which were then in use as traveling bags. For this reason they were called "carpet-baggers." Many of them were notoriously corrupt and dishonest, and became rich as soon as they were elected to office. Wherever in the South they gained control of a State or city government, exorbitant taxes were levied and enormous public debts accumulated. It was not until eleven or twelve years after the war that the people of the South regained control of their own governments. In some cases this control was secured only by popular uprisings in which blood was shed. This was notably the case in Louisiana, a State that suffered much, and whose citizens at the peril of their lives wrested their State from "carpet-bag domination."

ernments which the President had organized were permitted to continue, but the names of these States were left off the rolls of Congress and their senators and representatives refused admission. The Fourteenth Amendment to the Constitution of the United States was proposed, which gave the negroes the right to vote and denied this right to a large number of Southern whites. President Johnson vetoed this and other bills relating to the South, but they were passed over his veto. The Southern States were required to ratify this amendment in order to be readmitted to the Union.

Congressional Plan Enforced.—Tennessee, being controlled by Republicans, ratified the



ANDREW JOHNSON.

Fourteenth Amendment and was readmitted. The ten other Confederate States refused to ratify. Congress then (March, 1867) passed the Reconstruction Act, which divided the South into five military districts. Each district was under command of a Federal general. A convention was to be held in each State. Negroes were given the right to vote for delegates and to sit as members in this convention, which was to form a constitution. If the

constitution formed was acceptable to Congress and if the legislature elected under it ratified the Fourteenth Amendment, the State would be readmitted. The commanding generals of the districts removed the governors and other officers of the States, appointed army officers to fill their places, and held the elections. The conventions thus elected were controlled by Northern men who had come South after the war, and were called "carpet-baggers." Under these constitutions, when framed, carpet-baggers and negroes were State officers and members of the legislatures. In seven States—North Carolina, South Carolina, Georgia, Florida, Alabama, Louisiana, and Arkansas—carpet-bag legislatures ratified the Four

teenth Amendment and the States were readmitted. In Mississippi, Virginia, and Texas the new constitutions were rejected by a popular vote.

Impeachment of President Johnson.—All political acts of Congress had been bitterly opposed and promptly vetoed by President Johnson. Congress, with equal promptness, had passed each act over his veto. The feeling between him and Congress was extremely bitter. The President made a tour through the North, and delivered public speeches in which he denounced Congress, and declared that it was not a true Congress; that its acts were null and void, because it had refused to admit the representatives from ten States of the Union. When Congress met, the leaders of that body, fearing that the President would prevent the carrying out of the reconstruction laws, passed certain acts to limit his power. One of these required that all orders to the army should pass through General Grant, although, under the Constitution, the President was commander-in-chief. Another was the Tenure of Office Act, which prohibited the President from removing a member of his cabinet or any officer whose appointment had been confirmed by Congress. In violation of this act, the President removed from office Edwin M. Stanton, Secretary of War, and was impeached by Congress for high crimes and misdemeanors. He was tried before the Senate and acquitted (May 26, 1868).

General Amnesty.—Still another act of Congress, intended to limit the power of the President, had taken from him the right to grant pardons by general proclamation. Notwithstanding this, on Christmas Day, 1868, President Johnson issued a general amnesty proclamation, granting pardon to all who had taken part on the side of the South, during the war. In February following, the prosecution of Jefferson Davis was abandoned, because it was thought impossible to convict him upon the charges against him. He had been in prison two years, without trial, but had been released on bail in 1867.

Grant Elected President.—During Johnson's administration, Nebraska was admitted as a State (1867); and Alaska was purchased of Russia, the price paid being \$7,200,000.

In the Presidential election of 1868 the Republican candidates were Ulysses S. Grant and Schuyler Colfax. The Democratic candidates were Horatio Seymour and Francis P. Blair. Grant and Colfax were elected.

Questions.—Tell something of the Trent affair. What support did Lincoln win by proclaiming freedom to slaves? When was his proclamation issued? What amendment to the Constitution confirmed the abolition of slavery? Tell something of the organization and admission of West Virginia. When was Nevada admitted? Who were the opposing candidates in the election of 1864? Tell something of the assassination of President Lincoln. Why was Lincoln's death unfortunate for the South? How did he regard the position of the South? What was his plan for restoring the Union? Who became President after his death? What were some of Johnson's first acts? Give some account of his plan of reconstruction. How did Congress treat this plan? What were some features of this plan? How was the congressional plan enforced? What were the Southern States compelled to do before being readmitted? Who were the carpet-baggers? Tell something of Johnson's opposition to Congress. How did he treat the acts of Congress? Tell something of Johnson's impeachment. Of the case against Jefferson Davis. What State was admitted while Johnson was President? What purchase was made? Who were the opposing candidates in the election of 1868?

REFERENCE OUTLINE.

ADMINISTRATIONS OF LINCOLN AND JOHNSON.

Sixteenth and Seventeenth Presidents.

Nineteenth and Twentieth Administrations.

Thirty-seventh, Thirty-eighth, Thirty-ninth, and Fortieth Congresses.

Principal Events.

	Inauguration.	
	Surrender of Fort Sumter (April 14).	
1861.	Secession of {	Virginia (April 17).
		Arkansas (May 6).
		North Carolina (May 20).
		Tennessee (June 8).
	War for Southern independence begins.	
	Trent affair.	
1863.	{ Emancipation Proclamation (January 1).	
	{ West Virginia admitted.	

1864. { Nevada admitted.
Presidential election—
Democratic candidates: George B. McClellan and George H. Pendleton.
Republican candidates: Abraham Lincoln and Andrew Johnson.
1865. { Appomattox surrender (April 9).
Lincoln assassinated (April 14).
Thirteenth Amendment to the Constitution adopted.
1867. { Nebraska admitted.
Alaska purchased.
1868. { Impeachment of Johnson.
Fourteenth Amendment adopted.
Presidential election—
Democratic candidates: Horatio Seymour and Francis P. Blair.
Republican candidates: Ulysses S. Grant and Schuyler Colfax.

FOR ADVANCED CLASSES.

Topics for Discussion.

- I. The Trent Affair. II. Maximilian in Mexico. III. Emancipation of Southern Slaves. IV. Assassination of President Lincoln. V. Reconstruction. VI. Impeachment of President Johnson. VII. Readmission of the Southern States. Purchase of Alaska.

References and Authorities.

Wilson's *Division and Reunion*.

Trent affair, 221. Emancipation, 226. Lincoln's assassination, 216. Reconstruction, 254-270. Impeachment of Johnson, 270. Alaska, 272.

Andrews's *History of the United States*, vol. ii.

Trent Affair, 184. Emancipation, 50, 190. Reconstruction, 194-202. Impeachment, 201.

Parallel Readings.

INDEX GUIDE for comparative examination of other works and authorities.—*Trent Affair*, *The*. *Mason and Slidell, Confederate Commissioners*. *Emancipation Proclamation, The*. *Thirteenth, Fourteenth, and Fifteenth Amendments*. *West Virginia, Admission of*. *Lincoln, Assassination of*. *Reconstruction*. *Civil Rights Bill, The*. *Military Act, The*. *Johnson, Impeachment of*. *Alaska, Purchase of*.

SPECIAL. Curry's *Southern States of the American Union*; Horrors of Reconstruction, 225. Davis: *Rise and Fall of the Confederate Government*, vol. ii.: chaps. lvi. and lvii. Evils of Reconstruction. Andrews: *The Last Quarter Century in the United States*, vol. ii., 18-20. Johnston: *History of American Politics*, 196-207. Brooke: *Life of Lincoln*. Morse: *Life of Lincoln*. Blaine: *Twenty Years in Congress*. Mayes: *Life of L. Q. C. Lamar*. The fullest information upon Reconstruction times in the South may be had in the volume, *Why the Solid South?* contributed to and prepared by a number of eminent Southern statesmen.

TOPICAL OUTLINE.

CAUSES.

Industrial Differences.

- { Slavery dies out in the North.
- { Slavery continues in the South.

Territorial Expansion.

- { The Louisiana purchase.
- { The acquisition of California and New Mexico.

Sectional Antagonism.

- { 1847 The Wilmot Proviso.
- { 1850 Compromise Measures of 1850.
- { 1854 Passage of the Kansas-Nebraska Bill.
- { 1831-48 Anti-slavery societies. Free soil parties.
- { 1852 Publication of "Uncle Tom's Cabin."
- { 1850-60 Fugitive Slave Laws enforced.
- { 1850-55 Personal Liberty Laws in Northern States.
- { 1857 Supreme Court Dred Scott Decision.
- { 1854-60 { The struggle for Kansas.
- { Rise of the Republican party.

Sectional Actions.

- { 1859 The John Brown raid into Virginia.
- { 1860 { Platform adopted by the Charleston Convention.
- { Election of Lincoln as President.
- { Secession of Southern States.
- { 1861 { Organization of the Southern Confederacy.
- { The decision to reënforce Fort Sumter.

First Encounters.

- { 1861 { Bombardment of Fort Sumter.
- { Battle of Manassas, Va. Wilson's Creek, Mo.

Important Battles in the West.

- { 1862 { Mill Springs. Fort Donelson. Pea Ridge.
- { Shiloh. Pittsburg Landing. New Orleans.
- { Corinth. Perryville. Murfreesboro.
- { 1863 Vicksburg. Chickamauga. Chattanooga.
- { 1864 Resaca. Dallas. Kenesaw. Atlanta.

Naval Operations.

- { 1861 Blockade of Southern ports.
- { 1861-65 Atlantic coast. Mississippi River.
- { 1862 Hampton Roads—Virginia and Monitor.
- { 1863-64 Alabama and Hatteras. Alabama and Kearsarge.

Important Battles in the East.

- { 1862 { Seven Pines. Valley Campaign. Seven Days' Battles.
- { Second Manassas. Sharpsburg (Antietam).
- { 1863 Chancellorsville. Gettysburg.
- { 1864 Wilderness. Spotsylvania. Cold Harbor.
- { 1864-65 Sherman's march. Savannah. Bentonville, N. C.
- { 1865 { Five Forks. Petersburg. Richmond.
- { Appomattox. Lee surrenders to Grant.

Related Actions.

- { 1863 { Seizure and release of Slidell and Mason.
- { Lincoln's Emancipation Proclamation.

RESULTS.

Union Restored.

- { 1865 { Thirteenth Amendment abolishing slavery.
- { Reconstruction by the President.
- { Reconstruction by Congress.
- { 1866-70 { Fourteenth Amendment.
- { Fifteenth Amendment.

Reunion.

CHAPTER XXI.

AFTER THE WAR.

Events of Grant's Administrations.—Grant served two terms as President, and during the entire time "carpet-baggers" and negroes continued to control some of the Southern States. Federal soldiers were kept in those States to sustain the "carpet-bag governments." The principal events that marked the administrations of Grant were: The completion of the first railroad across the continent, built by the Union Pacific and Central Pacific Railroad Companies (1869); the death of Robert E. Lee (October 12, 1870); the Treaty of Washington (1871); War with the Modoc Indians (1872) and with the Sioux (1876); the great Centennial Celebration at Philadelphia (1876); the admission of Colorado as a State (1876), and the Chicago (1871) and Boston (1872) fires.

The Fifteenth Amendment.—Congress proposed (1869) the Fifteenth Amendment to the Constitution of the United States. This amendment was intended to give Congress the power to enforce the civil rights of the negroes. The

Death of Robert E. Lee.

When a great man dies, and the tribute of a nation is paid to his memory, the badges of mourning and other outward indications of a people's sorrow seldom mean more than respect and regret. But when the news of Robert E. Lee's death went forth from the little town of Lexington, Va., there thrilled from heart to heart throughout the South a feeling more intense than regret or respect—the grief that is felt when one near and dear has passed away.

The world admired him; his country held him in high esteem; his people loved and venerated him. The South centered its affections in him because he was her very own; because he was her champion and defender through years of bloody conflict; because his fidelity to her brought upon him sacrifice and sorrow; and because, when peace came, he pointed her the way to resignation, forbearance, and trust in the God of nations who worketh all things well.

He was a model for the young to pattern after, in conduct and in all the relations of life. A demerit mark was never attached to his name in the four long years he attended that strictest of military academies—West Point. To him, *duty* was the noblest word in the English language. The gentleness and courtesy with which inferiors are treated characterize every true gentleman. Can any finer example of this gentleness and courtesy be cited than

Robert E. Lee touching his hat to an aged negro who, bowing and scraping, and with hat in hand, greeted "Marse Robert" as he was passing along the street. To a friend who expressed surprise at the act, Lee simply said: "I could not let an ignorant old negro excel me in politeness."

Lee was fifty-four years old when the war between the States began. At that time he was a noble specimen of vigorous manhood, tall, imposing, and massive. In the estimate of his official superiors he outranked in ability all other officers in the military service of the United States, from which service he resigned to dedicate his sword to the defense of his native State. It is said that General Scott, then commander-in-chief of the army, had already fixed upon Lee as his successor, age being about to compel him to retire.

At the close of the war Lee became president of Washington College, Virginia, and thus the remaining years of his life were spent in instructing youth. From all over the South young men came to him, and many of these feel to this day the effects of his influence and character. The college over which he presided has come to be the famous educational institution, Washington and Lee University, named from the two brightest stars which Virginia has placed in the galaxy of eminent Americans.

Every honor was paid the remains of the dead chieftain of the Southern Confederacy. Thousands participated in the funeral procession, and tens of thousands separated by distance were present in spirit at the graveside. But better than pomp and funereal pagantry were the tears in the eyes and the prayers in the hearts of millions of his people, as the hero lay dead in his Lexington home. Said a great London journal: "A country which has given birth to men like him, and those who followed him, may look the chivalry of Europe in the face without shame: for the fatherlands of Sidney and of Bayard never produced a nobler soldier, gentleman, and Christian than General Robert E. Lee."

seven Southern States which had been readmitted under Republican, or carpet-bag, governments at once ratified the amendment, while the three States which were still excluded were required to ratify it as an additional condition for readmission. The amendment was declared adopted in 1870, and about the close of the same year, Mississippi, Texas, and Virginia were finally readmitted to the Union, the two former under carpet-bag governments, but Virginia under the government of her own people, the carpet-bag ticket having been defeated. Virginia was the only Southern State that escaped misrule. Georgia was readmitted in 1868, and the people of the State voted in the Presidential election. This State was again excluded, again reconstructed, and finally readmitted in 1870.

The Washington Treaty.

—The Washington treaty settled several disputes that had arisen between the United States and England. The Northwestern boundary, and the damage done to the commerce of the United States by Confederate war vessels built in England, were the principal points at

issue. The treaty referred the boundary question to the Emperor of Germany as arbitrator, who decided in favor of the United States. It also referred the claim for damage to a board of arbitrators, which, assembling at Geneva, Switzerland, awarded the United States \$15,500,000. This award has taken the name of the place in which it was made, and the money paid is known as the Alabama Claims, from the name of the principal Confederate vessel built in England.

Indian Wars.—The war with the Modocs was caused by



CUSTER'S LAST RALLY.

attempts to remove these Indians from their lands in southern Oregon. That with the Sioux was caused by the great influx of whites into the Sioux reservation in Montana, immediately upon the discovery of gold in the Black Hills. The leader of the Modocs was Captain Jack, who was captured and hanged for the murder of General Canby, the commissioner sent to treat with him before the war was begun. The leader of the Sioux was Sitting Bull, who, with his band, was finally driven northward into British America. A sad episode connected with



From a photograph.

MAJ.-GEN. GEORGE A. CUSTER,
FEDERAL.

the Sioux war was the massacre of a regiment of soldiers under General Custer. They had unwisely penetrated too far into the country of the hostiles, and were surrounded by the whole tribe near the Big Horn River, and put to death.

Panic of 1873.—The debt of the United States Government incurred by the war amounted to about two thousand seven hundred and fifty million dollars (\$2,750,000,000). This debt rapidly decreased while Grant was President.

A part of the Government debt was represented by bills—called from their color “greenbacks”—which the Government had promised to redeem in coin. It will be remembered that the panic of 1837 was caused by the large number of bank bills in circulation and the scarcity of specie, or coin. The large number of greenbacks in circulation and the withdrawal of coin by speculators produced a similar result in 1873.

Presidential Campaign of 1876.—To succeed Grant, the Republicans nominated Rutherford B. Hayes of Ohio, and for Vice-President, William A. Wheeler of New York. The candidates of the Democrats were Samuel J. Tilden of New York and Thomas A. Hendricks of Indiana. The contest was very close. A number of fraudulent and corrupt practices in several departments of the Government had been brought to light during Grant’s administration. The President himself was a man of integrity, but had been unwise in the choice of several of his subordinates, who proved false to the trust reposed in them. The discovery of these frauds greatly weakened the Republican party, and the desire of change was so widely felt that



RUTHERFORD B. HAYES.

enough rallied under the campaign cry of "Tilden and Reform" to make it seem that the Democratic party had carried the election.

The chief cause for reaction in the political sentiment of the country was the course of the carpet-bag governments in the South. The people generally had come to realize the true character of these governments and of the leaders in control. Thinking men saw that the foundations of civil liberty were being undermined by the use of the army of the United States to uphold these governments, which were alien to the States where they existed and did not have the support of the citizens. Many patriotic Northern men who had acted with the Republican party now refused to indorse this policy, and voted for Tilden and Hendricks, who had a majority of over 250,000 of the popular vote.

The Electoral Commission.—The votes of three States, Louisiana, South Carolina, and Florida, were claimed by both parties. For a time excitement ran high, and a bloody conflict seemed imminent. But the Civil War had taught its lesson, and wiser counsel prevailed. To determine the result of the election, an electoral commission was created. This consisted of fifteen persons, five of whom were judges of the Supreme Court; five, senators; and five, representatives. As constituted, eight were Republicans and seven Democrats. The returns from each of the contested States were examined; and upon every matter coming up before the commission the decision was reached by a strictly partisan vote—eight to seven. Hayes and Wheeler were declared elected (1876).

President Hayes's "Peace Policy."—One of the first and most important acts of Hayes was to order the withdrawal of Federal troops from the Southern States. The carpet-bag system at once fell to pieces, and the government of those States was left in the hands of white citizens. Peace and prosperity now came to the South, after ten years of political disturbance following the five years of war.

Events of Hayes's Administration.—Hayes served one term of office. In the first year of his administration, war

Civil Service Reform.

The custom established by Jackson, of bestowing the offices of government as rewards for political services rendered the President or party, has been very generally followed. As a result, with every new President there was a general change of officers of government. No successful business man discharges his employees without cause after they have become efficient and experienced. The belief was slowly gaining ground that Government employees should be selected not because they are successful politicians, but because of their ability; and when once selected these servants should be retained as long as they render efficient and satisfactory service. For that reason a Civil Service Reform movement, in opposition to the Spoils System, as it is usually called, has been gaining steadily in strength. While Grant was President an act was passed (March 3, 1871) establishing a commission to examine into the fitness of candidates for appointment to office. The politicians in Congress so opposed this commission that it could not carry out the purpose for which it was created. But the killing of Garfield by a disappointed office-seeker was so strong an argument for reform in the method of appointing to office that the Pendleton Bill, a Democratic measure, was passed (January 16, 1883) establishing a Civil Service Commission. Dorman B. Eaton, John M. Gregory, and Leroy D. Thoman were the first Civil Service Commissioners. Since the establishment of the commission, competitive examinations are held at various intervals in different cities. At these examinations anyone who desires to enter the employ of the Government may have his fitness and capacity passed upon. From those making the highest average, candidates for vacancies are selected and are appointed on probation for six months. At the end of this term those who have proved themselves qualified receive regular appointments.

with the small tribe of Nez Percé [nā-per-sā'] Indians in the Northwest arose; it was brought to an end by General O. O. Howard, who pursued the hostiles 1,500 miles, and compelled them to surrender. Several calamities befell the country during the course of this administration. These included great railroad strikes and yellow fever epidemics. The railroad strikes (1877) extended over a large part of the country and resulted in dangerous riots in Pittsburg, Chicago, St. Louis, and other places. In the first-named city more than one hundred lives were lost, and three million dollars' worth of property was destroyed.

Yellow fever epidemics occurred in 1878 and 1879. Many places in the South were visited by the fatal disease, that portion suffering most being the Mississippi Valley. Science has of late proved that this dread scourge originates in the warmer latitudes, and that it can be excluded from this country by disinfecting and holding in quarantine all vessels coming from ports where yellow fever exists. A most perfect quarantine system is now in successful operation at a station estab-

lished for the purpose by the State of Louisiana, near the mouth of the Mississippi River.

Presidential Election of 1880.—In the Presidential election of 1880 the principal candidates were James A. Garfield of Ohio and Chester A. Arthur of New York, proposed by the Republicans; Winfield Scott Hancock of New York and William H. English of Indiana, by the Democrats. The Republican candidates were elected. The newly elected President was a man of unusual ability, and his administration bade fair to be as wise and well directed as any with which this country has been blessed.

But he had scarcely served four months when he was cruelly assassinated, and Arthur became President.

Arthur, President.—Called suddenly to the highest office in the land, Vice-President Arthur manifested unexpected ability in the administration of its affairs. The country was now

entering upon an era of great industrial prosperity. In 1881 there was held at Atlanta an exposition that revealed to an astonishing extent how rapidly the South was conforming to new industrial conditions. At New Orleans, three years after, a World's Cotton Centennial Exposition was opened to commemorate the one hundredth anniversary of the shipment of the first bale of cotton from America. The main building of this exposition exceeded in floor space any

Death of Garfield.

In the National Republican Convention of 1880, certain extremists known as "Stalwarts" supported Grant for a third term as President. They called the conservative Republicans who opposed them "Half-breeds." After a bitter contest, Garfield (Conservative) was nominated as a compromise. To reunite the party, Arthur (Stalwart) was nominated for Vice-President; and James G. Blaine, who had been the leading Conservative candidate for President, became Secretary of State. Garfield's refusal to appoint certain Stalwarts to office reopened the breach in the party. Two Stalwart senators, Conkling and Platt of New York, resigned their seats, but were not reelected by the State Legislature. The factional feeling grew intense, and a man named Guiteau, of uncertain mental balance, who favored the Stalwarts, assassinated the President in Washington (July 2, 1880), and after eighty days of suffering Garfield passed away (September 19, 1881).



JAMES A. GARFIELD.



CHESTER A. ARTHUR.

building ever erected before. President Arthur, at Washington, set in motion the massive and intricate machinery connected with this exposition, by means of a current of electricity over a telegraph wire to New Orleans.

Presidential Election of 1884. —

In the election for a successor to Arthur, the candidates of the principal parties were, of the Republicans, James G. Blaine of Maine and John A. Logan of Illinois ; of the Democrats, Grover Cleveland of New York and Thomas A. Hendricks of Indiana. Cleveland was elected. Thus, after an interruption of twenty-four years, a Democratic President was again called to administer the executive affairs of the Government.

Important Acts.—While Arthur was President, Congress passed Pendleton's Civil Service Reform Bill, a Democratic measure ; established a National Bureau of Labor Statistics to promote the interests of workingmen ; prohibited Chinese immigration and the bringing in of foreign laborers under contract, to compete with American workmen ; and prohibited polygamy in the United States.

Questions.—What continued in the South during the entire time of Grant's administration ? What were the principal events of Grant's administration ? What was the Fifteenth Amendment intended to do ? What States ratified the amendment ? What do you know of the Washington Treaty ? What was the "Geneva Award" ? What was the cause of the Modoc War ? Sioux War ? Who was Captain Jack ? What do you know of Custer's massacre ? What do you know of the panic of 1873 ? Who were the candidates to succeed Grant ? What had greatly weakened the Republican party in the estimation of the people ? What caused reaction in the political sentiment of the country ? How was the result of the election decided ? What do you know of the "Electoral Commission" ? What do you know of the Nez Percé War ? Of the railroad strikes ? Yellow fever epidemics ? Who were the candidates to succeed Hayes ? Who was elected ? How long did Garfield serve ? What can you say of Arthur as President ? What expositions were held during his term ? What did the New Orleans Exposition commemorate ? Who were the candidates to succeed Arthur ? What candidates were successful ? What important acts were passed during Arthur's term ?

FOR ADVANCED CLASSES.

Topics for Discussion.

- I. Life, Character, and Death of Robert E. Lee. II. The Washington Treaty. III. Wars with the Modocs and Sioux. IV. The Business Panic of 1873. V. The Disputed Election of 1876. VI. Events of Hayes's Administration. VII. Election and Death of Garfield. VIII. Civil Service Reform.

References and Authorities.

Andrews's *History of the Last Quarter Century in the United States*, vol. i.
Washington Treaty, 87-95. Indian wars, 169-193. Business panic, 252-263. Disputed election, 211-221. Garfield, 319-336. Civil Service Reform, 231-236, 341.

Wilson's *Division and Reunion*.

Washington Treaty, 278. Disputed election, 283. Civil Service Reform, 277, 293.

Parallel Readings.

INDEX GUIDE for comparative examination of other works and authorities.—*Lee, Robert E. Union Pacific Railroad, Completion of. Washington Treaty. The. Modoc War. The. Sioux War. The. Custer Massacre. The. Philadelphia Centennial. The. Chicago Fire. The. Alabama Claims. The. Geneva Award. The. Electoral Commission. The. Nez Percé War. The. Garfield, Death of. Civil Service Reform.*

SPECIAL.—Cooke's *Life of R. E. Lee. Southern Historical Papers*, vols. iii., vi., and viii.
Lalor : *Cyclopedia of Political Science*, ii., 572, 331-333 ; vol. iii., 943. Judson : *Growth of the American Nation*. Stanwood : *History of Presidential Elections*. Read, if possible, Margaret J. Preston's *General Lee after the War* in *Century Magazine* for June, 1889.

REFERENCE OUTLINE.

ADMINISTRATIONS OF ULYSSES S. GRANT OF ILLINOIS.

Eighteenth President.

Twenty-first and Twenty-second Administrations.

Forty-first, Forty-second, Forty-third and Forty-fourth Congresses.

Principal Events.

- | | | |
|-------|---|--|
| 1869. | { | Inauguration. |
| | { | Union Pacific Railroad built. |
| 1870. | { | Death of Robert E. Lee (October 12). |
| | { | Fifteenth Amendment adopted. |
| 1871. | { | Washington Treaty. |
| | { | Modoc War. |
| 1872. | { | Presidential election— |
| | { | Democratic candidates : Horace Greeley and B. Gratz Brown. |
| | { | Republican candidates : U. S. Grant and Henry Wilson. |
| 1873. | | Business panic. |

- | | | |
|-------|---|---|
| | { | Sioux War. |
| | | Centennial Exhibition at Philadelphia. |
| | | Colorado admitted. |
| | | Presidential election— |
| 1876. | | Democratic candidates : Samuel J. Tilden and Thomas A. Hendricks. |
| | | Republican candidates : Rutherford B. Hayes and William A. Wheeler. |
| | | Electoral Commission. |

ADMINISTRATION OF RUTHERFORD B. HAYES OF OHIO.

Nineteenth President.

Twenty-third Administration.

Forty-fifth and Forty-sixth Congresses.

Principal Events.

- | | | |
|-------|---|---|
| 1877. | { | Inauguration. |
| | | Nez Percé War. |
| | | Railroad riots. |
| 1878. | | Great yellow fever epidemic. |
| 1880. | { | Presidential election— |
| | | Democratic candidates : Winfield S. Hancock and William H. English. |
| | | Republican candidates : James A. Garfield and Chester A. Arthur. |
| | | |

ADMINISTRATION OF GARFIELD OF OHIO AND ARTHUR OF NEW YORK.

Twentieth and Twenty-first Presidents.

Twenty-fourth Administration.

Forty-seventh and Forty-eighth Congresses.

Principal Events.

- | | | |
|-------|---|--|
| 1881. | { | Inauguration. |
| | | Garfield assassinated (July 2). |
| | | Atlanta Exposition. |
| 1883. | | Civil Service Commission instituted. |
| 1884. | { | World's Cotton Centennial Exposition. |
| | | Presidential election— |
| | | Democratic candidates : Cleveland and Hendricks. |
| | | Republican candidates : James G. Blaine and John A. Logan. |

CHAPTER XXII.

REOPENING OF THE TARIFF QUESTION.

Cleveland as President.—The return of the Democratic party to power caused the Republicans to predict that the business of the country would be disturbed and its prosperity checked. Nothing of the sort happened. Cleveland's good judgment was shown in his choice of a Cabinet remarkable for its high order of ability and for its representative character. The idea that controlled him in his administration was expressed in his own memorable words: "Public office is a public trust," and his conduct of affairs was such as to convince all that this trust had not been misplaced.

Events of Cleveland's Administration.—While Cleveland was President there was erected in New York Harbor a gigantic statue, Liberty Enlightening the World, designed by the eminent sculptor Bartholdi, and presented by the people of France to the people of America

(October 28, 1886). In the same year a disastrous earthquake visited the south Atlantic coast of the United States. In the city of Charleston many buildings were laid in ruins. The citizens devoted themselves to the work of rebuilding with such energy that little trace of the disaster now remains.

Death of General Grant.—The period covered by Cleveland's first administration was remarkable for the number of deaths of eminent Americans. Among these were Grant, McClellan, Hendricks, Tilden, and Hancock. The death of Grant (July 23, 1885) awakened profound sorrow through the country. Notwithstanding the relentless energy he had shown in the war between the North and South, and the exalted rank he held among the great men of the world, he was really



GROVER CLEVELAND.

at heart the gentlest and simplest of men. His "Memoirs" reveal the character of this silent man of action.

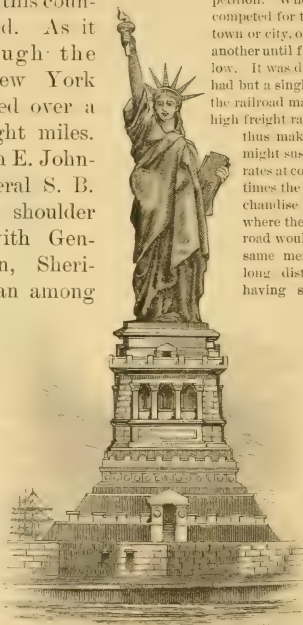
His funeral was one of the most imposing this country ever beheld. As it passed through the streets of New York City it extended over a distance of eight miles. General Joseph E. Johnston and General S. B. Buckner stood shoulder to shoulder with Generals Sherman, Sheridan, and Logan among the pall-bearers. Generals Wade Hampton, Fitzhugh Lee, and John B. Gordon were also present. No event had ever given stronger evidence of the fact that sectional antagonism was dying than this mingling of Blue and Gray at his grave and this joint tribute to the man whose greatest utterance in all his eventful life was: "Let us have peace."

The Interstate Commerce Commission.

The railroads of the country had increased to a remarkable extent both in number and mileage. With this increase came much rivalry and competition. Where more than one road competed for the freight business of a town or city, one road would underbid another until freight rates became very low. It was different with towns that had but a single line of railway. Here the railroad managers could charge as high freight rates as they desired, and thus make good the losses they might sustain by the low freight rates at competitive points. Sometimes the freight charges on merchandise hauled a short distance where there was but a single railroad would be more than on the same merchandise hauled over long distances between places having several competing railroads.

This was very unfair, for it discriminated against business men in smaller places and favored business men in larger places. The idea that the railroads were treating the people unjustly, caused some to advocate the control of the railroads by the Government, just as it has the management of the post-office business of the country. Many opposed this idea, fearing that it would give the

Government too much power. However, all realized that something must be done to protect the people against the discriminations which a railroad might make. An interstate commerce law was passed, and an Interstate Commerce Commission consisting of five persons was established (Febru-



STATUE OF LIBERTY.

ary 7, 1887). To this commission is given the power of supervision over all railroads whose lines extend through more than one State. It sees that all rates are reasonable and just; that no discrimination is made in favor of any particular shipper of freight; and that freight charges for short hauls must be less than freight charges for long hauls, and in proportion to them. The spirit and intent of the Interstate Commerce Act is not to interfere with railroads and work injury to them, but to maintain just relations between railroad owners and railroad users. In this respect the commission accords with the main purpose of our Government, which is to promote the general welfare.

Presidential Succession Act.—The death of Vice-President Hendricks (November 25, 1885) left a Republican next in succession to Cleveland as President. Congress saw that some enemy might be tempted to assassinate the President in order to bring the opposition party into power. To guard against this danger, both parties united on a new law to govern the Presidential succession. Under this law, if both Presi-

dent and Vice-President should die, the Cabinet officers, who are of the same political party as the President, succeed in regular order, beginning with the Secretary of State.

Apache War.—The Indian difficulties in the West that claimed the attention of the Government were those arising with the warlike Apaches of Arizona. To stop the many atrocities they were committing, General Crook, a famous Indian fighter, was sent against them. He pursued the hostiles into Mexico, surrounded them in a secluded spot in the wilds of the Sierra Madre Mountains, and compelled their chief, Geronimo, and a large party of his followers to surrender. These were taken to Fort Pickens, near Pensacola, Florida, where, far from the scenes of their atrocities, they were for a time kept under strict guard.

The "Educational Campaign."

The masses of the people are consumers of articles protected by the tariff. As we have seen,* tariff raises the cost and consumers receive little direct benefit from an increase of prices. To win over these consumers to the side of protection, new arguments had to be used. It could hardly be said now that American manufactures were in their infancy, so protection for infant industries could no longer be urged. The argument now was that a protective tariff benefited the laborer and the farmer, inasmuch as the protected manufacturers who received higher prices for their goods were able to pay higher wages to their workmen, who, in turn, were able to pay the farmers better prices for the necessities of life.

* See page 322.

On the other hand it was urged, by those opposed to high tariff, that protection had caused an unhealthy increase in the number of factories, that overproduction and competition were causing a decrease of profits, rendering necessary a lowering of wages; that the multiplication of producing agents in the various industries had brought into operation the public evil called "trusts," which are powerful combinations to control the products of an industry, and by limiting the supply cause the prices to rise above values, to the injury of the consumers. This limiting of production has been accomplished in many instances by closing down a number of the factories organized into a trust, whose owners lose nothing by the stoppage, as they share in the increased profits of the combination. But the workmen thus thrown out of employment are sufferers.

Thus it would seem that for every benefit afforded by protection there is a corresponding evil. As to which of the two—benefit or evil—predominates, it yet remains for the American people fully to understand. The presidential contest of 1888 has been termed an "educational campaign," for never before had American thought been so awakened to the consideration of wages, profits, consumption, exchange, the inter-relations of an industrial people, and other subjects pertaining to the study of political economy.

The Tariff Question Again.—Cleveland's administration was characterized by a reopening of the tariff question. The United States Government in its long contest with the Southern States had incurred, as we have seen, a heavy public debt. In the years following the war, high tariffs were levied, and by the time Cleveland became President the increased revenues of the Government were sufficient not only to pay off the debt as it matured, but to leave a large surplus in the public treasury.

In a masterly message to Congress, Cleveland maintained that the tariff was a tax, and that the accumulation of a surplus in the United States treasury was evidence that the people were being unnecessarily taxed. He therefore recommended a reduction of the tariff. In this he was sustained by his party,

and revenue reduction became the leading issue in the presidential campaign of 1888.

Presidential Campaign of 1888.—The candidates put forward by the Republicans at the end of Cleveland's term of office were: For President, Benjamin Harrison of Indiana; for Vice-President, Levi P. Morton of New York. The Democrats renominated Grover Cleveland, and placed upon the ticket with him, for Vice-President, Allen G. Thurman of Ohio.

The high revenue tariffs had served many of the purposes of

protection. The Republican party was opposed to any reduction that would interfere with the protective feature of these tariffs. Those who were benefited or imagined themselves to be benefited by protection rallied strongly to the cause of the Republicans, and Harrison and Morton were elected.

Questions.—What was feared by the Republicans in the success of the Democratic party? How did Cleveland meet these fears? What memorable words were uttered by him? What were some of the events of Cleveland's administration? What prominent men died while Cleveland was President? Tell something of the life and character of Grant. Of his death and funeral. Of the Presidential Succession Act. What do you know of the Apache War? What question was now reopened? What did Cleveland maintain in his message to Congress? What did he recommend? Who were the candidates for President at the close of Cleveland's term? Who were elected?

FOR ADVANCED CLASSES.

Topics for Discussion.

- I. Events of Cleveland's First Administration. II. The Interstate Commerce Commission.
- III. The Apache War. IV. The Educational Campaign of 1888.

References and Authorities.

Andrews's *History of the Last Quarter Century*, vol. ii.
Cleveland's first administration, 91-127.

Wilson's *Division and Reunion*.
Interstate Commission, 294. Educational campaign, 290, 291.

Parallel Readings.

INDEX GUIDE for comparative examination of other works and authorities.—*Statue of Liberty*, *Bartholdi's*. *Charleston Earthquake*, *The*. *Interstate Commerce Commission*, *The*. *Grant, Death of*. *Apache War*, *The*. *Geronimo*. *Presidential Campaign of 1888*.

SPECIAL.—King: *Campaigning with Crook*.

NOTE.—The events of this and the succeeding chapters are of such recent occurrence as not yet to have found their way into the permanent literature of the country. Only meager reference to books therefore is possible. For information independent of the text-book the student is advised (1) to question some intelligent elderly acquaintance upon his knowledge of the several topics given, for they have no doubt attracted his attention as they successively came into public notice. (2) Consult newspaper files. These will be found in public libraries and offices of publication. (3) Examine back numbers of magazines published shortly after the topic under investigation became a subject for public thought. A complete file of the *Review of Reviews* will be of invaluable service along this line, and no school library should be without it, as it is easily obtainable. *McClure's Magazine*, *Century*, *Harper's*, *Atlantic*, *Forum*, *North American Review*, will all be found rich in valuable material and interesting to the student. *Public Opinion*, *Harper's Weekly*, and *Frank Leslie's Weekly* are also very valuable publications. (4) Appleton's *Annual Cyclopaedia* will be found to contain full information upon historical and political events of each year, and is issued up to a very recent date.

REFERENCE OUTLINE.

FIRST ADMINISTRATION OF GROVER CLEVELAND OF NEW YORK.

Twenty-second President.

Twenty-fifth Administration.

Forty-ninth and Fiftieth Congresses.

Principal Events.

- | | | | |
|-------|------------|---|--------------------------|
| | { | Inauguration. | |
| 1885. | | { | Grant (July 23). |
| | Death of { | | McClellan (October 29). |
| | | | Hendricks (November 25). |
| 1886. | { | Charleston earthquake. | |
| | | Interstate Commerce Commission instituted. | |
| 1887. | | Apache War. | |
| 1888. | { | Presidential election— | |
| | | Democratic candidates : Cleveland and Thurman. | |
| | | Republican candidates : Benjamin Harrison and Levi P. Morton. | |

CHAPTER XXIII.

HOME PRODUCTIONS AND FOREIGN MARKETS.

1.

Harrison's Administration.—One of the first steps of Harrison's administration was an effort to secure new trade in Central and South America. This effort was due to James G. Blaine, Secretary of State in Harrison's Cabinet. Blaine is often called the Henry Clay of the Republican party, because, although for many years its ablest leader, he twice failed to get its nomination for President, and finally, when nominated, was defeated by Cleveland.

Pan-American Congress.—Mr. Blaine invited the Republics of Central America and South America,



BENJAMIN HARRISON.

and Mexico, to send delegates to Washington to a meeting called the Pan-American Congress. The word "pan" means "all," and the name was given to the meeting because it was to include "all America." The congress was held (1889), and the Bureau of American Republics was established to furnish information and to promote commercial relations between the republics. Little new trade was gained, because we could not sell our goods at as low prices as England and Germany.

Three foreign controversies occurred during the years 1889 and 1891. Germany was about to annex the Samoan Islands, but was met by objections arising from American and British interests. A treaty was finally agreed to by which Germany, England, and the United States jointly control the islands. During a civil war in Chile, the United States Minister had excited the prejudices of the Chilean people against our citizens, and as a result a mob attacked a party of United States sailors, killing two and wounding eighteen. Our Government demanded and obtained reparation. In New Orleans, certain Italians, members of a secret society called the Mafia, assassinated the Chief of Police. When the jury failed to convict, a party of citizens entered the jail and shot the assassins (March 14, 1891). For the benefit of their families our Government paid \$25,000 as damages.

Events of Harrison's Administration.—While Harrison was President six new States were admitted to the Union. These were North Dakota, South Dakota, Montana, Idaho, Washington, and Wyoming. A large part of the Indian Territory, once set aside to the exclusive use of the red man, was opened up, by proclamation of the President, to white settlers (March 27, 1889). The rush of homeseekers to this part of the country is known as the "Oklahoma boom." Two events happening within the confines of Pennsylvania occupied widespread attention. One, occurring in the Conemaugh Valley, was the bursting of a reservoir dam, which wrecked the town of Johnstown and destroyed by flood thousands of lives and millions of value in property. The other, happening in the town of Homestead, was the breaking out of labor riots, which

resulted in much bloodshed and violence. The one hundredth anniversary of Washington's inauguration was fitly celebrated in New York City, April 30, 1889.

The McKinley Tariff Law.—Congress was controlled by the Republicans, who believed that in electing Harrison the people had indorsed a tariff for protection. Therefore they passed (1890) a very high-tariff law, called the McKinley Bill, after its author. It was thought that this high tariff would increase manufactures, and the influence of Mr. Blaine secured the addition to the McKinley Bill of a clause which he hoped would make new markets abroad for our increased manufactures. No duty was charged on sugar, molasses, tea, coffee, and raw hides coming from any country that would "reciprocate" by admitting our products and manufactures free of duty. This was called "reciprocity," a new name for an old idea. It did not give the foreign trade desired for our goods. The McKinley tariff increased the prices of many articles and reduced the income of the Government.

Cleveland elected President.—By the time the presi-

Jefferson Davis.

A number of men who had been prominent in our country's affairs died while Harrison was President. Among these were Jefferson Davis, Rutherford B. Hayes, James G. Blaine, and General P. G. T. Beauregard.

Jefferson Davis was among the greatest exponents of the principles of State sovereignty whose voices had been heard in the hall of Congress. Born (1808) in Christian County, Ky., he was brought to Mississippi when a child and grew up in that State. He was graduated from West Point (1828) and served seven years in the regular army of the United States. In 1835 he returned to his plantation in Warren County, Miss. He entered public life in 1845, serving as member of Congress, United States senator, member of the President's Cabinet, and again United States senator until the withdrawal of his State from the Union caused him to cast his destiny with that of his people.

As colonel of the First Mississippi Regiment of Volunteer Rifles in the Mexican War he won distinguished honor at Monterey and saved the day at Buena Vista. As Secretary of War during Pierce's administration he increased the strength and efficiency of the regular army. While in public life, no statesman stood higher; none had more to hope for in the way of political preferment; and none made greater sacrifices for the cause he embraced.

With the fall of the Confederacy his public career closed. His last days were spent at his beautiful country home, Beauvoir, in southern Mississippi, near the Gulf shore. Here several works of great literary and historic value were produced by him. Upon a journey to another part of the State he was stricken with his last illness, and was brought to New Orleans, where he died (Dec. 6, 1889). All realized that a man whose life and character were spotless had passed away. His funeral was attended by large delegations of leading citizens from every Southern State, and while the remains re-

posed in state in the City Hall of New Orleans, they were viewed by more than one hundred thousand who had assembled from far and near to obtain a last look at the dead chieftain. In May, 1893, his remains were removed to Richmond, Va. Respected by the aged and revered by the youth of that South whose past is linked with his, and whose future he and his generation have filled with memories undying, he rests in the capital city of that Confederacy of which he was the only President.

of Illinois was nominated for Vice-President. The Republicans renominated Harrison, with Whitelaw Reid of New York for Vice-President, on a platform which favored a high protective tariff. These platforms made the tariff question the great issue in the campaign. Cleveland and Stevenson were elected.

The People's Party.—At this presidential election a third party secured twenty-two electoral votes for James B. Weaver for President and James G. Field for Vice-President. Many farmers had been members of an organization called the Farmers' Alliance; many workingmen were members of the Knights of Labor. These united in 1891 and formed the "People's Party." Their platform proposed that the Government should establish a subtreasury in each State to lend money at two per cent interest on corn, wheat, cotton, and like products as security, and that the mints should be free to coin all silver.

dential election came on in 1892, there was much dissatisfaction with the McKinley tariff, and the Democrats again nominated Grover Cleveland of New York for President, on a platform which denounced the system of protection as "robbery" of the many for the benefit of the few, and favored a tariff for revenue. Adlai E. Stevenson

The McKinley Tariff Law.

To admit sugar and molasses from foreign countries free of duty took away protection from our own producers of sugar, and yet they were equally entitled to protection under a protective system. To compensate these home producers for this loss of protection, the McKinley tariff bill provided that one cent should be paid them on every pound of sugar they produced. This was called a "bounty," because the Government did not buy the sugar. The McKinley tariff law continued in force until August 27, 1894, and the deficit in the revenue under it was \$17,000,000 in 1891, \$27,000,000 in 1892, \$4,000,000 in 1893, and \$70,000,000 in 1894. Reciprocity treaties were made with Brazil, Hayti, San Domingo, Nicaragua, Honduras, Guatemala, Salvador, Germany, Austro-Hungary, and with England for the West Indies and with Spain for Cuba and Porto Rico. Under the treaties, our sales to those countries for the year ending June 30, 1893, were \$142,178,665; and in 1896, after the treaties were abolished, our trade was \$145,096,048.

2.

Events of Cleveland's Second Administration.—

Utah was admitted as a State, January 4, 1896. The boundary line between Venezuela and British Guiana had been in dispute for many years. England was about to take possession of the disputed territory, and Venezuela appealed to the United States. In consequence of our firm stand, England abandoned the idea, and a commission was appointed to settle the boundary. A dispute between the United States and Great Britain as to the right to catch seals in Bering Sea was submitted to arbitration. The arbitrators decided that the United States had no right to prohibit sealing, but they recommended that the fur-bearing seals should be protected by international arrangement.

Commemorative Celebrations.—The four hundredth anniversary of the discovery of America was made memorable by the holding of a great World's Fair, or Columbian Exposition, at Chicago. The buildings erected for the purpose constituted a "White City" whose architectural beauty and grandeur have never been surpassed in all the world's history. The Exposition was dedicated October 12, 1892, was opened May 1, 1893, and closed October 31 of the same year. It was visited by more than twelve million people; but as some entered more than once, the number of gate admissions exceeded twenty-seven millions. Two years after the Chicago fair, another exposition was held (1895) at Atlanta, Ga., which was attended by immense crowds.

The Panic of 1893.—Harrison's administration had increased the Government's expenses and reduced the income. The surplus in the Treasury had been spent, and it was known that the Government did not have cash to pay its bills. Prices began to fall and money grew scarce. European bankers who had loaned money on our railroad stocks and bonds became alarmed. They returned our securities and took back our gold in payment. This started a panic. Prices fell still lower; banks failed in every part of the country; money became still scarcer, and by the opening of summer people were compelled

to use substitutes. Mr. Cleveland believed that the trouble was due to a law called the Sherman Act, which obliged the Government to buy 4,500,000 ounces of silver every month and give Government notes in payment. He called a special session of Congress and urged the repeal of the purchasing clause of the law. This was done, but it did not bring relief.

The Wilson Tariff Law.

—At the first regular session of Congress a bill was introduced which embodied the Democratic ideas of tariff for revenue, and was called the Wilson Bill after its author. The Democrats were as anxious as the Republicans to build up a foreign trade, but their plan for doing this was to reduce the price of our goods by admitting free of duty raw materials necessary to manufacture them. The bill was so amended in the Senate that it no longer represented Democratic ideas. The House was forced to accept the amendments, but Cleveland refused to sign the bill, and it became a law (August, 1894) without his name. A tax on incomes was levied, but was pronounced unconstitutional by the Supreme Court, and so the Wilson Bill

The History of Silver Legislation.

When Congress (1792) created our system of money, a silver dollar equal to the Spanish milled dollar was made the standard by which the weight and value of all our other coins were fixed. A piece of gold weighing one-fifteenth as much as a silver dollar was made the gold dollar. Thus the ratio was fifteen to one. The system was bimetallic, and the mints were free to coin both gold and silver. The ratio was changed to sixteen to one in 1834 by putting less gold in gold coin. When the war began (1861), gold and silver coins were locked up and "paper money" only was used for eighteen years. In 1879 the Government began to pay its notes in coin. This was called "resumption," and one hundred million dollars in gold, known as the "reserve fund," was kept in the Treasury by the Secretary as a guarantee that the Government was able to pay its debts. In 1873, while only "paper money" was in use, Congress passed a new coinage act, which made the gold dollar the standard and dropped the silver dollar from the list of coins. This demonetized silver, as England had done many years before, and made all debts of more than five dollars, public and private, payable in gold only. In 1878 the Democrats, who controlled the House of Representatives, passed the Bland Bill for the free coinage of silver; but the Senate, being Republican, added the Allison amendment, which gave us the Bland-Allison law. This act made silver a legal tender and required not less than two nor more than four million silver dollars to be bought and coined each month. This was "limited," not "free" coinage. In 1890 the Senate (Republican) passed a bill for the free coinage of silver, which the House (Republican) rejected; and as a compromise, the Sherman Act was passed. This required 4,500,000 ounces of silver to be bought by the United States Treasurer each month, at the market price, and paid for in Treasury

notes, but did not require it to be coined.

In 1873 the silver in a dollar was worth \$1.02 in gold; in 1893 it was worth 55 cents in gold. By this time the leading countries of Europe had adopted the gold standard and England had stopped coining silver for India. Conferences were held and strong efforts made to persuade the countries of Europe to agree with us on the free coinage of silver, but all efforts failed. Nearly all the world, except Europe and the United States, uses silver as the standard money.

also failed to bring in revenue to pay the expenses of the Government.

The Bond Sales.—When gold was withdrawn from the Treasury, Mr. Cleveland issued one hundred million dollars in bonds and sold them for gold to replace it. More gold was withdrawn, and more bonds were issued. Under the last year of the McKinley tariff law

the income of the Government lacked seventy millions of paying the expenses, so the President ordered a third series of bonds. As the deficit continued under the Wilson tariff law, a fourth series of bonds was issued. These bonds added \$262,000,000 to the national debt.

The hard times continued for four years. Wages were reduced and factories closed. The great labor strike occurred in Chicago, which stopped business and threatened the destruction of railroad property. Mr. Cleveland sent United States troops there to preserve order. Prices of cotton, wheat, and corn continued to fall. Land and houses declined in value, many railroads became bankrupt and were sold out for their debts. Under this condition of things a new issue was brought before the people. This was the money question.

The Money Question.—Gold and silver are known as the money metals of the world, and from the day the first mint was opened, any man who had either metal was free to have it coined into money. But in 1873 this was changed. Since then only the men who owned gold have been free to have it coined. Many believed that this made an unnatural demand for gold, and raised its price so that by comparison with it all other prices seemed to have fallen. This, they thought, was the cause of low prices, scarce money, and hard times. As a remedy, they claimed that the mints should be free to coin silver as they did gold; and that sixteen ounces of silver

should be coined into the same number of dollars as one ounce of gold. Those who favored this were called "free silver" men. On the other hand, many people believed that prices declined because money had been taken out of business and locked up; that this had been done because men who had money were afraid that the Government would permit too much silver to be coined; and that the people to whom they loaned this money would pay them back in silver dollars, which in Europe and the rest of the world would bring only fifty-three cents each in gold. They claimed that by adopting the gold standard confidence would be restored, and that the money then locked up would come back into use and prosperity would return. These were called "gold" men. The silver men claimed that free coinage would make the silver in a silver dollar worth as much as the gold in a gold dollar. The gold men denied that it would do this unless Europe joined us in free coinage.

Nominating Conventions.—The Democratic National Convention, which assembled at Chicago, 1896, adopted a platform which declared for the free coinage of silver at the ratio of sixteen to one. William J. Bryan, an eloquent orator from Nebraska, who had won fame as an advocate of free silver, was nominated for President, and Arthur Sewall of Maine for Vice-President. The Republican Convention met at St. Louis, and adopted a platform which declared for the gold standard until such time as the nations of Europe would agree to the free coinage of silver. They nominated for President William McKinley of Ohio, the author of the McKinley Bill, and for Vice-President Garret A. Hobart of New Jersey. A number of gold standard Democrats would not support Bryan and Sewall. These held a convention at Indianapolis, adopted a gold platform, and nominated John M. Palmer of Illinois and Simon B. Buckner of Kentucky. On the other hand, a number of free silver Republicans would not support McKinley and Hobart. They held a convention and indorsed Bryan. Thus the two great parties were divided on the money question. The People's Party, or "Populists" as they were called, were silver

men, and supported Bryan for President, but nominated Thomas E. Watson of Georgia, one of their own party, for Vice-President. McKinley and Hobart were elected.

Results of the Campaign.—Never had the people become so aroused since the days when slavery was made a political question. The innumerable articles which appeared in the newspapers and the many public speeches that were made in every part of the country gave the people very valuable instruction in the principles of finance.

Questions.—What step was taken to get the trade of Central and South America? Who led in this effort? Tell something of the Pan-American Congress. Of the Samoan controversy. Of the Chilean controversy. Of the Italian controversy. What six States were admitted while Harrison was President? What Territory was opened to settlement? What calamity happened in Pennsylvania? What riots? What historical event was celebrated? What were some features of the McKinley tariff bill. In the election of 1892 who were the opposing candidates? What third party was formed? What was its platform? What important events occurred during Cleveland's second term? What remarkable celebration? Tell something of the panic of 1893. Of the Wilson Bill. Of the bond sales. Of the hard times. Of the money question. What candidates were elected in the campaign of 1896? What State was admitted during the same year?

WORK FOR ADVANCED CLASSES.

Topics for Discussion.

- I. Foreign Controversies during Harrison's Administration. II. Life, Character, and Death of Jefferson Davis. III. The Chicago World's Columbian Exposition. IV. Events of Cleveland's Second Administration. V. The McKinley Tariff Law. VI. Silver Legislation. VII. The Wilson Tariff Law. VIII. Campaign of 1896 and its Results.

Parallel Readings.

INDEX GUIDE for comparative examination of other works and authorities.—*Samoa* *Controversy*, *The*. *Chilean* *Affair*, *The*. *Italian* *Controversy*, *The*. *Davis*, *Jefferson*, *Death* *of*. *Johnstown* *Flood*, *The*. *Homestead* *Riots*, *The*. *Chicago* *World's* *Fair*, *The*. *Pullman* *Strike*, *The*. *McKinley*, *William*. *Bryan*, *William* *J.* *Chicago* *Platform*, *The*. *Money* *Question*, *The*. *Populist* *Party*, *The*. *Resumption*, *Coinage*, *Specie*.

(For sources of information, see note at the end of Chapter xxii.)

REFERENCE OUTLINE.

ADMINISTRATION OF BENJAMIN HARRISON OF INDIANA.

Twenty-third President.

Twenty-sixth Administration.

Fifty-first and Fifty-second Congresses.

Principal Events.

- | | | |
|-------|---|---|
| | { | Inauguration. |
| | | Samoan controversy. |
| | | Oklahoma Territory opened (March 27). |
| | | Celebration of Washington's inauguration (April 30). |
| 1889. | | Conemaugh disaster (May 31). |
| | | North and South Dakota admitted (November 2). |
| | { | Montana admitted (November 8). |
| | | Washington Territory admitted (November 11). |
| | { | Death of Jefferson Davis (December 5). |
| | | |
| 1890. | { | Idaho and Wyoming admitted. |
| | | McKinley tariff law. |
| 1891. | { | Italian controversy. |
| | | Chilean controversy. |
| | { | Presidential election— |
| | | Democratic candidates : Cleveland and Adlai E. Stevenson. |
| 1892. | | Republican candidates : Harrison and Whitelaw Reid. |
| | | Dedication of World's Columbian Exhibition at Chicago (October 12). |
| 1893. | { | Death of { Hayes (January 17). |
| | | Blaine (January 27). |
| | | Beauregard (February 20). |
| | | Hawaiian Islands apply for annexation. (See p. 469.) |

SECOND ADMINISTRATION OF GROVER CLEVELAND OF NEW YORK.

Twenty-fourth President.

Twenty-seventh Administration.

Fifty-third and Fifty-fourth Congresses.

Principal Events.

- | | | |
|-------|---|--|
| 1893. | { | Inauguration. |
| | | Opening of the Chicago World's Fair. |
| 1894. | { | Chicago labor riots. |
| | | Wilson tariff law. |
| 1895. | | Atlanta Exposition. |
| | { | Utah admitted (January 4). |
| | | Cuba appeals for recognition (January 7). |
| | | Presidential election— |
| | | Democratic candidates : William J. Bryan and Arthur Sewall. |
| 1896. | | Populist candidates : Bryan and Thomas E. Watson. |
| | | Sound Money candidates : John M. Palmer and Simon B. Buckner. |
| | { | Republican candidates : William McKinley and Garret A. Hobart. |
| | | |

PREPARATORY GEOGRAPHY LESSON.

Upon a globe or map of the world note the relative positions of Spain, Cape Verde Islands, West Indies, Florida, San Francisco, Hawaii, Ladrone Islands, and Philippine Islands.

Upon a map of the United States locate Key West, Tampa, Fernandina, Jacksonville, and Norfolk. Note how far Key West is from Havana.

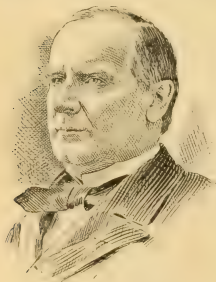
Upon a map of the West Indies note the relative positions of Havana and Santiago, Cuba; Ponce and San Juan, Porto Rico.

Upon a map of Oceanica locate the cities of Manila, Hongkong, Honolulu. About how far from San Francisco is Manila?

CHAPTER XXIV.

THE WAR WITH SPAIN.

McKinley President.—McKinley was inaugurated March 4, 1897. With the return of the Republican party to power, the tariff laws of the country were again changed. The bill embodying these changes is known as the Dingley Bill. The peace enjoyed by the United States for thirty-three years, or since the close of the war between the States, was broken while McKinley was President. Nations engage in war from various motives: sometimes it is to acquire new territory; at other times it is to destroy the power of a rival nation or to revenge insult. But the war against Spain, entered into by the United States, was from a higher motive than any of these. It was undertaken in the cause of humanity and to put an end to human suffering.



WILLIAM McKINLEY.

The Revolution in Cuba.—In 1894 the Cuban patriots took up arms against the rule of Spain, and began a revolution to make Cuba free. Many similar efforts had been made during the present century, but always without success. The Cubans had the sympathy of the United States, but the laws

of nations made it impossible for our Government to help them, although strong efforts were made to induce us to recognize the rebels as belligerents. Spain had made but little progress in suppressing the Cuban revolt. Large armies had overrun the island, but the Cubans, like the Partisans of the Carolinas in the War of the American Revolution, confined their operations to sudden attacks and to harassing the enemy. Becoming desperate, the Spanish commander-in-chief, General Weyler, changed his policy from military campaigning to one of destruction and great cruelty. Rural parts of the island were laid waste, and innocent people—women, children, and non-combatants—were ordered to the towns occupied by Spanish troops. Here, deprived of their means of subsistence, these “reconcentrados,” as they were called, slowly starved to death, exciting no pity in the hearts of their cruel captors. Thousands perished.

The United States Protests.—So lamentable a condition of affairs could not long be tolerated by the American people. Notice was given to Spain that the war must end. This interference infuriated the Spaniards. The lives of many Americans living in Cuba became unsafe. But for the firmness and courage of Consul-General Fitzhugh Lee, at Havana, serious trouble might have occurred.

The Maine in Havana Harbor.—To protect American interests, the United States battleship *Maine*, commanded by Captain Sigsbee, was sent to Havana. One night, while at anchor over a spot specially assigned it by the Spanish authorities, the ship was blown up (February 15, 1898). Two hundred and sixty-six officers and men lost their lives, without the least opportunity of saving themselves. Investigation proved that the *Maine* was destroyed not by accident, but by a submarine mine treacherously placed under the ship. Spain denied this, but the American people were convinced that it was true, and the whole country was aroused. It was evident that war was near at hand.

War Preparations.—Congress promptly appropriated \$50,000,000 for the country's defense. Navy yards became

places of intense activity. The United States began purchasing war vessels abroad, and negotiating for merchant vessels at home to be converted into ships of war. Spain concentrated armored cruisers and torpedo boats at the Cape Verde Islands, to await orders for crossing the Atlantic.



REAR-ADM. W. S. SCHLEY.



ADMIRAL GEORGE DEWEY



REAR-ADM. WM. T. SAMPSON.

trated in Hampton Roads, Va., and were formed into a flying squadron, under Commodore Schley, ready to proceed to any point. The North Atlantic squadron, under Acting Admiral Sampson, gathered at Key West, Fla., convenient to Cuba.

War Begins.—Joint resolutions were adopted by Congress (April 19) recognizing Cuban independence and demanding that Spain remove all her forces from the island. Spain immediately dismissed the American Minister at Madrid (April 21), before he had the opportunity of formally presenting the final demand, or ultimatum. Spain's act was a virtual declaration of war. The President's call for 125,000 volunteers (April 23) was promptly answered. On April 25, 1898, Congress passed a formal declaration of war.

Dewey's Victory at Manila.—The United States for some time had been keeping in Asiatic waters a squadron of six vessels, commanded by Commodore George Dewey. Upon the declaration of war, Dewey proceeded to the Philippine

Islands, Spain's richest colonial possession. He found a powerful Spanish fleet in Manila Harbor. The guns of the combined forts and fleet, together with the numerous torpedoes in the harbor, would have made an ordinary commander hesitate before attacking. But Dewey quietly, during the night, passed into the harbor, and on May 1 engaged forts and fleet, and destroyed every Spanish vessel opposed to him. The fact that the Americans did not lose a single man during the fight makes this one of the most remarkable naval engagements in the world's history. For this victory Dewey was raised to the rank of Admiral. After the news of Dewey's victory was received, the United States sent troops under General Merritt to occupy the islands and carry on the war by land.

The Blockade.—A blockade of the leading Cuban ports was declared (April 22), and the squadron at Key West was sent to enforce it. During the blockade a number of Spanish vessels were captured, and shots were often exchanged between the Spanish forts and the blockading fleet. Our forces succeeded in landing supplies for the Cubans, and our smaller vessels entered many of the Cuban harbors. On May 11, in an action off Cardenas, a gallant young officer, Ensign Worth Bagley of North Carolina, was

Annexation of Hawaii.

Although under native rulers the Hawaiian Islands, the most important group in the mid-Pacific, had greatly increased in wealth and importance, this increase was due to the fact that a large number of Americans had taken up their residence in the islands and had built up extensive commercial and agricultural enterprises. While Benjamin Harrison was President, the Hawaiian Government became very oppressive towards its English-speaking subjects. The result was a revolution in which the Government was overthrown. From a monarchy it was changed to a provisional republic (January, 1893), and application was made for annexation to the United States. Public sentiment in the United States seemed to favor annexation, but Harrison's administration drew to a close while a treaty to that effect was before the Senate. Cleveland seemed indisposed to make this territorial acquisition, and Hawaii then constituted itself an independent republic. The voyage across the Pacific is a very long one, and after Dewey's victory at Manila, when troops and supplies had to be sent to the Philippines from San Francisco, it was realized how valuable the possession of the Hawaiian Islands would be to the United States. The question of annexation was revived and was acted upon favorably by Congress. So, greatly to the satisfaction of a majority of the Hawaiian people, the islands are now a part of the United States, the American flag being raised and sovereignty formally assumed at Honolulu, August 12, 1898.

killed. He was executive officer of the torpedo boat Winslow, and was the first American officer killed during the war.

The War in Cuba.—A formidable fleet, comprising Spain's armored cruisers, commanded by Admiral Cervera, the ablest of the Spanish naval commanders, crossed the Atlantic for the purpose of breaking the blockade. Sampson moved his fleet to Porto Rico, where Cervera was expected to land for coal which he must have after his long voyage. The Flying Squadron hurried southward to intercept Cervera if he should approach



Havana from the west. Cervera, however, kept out of the way of both squadrons, and slipped into the landlocked harbor of Santiago.

The Spanish Fleet "Bottled up."—When it was believed that the Spanish fleet was anchored in Santiago Harbor, Schley was ordered to take his squadron there, to find out if Cervera was really within the bay, and to prevent his escape. Sampson, who had returned from Porto Rico, hurried with his fleet to Santiago. He had already determined to make the "bottling up" of the Spanish admiral complete by sinking a large coaling vessel across the narrow entrance. The under-

taking meant almost certain death to those who should enter upon it, and Admiral Sampson called for volunteers. Every man of the fleet responded, and Naval Constructor Richmond P. Hobson was selected to command the expedition.

In the darkness of night (June 3), with seven carefully selected companions, Hobson steamed into the harbor on the coal-transport Merrimac. He was promptly discovered and fired upon from all sides. The vessel was blown up and sunk near the selected spot. Hobson and his men, uninjured, clung to a raft until daybreak, when they surrendered to Cervera himself, who came out in a launch to view the wreck. The Spanish admiral was profoundly touched by their gallantry, and he very courteously sent word, under a flag of truce, to the American admiral that the heroes were safe and would be well cared for. All were subsequently released in the first exchange of prisoners.

Cervera's Dash.—The Spanish admiral received positive orders to force his way out of Santiago Harbor. The Merrimac did not fully obstruct the entrance, as was intended. Selecting a Sunday morning (July 3), when the American ships' crews would be at the religious services and consequently less watchful, Cervera's fleet in swift procession steamed out of Santiago Harbor and turned westward. Sampson was steaming eastward on his flagship to a point where he was to hold a consultation with General Shafter. Schley was in command, and under his direction every ship commander acted promptly in carrying out the plan which had been carefully arranged beforehand. A running battle ensued, and the victory of Manila was repeated. Not one of the Spanish ships escaped; all were torn to pieces, burned, sunk, or run on shore. Cervera and many of his men were taken prisoners and kindly cared for.

Santiago Surrenders.—Meanwhile the Spanish outposts of San Juan and El Caney had been attacked and carried by



RICHMOND P. HOBSON.

storm (July 1-2). The next day Shafter demanded the surrender of Santiago. This was refused, and the city was bombarded. Finally the surrender was made (July 17), and it included all the Spanish garrisons of eastern Cuba, numbering about 25,000.

The Advance on Porto Rico.—Following the fall of Santiago, General Nelson A. Miles landed (July 25) with a force upon the southern coast of Porto Rico and took up his line of march for the Spanish strong-



MAJ. GEN. WESLEY MERRITT.



MAJ. GEN. NELSON A. MILES.



MAJ. GEN. WM. R. SHAFTER.

hold of San Juan on the northern coast. On the way he took possession of Ponce (July 28), one of the largest and most important cities of the island. He was welcomed by the people, who seemed to desire release from the dominion of Spain.

Spain Sues for Peace.—The destruction of nearly all of Spain's war vessels, the capture of Santiago, the invasion of Porto Rico, and the preparations being made to send a powerful fleet across the Atlantic to carry on the war in European waters, brought Spain to a realization that it was useless to contend any longer against the United States. Accordingly, the Spanish Government asked President McKinley (July 26) upon what terms he would consent to peace. In reply (July 30), terms were dictated by the United States and were accepted. The protocol ending hostilities was signed at Washington,

August 12, the French Minister acting for Spain. The blockade of Cuba was raised.

Dewey and Merritt Capture Manila.—Just as, in the War of 1812, a battle was fought before news of peace was received, so in the war with Spain, an important engagement took place after the signing of the protocol. Dewey had long waited to be reënforced by land troops before continuing his operations in the Philippines. Upon the arrival of General Merritt with a sufficient force, Manila was bombarded and its land defenses carried by assault. The city surrendered August 13. Lieutenant Brumby, of Georgia, a gallant officer of Dewey's flagship, was the first to raise the American flag over the surrendered city.

The Treaty of Peace.—Ten commissioners—five appointed by the United States and five by Spain—met in Paris (October 1, 1898) and drew up a treaty, which they concluded and signed December 10. It provides: That Spain relinquishes her claim to Cuba; that Porto Rico, the Island of Guam (of the Ladrões), and the Philippines be ceded to the United States, the last named for a

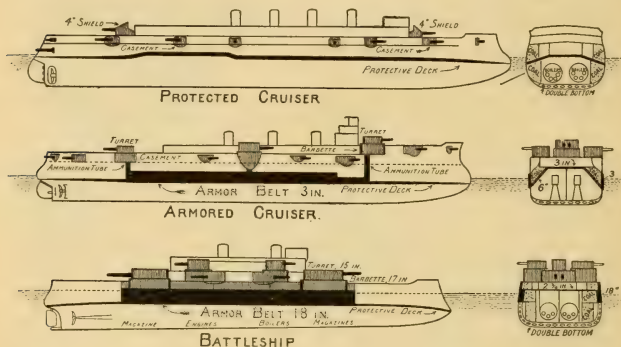
Our New Navy.

The fight between the *Virginia* and the *Monitor* caused the nations of Europe to build new battleships, which, like the *Virginia*, are protected by armor belts, and, like the *Monitor*, are provided with turrets. The old ships were called "ships of the line," "frigates," "brigs," etc. The new ships are called "gunboats," "cruisers," "battleships," and "monitors." The old warships were built of wood; the modern warships are of steel. The gunboats are of light draft, for use in rivers. Cruisers are built for speed, to destroy commerce of other nations, not for fighting. A protected cruiser has a steel deck, shaped like the back of a turtle, rising in the center and coming down below the water line on all sides. The engines and machinery are placed under this deck. An armored cruiser has a turtle-back deck, and also a belt of steel armor from three to five inches thick, inclosing the guns and machinery. It has speed and good fighting qualities. The battleship has the protected deck, and a steel armor belt from fourteen to eighteen inches thick. It has less speed, but is a better fighter. The illustrations show how the steel-protected deck and the armor belts are placed in these ships, and also how the coal is placed to assist in protecting them. Monitors, with one turret or two, are built for coast defence. The small torpedo boats are for destroying ships of war with torpedoes; and a swifter boat, called the torpedo-boat destroyer, is designed to destroy the torpedo boats.

Our new navy of modern steel ships was begun under Arthur, and the first vessels were three cruisers—the *Chicago*, the *Boston*, and the *Atlanta*—which were finished in Cleveland's first term. The *Texas* and the *Maine* were our first battleships, the *New York* our first armored cruiser. Our gunboats are named for battlefields, as the *Yorktown*; our cruisers for cities, as the *Olympia*; our battleships for States, as the *Oregon*.

compensation of \$20,000,000 ; and that the treaty must be ratified by the two governments within six months from the date of signing. The United States Senate ratified the treaty February 6, 1899.

Filipinos Attack Manila; Iloilo Surrenders.—In the spring of 1898 the natives of the Philippines, called Filipinos, formed a revolutionary government under Aguinaldo,



their most noted leader, whom they elected president. The day before the treaty was ratified they attacked the American forces under General Otis, at Manila. A battle followed, in which Admiral Dewey's ships gave important assistance. The natives were defeated, with an estimated loss of 4,000 men. The American loss was four killed and forty-five wounded. Five days later (February 11) the second city of the Philippines, Iloilo, on the Island of Panay, surrendered to General Miller.

Questions.—What laws were changed after the Republican party returned to power ? What interrupted the peace of the United States ? What cruelties were perpetrated upon the Cubans ? What notice was served upon Spain ? What was the result ? What prevented the lives of many Americans living in Cuba from being lost ? Tell something of the loss of the Maine. What effect had this loss upon the people of the United States ? What preparations for war were made ? What was the Flying Squadron ? What demand was sent to Spain ? What was the result ? What call did the President issue ?

What was declared ? Tell something of Dewey's victory. Under whom were land forces sent to the Philippines ? Give some account of the blockade. What officer was the first killed during the war ? Tell something of Cervera's fleet. Of the movements of our fleets to capture Cervera. What plan was proposed for the capture of the Spanish fleet ? Tell something of Hobson's bravery in executing this plan. Of the battle between Schley and Cervera. Of the surrender of Santiago. Of the invasion of Porto Rico. Why did Spain now sue for peace ? What was the result of this request ? Tell something of the capture of Manila. Of the treaty of peace. Of the attack on Manila. What other Philippine city surrendered, and when ?

FOR ADVANCED CLASSES.

Topics for Discussion.

I. The War with Spain. II. Unity of Interests among the Sections. III. The End of Sectional Antagonism.

(For sources of information, see note at end of Chapter xxii.)

REFERENCE OUTLINE FOR REVIEW.

THE WAR WITH SPAIN.

Causes.

American interference with Spanish barbarities in Cuba.

Blowing up of American battleship Maine (February 15, 1898).

Principal Events.

- | | | |
|-------|---|--|
| 1898. | { | <p>Congress votes \$50,000,000 for defensive purposes (March 9).
 Report of Maine Board of Inquiry received (March 25).
 Consul-General Lee leaves Havana (April 9).
 Congress recognizes independence of Cuba (April 19).
 United States sends its ultimatum to Spain (April 20).
 American Minister Woodford dismissed from Madrid (April 21).
 President calls for 125,000 volunteers (April 23).
 Formal Declaration of War passed by Congress (April 25).
 Dewey destroys Spanish fleet in Manila Harbor (May 1).
 Battles of El Caney and San Juan (July 1-2).
 Sampson and Schley destroy Cervera's fleet (July 3).
 Santiago surrenders (July 17).
 Miles lands in Porto Rico (July 25); captures Ponce (July 28).
 Spain sues for peace (July 26).
 United States takes formal possession of Hawaii (August 12).
 Protocol terminating hostilities signed (August 12).
 Dewey and Merritt capture Manila (August 13).
 Treaty of Peace signed at Paris (December 10).</p> |
| 1899. | { | <p>Treaty of Peace ratified by the United States Senate (February 6).
 Filipinos attack Manila (February 5); Iloilo surrenders (February 11).</p> |

Results.

Elevation of the United States in power and importance among the nations.

Union of sections strengthened by fellowship in a common cause.

American patriotism intensified.

New territory acquired.

CONCLUSION.

Retrospect.—The close of McKinley's administration brings the history of our country down to the year 1900. As we have reached the end of the century, we may well look over the past and see what this history has been. Great changes, remarkable growth, and wonderful progress are noticeable. The States have increased in number from thirteen to forty-five. The dominion of the Federal Union reaches far out into the Atlantic and Pacific. The three millions of people in Revolutionary times have become seventy millions. In the wealth, intelligence, and patriotism of its people the United States is second to no other nation on the globe.

The United States of To-day; Unity of Interests.—The people living in the various sections are becoming alike, so far as their interests are concerned. The coal and iron industries, once confined to Pennsylvania, now extend southward to Virginia, Tennessee, and Alabama. The pine forests of the Southern States are now yielding the wealth that Maine and Michigan once monopolized. Mississippi and Georgia have dairy interests as well as New York and Illinois. Louisiana is as much interested in protection of industries as is Massachusetts. Chattanooga, Birmingham, and Atlanta are being built up by the same agencies of trade and labor that have made mighty cities of Chicago, Cleveland, and Pittsburg. New England cotton mills are moving southward. Providence and Lowell are no more interested in the prosperity of American manufactures than are Augusta and Columbia. New Orleans, Savannah, and Galveston recognize the importance of commerce as much as do New York, Boston, and Philadelphia.

Unity of Sentiment.—In thought and feeling the sections are drawing closer together. In the old days, Charleston

sent her food supplies to the closed port of Boston; in later times, Boston sends her sympathy and aid to the earthquake-stricken city. An epidemic in Florida, a storm-ravaged coast in Texas, an overflow in the delta of the Mississippi, a conflagration in the Northwest, a disastrous inundation in a Pennsylvania valley, each attended by human misery and suffering, called forth, of late, generous aid from the American people as a whole, bringing the sections together into closer fellowship.

Our Inheritance. — The antagonisms of the past are dying out. The veterans that once opposed one another now meet upon the old battlefields in reunions that establish ties of lasting friendship. The North and West are no more prompt in rushing to the defense of the flag against a foreign foe than is the South. The strains of "Dixie" and of the "Star Spangled Banner" are alike cheered wherever heard. When a Northern soldier dies, a Southern soldier is often found sorrowing by the bier. When a Southern youth displays genius and talent, Northern hands applaud and beckon him on to

Some Results of the War with Spain.

The achievements of the United States on land and sea in this war awakened the astonishment of European nations. It is realized that a new power has arisen which will have to be reckoned with in the future history of the world. The war proved that success in modern naval warfare depended upon accurate marksmanship and skillful handling of the intricate machinery of a great battleship; that superior intelligence as well as courage is necessary. It showed that the energetic, business-loving American citizen can be converted at short notice into a fighter whose bravery is fully equal to that of the long and regularly trained soldier of other countries. Not only has this war raised us in the estimation of foreign nations, but it has caused a wave of patriotism to sweep through the country, breaking through sectional and class distinctions. It has brought millionaires and cowboys to fight together, shoulder to shoulder in the same ranks, thus placing the stamp of respect where it deservedly belongs—upon true manhood and not upon earthly possessions. It has united the sections as nothing else could have done, and no question of the South's loyalty to the Union will ever again arise. For it will never be forgotten that the men of the Southern States rallied promptly to the first call for troops. The honor of the United States was upheld at Havana by Fitzhugh Lee. Another old Confederate soldier, Joe Wheeler, sick on a litter, ordered himself to be carried to the front of the battle around Santiago, where he commanded the charge that brought victory to the American arms. Nor will it be forgotten that the most memorable act of individual heroism in the war was performed by Hobson, of Alabama; and that the first officer to lay down his life for his country in the war was gallant young Ensign Worth Bagley, of North Carolina.

further advancement. The graves of dead heroes of the Civil War are now hallowed and honored, irrespective of the side upon which they fought. Marble shafts in memory of many a valiant deed point upward in all their massiveness, indicative of the greatness and the aspirations of those who wore the gray as well as those who wore the blue. From many a pedestal there look down upon us the sculptured forms of those whose memories neither North nor South will willingly let die. History will preserve them, and you who have studied these lessons in our country's history, when you come to perform your part—humble or exalted—in the social, political, and moral life of the reunited nation, remember that the past has given you a heritage ; that the present, becoming the past, will leave to posterity another heritage ; that whatever the bequest is to be depends upon your intelligence and integrity as a citizen : for the greatness of a country lies, not in broad extent of territory, nor in its past achievements, but in the men who make up the rank and file of its citizens.





Review Work.

When and where was Washington inaugurated? Who composed his Cabinet? What was the Capital Bargain? Whisky Rebellion? What Presidents served two terms? One term? Died in office? How and when was Louisiana acquired? Florida? Texas? California? Alaska? What do you know of the Northwest Territory? The organization and admission of Tennessee and Kentucky? Who was Genet? What were the Kentucky and Virginia resolutions? What wars have occurred with the Barbary States? What do you know of Burr's conspiracy? Fulton's first steamboat? What were the causes of the War of 1812? Mexican War? What Indian wars have occurred since the establishment of the Federal Government? When and why was the Indian Territory organized? What two campaigns were executed in the first year of the War of 1812? Three in the second? Two in the third? Name the principal American generals. British? American naval commanders? British? American naval victories? British? What do you know of the battle of New Orleans? The State of West Florida? Internal improvements? What is the Monroe Doctrine? The Era of Good Feeling? The American system? Nullification? What is a tariff? A tax? How may tariffs be classified? What do you know of the growth of cotton manufactures? The business panic of 1837? When did similar panics occur? What is the Subtreasury system and when established? What do you know of the Mormons? The annexation of Texas? The Texas Revolution? What three campaigns were accomplished in the Mexican War? What were the principal battles of each? How did an antagonism between the sections originate? What was the Missouri Compromise? The Omnibus Bill? The Dred Scott Decision? The Fugitive Slave Law? The Kansas-Nebraska Bill? What do you know of the beginning and progress of the anti-slavery movement? Why did the Southern States secede? What do you know of the organization of the Confederate Government? Why was Fort Sumter fired upon? What battles of the Civil War occurred in Virginia? Missouri? Kentucky? Arkansas? Tennessee? Mississippi? Georgia? North Carolina? Louisiana? Texas? New Mexico? West Virginia? Pennsylvania? The Shenandoah Valley? What do you know of Stonewall Jackson? Name the five greatest Confederate victories of the Civil War. Federal. Five decisive battles, and tell why. What effect had the blockade? What do you know of the Alabama? The Virginia? The Tennessee? Give the principal military operations along the Mississippi River. The principal coast operations. Name some of the principal cavalry leaders on the Confederate side. Federal. Name as many Confederate generals as you may know, with a battle in which each participated. Federal. Name the battles in which Grant took part. Ten of Lee's battles. Seven of J. E. Johnston's. Four of McClellan's. Four of Rosecrans's. Two of Banks's. Five of Price's. Two of Van Dorn's. Three of Hood's. Four of Bragg's. Six of Sherman's. What do you know of the capture of New Orleans? Vicksburg? Last charge at Gettysburg? Defense of Sabine Pass? Battle of Olustee? Sherman's march? Jackson's Valley Campaign? Banks's Red River expeditions? Magruder's capture of Galveston? Valley operations of Early? Battle of New Market? Appomattox surrender? What was the last engagement of the war? What do you know of the Trent affair? Maximilian invasion of Mexico? Abolition of slavery? Death and character of Lincoln? What contest arose between President Johnson and Congress concerning the readmission of the Southern States? What was the policy of each? Why was Johnson impeached? State the principal events of Grant's administrations. Features of the carpet-bag governments. Object of the Fifteenth Amendment. Cause of the panic of 1873. What was the Geneva award? What do you know of the disputed election of 1876? How was the decision reached? What do you know of Hayes's "peace policy"? Of the election and death of Garfield? The important events of Garfield's administration? Of Arthur's? The Educational campaign of 1888? The important events that have happened since Cleveland's election and before McKinley's? Give an account of the Pan-American Congress. Of the McKinley Bill. Wilson Bill. Money question. Panic of 1893. What Indian wars have occurred since 1865? Give an account of the War with Spain. Its cause. The condition of Cuba and its people. Principal land battles in Cuba and in the Philippines. Naval battles. Principal generals in action. Naval officers. Terms of the treaty. Influence of the Spanish War upon national unity. What Presidents were elected by the Democratic-Republican party? The National Republican or Whig party? The Democratic party? The Republican party? Name some political parties that have been unsuccessful in electing a President. Give some principal events of the administration of each President in order.

APPENDIX.

The Declaration of Independence.

In Congress, July 4, 1776.

THE UNANIMOUS DECLARATION OF THE THIRTEEN UNITED STATES OF AMERICA.

When, in the course of human events, it becomes necessary for one people to dissolve the political bands which have connected them with another, and to assume, among the Powers of the earth, the separate and equal station to which the laws of nature and of nature's God entitle them, a decent respect to the opinions of mankind requires that they should declare the causes which impel them to the separation.

We hold these truths to be self-evident : that all men are created equal, that they are endowed by their Creator with certain unalienable rights ; that among these are life, liberty, and the pursuit of happiness. That to secure these rights, governments are instituted among men, deriving their just powers from the consent of the governed ; that whenever any form of government becomes destructive of these ends, it is the right of the people to alter or to abolish it, and to institute new government, laying its foundation on such principles, and organizing its powers in such form, as to them shall seem most likely to effect their safety and happiness. Prudence, indeed, will dictate that governments long established should not be changed for light and transient causes ; and accordingly all experience hath shown that mankind are more disposed to suffer, while evils are sufferable, than to right themselves by abolishing the forms to which they are accustomed. But when a long train of abuses and usurpations, pursuing invariably the same object, evinces a design to reduce them under absolute despotism, it is their right, it is their duty, to throw off such government, and to provide new guards for their future security.—Such has been the patient sufferance of these colonies ; and such is now the necessity which constrains them to alter their former systems of government. The history of the present king of Great Britain is a history of repeated injuries and usurpations, all having in direct object the establishment of an absolute tyranny over these States. To prove this, let facts be submitted to a candid world.

He has refused his assent to laws the most wholesome and necessary for the public good.

He has forbidden his governors to pass laws of immediate and pressing importance, unless suspended in their operation till his assent should be obtained ; and when so suspended, he has utterly neglected to attend to them.

He has refused to pass other laws for the accommodation of large districts of people, unless those people would relinquish the right of representation in the legislature, a right inestimable to them and formidable to tyrants only.

He has called together legislative bodies at places unusual, uncomfortable, and distant from the depository of their public records, for the sole purpose of fatiguing them into compliance with his measures.

He has dissolved representative houses repeatedly, for opposing, with manly firmness, his invasions on the rights of the people.

He has refused, for a long time after such dissolutions, to cause others to be elected ; whereby the legislative powers, incapable of annihilation, have returned to the people at large for their exercise ; the State remaining, in the meantime, exposed to all the dangers of invasion from without, and convulsions within.

He has endeavored to prevent the population of these States ; for that purpose obstructing the laws for naturalization of foreigners ; refusing to pass others to encourage their migration hither, and raising the conditions of new appropriations of lands.

He has obstructed the administration of justice, by refusing his assent to laws for establishing judiciary powers.

He has made judges dependent on his will alone for the tenure of their offices, and the amount and payment of their salaries.

He has erected a multitude of new offices, and sent hither swarms of officers to harrass our people and eat out their substance.

He has kept among us, in times of peace, standing armies without the consent of our legislatures.

He has affected to render the military independent of and superior to the civil power.

He has combined with others to subject us to a jurisdiction foreign to our constitution, and unacknowledged by our laws ; giving his assent to their acts of pretended legislation :

For quartering large bodies of armed troops among us :

For protecting them, by a mock trial, from punishment for any murders which they should commit on the inhabitants of these States :

For cutting off our trade with all parts of the world :

For imposing taxes on us without our consent :

For depriving us, in many cases, of the benefits of trial by jury :

For transporting us beyond seas to be tried for pretended offenses :

For abolishing the free system of English laws in a neighboring province,

establishing therein an arbitrary government, and enlarging its boundaries, so as to render it at once an example and fit instrument for introducing the same absolute rule into these colonies :

For taking away our charters, abolishing our most valuable laws, and altering fundamentally the forms of our governments :

For suspending our own legislatures, and declaring themselves invested with power to legislate for us in all cases whatsoever.

He has abdicated government here, by declaring us out of his protection, and waging war against us.

He has plundered our seas, ravaged our coasts, burnt our towns, and destroyed the lives of our people.

He is, at this time, transporting large armies of foreign mercenaries to complete the works of death, desolation and tyranny, already begun, with circumstances of cruelty and perfidy scarcely paralleled in the most barbarous ages, and totally unworthy the head of a civilized nation.

He has constrained our fellow-citizens, taken captive on the high seas, to bear arms against their country, to become the executioners of their friends and brethren, or to fall themselves by their hands.

He has excited domestic insurrections amongst us, and has endeavored to bring on the inhabitants of our frontiers, the merciless Indian savages, whose known rule of warfare is an undistinguished destruction of all ages, sexes, and conditions.

In every stage of these oppressions we have petitioned for redress in the most humble terms : our repeated petitions have been answered only by repeated injury. A prince, whose character is thus marked by every act which may define a tyrant, is unfit to be the ruler of a free people.

Nor have we been wanting in attention to our British brethren. We have warned them, from time to time, of attempts by their legislature to extend an unwarrantable jurisdiction over us. We have reminded them of the circumstances of our emigration and settlement here. We have appealed to their native justice and magnanimity, and we have conjured them by the ties of our common kindred to disavow these usurpations, which would inevitably interrupt our connections and correspondence. They too have been deaf to the voice of justice and of consanguinity. We must, therefore, acquiesce in the necessity which denounces our separation, and hold them, as we hold the rest of mankind, enemies in war, in peace friends.

We, therefore, the Representatives of the United States of America, in general Congress assembled, appealing to the Supreme Judge of the world for the rectitude of our intentions, do, in the name, and by authority of the good people of these colonies, solemnly publish and declare, That these United Colonies are, and of right ought to be, free and independent States; that they are absolved from all allegiance to the British crown, and that all

political connection between them and the State of Great Britain is, and ought to be, totally dissolved ; and that, as free and independent States, they have full power to levy war, conclude peace, contract alliances, establish commerce, and to do all other acts and things which independent States may of right do. And for the support of this declaration, with a firm reliance on the protection of Divine Providence, we mutually pledge to each other our lives, our fortunes, and our sacred honor.

JOHN HANCOCK.

New Hampshire—Josiah Bartlett, Wm. Whipple, Matthew Thornton.

Massachusetts Bay—Saml. Adams, John Adams, Robt. Treat Paine, Elbridge Gerry.

Rhode Island—Step. Hopkins, William Ellery.

Connecticut—Roger Sherman, Sam'l Huntington, Wm. Williams, Oliver Wolcott.

New York—Wm. Floyd, Phil. Livingston, Frans. Lewis, Lewis Morris.

New Jersey—Richd. Stockton, Jno. Witherspoon, Fras. Hopkinson, John Hart, Abra. Clark.

Pennsylvania—Robt. Morris, Benjamin Rush, Benja. Franklin, John Morton, Geo. Clymer, Jas. Smith, Geo. Taylor, James Wilson, Geo. Ross.

Delaware—Cæsar Rodney, Geo. Read, Tho. M'Kean.

Maryland—Samuel Chase, Wm. Paca, Thos. Stone, Charles Carroll of Carrollton.

Virginia—George Wythe, Richard Henry Lee, Th. Jefferson, Benja. Harrison, Thos. Nelson, Jr., Francis Lightfoot Lee, Carter Braxton.

North Carolina—Wm. Hooper, Joseph Hewes, John Penn.

South Carolina—Edward Rutledge, Thos. Heyward, Junr., Thomas Lynch, Junr., Arthur Middleton.

Georgia—Button Gwinnett, Lyman Hall, Geo. Walton.

Constitution of the United States of America.

PREAMBLE.

We, the people of the United States, in order to form a more perfect union, establish justice, insure domestic tranquillity, provide for the common defense, promote the general welfare, and secure the blessings of liberty to ourselves and our posterity, do ordain and establish this CONSTITUTION for the United States of America.

ARTICLE I.

SECTION I. 1. All legislative powers herein granted shall be vested in a Congress ¹ of the United States, which shall consist of a Senate and House of Representatives.

Legislative powers.

SEC. II. 1. The House of Representatives shall be composed of members chosen every second year, by the people of the several States; and the electors in each State shall have the qualifications requisite for electors of the most numerous branch of the State Legislature.

House of Representatives.

2. No person shall be a representative who shall not have attained to the age of twenty-five years, and been seven years a citizen of the United States, and who shall not, when elected, be an inhabitant of that State in which he shall be chosen.

Qualifications of representatives.

3. Representatives and direct taxes shall be apportioned among the several States which may be included within this Union, according to their respective numbers,² which shall be determined by adding to the whole number of free persons, including those bound to service for a term of years, and excluding Indians not taxed, three-fifths of all other persons.³ The actual enumeration shall be made within three years after the first meeting of the Congress of the United States, and within every subsequent term of ten years, in such manner as they shall by law direct. The number of representatives shall not exceed one for every thirty thousand, but each State shall have at least one representative; and until such enumeration shall be made, the State of New Hampshire shall be entitled to choose three, Massachusetts eight, Rhode Island and Providence Plantations one, Connecticut five, New York

Apportionment of representatives.

¹ The body of senators and representatives for each term of two years for which representatives are chosen is called one Congress. Each Congress expires at noon of the 4th of March next succeeding the beginning of its second regular session, when a new Congress begins.

² The apportionment under the census of 1890 is one representative to every 173,901 persons.

³ This refers to slaves, and is no longer in force (see Amendment XIII.).

six, New Jersey four, Pennsylvania eight, Delaware one, Maryland six, Virginia ten, North Carolina five, South Carolina five, and Georgia three.

4. When vacancies happen in the representation from any State, the executive authority thereof shall issue writs of election to fill such vacancies.

Officers, how appointed.

5. The House of Representatives shall choose their speaker and other officers,¹ and shall have the sole power of impeachment.

SEN. III. 1. The Senate of the United States shall be composed of two senators from each State, chosen by the legislature thereof for six years; and each senator shall have one vote.

2. Immediately after they shall be assembled in consequence of the first election, they shall be divided, as equally as may be, into three classes. The seats of the senators of the first class shall be vacated at the expiration of the second year, of the second class, at the expiration of the fourth year, and of the third class, at the expiration of the sixth year, so that one-third may be chosen every second year; and if vacancies happen, by resignation or otherwise, during the recess of the legislature of any State, the executive thereof may make temporary appointments until the next meeting of the legislature, which shall then fill such vacancies.

Qualifications of senators.

3. No person shall be a senator who shall not have attained to the age of thirty years, and been nine years a citizen of the United States, and who shall not, when elected, be an inhabitant of that State for which he shall be chosen.

President of the senate.

4. The Vice-President of the United States shall be president of the Senate; but shall have no vote, unless they be equally divided.

5. The Senate shall choose their other officers² and also a president *pro tempore*, in the absence of the Vice-President, or when he shall exercise the office of President of the United States.

6. The Senate shall have the sole power to try all impeachments. When sitting for that purpose, they shall be on oath or affirmation. When the President of the United States is tried, the chief justice shall preside; and no person shall be convicted without the concurrence of two-thirds of the members present.

7. Judgment in cases of impeachment shall not extend further than to removal from office, and disqualification to hold and enjoy any office of honor, trust or profit, under the United States; but the party convicted shall, nevertheless, be lia-

¹ Clerk, sergeant-at-arms, doorkeeper and postmaster, and others. The speaker is the presiding officer.

² Secretary, sergeant-at-arms, doorkeeper and postmaster, and others.

ble and subject to indictment, trial, judgment and punishment, according to law.

SEC. IV. 1. The times, places and manner of holding elections for senators and representatives, shall be prescribed in each State by the legislature thereof; but the Congress may at any time by law make or alter such regulations, except as to the places of choosing senators.

Elections of senators and of representatives.

2. The Congress shall assemble at least once in every year, and such meeting shall be on the first Monday in December, unless they shall by law appoint a different day.

Meeting of Congress.

SEC. V. 1. Each House shall be the judge of the elections, returns and qualifications of its own members, and a majority of each shall constitute a quorum to do business; but a smaller number may adjourn from day to day, and may be authorized to compel the attendance of absent members, in such manner and under such penalties as each House may provide.

Organization of Congress.

2. Each House may determine the rules of its proceedings, punish its members for disorderly behavior, and, with the concurrence of two-thirds, expel a member.

Rule of proceeding.

3. Each House shall keep a journal of its proceedings, and from time to time publish the same, excepting such parts as may in their judgment require secrecy; and the yeas and nays of the members of either House on any question shall, at the desire of one-fifth of those present, be entered on the journal.

Journal of Congress.

4. Neither House, during the session of Congress, shall, without the consent of the other, adjourn for more than three days, nor to any other place than that in which the two Houses shall be sitting.

Adjournment of Congress.

SEC. VI. 1. The senators and representatives shall receive a compensation¹ for their services, to be ascertained by law, and paid out of the Treasury of the United States. They shall, in all cases, except treason, felony and breach of the peace, be privileged from arrest during their attendance at the session of their respective Houses, and in going to and returning from the same; and for any speech or debate in either House they shall not be questioned in any other place.

Pay and privileges of members.

2. No senator or representative shall, during the time for which he was elected, be appointed to any civil office, under the authority of the United States, which shall have been created, or the emoluments whereof shall have been increased, during such time; and no person holding any office under the

Plurality of offices prohibited.

¹ The present compensation is \$5,000 a year, with twenty cents for every mile of travel by the most usually traveled post route to and from the national capital.

United States shall be a member of either House during his continuance in office.

SEC. VII. 1. All bills for raising revenue shall originate in the House of Representatives; but the Senate may propose or concur with amendments, as on other bills.

Revenue bills. 2. Every bill which shall have passed the House of Representatives and the Senate shall, before it become a law, be presented to the President of the United States. If he approve, he shall sign it, but if not, he shall return it, with his objections, to that House in which it shall have originated, who shall enter the objections at large on their journal, and proceed to reconsider it. If, after such reconsideration, two-thirds of that House shall agree to pass the bill, it shall be sent, together with the objections, to the other House, by which it shall likewise be reconsidered, and if approved by two-thirds of that House it shall become a law. But, in all such cases, the votes of both Houses shall be determined by yeas and nays, and the names of the persons voting for and against the bill shall be entered on the journal of each House respectively. If any bill shall not be returned by the President within ten days (Sundays excepted) after it shall have been presented to him, the same shall be a law in like manner as if he had signed it, unless the Congress by their adjournment prevent its return, in which case it shall not be a law.

3. Every order, resolution or vote, to which the concurrence of the Senate and House of Representatives may be necessary (except on a question of adjournment), shall be presented to the President of the United States; and before the same shall take effect shall be approved by him, or, being disapproved by him, shall be repassed by two-thirds of the Senate and House of Representatives, according to the rules and limitations prescribed in the case of a bill.

SEC. VIII. The Congress shall have power—

Powers vested in Congress. 1. To lay and collect taxes, duties, imposts and excises, to pay the debts and provide for the common defense and general welfare of the United States; but all duties, imposts and excises shall be uniform throughout the United States;

2. To borrow money on the credit of the United States;

3. To regulate commerce with foreign nations, and among the several States, and with the Indian tribes;

4. To establish an uniform rule of naturalization, and uniform laws on the subject of bankruptcies throughout the United States;

5. To coin money, regulate the value thereof, and of foreign coin, and fix the standards of weights and measures;

6. To provide for the punishment of counterfeiting the securities and current coin of the United States;

7. To establish postoffices and postroads ;

8. To promote the progress of science and useful arts, by securing, for limited times, to authors and inventors, the exclusive right to their respective writings and discoveries ;

9. To constitute tribunals inferior to the Supreme Court ;

10. To define and punish piracies and felonies committed on the high seas, and offenses against the law of nations ;

11. To declare war, grant letters of marque and reprisal, and make rules concerning captures on land and water ;

12. To raise and support armies ; but no appropriation of money to that use shall be for a longer term than two years ;

13. To provide and maintain a navy ;

14. To make rules for the government and regulation of the land and naval forces ;

15. To provide for calling forth the militia to execute the laws of the Union, suppress insurrections and repel invasions ;

16. To provide for organizing, arming and disciplining the militia, and for governing such part of them as may be employed in the service of the United States, reserving to the States respectively the appointment of the officers, and the authority of training the militia according to the discipline prescribed by Congress ;

17. To exercise exclusive legislation, in all cases whatsoever, over such district (not exceeding ten miles square) as may, by cession of particular States, and the acceptance of Congress, become the seat of government of the United States,¹ and to exercise like authority over all places purchased, by the consent of the legislature of the State in which the same shall be, for the erection of forts, magazines, arsenals, dockyards and other needful buildings ; and

18. To make all laws which shall be necessary and proper for carrying into execution the foregoing powers, and all other powers vested by this Constitution in the government of the United States, or in any department or officer thereof.

SEC. IX. 1. The migration or importation of such persons as any of the States now existing shall think proper to admit, shall not be prohibited by the Congress prior to the year one thousand eight hundred and eight ; but a tax or duty may be imposed on such importation, not exceeding ten dollars for each person.²

**Immigrants,
how admitted.**

2. The privilege of the writ of *habeas corpus* shall not be suspended, unless when, in cases of rebellion or invasion, the public safety may require it.

Habeas corpus.

¹ The District of Columbia.

² This has reference to the foreign slave trade.

- Attainder.** 3. No bill of attainder, or *ex post facto* law, shall be passed.
- Direct taxes.** 4. No capitation or other direct tax shall be laid, unless in proportion to the census or enumeration hereinbefore directed to be taken.
5. No tax or duty shall be laid on articles exported from any State.
- Regulations regarding duties.** 6. No preference shall be given, by any regulation of commerce or revenue, to the ports of one State over those of another ; nor shall vessels bound to or from one State be obliged to enter, clear or pay duties in another.
7. No money shall be drawn from the treasury but in consequence of appropriations made by law ; and a regular statement and account of the receipts and expenditures of all public money shall be published from time to time.
- Moneys, how drawn.**
8. No title of nobility shall be granted by the United States, and no person holding any office of profit or trust under them shall, without the consent of the Congress, accept of any present, emolument, office or title of any kind whatever, from any king, prince or foreign State.
- Titles of nobility prohibited.**

SEC. X. 1. No State shall enter into any treaty, alliance or confederation ; grant letters of marque and reprisal ; coin money ;

Powers of States defined. emit bills of credit ; make anything but gold and silver coin a tender in payment of debts ; pass any bill of attainder, *ex post facto* law, or law impairing the obligation of contracts ; or grant any title of nobility.

2. No State shall, without the consent of the Congress, lay any imposts or duties on imports or exports, except what may be absolutely necessary for executing its inspection laws ; and the net produce of all duties and imposts, laid by any State on imports or exports, shall be for the use of the treasury of the United States, and all such laws shall be subject to the revision and control of the Congress.

3. No State shall, without the consent of the Congress, lay any duty of tonnage, keep troops or ships of war in time of peace, enter into any agreement or compact with another State, or with a foreign power, or engage in war, unless actually invaded, or in such imminent danger as will not admit of delay.

ARTICLE II.

SECTION I. 1. The executive power shall be vested in a President of the United States of America. He shall hold his office during the term of four years, and, together with the Vice-President, chosen for the same term, be elected as follows :

Executive power, in whom vested.

2. Each State shall appoint, in such manner as the legislature thereof may direct, a number of electors equal to the whole number of senators and representatives to which the State may be entitled in the Congress; but no senator, or representative, or person holding an office of trust or profit under the United States, shall be appointed an elector.

Electors.

[3. The electors shall meet in their respective States, and vote by ballot for two persons, of whom one at least shall not be an inhabitant of the same State with themselves. And they shall make a list of all the persons voted for, and of the number of votes for each; which list they shall sign and certify, and transmit sealed to the seat of the government of the United States, directed to the President of the Senate. The President of the Senate shall, in the presence of the Senate and House of Representatives, open all the certificates, and the votes shall then be counted. The person having the greatest number of votes shall be the President, if such number be a majority of the whole number of electors appointed; and if there be more than one who have such majority, and have an equal number of votes, then the House of Representatives shall immediately choose, by ballot, one of them for President; and if no person have a majority, then from the five highest on the list the said House shall in like manner choose the President. But in choosing the President, the votes shall be taken by States, the representation from each State having one vote; a quorum for this purpose shall consist of a member or members from two-thirds of the States, and a majority of all the States shall be necessary to a choice. In every case, after the choice of the President, the person having the greatest number of votes of the electors shall be the Vice-President. But, if there should remain two or more who have equal votes, the Senate shall choose from them, by ballot, the Vice-President.]¹

Proceedings of electors

and of House of Representatives.

4. The Congress may determine the time of choosing the electors, and the day on which they shall give their votes; which day shall be the same throughout the United States.²

Time of choosing electors.

5. No person except a natural born citizen, or a citizen of the United States at the time of the adoption of this Constitution, shall be eligible to the office of President; neither shall any person be eligible to that office who shall not have attained to the age of thirty-five years, and been fourteen years a resident within the United States.

Qualifications of the President.

¹ This paragraph, within brackets, has been superseded by the Twelfth Amendment.

² The electors are chosen on the Tuesday next after the first Monday in November preceding the expiration of a presidential term, and vote for president and vice-president on the first Wednesday of the December following. The votes are counted and declared in Congress the second Wednesday of the following February.

6. In case of the removal of the President from office, or of his death, resignation, or inability to discharge the powers and duties of the said office, the same shall devolve on the Vice-President; and the Congress may, by law, provide for the case of removal, death, resignation, or inability, both of the President and Vice-President, declaring what officer shall then act as President; and such officer shall act accordingly, until the disability be removed, or a President shall be elected.

Resort in case of his disability. 7. The President shall, at stated times, receive for his services a compensation, which shall neither be increased nor diminished during the period for which he shall have been elected; and he shall not receive within that period any other emolument from the United States, or any of them.¹

Salary of the President. 8. Before he enter on the execution of his office, he shall take the following oath or affirmation: "I do solemnly swear (or affirm) that I will faithfully execute the office of President of the United States, and will, to the best of my ability, preserve, protect and defend the Constitution of the United States."

Oath. SEC. II. 1. The President shall be commander-in-chief of the army and navy of the United States, and of the militia of the several States, when called into the actual service of the United States; he may require the opinion, in writing, of the principal officer, in each of the executive departments, upon any subject relating to the duties of their respective offices; and he shall have power to grant reprieves and pardons for offenses against the United States, except in cases of impeachment.

Duties of the President. 2. He shall have power, by and with the advice and consent of the Senate, to make treaties, provided two-thirds of the senators present concur; and he shall nominate, and by and with the advice and consent of the Senate, shall appoint ambassadors, other public ministers and consuls, judges of the Supreme Court, and all other officers of the United States whose appointments are not herein otherwise provided for, and which shall be established by law; but the Congress may, by law, vest the appointment of such inferior officers as they think proper in the President alone, in the courts of law, or in the heads of departments.

May make treaties, appoint ambassadors, judges, etc. 3. The President shall have power to fill up all vacancies that may happen during the recess of the Senate, by granting commissions which shall expire at the end of their next session.

May fill vacancies. SEC. III. 1. He shall from time to time give to the Congress information of the state of the Union, and recommend to their

¹ The salary of the President was \$25,000 a year until 1872, when it was increased to \$50,000. That of the Vice-President is \$8,000 a year.

consideration such measures as he shall judge necessary and expedient¹; he may, on extraordinary occasions, convene both Houses, or either of them, and, in case of disagreement between them with respect to the time of adjournment, he may adjourn them to such time as he shall think proper; he shall receive ambassadors and other public ministers; he shall take care that the laws be faithfully executed; and shall commission all the officers of the United States.

May convene Congress.

SEC. IV. The President, Vice-President, and all civil officers of the United States, shall be removed from office on impeachment for, and conviction of treason, bribery or other high crimes and misdemeanors.

How officers may be removed.

ARTICLE III.

SECTION I. 1. The judicial power of the United States shall be vested in one Supreme Court, and in such inferior courts as the Congress may from time to time ordain and establish. The judges, both of the Supreme and inferior courts, shall hold their offices during good behavior, and shall, at stated times, receive for their services a compensation which shall not be diminished during their continuance in office.

Judicial power, how vested.

SEC. II. 1. The judicial power shall extend to all cases in law and equity arising under this Constitution, the laws of the United States, and treaties made, or which shall be made, under their authority; to all cases affecting ambassadors, other public ministers and consuls; to all cases of admiralty and maritime jurisdiction; to controversies to which the United States shall be a party; to controversies between two or more States; between a State and citizens of another State²; between citizens of different States; between citizens of the same State claiming lands under grants of different States; and between a State or the citizens thereof, and foreign States, citizens or subjects.

To what cases it extends.

2. In all cases affecting ambassadors, other public ministers and consuls, and those in which a State shall be a party, the Supreme Court shall have original jurisdiction. In all the other cases before mentioned, the Supreme Court shall have appellate jurisdiction, both as to law and fact, with such exceptions and under such regulations as the Congress shall make.

Jurisdiction of the Supreme Court.

3. The trial of all crimes, except in cases of impeachments, shall be by jury, and such trial shall be held in the State where the said crimes shall have been com-

Rules respecting trials.

¹ The President does this in messages at the opening of each session. Washington and John Adams read their messages in person to both houses of Congress. Jefferson introduced the present practice of sending by his private secretary to the two Houses a written message.

² See Amendments, Art. XI.

mitted; but when not committed within any State, the trial shall be at such place or places as the Congress may by law have directed.

Treason defined. SEC. III. 1. Treason against the United States shall consist only in levying war against them, or in adhering to their enemies, giving them aid and comfort. No person shall be convicted of treason, unless on the testimony of two witnesses to the same overt act, or on confession in open court.

How punished. 2. The Congress shall have power to declare the punishment of treason; but no attainder of treason shall work corruption of blood or forfeiture, except during the life of the person attainted.

ARTICLE IV.

Rights of States. SECTION I. 1. Full faith and credit shall be given in each State to the public acts, records and judicial proceedings of every other State. And the Congress may, by general laws, prescribe the manner in which such acts, records and proceedings shall be proved, and the effect thereof.

Privileges of citizens. SEC. II. 1. The citizens of each State shall be entitled to all privileges and immunities of citizens in the several States.

Executive requisition. 2. A person charged in any State with treason, felony or other crime, who shall flee from justice, and be found in another State, shall, on demand of the executive authority of the State from which he fled, be delivered up to be removed to the State having jurisdiction of the crime.

Law regulating service or labor. 3. No person held to service or labor in one State, under the laws thereof, escaping into another, shall in consequence of any law or regulation therein be discharged from such service or labor; but shall be delivered up on claim of the party to whom such service or labor may be due.

New States, how formed and admitted. SEC. III. 1. New States may be admitted by the Congress into this Union; but no new States shall be formed or erected within the jurisdiction of any other State, nor any State be formed by the junction of two or more States, or parts of States, without the consent of the legislatures of the States concerned, as well as of the Congress.

Power of Congress over public lands. 2. The Congress shall have power to dispose of and make all needful rules and regulations respecting the territory or other property belonging to the United States; and nothing in this Constitution shall be so construed as to prejudice any claims of the United States, or of any particular State.

SEC. IV. 1. The United States shall guarantee to every State in this Union a republican form of government, and shall protect each of them against invasion; and on application of the legislature or of the executive (when the legislature cannot be convened), against domestic violence.

Republican government guaranteed.

ARTICLE V.

1. The Congress, whenever two-thirds of both Houses shall deem it necessary, shall propose amendments to this Constitution; or, on the application of the legislatures of two-thirds of the several States, shall call a convention for proposing amendments, which, in either case, shall be valid to all intents and purposes, as part of this Constitution, when ratified by the legislatures of three-fourths of the several States, or by conventions in three-fourths thereof, as the one or the other mode of ratification may be proposed by the Congress; Provided, that no amendment which may be made prior to the year one thousand eight hundred and eight shall in any manner affect the first and fourth clauses in the ninth section of the first article; and that no State, without its consent, shall be deprived of its equal suffrage in the Senate.

Constitution, how to be amended.

ARTICLE VI.

1. All debts contracted and engagements entered into, before the adoption of this Constitution, shall be as valid against the United States under this Constitution, as under the Confederation.

Validity of debts recognized.

2. This Constitution, and the laws of the United States which shall be made in pursuance thereof, and all treaties made, or which shall be made, under the authority of the United States, shall be the supreme law of the land; and the judges in every State shall be bound thereby, anything in the Constitution or laws of any State to the contrary notwithstanding.

Supreme law of the land defined.

3. The senators and representatives before mentioned, and the members of the several State legislatures, and all executive and judicial officers, both of the United States and of the several States, shall be bound by oath or affirmation to support this Constitution; but no religious test shall ever be required as a qualification to any office or public trust under the United States.

Oath; of whom required, and for what.

ARTICLE VII.

1. The ratification of the conventions of nine States shall be sufficient for the establishment of this Constitution between the States so ratifying the same.

Ratification.

Done in convention by the unanimous consent of the States present, the seventeenth day of September, in the year of our Lord one thousand seven hundred and eighty-seven, and of the independence of the United States of America the twelfth. In witness whereof, we have hereunto subscribed our names.¹

GEORGE WASHINGTON,
Presidt. and deputy from Virginia.

NEW HAMPSHIRE.

John Langdon,
Nicholas Gilman.

MASSACHUSETTS.

Nathaniel Gorham,
Rufus King.

CONNECTICUT.

Wm Saml. Johnson,
Roger Sherman.

NEW YORK.

Alexander Hamilton.

NEW JERSEY.

Wil: Livingston,
David Brearley,
Wm. Paterson,
Jona: Dayton.

PENNSYLVANIA.

B. Franklin,
Thomas Mifflin,
Robt. Morris,
Geo: Clymer,
Thos: Fitzsimons,
Jared Ingersoll,
James Wilson,
Gouv : Morris.

DELAWARE.

Geo: Read,
Gunning Bedford, Jun'r,
John Dickinson,
Richard Bassett,
Jaco: Broom.

MARYLAND.

James McHenry.
Dan: of St. Thos. Jenifer.
Danl. Carroll.

VIRGINIA.

John Blair,
James Madison, Jr.

NORTH CAROLINA.

Wm. Blount,
Richd. Dobbs Spaight,
Hu. Williamson.

SOUTH CAROLINA.

J. Rutledge,
Charles Cotesworth Pinckney,
Charles Pinckney,
Pierce Butler.

GEORGIA.

William Few,
Abr. Baldwin.

Attest: WILLIAM JACKSON, *Secretary.*

¹ The number of delegates chosen to the convention was sixty-five; ten did not attend; sixteen declined signing the Constitution, or left the convention before it was ready to be signed. Thirty-nine signed.

AMENDMENTS TO THE CONSTITUTION.

¹ART. I. Congress shall make no law respecting an establishment of religion, or prohibiting the free exercise thereof; or abridging the freedom of speech, or of the press; or the right of the people peaceably to assemble and to petition the government for a redress of grievances.

Freedom in religion, speech, press.

ART. II. A well regulated militia being necessary to the security of a free State, the right of the people to keep and bear arms shall not be infringed.

Militia.

ART. III. No soldier shall, in time of peace, be quartered in any house, without the consent of the owner; nor in time of war but in a manner to be prescribed by law.

Soldiers.

ART. IV. The right of the people to be secure in their persons, houses, papers, and effects, against unreasonable searches and seizures, shall not be violated; and no warrants shall issue but upon probable cause, supported by oath or affirmation, and particularly describing the place to be searched, and the persons or things to be seized.

Search warrants.

ART. V. No person shall be held to answer for a capital or otherwise infamous crime, unless on a presentment or indictment of a grand jury, except in cases arising in the land or naval forces, or in the militia, when in actual service in time of war or public danger; nor shall any person be subject for the same offense to be twice put in jeopardy of life or limb; nor shall be compelled, in any criminal case, to be a witness against himself; nor be deprived of life, liberty, or property, without due process of law; nor shall private property be taken for public use, without just compensation.

Capital crimes.

ART. VI. In all criminal prosecutions the accused shall enjoy the right to a speedy and public trial, by an impartial jury of the State and district wherein the crime shall have been committed, which district shall have been previously ascertained by law, and to be informed of the nature and cause of the accusation; to be confronted with the witnesses against him; to have compulsory process for obtaining witnesses in his favor; and to have the assistance of counsel for his defense.

Trial by jury.

ART. VII. In suits at common law, where the value in controversy shall exceed twenty dollars, the right of trial by jury shall be preserved; and no fact tried by a jury shall be otherwise reëxamined, in any court of the United States, than according to the rules of the common law.

Suits at common law.

ART. VIII. Excessive bail shall not be required, nor excessive fines imposed, nor cruel and unusual punishment inflicted.

Bail, fines, etc.

¹ The first ten amendments were proposed in 1789, and declared adopted in 1791.

ART. IX. The enumeration in the Constitution of certain rights shall not be construed to deny or disparage others retained by the people.

Certain rights.

ART. X. The powers not delegated to the United States by the Constitution, nor prohibited by it to the States, are reserved to the States respectively, or to the people.

Powers reserved.

ART. XI. The judicial power of the United States shall not be construed to extend to any suit in law or equity, commenced or prosecuted against one of the

Judicial power limited.

United States by citizens of another State, or by citizens or subjects of any foreign State.

ART. XII. The electors shall meet in their respective States, and vote by ballot for President and Vice-President, one of whom, at least, shall not be an inhabitant of the same State with themselves; they shall name in their ballots the person voted for as President, and in distinct ballots the person voted for as Vice-President; and they shall make distinct lists of all persons voted for as President, and of all persons voted for as Vice-President, and of the number of votes for each, which lists they shall sign and certify, and transmit, sealed, to the seat of the Government of the United States, directed to the President of the Senate. The President of the Senate

Amendment to Art. II., Sec. 4, respecting election of President and Vice-President.

shall, in the presence of the Senate and House of Representatives, open all the certificates, and the votes shall then be counted; the person having the greatest number of votes for President shall be the President, if such number be a majority of the whole number of electors

appointed; and if no person have such majority, then from the persons having the highest numbers, not exceeding three, on the list of those voted for as President, the House of Representatives shall choose immediately, by ballot, the President. But in choosing the President, the votes shall be taken by States, the representation from each State having one vote; a quorum for this purpose shall consist of a member or members from two-thirds of the States, and a majority of all the States shall be necessary to a choice. And if the House of Representatives shall not choose a President, whenever the right of choice shall devolve upon them, before the fourth day of March next following, then the Vice-President shall act as President, as in the case of the death or other constitutional disability of the President. The person having the greatest number of votes as Vice-President, shall be the Vice-President, if such number be a majority of the whole number of electors appointed; and if no person have a majority, then from the two highest numbers on the list the Senate shall choose the Vice-President; a quorum for the purpose shall consist of two-thirds of the whole number

¹ The Eleventh Amendment was proposed in 1794, and declared adopted in 1798.

² The Twelfth Amendment was proposed in 1803, and declared adopted in 1804.

of senators, and a majority of the whole number shall be necessary to a choice. But no person constitutionally ineligible to the office of President, shall be eligible to that of Vice-President of the United States.

¹ART. XIII. SEC. I. Neither slavery nor involuntary servitude, except as a punishment for crime whereof the party shall have been duly convicted, shall exist within the United States, or any place subject to their jurisdiction. **No slavery.**

SEC. II. Congress shall have power to enforce this article by appropriate legislation.

²ART. XIV. SEC. I. All persons born or naturalized in the United States, and subject to the jurisdiction thereof, are citizens of the United States and of the State wherein they reside. No State shall make or enforce any law which shall abridge the privileges or immunities of citizens of the United States; nor shall any State deprive any person of life, liberty or property, without due process of law, nor deny to any person within its jurisdiction the equal protection of the laws.

SEC. II. Representatives shall be apportioned among the several States according to their respective numbers, counting the whole number of persons in each State, excluding Indians not taxed. But when the right to vote at any election for the choice of electors for President and Vice-President of the United States, representatives in Congress, the executive or judicial officers of a State, or the members of the legislature thereof, is denied to any of the male inhabitants of such State, being twenty-one years of age and citizens of the United States, or in any way abridged, except for participation in rebellion or other crime, the basis of representation therein shall be reduced in the proportion which the number of such male citizens shall bear to the whole number of male citizens twenty-one years of age in such State.

SEC. III. No person shall be a senator or representative in Congress, or elector of President or Vice-President, or hold any office, civil or military, under the United States, or under any State, who, having previously taken an oath as a member of Congress, or as an officer of the United States, or as a member of any State legislature, or as an executive or judicial officer of any State, to support the Constitution of the United States, shall have engaged in insurrection or rebellion against the same, or given aid or comfort to the enemies thereof. But Congress may, by a vote of two-thirds of each House, remove such disability.

SEC. IV. The validity of the public debt of the United States, authorized by law, including debts incurred for payment of pensions and bounties for services in suppressing insurrection or rebellion, shall not be questioned. But neither the United States nor any State shall assume or pay any debt or

¹ The Thirteenth Amendment was proposed and adopted in 1865.

² The Fourteenth Amendment was proposed in 1865, and adopted in 1868.

obligation incurred in aid of insurrection or rebellion against the United States, or any claim for the loss or emancipation of any slave; but all such debts, obligations and claims shall be held illegal and void.

SEC. V. Congress shall have power to enforce, by appropriate legislation, the provisions of this article.

¹ ART. XV. SEC. I. The rights of citizens of the United States to vote shall not be denied or abridged by the United States, or by any State, on account of race, color or previous condition of servitude.

SEC. II. Congress shall have power to enforce this article by appropriate legislation.

¹ The Fifteenth Amendment was proposed in 1869, and adopted in 1870.

PRONUNCIATIONS.

Acadie , ah-kah-dē'.	De Monts , deh monh'.
Aix-la-Chapelle , āks-lah-shah-pel'.	Denys , deh-nē'.
Alamo , ah'lah-mō.	De Rouville , deh roo-vēl'.
Albert , ahl-bare'.	De Soto , dā sō'tō.
Ampudia , am-poo'dē-ah.	De Vaca , deh vak'kah.
Antietam , an-tē'tam.	Dieskau , dēs'kow.
Apache , a-patch'ī.	Du Quesne , doo kăn'.
Arista , ah-rēs'tah.	Enciso , en-se'sō.
Ayllon , īl-yōn'.	Ericson , Ericsson , er'ik-son.
Balboa , bal-bō'ah.	Espejo , es-pā'hō.
Bartholomeu Diaz , bar-tol'o-mu dē'ahz.	Fanueil , fan'el <i>or</i> fun'el.
Bayou , bī'oo.	Filipinos , fe-lī-pē'nōz.
Bienville , beyanh'vėl.	Francisco , frahn-sēs'cō.
Bonhomme Richard , bon-om' rē-shahr'.	Frobisher , frob'ish-er.
Bracito , brah-sē'tō.	Frontenac , fron'teh-nac <i>or</i> front-nak'.
Buena Vista , bwā'nah vēs'tah.	Genet , zheh-nā'.
Cabeza , ka-bā'za.	Genoa , jen'o-wah.
Cabot , kab'ot.	Ghent , gent (not jent).
Canonicus , ka-non'ī-cus.	Gila , hē'lah.
Cartier , kar'tyā.	Grijalva , grē-hal'vah.
Cervera , ser-vā'rah.	Groseilliers , gro-sā'yā.
Chaleurs , shah-ler'.	Guadalupe Hidalgo , gwah-dah-loo'pā ē- dahl'gō.
Chapultepec , chah-pool'tā-pek.	Guerrière , ger-ryair'.
Chichimecs , chē-chē-meks.	Hispaniola , his-pan-yo'la.
Chickamauga , chik-a-maw'ga.	Hochelaga , hō-shel'ah-gah.
Chicora , shē-kō'rah.	Huger , hū-jē'.
Chihuahua , chē-wah'wah.	Huguenot , hū'ge-not.
Christoforo , krēs-to-fō'rō.	Iberville , ē-ber-vēl'.
Churubusco , choo-roo-boos'kō.	Iloilo , ē-lō-ē'lō.
Coahuila , ko-ah-wē'lah.	Insurgente , anh-soor-zhant'
Coligny , kō-lēn-yē'.	Iroquois , īr'o-kwoi.
Colito , kō-lē'tō.	Jacques , zhahk.
Colombo , ko-lom'bō.	Jalapa , hah-lah'pah.
Colorado , kol-ō-rah'dō.	Joliet , zhō-lyā'.
Contreras , kon-trā'rahs.	Juan , hwahn.
Coronado , kor-o-nah'dō.	Jumonville , zhoo-monh-vēl'.
Cortez , kor'tez.	Kearney , kar'nī.
Coueurs de bois , koo-rer' deh bwah.	Kieft , kēft.
Crève Cœur , krāv ker'.	La Belle , lah bel'.
Crozat , kro'zath.	

Lafayette, lah-fah-yet'.
 Lafitte, lah-fēt'.
 La Noche Triste, la no'chā trēs'tā.
 La Salle, lah sahl'.
 Laudonnière, lo-don-yair'.
 Le Bœuf, leh buff.
 Le Feboure, leh fā-boor'.
 Lemoine, leh-mwahn'.
 Leif (Ericson), lif.
 Luys de Moscoso, loo-ēs' dā mos-kō'sō.
 Macdonough, mac-don'ō.
 Mafia, mah-fē'ah.
 Magellan, ma-jel'an.
 Managua, man-ah'gwah.
 Manchac, man-shak'.
 Marquette, mahr-ket'.
 Maurepas, mo-rā-pah'.
 Mendocino, men-do-sē'nō.
 Menendez, mā-nen'dez.
 Minuit, min'oo-it.
 Molino del Rey, mō-lē'nō dāl rā.
 Montana, mon-tah'nah.
 Montcalm, mont-kahm'.
 Monterey, mon-teh-rā'.
 Montezuma, mon-tā-zoo'mah.
 Montiano, mon-tē-ah'nō.
 Moultrie, mōl'tre.
 Narvaez, nar-vah'ez.
 Natchitoches, nak'ē-tosh.
 Nez Percé, nā per-sā'.
 Nicollet, nē'co-lā.
 Niña, nēn'yah.
 Nueces, nwā'ses.
 Nuñez, noon'yez.
 Ojeda, o-hā'dah.
 Oklahoma, o-kla-hō'ma.
 Opecancanough, o-peh-kan'kan-o.
 Ouachita, wash'ī-tah.
 Ouconostota, oo-con-ō-stō'tah.
 Palo Alto, pah'lō ahl'tō.
 Panphilo, pahn-fē'lō.
 Pascua Florida, pahs-koo'ah flor-ē'dah.
 Philippine, fil'ip-īn.
 Phœnician, fen-ish'ian.
 Pierre, pē-air.
 Pineda, pē-nā'dah.

Pinta, pēn'tah.
 Pizarro, pē-zahr'rō.
 Ponce de Leon, pon'sā dā lā'on.
 Porto Rico, pōr'tō rē'kō.
 Powhatan, pow-ha-tan'.
 Presque Isle, pres-kēl'.
 Prideaux, prē-dō'.
 Prima Vista, prē'mah vēs'tah.
 Prudhomme, proo-dom'.
 Puebla, pweb'lah.
 Raleigh, raw'ī.
 Reconcentrados, ra-con-cen-trah'dōz.
 Resaca de la Palma, rā-sah'ka dā lah
 pah'l'ma.
 Ribault, rē-bō'.
 Rio Grande, rē'ō grahn'dā, or río grand.
 Roche, rōsh.
 Rodrigo de Triana, ro-drē'gō dā tre-ah'-
 nah.
 Ryswick, rēs'wīk.
 Saltillo, sahl-tēl'yō.
 San Felipe, san fā-lē'pā.
 San Jacinto, san hah-sīn'tō.
 St. Augustine, aw'gus-tēn.
 Santa Fé, sahn'tah fā.
 Santa Mariah, san'tah mah-rē'ah.
 Santiago, sahn-tē-ah'gō.
 Schley, schli.
 Sioux, soo.
 Stuyvesant, stī'veh-sant.
 Swansea, swon'zī.
 Tenochtitlan, ten-ōk-tēt'lan.
 Tomochichi, tō-mō-chē'chē.
 Tripoli, trip'o-lī.
 Utrecht, oo'trecht.
 Vasco da Gama, vahs'ko dah gah'mah.
 Vasquez, vahs'kez.
 Velasquez, vā-lahs'kez.
 Vera Cruz, vā'rah krooz.
 Verrazano, ver-raht-tsa'nō.
 Villegagnon, vėl-gahn-yonh.
 Wampanoags, wam-pah-no'ags.
 Yeamans, yē'mans.
 Yeardley, yērd'ly.
 Yemassee, yem-a-sē'.
 Zuñi, zoon'yē.

INDEX.

- Abercrombie, General, 175.
 Abolitionists, 353, 362.
 Acadia, settled, 36; expulsion from, 172.
 Acts of Resistance, 206.
 Adams, Charles Francis, 359.
 Adams, John, 212, 220, 221; Vice-President, 267; President, 279.
 Adams, John Quincy, 289, 307.
 Adams, Samuel, 208, 265.
 Alabama, explored, 33; admitted, 313; secedes, 366; readmitted, 436.
 Alabama, Confederate warship, 411, 412; claims, 443.
 Alamance, battle of, 206.
 Alamo, battle of, 236.
 Alaska, purchase of, 437.
 Albany, trading post, 95; colonial convention at, 169.
 Albemarle, Colony, 122; Duke of, 121, 122.
 Albemarle, Confederate ram, 403.
 Albert, Captain, 66.
 Alert, British war-sloop, 304.
 Algonquin Indians, 37.
 Alien and Sedition laws, 281.
 Allen, Ethan, 212.
 America, discovered, 16; named, 23.
 Amherst, General, 176, 181.
 Amidas, Philip, 69.
 Amnesty proclamation, 437.
 Anderson, Major, 367.
 André, Major, 238.
 Annapolis, Md., named, 114; commercial convention at, 261.
 Annapolis, N. S., captured and named, 160.
 Antietam Creek, battle at, see Sharpsburg.
 Anti-Federalist party, 279.
 Anti-slavery petition, Franklin's, 276; Society, 353.
 Apache War, 453.
 Appomattox, Lee's surrender at, 428.
 Argall, Captain Samuel, 90.
 Argus, American war vessel, 305.
 Arista, Mexican general, 343.
 Arizona Territory, 355.
 Arkansas, explored, 33; admitted, 317; secedes, 371; readmitted, 436.
 Arkansas Post captured, 416.
 Armistead, General, 398.
 Army of the Potomac organized, 377.
 Arnold, Benedict, 211; at Ticonderoga, 212; at Quebec, 216; at Saratoga, 230, 231; treason of, 238; as a British officer, 246.
 Arthur, Chester, Vice-President, 447; President, 448.
 Articles of Confederation, 257, 258.
 Ashe, Colonel John, 201, 236.
 Atlanta captured, 419.
 Atlanta Exposition, 1881, 447.
 Atlantic cable laid, 358.
 Attakullakulla, Indian chief, 180.
 Austin, Moses, 337.
 Austin, Stephen F., 337.
 Averill, General, 425.
 Averysboro, N. C., battles of, 423.
 Ayllon, Vasquez de, 26.
 Aztecs, 28-30, 47-50.
 Bacon's Rebellion, 152-154.
 Bagley, Ensign Worth, 469, 477.
 Bahama Islands discovered, 17.
 Bailey, Colonel Joseph, 410.
 Bainbridge, Commodore, 304.
 Balboa, Nuñez de, 28.
 Baltimore, founded, 114; Democratic conventions at, 364.
 Baltimore, Lords, first and second, 112.
 Banks, General N. P., 388, 391, 409.
 Baratarians, 306.
 Barlow, Arthur, 69.
 Barnwell, Captain John, 148.
 Bartholdi, sculptor, 451.
 Battles, of the Revolution, 251; of the War of 1812, 309; of the War with Mexico, 349; of the Civil War, 440.
 Baum, Colonel, 230.
 Bayard, James, Commissioner, 307.
 Beaujeu, 172.
 Beauregard, General P. G. T., 368, 374, 382, 384, 424.
 Bee, General, 376.
 Bell, John, 365.
 Belmont, Mo., battle of, 381.
 Bemis Heights, battle of, 230.
 Benjamin, Judah P., 367.
 Bennington, battle of, 230.
 Bentonville, N. C., battle of, 423.

- Berkeley, Lord, 97.
 Berkeley, Sir William, 151.
 Bienville, 131, 132.
 Big Bethel, battle of, 374.
 Bill of Rights, Virginia, 218.
 Biloxi, settlement of, 132.
 "Blackbeard," pirate, 187.
 Black Hawk, Indian chief, 318.
 Blackstock's Ford, battle of, 243.
 Blackstone, William, 103, 105.
 Blaine, James G., 446, 448, 458.
 Blair, Francis P., 437.
 Blair, Rev. James, 192.
 Blockade, of Southern ports, 401, 402.
 Bloody Marsh, battle of, 164.
 Bloody Run, battle of, 152.
 Blount, Governor William, 277.
 Blue Laws, 108.
 Bonhomme Richard, warship, 237.
 Boone, Daniel, 260.
 Booth, John Wilkes, 432.
 Border States, 372.
 Boston, settlement of, 105 ; massacre, 206 ; tea party, 208 ; fire, 441.
 Boyd, Colonel, 235.
 Bounty for sugar, 459.
 Bouquet, Henry, 181.
 Boxer, warship, captured, 305.
 Braddock, Sir Edward, 171.
 Bradford, William, 100.
 Bradstreet, Colonel, 175.
 Bragg, General Braxton, 346 ; Confederate, 382, 385, 414, 418.
 Brandywine, battle of, 227.
 Brazos Santiago, battle of, 429.
 Breckinridge, John C., candidate for President, 365 ; Confederate officer, 424, 425.
 Breed's Hill, 215.
 Brewster, William, 100.
 Brier Creek, battle of, 236.
 Brock, General, 296.
 Brown, Colonel, 237.
 Brown, General, 300, 301.
 Brown, John, 362, 364.
 Brownstown, battle of, 295.
 Brulé, discoverer, 39.
 Bryan, William J., 463.
 Buchanan, captain of Confederate cruiser, 403.
 Buchanan, James, President, 358 ; on secession, 368.
 Buckner, General S. B., 452, 463.
 Buell, General D. C., 378, 381, 382, 385.
 Buena Vista, battle of, 346.
 Buford, Colonel, 242.
 Bull Run, see Manassas.
 Bunker Hill, battle of, 215.
 Bureau of American Republics, 457.
 Burgoyne, Sir John, 215, 229-232 ; invades New York, 229.
 Burnett, David G., 339.
 Burnside, General A. E., 393, 417.
 Burr, Aaron, Vice-President, 282 ; fights duel, 288 ; arrest of, 288.
 Bushy Run, battle of, 181.
 Butler, General B. F., 409, 424.
 Butler, William O., 359.
 Cabinet, first organized, 271 ; first Confederate, 367.
 Cabot, John, 21.
 Cabot, Sebastian, 22.
 Cabrillo, 32.
 Cadhoun, John C., 293 ; Vice-president, 315 ; on nullification, 326.
 California, conquered, 344 ; gold discovered in, 348 ; admitted, 348.
 Calvert, see Baltimore.
 Camden, battle of, 239.
 Campbell, British colonel, 235.
 Campbell, William, 243.
 Canada, French retreat to, 176 ; ceded to England, 178.
 Canary Islands, 15.
 Canby, General, murder of, 443.
 Canonicus, Indian chief, 109.
 Cantey, Captain, 163.
 Cape Breton Island, 22.
 Cape Cod, named, 73.
 Cape Fear River, 122.
 Capital Bargain, 273.
 Capital, located at Washington, 273.
 Carleton, Sir Guy, 216.
 Carolina, settled and named, 120 ; divided, 124.
 Carpetbaggers, 435, 436.
 Carr, Dabney, 206.
 Carteret Colony, 123.
 Carteret, Sir George, 97.
 Cartier, Jacques, 36.
 Carver, John, 100.
 Cass, Lewis, candidate for President, 359.
 Castenado, General, 336.
 Caswell, Colonel Richard, 217.
 Cavaliers, in Virginia, 140.
 Cavalry leaders, Confederate, 421.
 Cedar Creek, battle of, 426.
 Cedar Mountain, battle of, 391.
 Centennial celebration at Philadelphia, 441.
 Centennial Exposition, New Orleans, 447.
 Central America discovered, 20.
 Cerro Gordo, battle of, 347.
 Cervera, Spanish admiral, 470.
 Chad's Ford, battle of, 227.
 Chalmette, battle of, 306.
 Chambersburg, Pa., burned, 426.

- Champlain, Samuel, 36.
 Chandler, General, 299.
 Chancellorsville, battle of, 393, 394.
 Chapultepec, battle of, 348.
 Charleston, founded, 122; attacked, 163; commercial center, 186; captured, 237; Democratic conventions, 363; defense of, 405; earthquake, 451.
 Charter, of 1606, 74; of 1609, 84; Massachusetts Bay Company, 104; Rhode Island, 109; Maryland, 112; Penn's, 115; Carolina, 120; Georgia, 126.
 Charter Oak, 159.
 Chattanooga besieged, 416.
 Cheatham, General B. F., 420.
 Cherokee War, 179-181.
 Cherry Valley massacre, 235.
 Cherub, British warship, 305.
 Chesapeake Bay, 77, 84.
 Chesapeake, frigate, 304.
 Cheves, Langdon, 293.
 Chichimecs, 47.
 Chickamauga, battle of, 416.
 Chicora (S. Carolina), 28.
 Chicora, Confederate ram, 405.
 Chilean controversy, 457.
 Chinese immigration prohibited, 448.
 Chippewa, battle of, 300.
 Chrysler's Field, battle of, 299.
 Churchill, Thomas J., 416.
 Civil service reform, 320, 446, 448.
 Claiborne, General, 300.
 Claiborne, Governor W. C. C., 312.
 Clarendon Colony, 122.
 Clark, Colonel George Rogers, 232.
 Clark, William, explorer, 286.
 Clarke, Colonel, 235.
 Clay, Henry, 293; commissioner, 307; on internal improvements, 313; presidential candidate, 314, 333; Secretary of State, 315; on protective tariff, 325; Compromise Bill of, 355.
 Clayborne's Rebellion, 112.
 Clayton, General H. D., 421.
 Cleburne, General Pat, 421.
 Cleveland, Grover, President, 448-454; his second term, 458, 460.
 Clermont, first steamboat, 287.
 Cliff-dwellers, Indian, 58.
 Clinch, General, 319.
 Clinton, George, 289.
 Clinton, Sir Henry, 215-217, 224, 237.
 Cochrane, Admiral, 305.
 Cobb, Howell, 366.
 Coddington, William, 109.
 Coffee, General, 300.
 Cold Harbor, battle of, 425.
 Colfax, Schuyler, 437.
 Coins, early American, 187.
 Coligny, Admiral, 65.
 Colito, battle of, 336.
 Colonial Assembly, 91, 200, 201.
 Colonial Congress, first, 159.
 Colonial government, first, 77; three forms of, 183.
 Colonial industries, 185.
 Colonial life, differences in, 191.
 Colonial money, 186.
 Colonial progress, 182; home life, 184.
 Colonial revolts, first, 158.
 Colorado, admission of, 441.
 Colquitt, Governor A. H., 418.
 Columbia, S. C., burned, 423.
 Columbian World's Fair, 460.
 Columbus, 8-20, 61.
 Compromise, Missouri, 314; tariff, 1833, 327; of 1850, 355.
 Compromises, Three Great, 263.
 Commercial convention, Annapolis, 262.
 Committees of correspondence, 206.
 Concepcion, battle of, 336.
 Concord, British expedition to, 210.
 Confederate States, government of, organized, 366; completed, 370.
 Congress, Federal, first meeting of, 267, 271.
 Connecticut explored, 91; settled, 108; written constitution of, 108; cedes land, 276.
 Constellation, frigate, 280.
 Constitution, Federal, debate upon, 263-265; adopted by the States, 266, 267; text of, see Appendix, v; amendments to, xvii.
 Constitution, first Virginia, 92; first written, 108.
 Constitution, frigate, 303, 304.
 Constitutional Union party, 365.
 Continental army, 212, 228.
 Continental Congress, First, 208; Second, 212; at Philadelphia, 1776, 229, 227; powers and limitations of, 256; under Articles of Confederation, 258.
 Contreras, battle of, 347.
 Conway Cabal, 228.
 Cooper, Sir Ashley, 122.
 Corinth, battle of, 385.
 Cornwallis, 224, 226, 238, 245; surrenders, 249.
 Corpus Christi captured, 408.
 Coronado, 32.
 Cortez, Hernando, 28.
 Cotton gin invented, 324.
 Cotton industry, production, 186; manufacture, 324; and commercial prosperity, 351, 401.
 Cotymore, Captain, 181.
 Coureurs de bois, 30.
 Cowpens, battle of, 245.
 Craven, Governor, 149.

- Crawford, William H., 314.
 Creek War, 300.
 Crittenden, General, 381.
 Croatan, 71, 72.
 Crockett, David, 336.
 Croghan, Major, 296.
 Crook, General, Indian fighter, 452.
 Cross Keys, battle of, 390.
 Crozat, Anthony, 133.
 Cruger, Colonel, 237.
 Cuba, discovery of, 19.
 Cuban Revolution, 466.
 Cumberland road, 313.
 Curtis, General, 379, 415.
 Cushing, Caleb, 361.
 Custer, General, massacre of, 444.
 Cyane, British war vessel, 304.
- Dade, Major, massacre of, 319.
 Da Gama, Vasco, navigator, 20.
 Dale, Sir Thomas, 87, 90.
 Dallas, Ga., battle of, 419.
 Dare, Virginia, 72.
 Dark Ages, 6.
 Davenport, John, 108.
 Davis, John, 44.
 Davis, Jefferson, in Mexican War, 346; President of the Confederacy, 366; leaving the Senate, 372; obituary of, 458.
 Deane, Silas, 231.
 Dearborn, General Henry, 295, 299.
 Debt, Revolutionary War, 259; Civil War, 444, 462.
 Decatur, Lieutenant, 286, 304, 307.
 De Chaptal, 148.
 Declaration of Independence, 220, 221; Appendix, i.
 Declaratory Act, 203.
 Decrees, Berlin and Milan, 287.
 Deerfield Massacre, 160.
 De Gourgues, Dominique, 67.
 De Kalb, General, 226, 228, 239.
 Delaware, Lord, 85.
 Delaware, Swedish settlement in, 96; in Penn's grant, 118.
 De Leon, Alonzo, 132.
 De Leon, Ponce, 25.
 Democratic party, 329.
 Democratic-Republican party, 279, 315.
 De Monts, 36.
 De Moscoso, Luys, 33.
 Denys, John, 36.
 De Rouville, 160.
 De Soto, Hernando, 22.
 D'Estaing, Count, 231, 236.
 Detroit, surrender of, 296.
 Dewey, Admiral George, 468.
- De Vaca, Cabeza, 26, 31.
 De Vitre, 177.
 Diaz, Bartholomeu, 7.
 Dieskau, Baron, 173.
 Dinwiddie, Governor, 167.
 District of Columbia, 282.
 Doniphan, Colonel, 344.
 Dorchester Heights, 216.
 Dorr's Rebellion, 333.
 Douglas, Stephen A., frames Kansas-Nebraska Bill, 356; presidential nominee, 365.
 Dover, N. H., massacre, 159.
 Downie, Commodore George, 301.
 Drake, Sir Francis, 45, 70.
 Drake, Captain, 163.
 Dred Scott Decision, 356, 362.
 Drummond, General, 301.
 Drummond, William, 122.
 Duhaul, 132.
 Dupont, Rear-Admiral, 403, 405, 409.
 Dutch, in New Netherland, 94; in Connecticut, 96.
- Early, General Jubal, 425, 426.
 East India Company, 94.
 Educational Campaign, 452.
 Election, first, by the people, 84.
 Electoral college, 264.
 Electoral Commission, 445.
 Elizabeth, Queen of England, 43, 69, 74.
 Elizabeth Island settled, 74.
 Elmira, battle of, 235.
 Emancipation proclamation, 431.
 Embargo Act, 287.
 Eminent Domain, principle of, 367.
 Empresarios, 337.
 Enciso, Spanish explorer, 27.
 Endicott, John, 104.
 English, William H., 447.
 Enterprise, British war-vessel, 305.
 Epervier, British war-vessel, 306.
 "Era of good feeling," 311.
 Ericsson, Captain John, 318.
 Erie Canal, 313.
 Espejo, 32.
 Essex, frigate, 303, 305.
 Eutaw Springs, battle of, 248.
 Evans, General, 376.
 Everett, Edward, 360.
 Ewell, General R. S., 389, 396.
 Executive departments organized, 271.
- Fair Oaks, battle of, 389.
 Falling Waters, battle of, 374.
 Faneuil Hall, 203.
 Farragut, Admiral, 406-409.
 Fauquier, Governor, 202.

- Federalists, 267.
 "Federalist, The," 267.
 Federal Convention, work of, 262.
 Federal ratio, 264.
 Fenwick, Captain, 163.
 Ferdinand, King of Spain, 12.
 Ferguson, Major, 243.
 Field, Cyrus W., 356.
 Fifteenth Amendment, 441; see Appendix, xx.
 Fillmore, Millard, President, 358.
 Finnegan, General Joseph, 418.
 Financial distress of 1775, 256.
 Fisher Hill, battle of, 426.
 Fishing Creek, battle of, 243.
 Five Forks, battle of, 428.
 Five Nations, 53, 54.
 Flag, Federal, 232.
 Florida, discovered, 25; settled, 36; East and West, 311; purchased, 312; secedes, 366; invasion of, 418; readmitted, 436.
 Floyd, General, 300.
 Foote, Rear-Admiral, 381, 406, 409.
 Forbes, General, 177.
 Forrest, General N. B., 415, 420, 421.
 Fort Brown, 343.
 Fort Caroline, 66.
 Fort Casimir built, 96.
 Fort Crève Cœur built, 41.
 Fort Christina, 96.
 Fort Covington, 290.
 Fort Crown Point, 173, 176, 212, 230.
 Fort Cumberland, 169.
 Fort Donelson captured, 381.
 Fort Duquesne, built, 169; expedition against, 171-173; captured, 176.
 Fort Edward, 175, 230.
 Fort Erie destroyed, 301.
 Fort Fisher captured, 405.
 Fort Frontenac captured, 175.
 Fort Gaines captured, 410.
 Fort George captured, 299.
 Fort Henry captured, 381.
 Fort Hope built, 96, 108.
 Fort Jackson surrendered, 408.
 Fort La Navidad, 19.
 Fort Le Bœuf, 168.
 Fort Lee captured, 224.
 Fort Leavenworth, 344.
 Fort McHenry bombarded, 305.
 Fort McRee defended, 409.
 Fort Mercer captured, 228.
 Fort Meigs besieged, 297.
 Fort Mifflin captured, 228.
 Fort Mims massacre, 300.
 Fort Morgan captured, 410.
 Fort Moultrie bombarded, 217.
 Fort Nahucke, 148.
 Fort Necessity, 169.
 Fort Niagara, 171.
 Fort Ninety-Six, 246.
 Fort Orange, 95.
 Fort Pickens, 367.
 Fort Pillow abandoned, 406.
 Fort Pitt, 176.
 Fort Presque Isle, 167.
 Fort Pulaski captured, 403.
 Fort Rosalie built, 133; captured, 148.
 Fort St. Louis, 132.
 Fort St. Philip surrendered, 406.
 Fort Schuyler, 230.
 Fort Sumter bombarded, 367; surrendered, 368.
 Fort Venango, 168.
 Fort Washington captured, 224.
 Fort William Henry built, 173; massacre at, 175.
 Fourteenth Amendment, 436; Appendix, xix.
 France, alliance with, 231; naval war with, 280.
 Frankfort, Ky., captured, 386.
 Franklin, Tenn., battle of, 420.
 Franklin, Benjamin, his plan of Union, 169; on Committee of Declaration, 221; Commissioner to France, 231; Postmaster-General, 253; anti-slavery petition, 276.
 Franklin, General, 409.
 Franklin, State of, 259.
 Frederica founded, 128.
 Frederick the Great, 226.
 Fredericksburg, battle of, 393.
 Frémont, John C., Colonel, 344; presidential candidate, 353; General, 388, 391.
 Free-Soil party, 353.
 French and Indian War, 171-178.
 French Directory, tribute money for, 280.
 Frenchtown, battle of, 296.
 Frobisher, Martin, 43.
 Frolic, British frigate, 304.
 Frontenac, Count, 40.
 Front Royal, battle of, 390.
 Fugitive Slave Law, 354, 355.
 Fulton, Robert, 287.
 Fu Sang, 56.
 Gadsden, Christopher, 202, 220.
 Gadsden purchase, 347.
 Gage, General, 210.
 Gaines, General, 301, 319.
 Gallatin, Albert, Commissioner, 307.
 Galveston captured, 409.
 Gama, Vasco da, 20.
 Gansevoort, Colonel, 230.
 Garfield, James A., President, 447; assassination of, 447.
 Garnett, General, 374, 398.
 Garrison, William Lloyd, 353.
 Gaspee, war vessel, 296.

- Gates, General, 231, 238, 240.
 Gates, Sir Thomas, 85, 86.
 General Court, Boston, 104.
 Genet, "Citizen," 275.
 Geneva award, 443.
 Genoa, 8.
 Georgia, charter, 126; settled, 127; slavery prohibited in, 128; a royal province, 129; secedes, 366; readmitted, 436.
 Germantown, battle of, 227.
 Geronimo, Apache chief, 453.
 Gerry, Elbridge, 280.
 Gettysburg, battle of, 396-399.
 Gilbert, Raleigh, 75.
 Gilbert, Sir Humphrey, 69.
 Glorietta, battle of, 378.
 Goliad massacre, 337.
 Gonzales, battle of, 336.
 Good Hope, Cape of, 7, 20.
 Gordon, General J. B., 425, 428, 452.
 Gorges, Sir Ferdinand, 107.
 Gosnold, Bartholomew, 73, 78.
 Gourgues, Dominique de, 67.
 Government explained and defined, 252-255.
 Graffenreid, Baron, 146.
 Grand Model, the, 122.
 Grant, Colonel James, 181.
 Grant, Ulysses S., his campaign in the West, 380-385, 417; at Vicksburg, 407; commander-in-chief, 418; in the Virginia campaign, 423-429; as President, 438-444; his death, 451.
 Grant, Major, 177.
 Great Meadows, 169.
 Great Woods, 167.
 Green, Rev. Roger, 120.
 Greenbacks, war money, 444.
 Green Mountain Boys, 212.
 Greene, General Nathanael, 211, 245, 246.
 Grenville, Prime Minister, 200.
 Grijalva, explorer, 28.
 Grundy, Felix, 293.
 Guerrière, frigate, 341.
 Guilford Court House, battle of, 245.
 Guiteau, 447.
 Hale, Nathan, 238.
 Half King, Indian chief, 169.
 Half Moon, ship, 45.
 Halleck, General H. W., 378, 384, 391.
 Hamilton, Alexander, 262, 267, 271-273.
 Hamilton, Governor, 232.
 Hamlin, Hannibal, Vice-President, 360.
 Hampton, General Wade (1813), 296.
 Hampton, General Wade (1860), 376, 426, 452.
 Hampton Roads, naval battle, 403; conference at, 427.
 Hancock, General W. S., 424, 447, 451.
 Hancock, John, 206, 212.
 Hancock, Tuscarora chief, 148.
 Hanging Rock, battle of, 242.
 Hardee, General W. J., 382.
 Harlem Heights, battle of, 224.
 Harmar, General, 275.
 Harper's Ferry, captured, 392.
 Harrison, Benjamin (1775), 212.
 Harrison, Benjamin (1888), President, 454, 456, 459.
 Harrison, William Henry, 292, 296.
 Hartford, settled, 108.
 Hartford Convention, 304.
 Harvard College, 190, 192.
 Harvard, Rev. John, 192.
 Harvey, Sir John, 150.
 Hatteras, Federal warship, sunk, 411.
 Hatteras Inlet captured, 403.
 Haverhill massacre, 159.
 Hawaiian annexation, 469.
 Hayes, Rutherford B., President, 444, 445.
 Hayti discovered, 19.
 Hayne, Colonel Isaac, 238.
 Hendrick, Mohawk chief, 173.
 Hendricks, Thomas A., 444, 448, 451.
 Hennepin, Father, 41.
 Henry, Patrick, 201.
 Herkimer, General, 230.
 Hessians, British soldiers, 224, 226.
 Hill, General A. P., 396, 428.
 Hill, General D. H., 373, 374.
 Hindman, General T. C., 415.
 Hispaniola discovered, 19.
 Hobart, Garret A., 463.
 Hobkirk's Hill, battle of, 246.
 Hobson, Naval Constructor R. P., 471.
 Hoe, R. M., inventor, 340.
 Hoi Shin, discoverer, 56.
 Holland, separatists in, 99.
 Holly Springs captured, 407.
 Holmes, General T. H., 415.
 Homestead riots, 457.
 Hood, General J. B., 419-421.
 Hooker, General Joseph, 393-396, 417.
 Hooker, Rev. Thomas, 108.
 Hornet, warship, 204.
 Horseshoe Bend, battle of, 200.
 House of Burgesses, 92.
 House of Commons, 200.
 House of Representatives, 264, 267.
 Houston, General Sam, 336, 339.
 Howard, General O. O., 394, 446.
 Howe, Admiral, 233.
 Howe, Elias, inventor, 340.
 Howe, General Robert, 235.
 Howe, General William, 215, 224, 227.
 Hudson, Henry, 45.

- Hudson River discovered, 45.
 Huger, Colonel, 237.
 Huger, General Benjamin, 374.
 Huguenots, French Protestants, 65, 121.
 Hull, naval captain, 304.
 Hull, General William, surrenders, 296.
 Hunter, General, 425.
 Hutchinson, Anne, 105.
 Iberville, French explorer, 131, 132.
 Idaho admitted, 457.
 Illinois, explored, 41 ; admitted, 313.
 Importation Acts, 198.
 Impressment of seamen, 292.
 Independence Hall, 221.
 Indiana admitted, 307.
 Indian, races, classification of, 52 ; religion, 54 ; massacres, 141.
 Indian Territory, 319, 457.
 Indigo, culture of, 186.
 Insurgente, warship, 280.
 Internal improvements, 313.
 Interstate Commerce Commission, 452.
 Invention, progress of, 340.
 Iowa admitted, 340.
 Iroquois Indians, 37, 51.
 Isabella, Queen of Spain, 12.
 Island No. 10 captured, 406.
 Italian controversy, 457.
 Iuka, battle of, 385.
 Izard, General Ralph, 300, 301.
 Jack, Captain, 172 ; Modoc leader, 443.
 Jackson, General Andrew, 300, 306, 314 ; elected President, 315 ; opposes nullification, 327.
 Jackson, General T. J. ("Stonewall"), at Manassas, 376 ; in Shenandoah Valley, 388-391 ; at Harper's Ferry, 392 ; at Chancellorsville, 393 ; death of, 394.
 Jackson, Governor of Missouri, 378.
 Jamaica discovered, 20.
 James II., 158.
 Jamestown settled, 77 ; starving time in, 86 ; massacres at, 141.
 Jasper, Sergeant, 217, 236.
 Jay, John, Chief Justice, 271 ; treaty of, 275.
 Java, British frigate, 304.
 Jefferson, Thomas, draws up the Declaration, 221 ; Secretary of State, 271-273 ; President, 284 ; death of, 315.
 Jesuit explorers, 37.
 Johnson, Andrew, Vice-President, 432 ; President, 434, 437 ; impeachment of, 437.
 Johnson, Colonel R. M., 298.
 Johnson, General Edward, 389.
 Johnson, British governor, 163.
 Johnson, Herschel V., 360.
 Johnson, Sir William, 173.
 Johnston, General A. S., 379, 382, 384, 415.
 Johnston, General J. E., 371, 374, 387, 418, 429, 452.
 Joliet, explorer, 40.
 Jones, Captain John Paul, 237.
 Judiciary Department organized, 271.
 Jumonville, 169.
 Jury trial, first, 78.
 Kansas, struggle for, 357 ; admission of, 358.
 Kansas-Nebraska Bill, 355.
 Kearney, General, 344.
 Kearsarge, Federal war vessel, 412.
 Kemper, General, 398.
 Kendall, George, 78.
 Kenesaw Mountain, battle of, 419.
 Kent, Isle of, 112.
 Kentucky, settled, 260 ; admitted, 277 ; resolutions, 281 ; in Civil War, 372.
 Kernstown, battle of, 389.
 Kettle Creek, battle of, 235.
 Kidd, Captain, pirate, 187.
 Kieft, Governor William, 96.
 Kilpatrick, General, 421.
 King Charles I., 190.
 King George III., 205.
 King George's War, 160.
 King Philip's War, 144.
 King, Rufus, 289.
 King William's War, 159.
 King's Mountain, battle of, 243.
 Knyphausen, General, 224, 226.
 Knox, General Henry, 271.
 Kosciusko, General, 226, 230, 246.
 Labor statistics, Bureau of, 448.
 Labrador discovered, 61.
 La Colle, battle of, 299.
 Lafayette, Marquis de, 226 ; visit to Washington, 313.
 Lafitte, Baratarian leader, 306.
 Lake Erie, battle of, 298.
 Lake George, battle of, 173.
 Lamar, Mirabeau B., 339.
 Lancaster, Pa., Congress at, 227.
 Lane, Joseph, 365.
 Lane, Ralph, 70.
 Langhorne, Captain, 304.
 La Noche Triste, 30.
 La Salle, 40, 131.
 Laudonnière, 66.
 Laurens, Henry, 218.
 Law, John, 134.
 Lawrence, Captain, 304.
 Lee, Arthur, 231.

- Lee, General Charles, 232.
 Lee, General Fitzhugh, 421, 426, 452, 467.
 Lee, Colonel Henry (Light Horse Harry), 240, 241, 267.
 Lee, General Robert E., his idea of loyalty, 371 ; commands Virginia forces, 390 ; his campaigns in Virginia, 391-399, 423-429 ; obituary of, 441.
 Lee, Richard Henry, 206 ; Resolution of, 220.
 Lee, General S. D., 407, 420.
 Le Feboure, 163.
 Leif Ericson, explorer, 61.
 Leisler, Jacob, 158.
 Leopard, British warship, 287.
 Levant, British warship, 304.
 Lewis, Meriwether, explorer, 286.
 Lexington, battle of, 210.
 Lexington, Ky., captured, 386.
 Lexington, Mo., captured, 379.
 Liberty Bell, 221.
 Liberty, Statue of, 451.
 Lincoln, Abraham, early life, in Congress, debate with Douglas, etc., 133 ; nominated, 361 ; as President, 427, 431-433 ; assassination of, 432.
 Lincoln, General, 230, 236-238.
 Little Belt, war vessel, surrendered, 293.
 Little Rock, Ark., captured, 416.
 Little Turtle, Indian chief, 275.
 Livingston, Robert R., on Declaration Committee, 221 ; minister to France, 285.
 Locke, Colonel Francis, 242.
 Locke, John, 122.
 Logan, John A., 448.
 London Company, 75, 84.
 Long Island, battle of, 234.
 Longstreet, General James, 392, 396, 416, 418.
 Lookout Mountain, battle of, 417.
 Lords Proprietors, 120.
 Loudon, Lord, 175.
 Louisburg captured, 160.
 Louisiana explored and named, 42 ; settled, 131-134 ; ceded to Spain, 178 ; re-ceded to France, 285 ; territory purchased, 285 ; admitted, 307 ; slavery in, 352 ; secedes, 366 ; readmitted, 436.
 Lowndes, William, 293.
 Loyalty, question of, 371.
 Lundy's Lane, battle of, 300.
 Lyman, General, 173.
 Lyon, General, 378.
 Lyttleton, Governor, 179.
 McClellan, General G. B., 372, 373, 388-393, 432, 451.
 McCormick's reaper, 318.
 McCullough, General, 378, 380.
 Macdonough, Commodore Thomas, 301.
 Macedonian, British frigate, 304.
 McDowell, General Irwin, 373, 374, 389.
 Mackay, Colonel, 149.
 Mackay, Lieutenant, 164.
 McIntosh, General, 280.
 McKinley Bill, 458, 459.
 McKinley, William, President, 466-474.
 Macomb, General, 200, 301.
 Macpherson, General J. B., 417, 419.
 Madison, James, 267, 272 ; President, 289.
 Madog, early voyager, 60.
 Mafia, Italian society, 457.
 Maffitt, Captain J. N., 413.
 Magaw, Colonel, 224.
 Magellan, 28.
 Magruder, General J. B., 374, 389, 408.
 Magnaga, battle of, 296.
 Maine, settled, 107 ; admitted, 313.
 Maine, battleship, 467.
 Maitland, Colonel, 236.
 Mallory, Stephen B., 367.
 Malvern Hill, battle of, 391.
 Manassas, first battle of, 375 ; second battle of, 392.
 Mandeville, John, 6.
 Manhattan Island settled, 94.
 Mansfield, battle of, 410.
 Manufactures, Hamilton on, 272 ; and protection, 323.
 Marco, Father, 32.
 Marion, General Francis, 240.
 Marquette, Father, 40.
 Marshall, Colonel, 346.
 Marshall, John, 280.
 Maryland named, 112 ; settled, 112.
 Mason and Dixon's line, 114.
 Mason, George, 257, 265.
 Mason, James M., 431.
 Mason, Captain John, 107, 143.
 Massachusetts Bay Company, 104, 255.
 Massachusetts, explored, 73 ; charter of, 104 ; cedes land, 276 ; favors nullification, 288.
 Massasoit, Indian chief, 102.
 Matagorda Bay, 132.
 Mather, Cotton, 155.
 Mather, Increase, 155.
 Maumee, battle of, 275.
 Maurepas, Lake, 132.
 Maury, Lieutenant M. F., 356.
 Maximilian in Mexico, 432.
 Mayflower Compact, 100, 255.
 Mayflower, ship, 99.
 Maynard, Lieutenant, 187.
 Meade, General George G., 596, 398, 423.
 Mecklenburg Declaration of Independence, 220.
 Memminger, Charles G., 367.

- Menendez, Spanish officer, 66 ; massacres the French, 67.
- Mendoza, Antonio de, 32.
- Merritt, Major-General W., 472.
- Mexican War, 342-348.
- Mexico, discovered, 28 ; conquered, 28 ; origin of name, 47 ; war with Texas, 339 ; revolution in, 432.
- Micanopy, Indian chief, 319.
- Michigan, admitted, 317.
- Miles, Major-General N. A., 472.
- Military Act, 436.
- Mill Springs, battle of, 382.
- Miller, Colonel, 299.
- Minnesota admitted, 358.
- Minuit, Peter, 96.
- Minute men, 210.
- Missionary Ridge, battle of, 418.
- Mississippi Company, 134.
- Mississippi River, discovered, 33, 40 ; explored, 40, 41 ; mouth of, reached by La Salle, 42 ; free navigation of, 285 ; in Civil War, 405.
- Mississippi, State of, explored, 132 ; admitted, 313 ; secedes, 366 ; readmitted, 442.
- Missouri, admitted, 313 ; Compromise, 314, 353-356.
- Mobile settled, 132 ; attacked, 409.
- Modoc War, 441, 443.
- Molino del Rey, battle of, 347.
- Monckton, Colonel, 172.
- Monk's Corner, battle of, 237.
- Monitor, war vessel, 403, 405.
- Monmouth, battle of, 232.
- Monroe, James, Commissioner to France, 285 ; President, 310-313.
- Montana admitted, 457.
- Montcalm, General, 174-177.
- Monterey, battle of, 345.
- Montezuma, Aztec king, 29.
- Montgomery, Confederate capital, 366.
- Montgomery, Colonel, 181.
- Montgomery, General Richard, 216.
- Montiano, Governor, 164.
- Montreal captured, 177.
- Moore, Colonel, 242.
- Moore, Governor, 123, 163.
- Moore's Creek Bridge, battle of, 217.
- Morgan, General Daniel, 216, 230, 246.
- Morgan, General John H., 416.
- Mormons, 323.
- Morris, Robert, 256.
- Morristown Heights, 256.
- Morse, Rebecca, 156.
- Morse, S. F. B., inventor, 340.
- Morton, Levi P., Vice-President, 454.
- Mount Vernon, 313.
- Moultrie, Colonel, 217, 236.
- Mound-builders, 56.
- Munfordville, battle of, 386.
- Murfreesboro, battle of, 415.
- Napoleon, 285, 286, 306.
- Narragansett Indians, 52, 140, 145.
- Narvaez, Spanish explorer, 26.
- Nashville, battle of, 421.
- Natchez Indians, 51, 53, 148.
- Natchez War, 148.
- Natchitoches, 133.
- National Republican party, 315.
- Navigation Acts, 198.
- Navy Department organized, 280.
- Nebraska admitted, 437.
- Nelson, Thomas, 218.
- Nelson, Governor, 248.
- Nevada admitted, 432.
- New Albion (Oregon), 45.
- New Amsterdam settled, 94.
- New Berne settled, 146 ; massacre at, 148.
- Newfoundland discovered, 21.
- New France settled and named, 36.
- New Hampshire settled and named, 107, 108.
- New Jersey, settled, 96 ; a royal province, 97.
- New Market, battle of, 424, 425.
- New Mexico, explored, 32 ; Territory, 244.
- New Netherland settled, 95, 96.
- New Orleans, founded, 134 ; battle of, 306, 307 ; captured, 406.
- Newport, Captain, 78, 83, 85.
- Newport founded, 109.
- New Spain, 27, 31.
- New Sweden settled, 96.
- Newtonia, battle of, 416.
- New York, settled by the Dutch, 94 ; English possession of, 96 ; named, 97 ; cedes territory, 276.
- New York City, colonial congress in, 159 ; captured, 224 ; Federal capital, 267.
- Nez Percé Indians, 446.
- Nicholson, Governor, 158.
- Nicholson, South Carolina governor, 123.
- Nicollet, explorer, 39.
- Niña, 14.
- Ninety-Six, battle of, 246.
- Nonconformists, 99.
- Non-intercourse Act, 288.
- Norsemen, discoverers, 59.
- North Carolina, explored, 69 ; settled, 120 ; cedes land, 259, 276 ; secedes, 371 ; readmitted, 436.
- North Dakota admitted, 457.
- North, Lord, 208, 249.
- Northwest passage, search for, 43, 44.
- Northwest Territory, conquest of, 232 ; organized, 276.

- Nullification, doctrine of, 288 ; Ordinance of, 326.
- Nuñez, Alvar, 26.
- Oglethorpe, James, 126, 163, 164.
- Ohio Company, 167.
- Ohio, admission of, 284.
- Ojeda, 23.
- Oklahoma, 457.
- Olustee, battle of, 418.
- Omnibus Bill, 355.
- Oñate, Juan de, 32.
- Opecancanough, Indian chief, 83, 141.
- Orders in Council, 286.
- Ordinance of 1787, 258.
- Oregon discovered, 45 ; explored, 286 ; boundary treaties, 312, 341 ; admitted, 358.
- Oriskany, battle of, 230.
- Orinoco River, 20.
- Osceola, Indian chief, 319.
- Otis, Major-General E. S., 474.
- Otis, James, 197.
- Ouconostota, Indian chief, 180.
- Pacific Ocean discovered, 28.
- Pacific railroads built, 441.
- Pakenham, Sir Edward, 306.
- Palmetto State, Confederate ram, 405.
- Palo Alto, battle of, 343.
- Pan-American Congress, 456.
- Palos, 12.
- Panic of 1837, 329 ; of 1873, 444 ; of 1893, 460.
- Parker, Admiral H., 235.
- Parker, Captain, 210.
- Parker, Sir Peter, 217.
- Parliament, English, 200.
- Parris, Samuel, 156.
- Partisan warfare and leaders, 240.
- Patriot War, 331.
- Patriots, American, 226, 238, 240.
- Patroons, 95.
- Patterson, General, 373.
- Paulding, Patriot, 238.
- Pea Ridge, battle of, 380.
- Peacock, British brig, 304, 306.
- Pearce, General, 378.
- Pelican, British sloop, 305.
- Pendleton, George H., 432, 446.
- Penguin, British war-vessel, 306.
- Penn, William, 115 ; his treaty, 116.
- Pennsylvania, settlement of, 116.
- "Pennsylvania Line," revolt of, 256.
- People's party, 459, 463.
- Pepperel, General, 160.
- Pequot Indians, 143.
- Pequot War, 143.
- Percy, George, Virginia governor, 85.
- Perestrelo, Portuguese navigator, 8.
- Perier, General, 148.
- Perry, Commodore, 297, 298.
- Perryville, battle of, 386.
- Personal Liberty Bills, 362.
- Peru, ancient, conquest of, 30.
- Petersburg besieged, 427 ; evacuated, 428.
- Pettigrew, General, 398.
- Philadelphia, founded, 116 ; entered by British, 227 ; constitutional convention at, 262 ; Federal capital, 274.
- Philadelphia, frigate, 286.
- Philip, son of Massasoit, 144.
- Phillips, General, 231.
- Phips, Sir William, 159.
- Phœbe, British war-vessel, 305.
- Phœnicians, discoverers, 59.
- Pickens, General, 235, 240, 241.
- Pickett, General George E., 398.
- Pierce, Franklin, President, 358.
- Piggott, General, 215.
- Pike, General Albert, 380.
- Pike, General Zebulon, 298.
- Pilgrims, origin of, 100 ; landing of, 100.
- Pillow, General, 347.
- Pinckney, Charles C., 280, 282, 289.
- Pineda, explorer, 28.
- Pinta, 14.
- Pinzons, Spanish navigators, 14.
- Pirates, in colonial times, 187 ; of Barbary, 286.
- Pitcairn, Major, 210.
- Pitt, William, 175.
- Pittsburg, city of, named, 177.
- Pizarro, Francisco, 30.
- Plains of Abraham, 177.
- Plattsburg, battle of, 301.
- Pleasant Hill, battle of, 410.
- Pleasanton, General, 421.
- Plymouth, Company and charter, 75 ; Colony and settlement, 100 ; Rock, 100.
- Pocahontas, 83.
- Pocotaligo Massacre, 149.
- Political thought, centers of, 198.
- Political parties, origin of, 279.
- Polk, General Leonidas, 380, 382, 385, 419.
- Polk, James K., President, 333-341.
- Polo, Marco, 15.
- Ponce de Leon, 25.
- Pontchartrain, Lake, 132.
- Pontiac, Indian chief, 181 ; his war, 181.
- Pope, General John, 391, 392, 406.
- Popham Colony, 75.
- Popham, George, 75 ; Sir John, 75.
- Port Bill, Boston, 208.
- Port Hudson, captured, 408.
- Port Royal, N. S., settled, 36 ; captured and named Annapolis, 160.

- Port Royal, S. C., settled, 66; captured, 403.
418.
- Port Republic, battle of, 390.
- Porter, Captain, 303, 306.
- Porter, Admiral David D., 405, 407, 409.
- Porto Rico, 25.
- Portuguese sailors, 6.
- Postal Department established, 256.
- Routrincourt, French explorer, 36.
- Power loom invented, 324.
- Powhatan, Indian chief, 83, 140, 141.
- Prairie Grove, battle of, 416.
- Preble, Commodore, 286.
- Prescott, General, 215.
- President, U. S. frigate, 293.
- Presidential election, methods of, discussed, 264.
- Presidential succession, 453.
- Prevost, General, 226, 299, 301.
- Price, General Stirling, 378, 384.
- Prideaux, General, 176.
- Prima Vista, 22.
- Princeton, battle of, 226.
- Pring, Martin, 74.
- Printing press, improved, 340.
- Proctor, General, 296, 298.
- Prophet, Indian chief, 292.
- Protestants, branch of Church, 65.
- Providence founded, 109.
- Province defined, 254.
- Pueblos, Indian race, 58.
- Pulaski, Count, 226, 236.
- Puritans, origin of, 99; intolerance of, 105; contrasted with Cavaliers, 190.
- Putnam, General, 212, 215, 224.
- Quakers, settlement of, 115-117.
- Quebec captured, 177; expedition to, 216.
- Queen Anne's War, 160, 162.
- Queenstown, battle of, 296.
- Rahl, Colonel, 225.
- Railroad, first, 315, 318; strikes, 446, 462.
- Raisin River Massacre, 298.
- Raleigh, Sir Walter, 69, 70.
- Raleigh Tavern, 203.
- Ramsour's Mill, battle of, 242.
- Randolph, Edmund, 263, 271.
- Randolph, Peyton, 208.
- Ratcliff, John, 78.
- Rawdon, Lord, 238, 246.
- Reagan, J. H., 367.
- Reciprocity in trade, 458, 459.
- Reconstruction policy, 433-436.
- Red River expedition, 410.
- Regicides, English, 191.
- Regulating Act, 208.
- Regulators, Texas, 206.
- Reid, Whitelaw, 459.
- Reindeer, war vessel, 306.
- Rensselaer, Stephen V., 296.
- Republican party, 363.
- Resaca de la Palma, battle of, 343.
- Resaca, Ga., battle of, 419.
- Reserve fund, 461.
- Resumption of specie payment, 461.
- Revenue Act, Townshend, 203.
- Revere, Paul, 211.
- Revolution of 1688, 159.
- Rhett, Colonel William, 163, 187.
- Rhode Island, settled, 109; charter, 109; expedition, 232; ratifies the Constitution, 267.
- Riall, General, 300.
- Ribault, John, 66.
- Rice, culture introduced, 186; as money, 186.
- Richmond, explored, 78; Confederate capital, 372; campaigns against, 388, 393, 423; evacuated, 428.
- Richmond, Ky., battle of, 385.
- Riedesel, General, 226, 231.
- Ripley, General, 300.
- River of May, 66.
- Roanoke Island, settled, 70; captured, 403.
- Roanoke Massacre, 148.
- Robertson, James, 260.
- Robertson, J. W., Lieutenant-Governor, 339.
- Rodgers, Commodore, 293.
- Rolfe, John, 83, 185.
- Rosecrans, General W. S., 384, 385, 414-417.
- Ross, British general, 305.
- Russell, Jonathan, commissioner, 307.
- Russia, peace mediator, 306.
- Rutledge, John, President of South Carolina, 218; delegate, 262.
- Rutledge, Lieutenant John, 405.
- Sabine Pass, battle of, 409.
- Sackett's Harbor, defense of, 299.
- Sacramento Creek, battle of, 345.
- Sagadahoc River (Kennebec), 74.
- St. Augustine founded, 66.
- St. Clair, General, 275.
- St. Lawrence, Gulf of, explored, 36.
- St. Leger, General, 230.
- St. Mary's settlement, 112.
- Salamanca, Council of, 12.
- Salmon Falls Massacre, 159.
- Salzburgers, colonists, 128.
- Samoan controversy, 457.
- Samoset, Indian chief, 102.
- Sampson, Rear-Admiral W. T., 468.
- Sander's Creek, battle of, 238.
- San Felipe Convention, 338.
- San Jacinto, battle of, 339.
- San Jacinto, warship, 431.

- San Salvador discovered, 17.
 Santa Anna, General, 337, 339, 345, 347.
 Santa Fé, founded, 32; expedition and capture of, 311.
 Santa Maria, 14.
 Saratoga, battles of, 230, 231.
 Sassacus, Indian chief, 143.
 Savannah, founded, 127; captured, 234; besieged, 236; evacuated, 423.
 Saybrook founded, 108.
 Sayle, William, 122.
 Shafter, Major-General W. R., 473.
 Schenectady Massacre, 159.
 Schley, Rear-Admiral W. S., 468.
 Schofield, General, 417, 420.
 Schuyler, General, 230.
 Scott, General Winfield, 300, 347, 348, 359, 375.
 Screw propeller introduced, 318.
 Secession of Southern States, 366.
 Sectional antagonism, 314, 350.
 Sedgwick, General, 393, 394.
 Seminole War, 311, 319.
 Semmes, Admiral Raphael, 411.
 Separatists, 99.
 Seven Days' Battles, 391.
 Seven Pines, battle of, 389.
 Sevier, Colonel John, 243, 259.
 Sewall, Arthur, 463.
 Seward, W. H., 368.
 Sewing machine invented, 340.
 Seymour, Horatio, 438.
 Seymour, General Truman, 418.
 Shannon, British frigate, 304.
 Sharpsburg, battle of, 392.
 Shawnee War, 292.
 Shays's Rebellion, 259.
 Shelby, Colonel Isaac, 260.
 Sheridan, General P. H., 421, 425, 426, 428, 452.
 Sherman, General W. T., 370, 417-422, 429, 452.
 Sherman, Roger, 221.
 Shields, General, 389.
 Shiloh, battle of, 384.
 Shirley, General, 173.
 Sibley's brigade, 378.
 Sigel, General, 378, 423.
 Silver legislation, 461, 462.
 Sioux War, 441, 443.
 Sitting Bull, Sioux chief, 443.
 Skipwith, Governor Fulwar, 312.
 Slavery, introduced, 89; affecting Southern industries, 191; in the Constitution, 264, 432; in Texas, 339; growing opposition to, 350-357; abolition of, 435.
 Slater, Samuel, cotton millwright, 324.
 Slemmer, Lieutenant, 367.
 Slidell, John, 431.
 Smith, General C. F., 380.
 Smith, General E. Kirby, 374, 376, 385, 429.
 Smith, Governor Henry, 339.
 Smith, Captain John, 78, 82, 83, 255.
 Smith, Joseph, Mormon, 333.
 Smithsonian Institution, 341.
 Smyth, General Alexander, 296.
 Snorri, Norse child, 61.
 Somers, Sir George, 85, 86.
 South Carolina, settled, 120; revolution of 1719, 123; organized as a State, 218; cedes land, 276; passes Nullification Ordinance, 326; secedes, 366; readmitted, 436.
 South Dakota admitted, 457.
 South Mountain, battle of, 392.
 Sovereignty explained, 252.
 Spain, war with (1739), 163; war with (1898), 468.
 Speedwell, ship, 99.
 Spoils system, 320.
 Spoliation claims, 286.
 Spottswood, Governor, 148, 187.
 Spottsylvania, battle of, 424.
 Squanto, Indian, 102.
 Squatter sovereignty, 356, 363, 365.
 Stamp Act, 200-203.
 Standish, Captain Miles, 100.
 Stanton, Edwin M., Secretary of War, 437.
 Stark, Colonel John, 211, 230.
 Star of the West, steamer, 368.
 State defined, 254.
 State rights, 266.
 Steamboat, first, 287.
 Steamship, first, 313.
 Steele, General Frederick, 416.
 Stephens, Alexander H., Confederate Vice-President, 367.
 Steuben, Baron, 226, 228.
 Stevenson, Adlai E., 459.
 Stewart, General A. P., 420.
 Stirling, General, 224.
 Stockton, Commodore, 344.
 Stoddert, Benjamin, Secretary of Navy, 280.
 Stoneman, General, 393, 421.
 Stono Ferry, battle of, 236.
 Stuart, General J. E. B., 421, 426.
 Stuyvesant, Peter, 96.
 Subtreasury system, 331.
 Suffrage, universal, 265.
 Sullivan, General, at Long Island, 224; expedition of, 233, 235.
 Sumter, General, 240, 241, 243.
 Sumter, Confederate cruiser, 412.
 Supreme Court, organized, 271.
 Surplus, Treasury, 460.
 Sutherland, Lieutenant, 164.
 Swansea Massacre, 144.
 Swedish settlements, 96.

- Talladega, battle of, 300.
 Tallahassee, Confederate cruiser, 413.
 Tariff, first levied, 274; defined and classified, 322; of 1824, 325; of 1832, 321, 326; under Cleveland, 453, 461.
 Tarleton, Colonel, 237, 241, 243, 245.
 Taxation without representation, 200-203.
 Taxes defined, 321, 322.
 Taylor, General Richard, 410, 416.
 Taylor, General Zachary, 343-346; President, 358.
 Tea tax, 203.
 Teach, pirate, 187.
 Tecumseh, Indian chief, 292, 296, 298.
 Telegraph, first, 340.
 Tennessee, settled, 260; admitted, 276; secedes, 371; readmitted, 436.
 Tenochtitlan, Mexican capital, 48.
 Tenure of Office Act, 437.
 Territory, South of the Ohio, 276.
 Territory, State cessions of; 276.
 Texas, exploration of, 132; colonized, 337; revolution and independence, 338, 339; annexed and admitted, 340; secedes, 367; readmitted, 442.
 Thames, battle of, 298.
 Thirteenth Amendment, 435; Appendix, xix.
 Thomas, General George H., 372, 382, 420.
 Thomas, General Philemon, 312.
 Thomas, Senator, 314.
 Thornton Massacre, 343.
 Thurman, Allen G., 454.
 Ticonderoga captured, 176, 212.
 Tilden, Samuel J., 444, 451.
 Tobacco, culture of, 88, 185; as money, 186.
 Tolerance, religious, 65.
 Toltecs, Indian race, 47.
 Tomochichi, Indian chief, 127, 128.
 Tonty, Henri de, 40.
 Toombs, Robert, 367.
 Tories, American, 226, 230, 235, 238.
 Townshend, Chancellor, 203.
 Travis, Colonel W. B., 336.
 Treaty, Penn's, 116; of Ryswick, 160; of Utrecht, 160; of Aix-la-Chapelle, 160; of Paris, 178; of Oswego, 181; of Paris, 249; with France, 232, 281; Jay's, 275; with Spain, 276; of Ildefonso, 285; of Ghent, 307; with Spain, 312; with Creek Indians, 315; Webster-Ashburton, 332; with Texas, 339; with Mexico, 348; with Japan, 358; of Washington, 442; Northwest Boundary, 341; Samoan, 457; with Spain, 473.
 Trent affair, 431.
 Trenton, battle of, 225.
 Truxton, Commodore, 280.
 Tryon, Commodore, 235.
 Tucker, Captain John R., 405.
 Tupelo, Miss., 384.
 Tuscarora, Indians, 146; War, 147.
 Twelfth Amendment, 282; text of, Appendix, xviii.
 Twiggs, General, 347.
 Tyler, John, President, 352-340.
 "Uncle Tom's Cabin," 355.
 Underground Railroad, 362.
 United States Bank, 274, 320, 330.
 Urrea, Mexican general, 337.
 Utah, settled, 333; admitted, 460.
 Vaca, Cabeza de, 26.
 Valencia, General, 347.
 Valley Forge, army at, 228.
 Valley campaign, Shenandoah, 389.
 Valverde, battle of, 378.
 Van Buren, Martin, President, 329-331.
 Van Dorn, General Earl, 379, 384, 407, 415.
 Van Horne, Major, 295.
 Van Rensselaer, General, 296.
 Van Twiller, Wouter, 96.
 Van Wert, Patriot, 238.
 Velasquez, Governor, 28.
 Venezuela controversy, 460.
 Vera Cruz, battle of, 347.
 Vermont admitted, 276.
 Verrazano, 35.
 Vespuccius, Americus, 23.
 Vicksburg besieged and captured, 407, 408, 416.
 Vikings, discoveries by, 60.
 Vinland, 61.
 Virginia, explored, 69; named, 70; settled, 77-89; charters, 74, 84, 85; intellectual and social development in, 192; adopts a constitution, 218; Bill of Rights, 257; cedes land, 258, 276; Resolutions of 1798, 281; secedes, 371; readmitted, 442.
 Virginia, Confederate ram, 403.
 Von Heister, General, 224, 226.
 Waddell, Captain James I., 413.
 Waldsee-Muller, geographer, 23.
 Walker, Leroy P., 367.
 Walker, General W. H. T., 419.
 Wallace, General Lewis, 425.
 Walloons, Dutch Protestants, 96.
 Walthall, General E. C., 421.
 Ward, General Artemus, 214.
 Wardwell, Samuel, 156.
 Warner, Seth, 212.
 War of 1812, cause of, 294.
 War with Tripoli, 286.
 Warren, General, 160.

- Washington, George, youthful mission of, 167-169; commander-in-chief, 213; at Dorchester Heights, 216; at New York, 224; crosses the Delaware, 224; presides over Constitutional Convention, 263; elected President, 267; inaugurated, 271; death of, 281.
- Washington, Colonel William, 245.
- Washington City, made the capital, 282; captured by British, 305.
- Washington (Texas) Convention, 339.
- Washington Territory, admitted, 457.
- Wasp, frigate, 304, 306.
- Watson, Thomas E., 464.
- Waxhaw, battle of, 242.
- Wayne, General Anthony, 235, 275.
- Weatherford, Indian chief, 300.
- Webster, Daniel, 332.
- West, Governor Joseph, 123.
- West Florida, State of, 312.
- West India Company, 95.
- West Virginia admitted, 432.
- Weymouth, George, 74.
- Wheeler, General Joseph H., 416, 420, 421, 477.
- Wheeler, W. A., 444.
- Whig party, 329, 331.
- Whisky Rebellion, 274.
- White, Governor John, 72.
- White Apple village, 148.
- White Plains, battle of, 224.
- Whitney, Eli, inventor, 324.
- Wilcox, General, 398.
- Wild cat banks, 230.
- Wilderness, battle of, 421.
- Wilkinson, General James, 299.
- William and Mary College, 192.
- Williams, Colonel, 173.
- Williams, Patriot, 228.
- Williams, Roger, 105, 109.
- Williamsburg, battle of, 389.
- Wilmot Proviso, 354.
- Wilson's Creek, battle of, 379.
- Wilson Tariff Law, 461.
- Winchester, battle of, 425, 426.
- Winchester, General, 296, 298.
- Winder, General, 299.
- Windsor, Connecticut, settled, 108.
- Windsor, General, 300.
- Wingfield, Edward, 78.
- Winthrop, General, 159.
- Winthrop, John, 104.
- Wisconsin, explored, 41; admitted, 340.
- Witchcraft, Salem, 155-157.
- Wolfe, General, 176.
- Wood, Commander J. T., 413.
- Wool, General, 343, 345.
- World's Exposition, New Orleans, 447.
- Worth, General, 345, 347.
- Writs of Assistance, 197.
- Wyatt, Sir Francis, 92.
- Wyoming Massacre, 235.
- Wyoming admitted, 457.
- Yeamans, Sir John, 122.
- Yearly, Governor, 91.
- Yell, Colonel, 246.
- Yellow fever, 446.
- Yellow Tavern, battle of, 426.
- Yemassee, Indians, 148; war, 148.
- York, Canada, captured, 298.
- York, Duke of, 97, 118.
- York, Pa., Congress at, 227.
- Yorktown, siege of, 248; 1862, 389.
- Young, Brigham, 332.
- Zavalla, Lorenzo de, 339.
- Zollicoffer, General, 302.

AIDS TO THE STUDY OF HISTORY

HISTORICAL NOVELS, read at home by the pupils, will awaken an interest in the study of history and help to fix leading facts in their memory. The famous Committee of Ten of the National Educational Association recommend that the teaching of history "should be intimately connected with the teaching of English * * * by reading historical sketches, biographies and novels outside of the class work." In following these suggestions there are three practical difficulties: 1st. The pupil cannot afford to buy a sufficient number of complete novels. 2d. He has not time to spare for reading complete novels. 3d. Even the best of novels contain details of no historical value, and often questionable incidents.

We have removed these difficulties by condensing a number of standard historical novels. We have cut out dry, tedious details and questionable incidents, but have left, in the author's exact language, a story so complete that the pupil does not notice the eliminations; so brief that he can read many of them, and so cheap that he can afford to buy them. The introduction of each volume gives a map and a brief historical sketch of the true history of the period upon which the story is based. The following numbers of the Standard Literature Series are recommended:

1. **Tales of the Alhambra**—the introduction containing a brief history of Spain—may be read while the class is studying the voyages of Columbus and the Spanish settlements. Paper, 12½ cents.

2. **Westward Ho!** may be read with the voyages of Drake. Paper, 20 cents.
3. **Kenilworth** may be read with the attempt at settlements in Virginia. Paper, 20 cents.
4. **The Last of the Mohicans**, with the French and Indian war. Paper, 20 cents.
5. **Knickerbocker Stories** relate to Dutch rule in New York. Paper, 12½ cents.
6. **The Water Witch** may be read in connection with Queen Anne's war. Paper, 20 cents.
7. **The Yemassee**, in connection with the Carolinas. Paper, 20 cents.
8. **The Deerslayer** and **The Last of the Mohicans** should be read in connection with the French and Indian war. Paper, 20 cents.
9. **The Spy**, in connection with the Revolution: Operations about New York. Paper, 12½ cents.
10. **Horse-Shoe Robinson**, in connection with the Revolution: Operations in the Carolinas. Paper, 20 cents.
11. **The Pilot**, in connection with naval operations during the Revolution. Paper, 20 cents.
12. **Ninety=Three** should be read in connection with Washington's administration when the French Revolution was in progress. The introduction to this volume gives a history of that Revolution, which was such a prominent factor in our politics during Washington's administration and which led to the War of 1812. Paper, 20 cents.

The complete set of 12 volumes will be sent by mail, postage prepaid, to any teacher, for \$1.75, cash with order.

UNIVERSITY PUBLISHING COMPANY
43=47 East Tenth Street, NEW YORK

First on the list of books recommended by the History
Committee of the United Confederate Veterans.

HANSELL'S HISTORIES

ARE THE ADOPTED BOOKS

FOR

The State of Louisiana,

The State of North Carolina,

The State of South Carolina,

AND FOR MANY OF THE COUNTIES OF

Georgia, Alabama, and Mississippi.

Hansell's School History of the United States,60

Hansell's Higher History of the United States, . . \$1.00

MAURY'S GEOGRAPHIES

Have Been ADOPTED by the Following Cities
and Counties in Virginia Since August 1, 1898:

...THE CITIES OF...

ALEXANDRIA

BRISTOL

BUENA VISTA

DANVILLE

NORFOLK

PETERSBURG

PORTSMOUTH

RADFORD

RICHMOND

(Maury's Elementary Geography)

WILLIAMSBURG

WINCHESTER

...THE COUNTIES OF...

Albemarle

Alexandria

Alleghany

Amelia

Amherst

Augusta

Bath

Bedford

Bland

Botetourt

Brunswick

Campbell

Caroline

Carroll

Charles City

Charlotte

Chesterfield

Craig

Dickenson

Dinwiddie

Essex

Fairfax

Floyd

Fluvanna

Franklin

Frederick

Giles

Gloucester

Goochland

Grayson

Greene

Greensville

Halifax

Hanover

Henrico

Henry

Highland

Isle of Wight

James City

King & Queen

King George

King William

Lee

Loudoun

Louisa

Lunenburg

Madison

Mathews

Mecklenburg

Middlesex

Montgomery

Nansemond

Nelson

New Kent

Nottoway

Orange

Page

Patrick

Pittsylvania

Prince Edward

Prince George

Prince William

Princess Anne

Pulaski

Rappahannock

Roanoke

Rockbridge

Rockingham

Russell

Scott

Smyth

Southampton

Stafford

Surry

Sussex

Tazewell

Warren

Warwick

Washington

Wise

Wythe

York



Maury's books teach geography, and are not mere picture-books, full of fanciful theories and incorrect statements. They have stood the "test" of the schoolroom. There is no series published which is so fully "up-to-date."

LIBRARY OF CONGRESS



0 011 447 132 A

